

SEFER CHANOCH
(THE BOOK OF ENOCH)

Sefer Chanoch

**THE BOOK
OF
ENOCK**

*Translated out of the Aramaic fragments:
With the Greek fragments and Ethiopic text diligently compared;
And with the R. H. Charles translation from the Ethiopic
Diligently compared and revised.*

By
James Scott Trimm

Published by
The Institute for Nazarene Jewish Studies

P.O. Box 471
Hurst, TX 76053
<http://www.nazarene.co.nr>

© Copyright 2005 James Scott Trimm. All Rights Reserved

INTRODUCTION

THE BOOK OF ENOCH UNVEILED

The Book of Enoch was treasured by the ancient Nazarenes as an inspired book of prophecy authored by Enoch himself.

Yeshua's own half-brother Y'hudah quotes from the Book of Enoch saying:

And Chanokh [Enoch], the seventh from Adam, prophesied about these men saying: Behold, YHWH comes with ten thousands of his set-apart-ones, to execute judgment on all, co convict all who are wicked among them of their wicked deeds which they have committed in a wicked way, and all the harsh things which wicked sinners have spoken against him.

(Yhudah (Jude) 1:14-15 HRV)

Some commentators have tried to minimize the importance of this quotation, claiming that Y'hudah was only quoting the Book of Enoch in the way that Paul quoted Greek philosophers. In fact there are two very important features in Y'hudah's citation.

First of all, while the Book of Enoch is quoted (specifically 1Enoch 1:9), Y'hudah attributes his quote, not to the Book of Enoch, but to the man Enoch (Enoch, seventh from Adam). Since we have copies of the Book of Enoch which predate the Book of Y'hudah, this quote tells us that Enoch seventh from Adam wrote the Book of Enoch.

Secondly Y'hudah uses the word "prophecy". Y'hudah tells us that this quote from Enoch which comes from the Book of Enoch is prophecy". That is a very important statement.

Regarding prophecy Kefa (Peter) writes:

*knowing this first, that no prophecy of Scripture
is of any private interpretation; for prophecy never
came by the will of man, but set-apart men of Eloah
spoke as they were moved by the Ruach HaKodesh.*
(2Kefa (2Pt.) 1:20-21 - HRV)

So if, as Y'hudah tells us, the Book of Enoch is "prophecy" then Kefa tells us that it was inspired by the Ruach HaKodesh (Set-apart Spirit).

Paul has some important words for us about Scripture that is inspired:

*Every writing which was written by the spirit is profitable
for teaching and for reproof and for correction and for
instruction in righteousness, that the son of man of Eloah
may be complete and whole for every good work.*
(2Timothy 3:16-17 - HRV)

So if the Book of Enoch is prophecy then it was inspired by the Ruach HaKodesh. And if Enoch was inspired by the Ruach then it is profitable for teaching and for reproof and for correction and for instruction in righteousness.

In other words, if Y'hudah is telling the truth then we should be using the Book of Enoch as Scripture and not taking it lightly!

As a matter of fact the ancient Nazarenes treasured the Book of Enoch and used it along side the books we know today as canon. This is evidenced by fact that Y'hudah quotes Enoch. R.H. Charles listed 128 locations where the Ketuvim Netzarim (The writings of the Nazarenes,

commonly known today as the "New Testament") is clearly influenced by statements in the Book of Enoch.

The Book of Enoch was used within Judaism at least as early as the second century B.C.E.. Seven fragmentary Aramaic copies were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. The Zohar also cites the Book of Enoch by name (Zohar 1:37b) and makes much use of its account of the fallen angels Shemikhaza (which the Zohar calls Uzael) and Azzazel.

The earliest Gentile Christians also accepted and made use of the Book of Enoch. Many of the so-called "Church Fathers" either quoted Enoch, or made use of it. Among these were the author of the Epistle of Pseudo-Barnabas, Justin Martyr (2nd C.), Irenaeus (2nd C.), Clement of Alexandria (2nd C.) and Origen (3rd C.). Tertullian (160-230 C.E.) even called the book "Set-apart Scripture". The book was even canonized by the Ethiopic Church.

LOSS OF THE BOOK OF ENOCH

In the fourth century the Book of Enoch came under fire from such "Church Fathers" as Augustine, Hilary and Jerome. The Book of Enoch was soon banned except in the remote Ethiopic Church, which had canonized it. The original Hebrew was lost completely to time and has yet to be recovered. The Aramaic and Greek versions disappeared as well (portions of these have since been discovered. The complete text has survived only in Ethiopic.

RESTORATION OF THE BOOK OF ENOCH

The Book of Enoch predicts its own restoration as our last days bonus!

But when they write down truthfully all my words in their languages, and do not change or diminish ought from my words but write them all down truthfully -all that I first testified concerning them. Then, I know another mystery, that books will

be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom. And to them shall the books be given, and they shall believe in them and rejoice over them, and then shall all the righteous who have learnt therefore all the paths of uprightness be recompensed.' (1Enoch 104:10-13)

FOR WHOM DID ENOCH WRITE?

The Book of Enoch is especially given for the benefit of those believers in the last days who are Torah Observant:

The words of the blessing with which Enoch blessed the chosen and righteous, who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed.
(1Enoch 1:1)

Another book which Enoch wrote for his son Methuselah and for those who will come after him, and observe the Torah in the last days.
(1Enoch 108:1)

MESSAGE OF THE BOOK OF ENOCH

Yeshua warned that the last days would be like the days of Noach (Mt. 24:37-38 - HRV). And this is a major theme of the Book of Enoch. Enoch forewarns of the coming judgment of the flood, and parallels this with the judgment of the last days. The Book of Enoch even prophecies that in the last days:

"women shall become pregnant and abort their babies and cast them out from their midst"

(1En. 99:5).

The Book of Enoch tells of how 200 fallen angels led by Shemikhazah and Azazel "saw and lusted after" human females and copulated with them producing a race of giants (1Enoch 6) and taught mankind secrets such as sorcery, the making of weapons (1Enoch 7-8) and how to perform an abortion (1En. 69:12). YHWH's judgment finally comes. Shemikhazah and "all his associates" are bound fast "for seventy generations" until "the judgment that is forever is consummated" (1En. 9:11-12) (compare Y'hudah 1:6 & 2Kefa 2:2-10). The giants are killed by the flood but their spirits remain on earth as evil spirits (1En. 15:8-12). In the last days the fallen angels will return again (1Enoch 56:5).

Now if one counts the generations from Enoch to Yeshua one finds there were sixty-nine generations (Luke 3:23-37). So the seventy generations ended one generation after the life of Yeshua. This brings us to an interesting statement made by the Nazarene writer Hegesippus around 185 C.E. as he recounted the beginning of the apostasy:

*Up to that period the Assembly had remained like a virgin pure and uncorrupted: for, if there were any persons who were disposed to tamper with the wholesome rule of the proclaiming of salvation, they still lurked in some dark place of concealment or other. But, when the sacred band of Emissaries had in various ways closed their lives, and **that generation** of men to whom it had been vouchsafed to listen to the godlike Wisdom with their own ears **had passed away, then did the confederacy of godless error take its rise** through the treachery of false teachers, who, seeing that none of the emissaries any longer survived, at length attempted with bare and uplifted head to oppose the proclaiming of the truth by proclaiming "knowledge falsely so called."*

(Hegesippus; Memoirs)

The generation, which followed the life of Yeshua and his emissaries, was the generation in which Shemikhazah and his associates were to be released. And this was the very generation in which false teachers began with bare and uplifted head to oppose the proclaiming of the truth, the very generation in which the apostasy began.

The long night of the apostasy is ending. The Book of Enoch is again coming to light that it may be a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom to those who observe the Torah in the last days. The culmination of all things is at hand.

The Book of Enoch has survived to us in its complete form only in an ancient Ethiopic translation. In recent years however many fragments of the ancient Aramaic and Greek versions of the Book of Enoch have been discovered (seven fragmentary copies predating the first century were discovered in cave four among the Dead Sea Scrolls).

It is with great pleasure that I present to the public this new translation of the Book of Enoch, taken wherever possible from the ancient Aramaic and Greek versions. In this translation I have sought to make as much use as possible of the Aramaic fragments. Where these are unavailable I have, wherever possible, consulted the Greek and reached to the Hebrew original behind the Greek. Finally wherever these are not available I have researched the Ethiopic text and reached to the underlying Hebrew behind it. The result is what I believe is the most useful and accurate translation of the Book of Enoch available to date.

James Trimm

ספר חנוך
Sefer Chanoch
(The Book of Enoch – 1Enoch)

Book 1

Chapters 1-36

The Book of Watchers

CHAPTER 1

1 The words of the blessing with which Chanoch blessed the chosen and righteous, who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed.

2 And he took up his parable and said -Chanoch a righteous man, whose eyes were opened by Elohim, saw the vision of the Set-apart One in the heavens,¹ which the angels showed me, and from the words of the watchers² and the set-apart ones I heard everything, and from them I understood as I saw, but not for this generation, but for a remote generation I shall speak.

3 Concerning the chosen I said, and took up my parable concerning them: The Set-apart Great One will come forth from His dwelling,³

4 And the Eternal Elohim will tread upon the earth, (even) on Mount Sinai, And appear with His mighty army. And appear in the strength of His might from the heaven of heavens.⁴

5 And all shall be smitten with fear

And the Watchers shall quake,

¹ 1 Enoch 14:8-25

² Dan. 4:10 (13), 14 (17), 20 (23)

³ 1 Kn. 8:30; Mic. 1:3; Is. 26:20-21

⁴ Deut. 10:14; Ps. 148:4; Eph. 4:10; Heb. 4:14

And they shall be punished in hidden places among all the creatures of the earth.

And all of the creatures of the earth shall quake.

And great fear and trembling shall seize them to the ends of the earth.

6 And the high places shall be shaken,

And the high hills shall be made low,

And shall melt like wax before the flame⁵

7 And the earth shall be wholly rent in sunder,

And all that is upon the earth shall perish,

And there shall be a judgment upon all (men).

8 But with the righteous He will make shalom.

And will protect the chosen,

And mercy shall be upon them.

And they shall all belong to Elohim,

And they shall be prospered,

And they shall all be blessed.

And He will help them all,

And light shall appear unto them,

And He will make shalom with them'.

9 And behold! He comes with myriads of His set-apart ones⁶

To execute judgment upon all,

And to destroy all the ungodly:

And to convict all flesh concerning all the works⁷ of their ungodliness, which they have, ungodly committed,

⁵ 1 En. 52:6; Mic. 1:4; Nah. 1:5; Ps. 97:5; Is. 34:3; Rev. 6:14; Is. 64:1; Amos 9:5

⁶ “the myriads of his set-apart ones” רבואת קדישׁוהי

⁷ “flesh concerning all the works” בשרא על עובדי

And of all the proud and hard⁸ things which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him.⁹

CHAPTER 2

1 Consider you all his doings of the heavens, how they do not change their orbits, and the luminaries which are in the heaven, how in the stations of their lights, that all rise and set in order, each in its season, and transgress not against their appointed order.¹⁰

2 Behold you the earth, and give heed to its works from first to last, how steadfast they are, how none of these things change, and everything appears to you.

3. Behold the signs of summer and clouds and dew and the winter, how the whole earth is filled with water, and clouds pour down rain.

CHAPTER 3

Observe and see how [in the winter] all the trees wither and shed all their leaves, except fourteen trees, which do not lose their foliage but retain the old foliage until two to three years pass.

CHAPTER 4

And again, observe you the days of summer how the sun burns and glows. And you seek shade and shelter before it on the burning earth; and so you cannot tread on the earth, or on a rock by reason of the heat.

⁸ “proud and hard” רַבְּרַבִּין וְקָשִׁין

⁹ Quoted in Jude 1:14-15; See also Zech. 14:4; 1 Thes. 3:13

¹⁰ This section has important parallels with Rom. 1:18-32

CHAPTER 5

1 Observe you all the trees cover themselves, on all of them their leaves grow green, and all their fruit is brought forth in glorious pride. Praise you, and give you heed and know with regard to all these works, and recognize how He that lives for ever has created all these.

2 Year to year all His works go on thus for ever, but they do all His word.

3 [Observe how the seas and rivers together fulfil and do not change their doings by abandoning His word.]

4 But you have changed your works and have not done the commandments of YHWH, but you sin against him with great and hard words with your impure mouths against His greatness, Oh, you hard-hearted, you shall find no shalom.

5 Therefore shall you curse your days,
And the years of your life shall perish,
And the years of your destruction shall be multiplied in an everlasting curse,
And you shall find no mercy.

6 In those days you shall make your names an everlasting curse to all the righteous,
And by you shall all who curse, curse,
And all who are sinners, and the ungodly, by you, shall curse.
And all who are without sin shall rejoice,
And they shall have remission of sins
And all mercy, and shalom and tranquility.
They shall have salvation, the good light.
And they shall inherit the Land.¹¹
And for all those of the sinners shall have no salvation.

¹¹ Ps. 37:11; Mt. 5:5

And upon you all a curse shall abide.

7 And for the chosen, light and grace and shalom.

And they shall inherit the Land.¹²

But for the godless, there will be a curse.

8 And then there shall be bestowed upon the chosen wisdom,

And they shall all live and never again sin,

Either through ungodliness or through pride:

But they who are wise shall be humble.

9 And they shall not again transgress,

Nor shall they sin all the days of their life,

Nor shall they die of (the divine) anger or wrath,

But they shall complete the number of the days of their life.¹³

And their lives shall be increased in shalom,

And the years of their joy shall be multiplied,

In eternal gladness and shalom,

All the days of their life.

CHAPTER 6

1 And it came to pass when the children of men had multiplied that in those days were born unto them beautiful and comely daughters.¹⁴

2 And the angels, the children of the heaven, saw and lusted after them, and said to one another: 'Come, let us choose us wives from among the children of men and beget us children.'¹⁵

¹² Ps. 37:11; Mt. 5:5

¹³ Is. 65:20; 1En. 10:17; 25:6; 96:8

¹⁴ Gen. 6:1

¹⁵ Gen. 6:2; 2 Pt. 2:2-10; Jude 1:6-8

3 And Shemikhazah, who was their leader, said unto them: 'I fear you will not indeed agree to do this deed, and I alone shall have to pay the penalty of a great sin.'

4 And they all answered him and said: 'Let us all swear an oath, and all bind ourselves by imprecations not to abandon this plan but to do this thing.'

5 Then they all swore together and bound themselves by imprecations upon it.

6 And they were in all two hundred; who descended in the days of Yared on the summit of Mount Hermon, and they called it Mount Hermon, because they had sworn and bound themselves by imprecations upon it.

7 And these are the names of their leaders:¹⁶

Shemikhazah, their leader,
Ar'tekif, the second to him,
Ram'tel, the third to him,
Kokav'el, the fourth to him,
Tami'el,¹⁷ the fifth to him,
Ra'm'el, the sixth to him,
Dani'el the seventh from him,
Zik'el, the eighth to him,
Barak'el, ninth to him,
8 Asa'el, tenth to him,
Hermoni, eleventh to him,
Matr'el, twelfth to him,
'Anan'el, thirteenth to him,
Sitwa'el, fourteenth to him,

¹⁶ See also 1 En. 69; See Appendix 1 for the meaning of these names.

¹⁷ I have retained the Greek here since the Aramaic for this name has not survived. The best Greek text reads Ταμιηλ (Tami'el), the Ethiopic has "Tamel".

Shimsh'el, fifteenth to him,
Sahr'el, sixteenth to him,
Tamm'el, seventeenth to him,
Tur'el, eighteenth to him,
Yamm'el, nineteenth to him,
Zohari'el,¹⁸ twentieth to him.

These are their chiefs of tens.¹⁹

CHAPTER 7

1 And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives from all,²⁰ and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them, and they taught them sorcery²¹ and spellbinding,²² and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants.

2 And they became pregnant, and they bare great giants, whose height was three thousand cubits, and there were not born upon the earth children of their strength.

3 And they were devouring all the produce of men. And when men could no longer supply them,

4 the giants turned against them and devoured mankind.

¹⁸ Milik reads יְהַדִּי'אֵל (Y'haddi'el "El is my guide") but Matthew Black reads זְהַרִּי'אֵל (Zohari'el "splendor of El"). Upon examining a photograph of the Aramaic fragment I have concluded that Black's reading is correct.

¹⁹ Following 4Qenoch(b); the Ethiopic and the Greek; 4Qenoch(a) has "chiefs of chiefs of tens".

²⁰ Gen. 6:2; 1 En. 6:2; 15:5-7; Mt. 24:37-38; Lk. 17:26-27

²¹ חַרְשָׁתָא (Strong's 2797)

²² כְּשַׁפְתָא (Strong's 3784 & 3785)

5 And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and fish, and to devour one another's flesh, and drink the blood.²³

6 Then the earth laid accusation against the Torah-less-ones²⁴ concerning all the things that were done upon it.

CHAPTER 8

1 And Asa'el²⁵ taught men to make swords of iron, and knives, and shields, and breastplates of brass, and made known to them the metals that are excavated from the earth and the art of working gold and concerning silver, and bracelets, and ornaments, and concerning antimony, and eye shadow, and all kinds of costly stones, and all colouring tinctures.

2 And there arose much godlessness, and being wicked, and they were led astray, and became corrupt in all their ways.

3 Shemikhazah taught spellbinding, and root-cuttings, Hermoni the loosing of spells,²⁶ Barak'el taught signs of thunders, Kokav'el the constellations²⁷ of the stars, Zik'el the signs of lightning, Ar'tekif the signs of the earth, Shimsh'el the signs of the sun, and Sahri'el the signs of the moon. And they all began to reveal these secrets to their wives.

4 And because part of mankind was perishing from the earth, they cried, and their cry went up to heaven.

²³ Lev. 17:11-12; Gen. 9:4; Acts 15:20, 29; 21:25; 1 En. 98:11

²⁴ Greek: ανομομων ANOMON literally α- (Strong's 1) "without" prefixed to νομων (Strong's 3551) "Torah".

²⁵ Ethiopic has: Azazel; Greek has: Asa'el

²⁶ "loosing of spells" Aramaic: חרש למשרא

²⁷ "constellations" the Aramaic literally reads "signs of stars"

CHAPTER 9

1 And then Mikha'el, Uri'el, Rafa'el, and Gavri'el looked down from the sanctuary of heaven and saw much blood being shed upon the earth, and all the earth was filled with Torah-less-ness²⁸ and violence so that sin was being wrought upon it.²⁹

2 And hearing it the four went and said among themselves that the voice and the cry, in the perishing of the sons of the earth, reaches to the gates of heaven.

3 And now to you, the set-apart ones of heaven, the souls of men make their suit and say "Bring our cause before the Most High."

4 And Rafa'el and Mikha'el said to the Master of the ages: 'Our Great Master,³⁰ [you] are Master of the ages³¹, Master of masters,³² Elohi of Elohim,³³ King of kings,³⁴ and Elohim of the ages, the throne of Your glory stands unto all the generations of the ages, and Your name set-apart and glorious and blessed unto all the ages!

5 You have made all things, and you have power over all things: and all things are naked and open in Your sight, and You see all things, and nothing can hide itself from You.

6 You see what Azazel has done, who has taught all unrighteousness on earth and revealed the eternal secrets, which were (preserved) in heaven, which men were practicing.

7 And Shemikhazah, to whom You have given authority to be king over his associates.

²⁸ Aramaic: רשא; Greek: ανωμων ANOMON literally α- (Strong's 1) (without) ωμων (Strong's 3551) (Torah).

²⁹ Gen. 6:11

³⁰ מרנא רבא

³¹ מרא עלמא

³² Deut. 10:17 & Rev. 19:16

³³ Deut. 10:17

³⁴ Rev. 19:16

8 And they have gone to the daughters of men upon the earth, and have slept with the women, and have defiled themselves, and revealed to them all kinds of sins.

9 And the women have borne giants, and the whole earth has thereby been filled with blood and unrighteousness.³⁵

10 And now, behold, the souls of those who have died are crying and making their suit to the gates of heaven,³⁶ and their lamentations have ascended: and cannot cease because of the Torah-less deeds³⁷ which are wrought on the earth.

11 And You know all things before they come to pass, and You see these things and You do suffer them, and You do not say to us what we are to do to them in regard to these.'

CHAPTER 10

1 Then said the Most High, the Set-apart and Great One spake, and sent Uri'el to the son of Lamech,

2 and said to him: 'Go to Noach and tell him in my name "Hide yourself!" and reveal to him the end that is approaching: that the whole earth will be destroyed, and a deluge is about to come³⁸ upon the whole earth, and will destroy all that is on it.

3 And now instruct the righteous man that he may escape, and the son of Lamech to preserve his soul to life, and to escape forever. And from him there will be planted a plant³⁹ and his seed may be preserved for all the generations of the world.'

4 And again YHWH said to Rafa'el: 'Bind Azaz'el hand and foot, and cast him into the darkness: and make an opening in the desert, which is in Dudael, and cast him therein.

³⁵ Gen. 6:5, 11-12

³⁶ Rev. 6:9-11; 1En. 22:7; 47:1-2; Gen. 4:10; Mt. 23:35

³⁷ "Torah-less deeds" Greek: ανομηματων From the Greek ANOMOS "Torah-less-ness"

³⁸ Gen. 6:17; 1En. 54:10; 106:15; 2En. 34:1-2

³⁹ Rom. 11:17-24; Wis. 14:6; 1En. 10:16; 65:12

5 And place upon him rough and jagged rocks,⁴⁰ and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there for ever, and cover his face that he may not see light.

6 And on the day of the great judgment he shall be cast into the fire.⁴¹

7 And heal the earth, which the angels have corrupted, and proclaim the healing of the earth, that they may heal the plague, and that all the children of men may not perish through all the secret things that the Watchers have disclosed and have taught their sons.

8 And the whole earth has been corrupted through the works that were taught by Azazel: to him ascribe all sins.'

9 And to Gavri'el said YHWH: 'Proceed against the bastards and the reprobates, and against the children of fornication: and destroy [the children of fornication and] the children of the Watchers from among men [and cause them to go forth]: send them one against the other that they may destroy each other in a war of destruction: and length of days shall they not have.

10 And no request that they (i.e. their fathers) make of you shall be granted unto their fathers on their behalf; for they hope to live an eternal life, and that each one of them will live five hundred years.'

11 And YHWH said unto Mikha'el: 'Go, make known to Shemik hazah and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness.

12 And when their sons shall die, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast⁴² for seventy generations⁴³ in the valleys of the earth, till the great day of their judgment and of their consummation, till the judgment that is for ever and ever is consummated.

13 In those days they shall be led off to the abyss of fire:⁴⁴ and to the torment and the prison in which they shall be confined for ever.

⁴⁰ 2En. 18:5

⁴¹ 2Pt. 2:4; Jude 1:6

⁴² 1En. 10:4, 7; Jude 1:6; 2Pt. 2:4-5; Rev. 20:1-3; Jub. 5:6-7

⁴³ The generations from Noach to Messiah are 69 generations (Luke 3:33-27)

⁴⁴ Rev. 10:10; Mt. 25:41

14 And everyone who is shall be condemned and destroyed will from thenceforth be bound together with them until the destruction of all their generation and at the time of judgment⁴⁵ which I shall judge, they will perish for all generations.

15 And destroy all the spirits of the reprobate and the children of the Watchers, because they have wronged mankind.

16 And destroy wrong from the face of the earth and let every evil work come to an end: and let the plant of righteousness⁴⁶ and truth appear: and it shall prove a blessing; the works of righteousness and truth' shall be planted in truth and joy for evermore.⁴⁷

17 And then shall all the righteous escape,⁴⁸

And shall live till they beget thousands,

And all the days of your youth and your old age⁴⁹

Shall be complete in shalom.

18 And then shall the whole earth be tilled in righteousness, and shall all be planted with trees and be full of blessing.

19 And all trees shall be planted on it, and they shall plant vines on it: and the vine, which they plant thereon, shall yield wine in abundance, and as for all the seed, which is sown thereon each measure (of it) shall bear a thousand, and each measure of olives shall yield ten presses of oil.⁵⁰

20 And cleanse you the earth from all oppression, and from all unrighteousness, and from all sin, and from all godlessness: and all the uncleanness that is wrought upon the earth destroy from off the earth.

21 And all the children of men shall become righteous, and all nations shall offer adoration and shall praise Me, and all shall worship Me.

⁴⁵ 1En. 10:4, 7; Jude 1:6; 2Pt. 2:4-5; Rev. 20:1-3; Jub. 5:6-7

⁴⁶ Rom. 11:17-24; Wis. 14:6; 1En. 10:16; 65:12

⁴⁷ 1En. 10:3

⁴⁸ 1En. 106:18

⁴⁹ 1En. 5:9; 10:17; 25:6; 96:8; Is. 65:20

⁵⁰ Is. 65:21-22

22 And the earth shall be cleansed from all defilement, and from all in, and from all punishment, and from all torment, and I will never again send (them) upon it from generation to generation and for ever.⁵¹

CHAPTER 11

1 And then I will open the store chambers of blessing, which are in the heaven,⁵² so as to send them down upon the earth over the work and labour of the children of men.

2 And truth and shalom shall be associated together throughout all the days of the world and throughout all the generations of men.'

CHAPTER 12

1 Before these things Chanoch was hidden,⁵³ and no one of the children of men knew where he was hidden, and where he abode, and what had become of him.

2 And his activities had to do with the Watchers, and his days were with the set-apartones.

3 And I Chanoch was blessing YHWH of majesty and the King of the ages,

4 and lo! the Watchers called me -Chanoch the scribe⁵⁴ - and said to me: 'Chanoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the set-apart eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives:⁵⁵ "You have wrought great destruction on the earth:

5 And you shall have no shalom nor forgiveness of sin:

⁵¹ Gen. 9:15; 1En. 55:1-2

⁵² Deut. 28:12

⁵³ 2En. 1:4; Jasher 3:2, 4-5, 17-18, 20

⁵⁴ Jub. 4:17, 20

⁵⁵ Jude 1:6; 1En. 15:3; Ps. 115:16; 2En. 1:7; Jub. 4:17, 22

6 and inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children, The murder of their beloved ones shall they see, and over the destruction of their children shall they lament, and shall make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and shalom shall you not attain."

CHAPTER 13

1 And Chanoch went and said: 'Azazel, you shall have no shalom: a severe sentence has gone forth against you

2 to put you in bonds: And you shall not have toleration nor request granted to you, because of the unrighteousness, which you hast taught, and because of all the works of godlessness and unrighteousness and sin which you have shown to men.'

3 Then I went and spoke to them all together, and they were all afraid, and fear and trembling seized them.

4 And they besought me to draw up a petition for them that they might find forgiveness, and to read their petition in the presence of YHWH of heaven.⁵⁶

5 For from thenceforward they could not speak (with Him) nor lift up their eyes to heaven for shame of their sins for which they had been condemned.

6 Then I wrote out their petition, and the prayer in regard to their spirits and their deeds individually and with regard to their requests concerning all their souls that they should have forgiveness and length.⁵⁷

7 And I went off and sat down at the waters of Dan, in the land of Dan, to the south of the west of Hermon: I read their petition of their requests till I fell asleep.

8 And behold a dream came to me, and visions fell down upon me until I lifted my eyelids toward the gates of the palace of heaven, and I

⁵⁶ James 2:19

⁵⁷ 2En. 7:3

saw a vision of the wrath of chastisement, and a voice came to me and it said: Speak to the sons of heaven, and reprimand them.⁵⁸

9 And when I awaked, I came unto them, and they were all assembled gathered together, weeping in 'Abel-Mayya, which is between Lebanon and Senir,⁵⁹ with their faces covered.

10 And I recounted before them all the visions, which I had seen in sleep, and I began to speak the words of truth, and visions of reprimand the heavenly Watchers.

CHAPTER 14

1 The book of the words of truth, and of the reprimand of the eternal Watchers in accordance with the command of the Great Set-apart One commanded in the dream, which I dreamed.

2 I saw in my sleep what I will now say with a tongue of flesh and with the breath of my mouth: which the Great One has given to men to converse therewith and understand with the heart.

3 As He has created and given to man the power of understanding the word of knowledge,⁶⁰ so has He created me to reprimand the Watchers, the children of heaven.

4 I wrote out your petition, and in my vision it appeared to me that your petition will not be granted unto you throughout all the days of eternity, and that judgment has been finally passed upon you: and decree against you.

5 And from henceforth you shall not ascend into heaven unto all eternity, and in bonds of the earth the judgment has gone forth to bind you for all the days of the world.

6 And (that) previously you shall have seen the destruction of your beloved ones and all their sons and all the possessions of your beloved ones you shall have no heirs to them, and they shall fall before you by the sword of destruction.

⁵⁸ 2En. 18:5

⁵⁹ Deut. 3:9

⁶⁰ 1Cor. 12:8; 6:3; 1En. 46:7

7 Because your petition on their behalf shall not be granted, nor yet on your own: even though you petition and ask and speak all the words contained in the writing, which I have written. And the vision was shown to me thus:

8 Behold, in the vision clouds invited me and a mist summoned me, and the course of the stars were shouting to me and the lightning's and thunderings hastened me, and the winds in the vision caused me to fly and lifted me upward, and bore me to enter into heaven.

9 And I went in till I drew near to a wall, which is built of crystals and surrounded by tongues of fire: and it began to frighten me.

10 And I went into the tongues of fire and drew near to a great house, which was built of crystals: and the walls of the house were like a tessellated floor (made) of ice.

11 Its ceiling was like the path of the stars and the lightning's, and between them were fiery cherubim, and their heaven was (clear as) water.

12 A flaming fire surrounded all their walls, and its gates blazed with fire.

13 And I entered into that house, and it was hot as fire and cold as ice: there were no delights of life therein: fear covered me, and trembling got hold upon me.

14 And as I quaked and trembled, I fell upon my face.

15 And I beheld a vision, And lo! there was a second house, greater than the former, and the entire gate stood open before me, and it was built of flames of fire.

16 And in every respect it so excelled in splendour and magnificence and extent that I cannot describe to you its splendour and its extent.

17 And its floor was of fire, and above it were lightning's and the path of the stars, and its ceiling also was flaming fire.

18 And I looked and saw therein a lofty throne: its appearance was as crystal, and the wheels thereof as the shining sun, and there was the vision of cherubim.

19 And from underneath the throne came streams of flaming fire so that I could not look thereon.⁶¹

20 And the Great Glory sat thereon, and His raiment shone more brightly than the sun and was whiter than much snow.⁶²

21 None of the angels could enter and could behold His face by reason of the magnificence and glory and no flesh could behold Him.⁶³

22 The flaming fire was round about Him, and a great fire stood before Him, and none around could draw near Him: ten thousand times ten thousand (stood) before Him,⁶⁴

23 yet He needed no counselor. And the most set-apart ones who were near to Him did not leave by night nor depart from Him.

24 And until then I had been prostrate on my face, trembling: and YHWH called me with His own mouth, and said to me: 'Come here, Chanoch, and hear my Word.'⁶⁵

25 And one of the set-apart ones came to me and waked me, and He made me rise up and approach the door: and I bowed my face downwards.

CHAPTER 15

1 And He answered and said to me, and I heard His voice: 'Fear not, Chanoch, you righteous man and scribe of righteousness: approach hither and hear my voice.

2 And go, say to the Watchers of heaven, who have sent you to intercede for them: "You should intercede" for men, and not men for you:

⁶¹ Dan. 7:10

⁶² 1En. 71:10; 2En. 22:2-3; Dan. 7:9

⁶³ Col. 1:15; Jn. 1:18; 1Jn. 4:12; Ex. 33:20; 2En. 48:4; 1Tim. 6:15-16

⁶⁴ Dan. 7:10

⁶⁵ 1En. 61:7; 2En. 22:4, 7; Jn. 1:1-3, 14. The Aramaic word for "Word" is on a missing piece of the fragment. The Greek has λογον (Strong's 3056).

3 Wherefore have you left the high, set-apart, and eternal heaven, and lain with women, and defiled yourselves with the daughters of men and taken to yourselves wives, and done like the children of earth, and begotten giants (as your) sons?⁶⁶

4 And though you were set-apart, spiritual, living the eternal life, you have defiled yourselves with the blood of women, and have begotten (children) with the blood of flesh, and, as the children of men, have lusted after flesh and blood as those also do who die and perish.

5 Therefore have I given them wives also that they might impregnate them, and beget children by them, that thus nothing might be wanting to them on earth.⁶⁷

6 But you were formerly spiritual, living the eternal life, and immortal for all generations of the world.

7 And therefore I have not appointed wives for you; for as for the spiritual ones of the heaven, in heaven is their dwelling.

8 And now, the giants, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, shall be called evil spirits upon the earth, and on the earth shall be their dwelling.⁶⁸

9 Evil spirits have proceeded from their bodies; because they are born from men and from the set-apart Watchers is their beginning and primal origin; they shall be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits shall they be called.

10 [As for the spirits of heaven, in heaven shall be their dwelling, but as for the spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth shall be their dwelling.]

11 And the spirits of the giants afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble: they take no food, but nevertheless hunger and thirst, and cause offences.

12 And these spirits shall rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them.

⁶⁶ Jude 1:6; 1Enoch 12:4; Ps. 115:16

⁶⁷ Mt. 22:30; Mk. 12:25; Lk. 20:36

⁶⁸ Gen. 6:4; Lk. 17:26-27; 1En. 6:2; 7:2; Mt. 24:37-38; 3Macc. 2:4; Wis. 14:6; 1Bar. 3:26-28; Jub. 5:7.

CHAPTER 16

1 From the days of the slaughter and destruction and death of the giants, from the souls of whose flesh the spirits, having gone forth, shall destroy without incurring judgment -thus shall they destroy until the day of the consummation, the great judgment in which the age shall be consummated, over the Watchers and the godless, yea, shall be wholly consummated."

2 And now as to the watchers who have sent you to intercede for them, who had been aforetime in heaven, (say to them):

3 "You have been in heaven, but all the mysteries had not yet been revealed to you, and you knew worthless ones, and these in the hardness of your hearts you have made known to the women, and through these mysteries women and men work much evil on earth."⁶⁹

4 Say to them therefore: " You have no shalom."

CHAPTER 17

1 And they took and brought me to a place in which those who were there were like flaming fire, and, when they wished, they appeared as men.⁷⁰

2 And they brought me to the place of darkness, and to a mountain the point of whose summit reached to heaven.

3 And I saw the places of the luminaries and the treasuries of the stars and of the thunder and in the uttermost depths, where were a fiery bow and arrows and their quiver, and a fiery sword and all the lightnings.

4 And they took me to the living waters,⁷¹ and to the fire of the west, which receives every setting of the sun.

5 And I came to a river of fire in which the fire flows like water and discharges itself into the great sea towards the west.

⁶⁹ Eph. 5:11-13; Mt. 10:26-28; 1En. 63:3; 2En. 24:3

⁷⁰ 2Cor. 11:14

⁷¹ Rev. 22:1, 17; Jn. 7:38; Zech. 14:8

6 I saw the great rivers and came to the great river and to the great darkness, and went to the place where no flesh walks.

7 I saw the mountains of the darkness of winter and the place whence all the waters of the deep flow.

8 I saw the mouths of all the rivers of the earth⁷² and the mouth of the deep.

CHAPTER 18

1 I saw the treasures of all the winds: I saw how He had furnished with them the whole creation and the firm foundations of the earth.⁷³

2 And I saw the corner-stone of the earth: I saw the four 3 winds which bear [the earth and] the firmament of the heaven.

3 And I saw how the winds stretch out the vaults of heaven, and have their station between heaven and earth: these are the pillars of the heaven.

4 I saw the winds of heaven, which turn and bring the circumference of the sun and all the stars to their setting.

5 I saw the winds on the earth carrying the clouds: I saw the paths of the angels.

6 I saw at the end of the earth the firmament of the heaven above. And I proceeded and saw a place, which burns day and night, where there are seven mountains of magnificent stones, three towards the east, and three towards the south.

7 And as for those towards the east, was of coloured stone, and one of pearl, and one of jacinth, and those towards the south of red stone.

8 But the middle one reached to heaven like the throne of Elohim,⁷⁴ of alabaster, and the summit of the throne was of sapphire.

9 And I saw a flaming fire.

⁷² Gen. 2:10-14

⁷³ 2En. 40:8

⁷⁴ 1En. 25:3; 45:3; 51:3; Jer. 3:17; Mt. 25:31-32

10 And beyond these mountains is a region the end of the great earth: there the heavens were completed.

11 And I saw a deep abyss, with columns of heavenly fire, and I saw in it columns of fire fall, which were beyond measure alike towards the height and towards the depth.

12 And beyond that abyss I saw a place which had no firmament of the heaven above, and no firmly founded earth beneath it: there was no water upon it, and no birds, but it was a waste and horrible place.

13 I saw there seven stars like great burning mountains, and to me, when I inquired regarding them,

14 The angel said: 'This place is the end of heaven and earth: this has become a prison for the stars and the host of heaven.

15 And the stars which roll over the fire are they which have transgressed the commandment of YHWH in the beginning of their rising, because they did not come forth at their appointed times.

16 And He was wroth with them, and bound them till the time when their guilt should be consummated⁷⁵ (even) for ten thousand years.'

CHAPTER 19

1 And Uri'el said to me: 'Here shall stand the angels who have connected themselves with women, and their spirits assuming many different forms are defiling mankind and shall lead them astray into sacrificing to demons as gods,⁷⁶ (here shall they stand,) till the day of the great judgment in which they shall be judged till they are made an end of.

2 And the women also of the angels who went astray shall become sirens.'

3 And I, Chanoch, alone saw the vision, the ends of all things: and no man shall see as I have seen.⁷⁷

⁷⁵ Jude 1:6; 2Pt. 2:4

⁷⁶ Lev. 17:7; Dt. 32:17; 1Cor. 10:20

⁷⁷ 1En. 68:1

CHAPTER 20

1 And these are the names of the set-apart angels who watch.

2 Uri'el, one of the set-apart angels, who is over the world and over Takh'ti.⁷⁸

3 Rafa'el, one of the set-apart angels, who is over the spirits of men.

4 Ra'u'el,⁷⁹ one of the set-apart angels who takes vengeance on the world of the luminaries.

5 Mikha'el, one of the set-apart angels, to wit, he that is set over the best part of mankind and over chaos.

6 Sari'el,⁸⁰ one of the set-apart angels, who is set over the spirits, who sin in the spirit.

7 Gavri'el, one of the set-apart angels, who is over Pardes⁸¹ and the Seraphim⁸² and the Cherubim.

8 Rumi'el,⁸³ one of the set-apart angels, whom Elohim set over those who rise.

⁷⁸ Greek: τάρταρου (Strong's 5020) "Tartarus" (the same Greek word appears in 2Pt. 2:4). This word is used in the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Tanak) for the Hebrew תַּחְתִּי Takh'ti (Strong's 8482) which appears in the Hebrew (DuTillet and Munster) version of Matthew 16:18

⁷⁹ Greek: Ραγουηλ "Raguel" which the LXX uses for the Hebrew name רַעוּאֵל "Ra'u'el" (Strong's 7467)

⁸⁰ Ethiopic: "Saraqael"; Greek: Σαριηλ "Sariel" which would indicate the Hebrew name שַׂרִיֵּאֵל "Sari'el"

⁸¹ Gen. 3:24

⁸² Greek: δράκοντων (Strong's 1404) "Serpents" but the underlying Hebrew is certainly שֵׂרָפִים (Strong's 8314) which can mean either "serpents" or "Serephim" (see note to 2En. 12:1)

⁸³ This verse and seventh angel's name are lacking in the Ethiopic and in one of our two Greek texts. One Greek manuscript includes this verse and gives the name as Ρεμειηλ. The original Hebrew name must have been רִומֵיֵאֵל "El is my rising"

CHAPTER 21

1 And I proceeded to where things were chaotic.

2 And I saw there something horrible:

3 I saw neither a heaven above nor a firmly founded earth, but a place chaotic and horrible. And there I saw seven stars of the heaven bound together in it, like great mountains and burning with fire.

4 Then I said: 'For what sin are they bound, and on what account have they been cast in hither?'

5 Then said Uri'el, one of the set-apart angels, who was with me, and was chief over them, and said: 'Chanoch, why do you ask, and why are you eager for the truth?'

6 These are of the number of the stars of heaven, which have transgressed the commandment of YHWH, and are bound here till ten thousand years, the time entailed by their sins, are consummated.'

7 And from thence I went to another place, which was still more horrible than the former, and I saw a horrible thing: a great fire there which burnt and blazed, and the place was cleft as far as the abyss, being full of great descending columns of fire: neither its extent or magnitude could I see, nor could I conjecture.

8 Then I said: 'How fearful is the place and how terrible to look upon!'

9 Then Uri'el answered me, one of the set-apart angels who was with me, and said unto me: 'Chanoch, why hast you such fear and affright?' And I answered:

10 'Because of this fearful place, and because of the spectacle of the pain.' And he said unto me: 'This place is the prison of the angels, and here they will be imprisoned for ever.'⁸⁴

CHAPTER 22

1 And thence I went to another place, and he showed me toward the west a large and high mountain of hard rock.

⁸⁴ Jude 1:6; 2Pt. 2:2-10; Mt. 25:41

2 And there was in it four hollow places, deep and wide and very smooth. How smooth are the hollow places and deep and dark to look at.

3 Then Rafa'el answered, one of the set-apart angels who was with me, and said unto me: 'These hollow places have been created for this very purpose, that the spirits of the souls of the dead should assemble therein, yea that all the souls of the children of men should assemble here.

4 And lo these are the pits for their imprisonment; they have been fashioned in this way till the day of their judgment and till the time of the end of the great judgment and till the time of the end of the great judgment, which is to be made against them.

5 ' There I saw the spirit of a dead man making suit, and his voice went forth to heaven crying unceasingly and making suit.

6 And I asked Rafa'el the watcher and set-apart one who was with me, and I said unto him: 'This spirit which makes suit, whose is it, whose voice goeth forth and maketh suit to heaven?'

7 And he answered me saying: 'This is the spirit which went forth from Abel, whom his brother Cain slew, and he makes his suit against him till⁸⁵ his seed is destroyed from the face of the earth, and his seed is annihilated from among the seed of men.'

8 Then I asked regarding it, and regarding all the hollow places: 'Why is one separated from the other?'

9 And he answered me and said unto me: 'These three have been made that the spirits of the dead might be separated. And such a division has been made (for) the spirits of the righteous, in which there is the bright spring of water.

10 And such has been made for sinners when they die and are buried in the earth and judgment has not been executed on them in their lifetime.

11 Here their spirits shall be set apart in this great pain till the great day of judgment and punishment and torment of those who curse for ever and retribution for their spirits. There He shall bind them for ever.

⁸⁵ Gen. 4:10; Mt. 23:35; Rev. 6:9-10; 1En. 47:1-2; m.San. 4:5

12 And such a division has been made for the spirits of those who make their suit, who make disclosures concerning their destruction, when they were slain in the days of the sinners.

13 Such has been made for the spirits of men who were not righteous but sinners, who were complete in transgression, and of the transgressors they shall be companions: but their spirits shall not be slain in the day of judgment nor shall they be afflicted from thence.'

14 Then I blessed YHWH of glory and said: 'Blessed be my Master, YHWH of righteousness, who rules for ever.'

CHAPTER 23

1 From thence I went to another place to the west of the ends of the earth.

2 And I saw a burning fire, which ran without resting, and paused not from its course day or night but (ran) regularly.

3 And I asked saying: 'What is this which rests not?'

4 Then Ra'u'el,⁸⁶ one of the set-apart angels who was with me, answered me and said unto me: 'This course of fire which you hast seen is the fire in the west which persecutes all the luminaries of heaven.'

CHAPTER 24

1 And from thence I went to another place of the earth, and he showed me a mountain range and the ground in between them was burning of fire which burnt day and night.

2 And I went beyond it and saw seven magnificent mountains all differing each from the other, and the stones (thereof) were magnificent and beautiful, magnificent as a whole, of glorious appearance and fair exterior: three towards the east, one founded on

⁸⁶ See note to 20:4

the other, and three towards the south, one upon the other, and deep rough ravines, no one of which joined with any other.

3 And the seventh mountain was in the midst of these, and it excelled them in height, resembling the seat of a throne: and fragrant trees encircled the throne.

4 And among them was a tree such as I had never yet smelt, neither was any among them nor were others like it: it had a fragrance beyond all fragrance, and its leaves and blooms and wood wither not for ever:⁸⁷ and its fruit is beautiful, and its fruit n resembles the dates of a palm.

5 Then I said: 'How beautiful is this tree, and fragrant, and its leaves are fair, and its blooms very delightful in appearance.'

6 Then answered Mikha'el, one of the set-apart and honored angels who was with me, and was their leader.⁸⁸

CHAPTER 25

1 And he said unto me: 'Chanoch, why dost you ask me regarding the fragrance of the tree, and why dost you wish to learn the truth?'

2 Then I answered him saying: 'I wish to know about everything, but especially about this tree.'

3 And he answered saying: 'This high mountain which you hast seen, whose summit is like the throne of Elohim, is His throne, where the Set-apart Great One, YHWH of Glory, the Eternal King, will sit, when He shall come down to visit the earth with goodness.⁸⁹

4 And as for this fragrant tree no mortal is permitted to touch it⁹⁰ till the great judgment, when He shall take vengeance on all and bring (everything) to its consummation for ever.

⁸⁷ 1En. 32:3; 2En. 8:3; Jub. 4:23

⁸⁸ Dan. 10:13

⁸⁹ 1En. 18:8; 45:3; 51:3; Jub. 4:23; Jer. 3:17; Mt. 25:31-32

⁹⁰ Jub. 4:23

5 It shall then be given to the righteous and set-apart. Its fruit shall be for food to the chosen: it shall be transplanted to the set-apart place, to the temple of YHWH, the Eternal King.

6 Then shall they rejoice with joy and be glad,

And into the set-apart place shall they enter;

And its fragrance shall be in their bones,

And they shall live a long life on earth,⁹¹

Such as thy fathers lived:

And in their days shall no sorrow or plague or torment or calamity touch them.'

7 Then blessed I the Elohim of Glory, the Eternal King, who has prepared such things for the righteous, and has created them and promised to give to them.

CHAPTER 26

1 And I went from thence to the middle of the earth, and I saw a blessed place in which there were trees with branches abiding and blooming [of a dismembered tree].

2 And there I saw a set-apart mountain, and coming out from underneath the mountain to the east there was a stream and it flowed towards the south.

3 And I saw towards the east another mountain higher than it, and between them a deep and narrow ravine: in it also ran a stream underneath the mountain.

4 And to the west thereof there was another mountain, lower than the former and of small elevation, and a ravine deep and dry between them: and another deep and dry ravine was at the extremities of the three mountains.

5 And all the ravines were deep and narrow, (being formed) of hard rock, and trees were not planted upon them.

⁹¹ 1En. 5:7; 10:17; 25:6; 96:8; Is. 65:20

6 And I marveled at the mountains, and I marveled at the ravine, yes, I marveled very much.

CHAPTER 27

1 Then said I: 'For what object is this blessed land, which is entirely filled with trees, and this accursed valley between?'

2 Then Uri'el, one of the set-apart angels who was with me, answered and said: 'This accursed valley is for those who are accursed for ever: Here shall all the accursed be gathered together who utter with their lips against YHWH unseemly words and of His glory speak hard things. Here shall they be gathered together, and here shall be their place of judgment.'⁹²

3 In the last days there shall be upon them the spectacle of righteous judgment in the presence of the righteous for ever: here shall the merciful bless YHWH of glory, the Eternal King.

4 In the days of judgment over the former, they shall bless Him for the mercy in accordance with which He has assigned them (their lot).'

5 Then I blessed YHWH of Glory and set forth His glory and lauded Him gloriously.

CHAPTER 28

1 And thence I went towards the east, into the midst of the mountain range of the desert, and I saw the Aravah⁹³ and it was solitary, full of trees and plants.

2 And water gushed forth from above.

⁹² Jude 1:14-15

⁹³ Ethiopic: MEDBARA which is the Ethiopic cognate for מִדְבָּר MIDBAR (Strong's 4057) Greek: ερημον (Strong's Greek #2084) which the LXX uses to translate עֲרָבָה ARAVAH (Strong's 6160). In Ps. 68:4(5) this word is commonly translated "heaven" (as in the KJV). In the Talmud this word is given as the name of the seventh and highest heaven (b.Hag. 12) and in 2Enoch it is the name of the tenth and highest heaven (2En. 20:3; 22:1).

3 Rushing like a copious watercourse [which flowed] towards the north-west it caused clouds and dew to ascend on every side.

CHAPTER 29

1 And thence I went to another place in the desert, and approached to the east of this mountain range.

2 And there I saw aromatic trees exhaling the fragrance of frankincense and myrrh, and the trees also were similar to the almond tree.

CHAPTER 30

1 And beyond these, I went afar to the east, and I saw another place, a valley (full) of water.

2 wherein there were sweet smelling reeds such as the mastic.

3 And on the sides of those valleys I saw fragrant cinnamon. And beyond these I proceeded to the east.

CHAPTER 31

1 And I was shown other mountains, and among them I saw trees, and there flowed forth from them nectar, which is named sarara and galbanum.

2 And beyond these mountains I saw another mountain to the east of the ends of the earth, whereon were aloe-trees, and all the trees were full of stacte, being like the bark of an almond-tree.

3 And when one burnt it, there comes forth from it a fragrant odor; when their bark is ground, they are sweeter than any fragrance.

CHAPTER 32

1 And after these fragrant odors, approximately to the north-east of them,⁹⁴ I was shown the mountains I was shown other mountains⁹⁵ full of choice nard and fragrant trees and cinnamon and pepper.

2 And thence I went to the east of all these mountains, far towards the east of the earth, and passed above the Red Sea and went far from it, and passed over the darkness⁹⁶ from it.

3 And I came to the Pardes⁹⁷ of Righteousness, I was shown from afar off trees more numerous than these trees and two great trees there, very great, beautiful, and glorious, and magnificent, and the tree of knowledge, whose set-apart fruit they eat and know great wisdom. That tree is in height like the fir,⁹⁸

4 and its leaves are like (those of) the Carob tree: and its fruit is like the clusters of the vine, very beautiful: and the fragrance of the tree penetrates afar.

5 Then I said: 'How beautiful is the tree, and how attractive is its look!'

6 Then Rafa'el the set-apart angel, who was with me, answered me and said: 'This is the tree of wisdom, of which your father of old and your mother of old, who were before you, have eaten, and they learned wisdom and their eyes were opened, and they knew that they were naked and they were driven out of the garden.'⁹⁹

⁹⁴ "to the north-east of them" 4QEnoch(a); 4QEnoch(e) has "to the north, on their eastern side"

⁹⁵ The Ethiopic and Greek have "seven mountains"

⁹⁶ "darkness" following the Aramaic. The Greek has "Ζωτιηλ" (ΖΩΤΙΝΛ) Zotiel. The Ethiopic has "The Angel Zotiel". This may have originated as a misreading of ζοπος (ΖΟΠΟΣ) (the Greek word for "darkness").

⁹⁷ Aramaic: פֶּרְדֵּס "Pardes" or "paradise". Greek: παραδεισον "paradise". Ethiopic reads "garden"

⁹⁸ 1En. 24:4; 2En. 8:3; Jub. 4:23

⁹⁹ Gen. 3:6-7

CHAPTER 33

1 And from thence I went to the ends of the earth and saw there great beasts, and each differed from the other; and (I saw) birds also differing in appearance and beauty and voice, the one differing from the other. And to the east of those beasts I saw the ends of the earth whereon the heaven rests,

2 and the gates of the heaven open. And I saw how the stars of heaven come forth,

3 and I counted the gates out of which they proceed, and wrote down all their outlets, of each individual star by itself, according to their number and their names, their courses and their positions, and their times and their months, as Uri'el the watchers who was with me showed me.

4 He showed all things to me and wrote them down for me: also their names he wrote for me, according to the correspondence to their set times.¹⁰⁰

CHAPTER 34

1 And from thence I went towards the north to the ends of the earth, and I was shown great wonders at the ends of the whole earth.

2 And here I saw three gates of heaven open in the heaven: through each of them proceed north winds: when they blow there is cold, hail, frost, snow, dew, and rain.

3 And out of one gate they blow for good: but when they blow through the other two gates, it is with violence and affliction on the earth, and they blow with violence.¹⁰¹

¹⁰⁰ “according to the correspondence to their set times”; Ethiopic: “and their laws and their companies”.

¹⁰¹ Job 38:22; 2Enoch 5:1; 6:1; 40:7

CHAPTER 35

1 And from thence I went towards the west to the ends of the earth, and saw there three gates of the heaven open such as I had seen in the east, the same number of gates, and the same is their number of outlets.

CHAPTER 36

1 And from thence I was taken to the south to the ends of the earth, and saw there three open gates of the heaven: and thence there come the south-wind, the dew, and the rain.

2 And from thence I went to the east to the ends of the heaven, and I was shown the three eastern gates of heaven open and small gates above them.

3 Through each of these small gates pass the stars of heaven and run their course to the west on the path, which is shown to them.

4 And as often as I saw I blessed always YHWH of Glory, and I continued to bless YHWH of Glory who has wrought great and glorious wonders, to show the greatness of His work to the angels and to spirits and to men, that they might praise His work and all His creation: that they might see the work of His might and praise the great work of His hands and bless Him for ever.¹⁰²

¹⁰² Rom. 1:20; 1En. Chapters 2-5

Section 2

Chapters 37-71

The Book of Parables

CHAPTER 37

1 The second vision which he saw, the vision of wisdom -which Chanoch the son of Yared, the son of Mahalal'el, the son of Kenan, the son of Enosh, the son of Shet, the son of Adam, saw.

2 And this is the beginning of the words of wisdom¹⁰³ which I lifted up my voice to speak and say to those which dwell on earth: Hear, you men of old time, and see, you that come after, the words of the Set-apart One which I will speak before YHWH Tzva'ot.¹⁰⁴

3 It were better to declare (them only) to the men of old time, but even from those that come after we will not withhold the beginning of wisdom.

4 Till the present day such wisdom has never been given by YHWH Tzva'ot as I have received according to my insight, according to the good pleasure of YHWH Tzva'ot by whom the lot of eternal life has been given to me.

5 Now three Parables were imparted to me, and I lifted up my voice and recounted them to those that dwell on the earth.¹⁰⁵

CHAPTER 38

1 When the congregation of the righteous shall appear,
And sinners shall be judged for their sins,
And shall be driven from the face of the earth:

¹⁰³ 1Cor. 12:8

¹⁰⁴ Jub. 4:19

¹⁰⁵ 2En. 47:2

2 And when the Righteous One shall appear before the eyes of the righteous,
Whose chosen works hang upon YHWH Tzva'ot,
And light shall appear to the righteous and the chosen who dwell on the earth,
Where then will be the dwelling of the sinners,
And where the resting-place of those who have denied YHWH Tzva'ot?
It had been good for them if they had not been born.¹⁰⁶

3 When the secrets of the righteous shall be revealed and the sinners judged,
And the godless driven from the presence of the righteous and chosen,

4 From that time those that possess the earth shall no longer be powerful and exalted:
And they shall not be able to behold the face of the set-apart,
For YHWH Tzva'ot has caused His light to appear
On the face of the set-apart, righteous, and chosen.¹⁰⁷

5 Then shall the kings and the mighty perish
And be given into the hands of the righteous and set-apart.

6 And thenceforward none shall seek for themselves mercy from YHWH Tzva'ot
For their life is at an end.

¹⁰⁶ 2En. 41:3; Mt. 26:24; Mk. 14:21; Job 3:3; Jer. 20:14

¹⁰⁷ 1En. 39:14; 2En. 69:10-12; 70:2 (only in the longer text); Jasher 3:20; Ex. 34:29-35; Mt. 17:2; Lk. 9:29

CHAPTER 39

1 [And it shall come to pass in those days that chosen and set-apart children will descend from the high heaven, and their seed will become one with the children of men.¹⁰⁸

2 And in those days Chanoch received books of zeal and wrath, and books of disquiet and expulsion.] And mercy shall not be accorded to them, says YHWH Tzva'ot.

3 And in those days a whirlwind carried me off from the earth,¹⁰⁹
And set me down at the end of the heavens.

4 And there I saw another vision, the dwelling-places of the set-apart,
And the resting-places of the righteous.

5 Here mine eyes saw their dwellings with His righteous angels,
And their resting-places with the set-apart.

And they petitioned and interceded and prayed for the children of men,
And righteousness flowed before them as water,
And mercy like dew upon the earth:

Thus it is among them for ever and ever.

6a And in that place mine eyes saw the Chosen One of righteousness
and of faith,

7a And I saw his dwelling-place under the wings of YHWH Tzva'ot.

6b And righteousness shall prevail in his days,

And the righteous and chosen shall be without number before Him for
ever and ever.

7b And all the righteous and chosen before Him shall be strong as
fiery lights,¹¹⁰

And their mouth shall be full of blessing,

And their lips extol the name of YHWH Tzva'ot,

¹⁰⁸ Rev. 9:1-11; 2Pt. 2:4; Jude 1:6

¹⁰⁹ 1En. 52:1; 70:1-4; Jasher 3:36; 2Kn. 2:11; Heb. 11:5; Sirach 44:16; Gen. 5:24

¹¹⁰ Ps. 17:8; 36:7; 63:7; 91:4; Mt. 23:37; Lk. 13:34

And righteousness before Him shall never fail,

[And uprightness shall never fail before Him.]

8 There I wished to dwell,

And my spirit longed for that dwelling-place:

And there heretofore has been my portion,

For so has it been established concerning me before YHWH Tzva'ot.

9 In those days I praised and extolled the name of YHWH Tzva'ot with blessings and praises, because He has destined me for blessing and glory according to the good pleasure of YHWH Tzva'ot.

10 For a long time my eyes regarded that place, and I blessed Him and praised Him, saying: 'Blessed is He, and may He be blessed from the beginning and for evermore.

11 And before Him there is no ceasing. He knows before the world was created what is for ever and what will be from generation unto generation.¹¹¹

12 Those who sleep not bless You: they stand before Your glory and bless, praise, and extol, saying: "Set-apart, set-apart, set-apart, is YHWH Tzva'ot: He filleth the earth with spirits."¹¹²

13 And here my eyes saw all those who sleep not: they stand before Him and bless and say:

14 'Blessed be You, and blessed be the name of YHWH for ever and ever.' And my face was changed,¹¹³ for I could no longer behold.

CHAPTER 40

1 And after that I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before YHWH Tzva'ot.

¹¹¹ Is. 46:10

¹¹² 2En. 21:1; Is. 6:3; Rev. 4:8

¹¹³ 1En. 38:4; Jasher 3:20; Ex. 34:29-35; Mt. 17:2; Lk. 9:29

2 And on the four sides of YHWH Tzva'ot I saw four presences, different from those that sleep not, and I learnt their names: for the angel that went with me made known to me their names, and showed me all the hidden things.

3 And I heard the voices of those four presences as they uttered praises before YHWH of glory.

4 The first voice blesses YHWH Tzva'ot for ever and ever.

5 And the second voice I heard blessing the Chosen One and the chosen ones who hang upon YHWH Tzva'ot.

6 And the third voice I heard pray and intercede for those who dwell on the earth and supplicate in the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

7 And I heard the fourth voice fending off the Satans and forbidding them to come before YHWH of Spirits to accuse them who dwell on the earth.

8 After that I asked the angel of shalom who went with me, who showed me everything that is hidden: 'Who are these four presences which I have seen and whose words I have heard and written down?'

9 And he said to me: 'This first is Mikha'el, the merciful and long-suffering: and the second, who is set over all the diseases and all the wounds of the children of men, is Rafa'el: and the third, who is set over all the powers, is Gavri'el: and the fourth, who is set over the repentance unto hope of those who inherit eternal life, is named P'nuel.'¹¹⁴

10 And these are the four angels of YHWH Tzva'ot and the four voices I heard in those days.

CHAPTER 41

1 And after that I saw all the secrets of the heavens, and how the kingdom is divided, and how the actions of men are weighed in the balance.

¹¹⁴ Ethiopic: "Phanuel" the Hebrew was certainly פְּנוּאֵל "P'nuel"(Strong's 6439)

2 And there I saw the mansions¹¹⁵ of the chosen and the mansions of the set-apart, and mine eyes saw there all the sinners being driven from thence which deny the name of YHWH Tzva'ot, and being dragged off: and they could not abide because of the punishment which proceeds from YHWH Tzva'ot.

3 And there mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightning and of the thunder, and the secrets of the winds, how they are divided to blow over the earth, and the secrets of the clouds and dew, and there I saw from whence they proceed in that place and from whence they saturate the dusty earth.

4 And there I saw closed chambers out of which the winds are divided, the chamber of the hail¹¹⁶ and winds, the chamber of the mist, and of the clouds, and the cloud thereof hovers over the earth from the beginning of the world.

5 And I saw the chambers of the sun and moon, whence they proceed and whither they come again, and their glorious return, and how one is superior to the other, and their stately orbit, and how they do not leave their orbit, and they add nothing to their orbit and they take nothing from it, and they keep faith with each other, in accordance with the oath by which they are bound together.

6 And first the sun goes forth and traverses his path according to the commandment of YHWH Tzva'ot, and mighty is His name for ever and ever.¹¹⁷

7 And after that I saw the hidden and the visible path of the moon, and she accomplishes the course of her path in that place by day and by night-the one holding a position opposite to the other before YHWH Tzva'ot.

And they give thanks and praise and rest not;

For unto them is their thanksgiving rest.

8 For the sun changes oft for a blessing or a curse,

And the course of the path of the moon is light to the righteous

¹¹⁵ Jn. 14:2

¹¹⁶ Job 38:22

¹¹⁷ Ps. 19:4-6

And darkness to the sinners in the name of YHWH,
Who made a separation between the light and the darkness,¹¹⁸
And divided the spirits of men,
And strengthened the spirits of the righteous,
In the name of His righteousness.

9 For no angel hinders and no power is able to hinder; for He appoints
a judge for them all and He judges them all before Him.

CHAPTER 42

1 Wisdom found no place where she¹¹⁹ might dwell;
Then a dwelling-place was assigned her in the heavens.¹²⁰
2 Wisdom went forth to make her dwelling among the children of
men,
And found no dwelling-place:
Wisdom returned to her place,
And took her seat among the angels.
3 And unrighteousness went forth from her chambers:
Whom she sought not she found,
And dwelt with them,¹²¹
As rain in a desert
And dew on a thirsty land.

¹¹⁸ Gen. 1:14-19

¹¹⁹ Prov. 2:20; Prov. 8

¹²⁰ 1Cor. 1:24; 1En. 48:7

¹²¹ 1En. 45:4-5

CHAPTER 43

1 And I saw other lightnings and the stars of heaven, and I saw how He called them all by their names and they hearkened unto Him.

2 And I saw how they are weighed in a righteous balance according to their proportions of light: (I saw) the width of their spaces and the day of their appearing, and how their revolution produces lightning: and (I saw) their revolution according to the number of the angels, and (how) they keep faith with each other.

3 And I asked the angel who went with me who showed me what was hidden: 'What are these?'

4 And he said to me: 'The YHWH Tzva'ot has showed you their parabolic meaning (lit. 'their parable'): these are the names of the set-apart who dwell on the earth and believe in the name of YHWH Tzva'ot for ever and ever.'

CHAPTER 44

Also another phenomenon I saw in regard to the lightnings: how some of the stars arise and become lightnings and cannot part with their new form.¹²²

CHAPTER 45

1 And this is the second Parable concerning those who deny the name of the dwelling of the set-apart ones and YHWH Tzva'ot.

2 And into the heaven they shall not ascend,

And on the earth they shall not come:

Such shall be the lot of the sinners

Who have denied the name of YHWH Tzva'ot,

Who are thus preserved for the day of suffering and tribulation?

¹²² Luke 10:18; Rev. 12:4, 9

3 On that day Mine Chosen One shall sit on the throne of glory¹²³
And shall try their works,
And their places of rest shall be innumerable.
And their souls shall grow strong within them when they see Mine
Chosen Ones,
And those who have called upon My glorious name:
4 Then will I cause Mine Chosen One to dwell among them.
And I will transform the heaven and make it an eternal blessing and
light¹²⁴
5 And I will transform the earth and make it a blessing:
And I will cause Mine chosen ones to dwell upon it:
But the sinners and evil-doers shall not set foot thereon.
6 For I have provided and satisfied with shalom My righteous ones
And have caused them to dwell before Me:
But for the sinners there is judgment impending with Me,
So that I shall destroy them from the face of the earth.¹²⁵

CHAPTER 46

1 And there I saw One who had a Ancient of Days,
And His head was white like wool,¹²⁶
And with Him was another being whose countenance had the
appearance of a man,
And his face was full of graciousness, like one of the set-apart angels.

¹²³ 1En. 18:8; 25:3; 51:3; Jer. 3:17; Mt. 25:31-32

¹²⁴ Rev. 21:1f; Is. 65:17; 66:22; 2Pt. 3:13

¹²⁵ Rev. 20:11-15

¹²⁶ 1En. 71:10; Dan. 7:9; Rev. 1:14

2 And I asked the angel who went with me and showed me all the hidden things, concerning that Son of Man, who he was, and whence he was, (and) why he went with the Ancient of Days?

3 And he answered and said unto me:

This is the son of Man who has righteousness,
With whom dwelled righteousness,
And who revealed all the treasures of that which is hidden,
Because YHWH Tzva'ot has chosen him,
And whose lot has the pre-eminence before YHWH Tzva'ot in uprightness for ever.

4 And this Son of Man whom you hast seen
Shall raise up the kings and the mighty from their seats,
[And the strong from their thrones]
And shall loosen the reins of the strong,
And break the teeth of the sinners.

5 [And he shall put down the kings from their thrones and kingdoms]
Because they do not extol and praise Him,
Nor humbly acknowledge whence the kingdom was bestowed upon them.

6 And he shall put down the countenance of the strong,
And shall fill them with shame.
And darkness shall be their dwelling,
And worms shall be their bed,¹²⁷
And they shall have no hope of rising from their beds,
Because they do not extol the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

7 And these are they who judge the stars of heaven,¹²⁸
[And raise their hands against the Most High],
And tread upon the earth and dwell upon it.

¹²⁷ Is. 14:11

¹²⁸ 1Cor. 6:3; 1En. 14:3

And all their deeds manifest unrighteousness,
And their power rests upon their riches,
And their faith is in the gods, which they have made with their hands,
And they deny the name of YHWH Tzva'ot,
8 And they persecute the houses of His congregations,
And the faithful who hang upon the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 47

1 And in those days shall have ascended the prayer of the righteous,
And the blood of the righteous from the earth before YHWH
Tzva'ot.¹²⁹
2 In those days the set-apart ones who dwell above in the heavens
Shall unite with one voice
And supplicate and pray [and praise,]
And give thanks and bless the name of YHWH Tzva'ot
On behalf of the blood of the righteous which has been shed,
And that the prayer of the righteous may not be in vain before YHWH
Tzva'ot,
That judgment may be done unto them,
And that they may not have to suffer for ever.
3 In those days I saw the Ancient of Days when He seated himself
upon the throne of His glory,
And the books of the living were opened before Him:¹³⁰
And all His host which is in heaven above and His counselors stood
before Him,
4 And the hearts of the set-apart were filled with joy;
Because the number of the righteous had been offered,

¹²⁹ 1En. 22:7; Gen. 4:10; Mt. 23:35; Rev. 6:9-10; m.San. 4:5

¹³⁰ 1En. 60:2; 2En. 53:2; Dan. 7:9-10; Reav. 20:12

And the prayer of the righteous had been heard,
And the blood of the righteous been required before YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 48

1 And in that place I saw the fountain of righteousness
Which was inexhaustible:
And around it were many fountains of wisdom:
And all the thirsty drank of them,
And were filled with wisdom,
And their dwellings were with the righteous and set-apart and chosen.
2 And at that hour that Son of Man was named In the presence of
YHWH Tzva'ot,
And his name before the Ancient of Days.¹³¹
3 Yea, before the sun and the signs were created,
Before the stars of the heaven were made,
His name was named before YHWH Tzva'ot.
4 He shall be a staff to the righteous whereon to stay themselves and
not fall,
And he shall be the light of the Gentiles,¹³²
And the hope of those who are troubled of heart.
5 All who dwell on earth shall fall down and worship before him,
And will praise and bless and celebrate with song YHWH Tzva'ot.
6 And for this reason has he been chosen and hidden¹³³ before Him,
Before the creation of the world and for evermore.¹³⁴

¹³¹ 1En. 69:27; Rev. 2:17; 19:12; Mt. 1:21; Lk. 1:31; Jn. 17:11

¹³² Is. 42:6; 49:6; Lk. 3:32

¹³³ 1En. 62:6

¹³⁴ Col. 1:16; Mic. 5:1-2; Jn. 1:1f

7 And the wisdom¹³⁵ of YHWH Tzva'ot has revealed him to the set-apart and righteous;
For he has preserved the lot of the righteous,
Because they have hated and despised this world of unrighteousness,
And have hated all its works and ways in the name of YHWH Tzva'ot:
For in his name they are saved,¹³⁶
And according to his good pleasure has it been in regard to their life.
8 In these days downcast in countenance shall the kings of the earth
have become,
And the strong who possess the land because of the works of their
hands,
For on the day of their anguish and affliction they shall not (be able to)
save themselves.
9 And I will give them over into the hands of My chosen:
As straw in the fire so shall they burn before the face of the set-apart:
As lead in the water shall they sink before the face of the righteous,
And no trace of them shall any more be found.
10 And on the day of their affliction there shall be rest on the earth,
And before them they shall fall and not rise again:
And there shall be no one to take them with his hands and raise them:
For they have denied YHWH Tzva'ot and His Anointed.
The name of YHWH Tzva'ot be blessed.

CHAPTER 49

1 For wisdom is poured out like water,
And glory failed not before him for evermore.
2 For he is mighty in all the secrets of righteousness,

¹³⁵ 1En. 42:1-3; Prov. 1:20f; Prov. 8; 1Cor. 1:24

¹³⁶ 1En. 50:3; Joel 2:32 (3:5); Acts 2:21, 36; 4:12; 22:16; Rom. 10:9, 13

And unrighteousness shall disappear as a shadow,
And have no continuance;
Because the Chosen One stands before YHWH Tzva'ot,
And his glory is for ever and ever,
And his might unto all generations.
3 And in him dwells the spirit of wisdom,
And the spirit which gives insight,
And the spirit of understanding and of might,¹³⁷
And the spirit of those who have fallen asleep in righteousness.¹³⁸
4 And he shall judge the secret things,
And none shall be able to utter a lying word before him;
For he is the Chosen One before YHWH Tzva'ot according to His
good pleasure.

CHAPTER 50

1 And in those days a change shall take place for the set-apart and
chosen,
And the light of days shall abide upon them,
And glory and honor shall turn to the set-apart,
2 On the day of affliction on which evil shall have been treasured up
against the sinners.
And the righteous shall be victorious in the name of YHWH Tzva'ot:
And He will cause the others to witness (this)
That they may repent
And forgo the works of their hands.
3 They shall have no honor through the name of YHWH Tzva'ot,
Yet through His name shall they be saved,¹³⁹

¹³⁷ Is. 11:1-2

¹³⁸ 1Thes. 4:14

And YHWH Tzva'ot will have compassion on them,

For His compassion is great.

4 And He is righteous also in His judgment,¹⁴⁰

And in the presence of His glory unrighteousness also shall not maintain itself:

At His judgment the unrepentant shall perish before Him.

5 And from henceforth I will have no mercy on them, says YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 51

1 And in those days shall the earth also give back that, which has been entrusted to it,

And Sheol also shall give back that, which it has received,

And hell shall give back that which it owes.¹⁴¹

5a For in those days the Chosen One shall arise,

2 And he shall choose the righteous and set-apart from among them:

For the day has drawn near that they should be saved.

3 And the Chosen One shall in those days sit on My throne,¹⁴²

And his mouth shall pour forth all the secrets of wisdom and counsel:

For YHWH Tzva'ot has given (them) to him and has glorified him.¹⁴³

4 And in those days shall the mountains leap like rams,

And the hills also shall skip like lambs¹⁴⁴ satisfied with milk,

And the faces of [all] the angels in heaven shall be lighted up with joy.

¹³⁹ 1En. 50:3; Joel 2:32 (3:5); Acts 2:21, 36; 4:12; 22:16; Rom. 10:9, 13

¹⁴⁰ Ps. 19:9

¹⁴¹ Rev. 20:13 nearly quotes this verse.

¹⁴² 1En. 18:8; 25:3; 45:3; Jer. 3:17; Mt. 25:31-32

¹⁴³ Jn. 17:2, 5

¹⁴⁴ Ps. 114:4

5b And the earth shall rejoice,
c And the righteous shall dwell upon it,
d And the chosen shall walk thereon.

CHAPTER 52

1 And after those days in that place where I had seen all the visions of that which is hidden for I had been carried off in a whirlwind¹⁴⁵ and they had borne me towards the west-There mine eyes saw all the secret things of heaven that shall be,

2 a mountain of iron, and a mountain of copper, and a mountain of silver, and a mountain of gold, and a mountain of soft metal, and a mountain of lead.

3 And I asked the angel who went with me, saying, 'What things are these which I have seen in secret?'

4 And he said unto me: 'All these things which you hast seen shall serve the dominion of His Anointed that he may be potent and mighty on the earth.'

5 And that angel of shalom answered, saying unto me: 'Wait a little, and there shall be revealed unto you all the secret things, which surround YHWH Tzva'ot.

6 And these mountains, which your eyes have seen,

The mountain of iron, and the mountain of copper, and the mountain of silver,

And the mountain of gold, and the mountain of soft metal, and the mountain of lead,

All these shall be in the presence of the Chosen One

As wax: before the fire,¹⁴⁶

And like the water which streams down from above [upon those mountains],

¹⁴⁵ 1En. 39:3; 70:1-4; Jasher 3:36; 2Kn. 2:11; Heb. 11:5; Sirach 44:16; Gen. 5:24

¹⁴⁶ 1En. 1:6; Mic. 1:4

And they shall become powerless before his feet.

7 And it shall come to pass in those days that none shall be saved,
Either by gold or by silver,¹⁴⁷

And none be able to escape.

8 And there shall be no iron for war,

Nor shall one clothe oneself with a breastplate.

Bronze shall be of no service,

And tin [shall be of no service and] shall not be esteemed,

And lead shall not be desired.

9 And all these things shall be [denied and] destroyed from the surface
of the earth,

When the Chosen One shall appear before the face of YHWH
Tzva'ot.'

CHAPTER 53

1 There mine eyes saw a deep valley with open mouths, and all who
dwell on the earth and sea and islands shall bring to him gifts and
presents and tokens of homage, but that deep valley shall not become
full.¹⁴⁸

2 And their hands commit lawless deeds,

And the sinners devour all whom they lawlessly oppress:

Yet the sinners shall be destroyed before the face of YHWH Tzva'ot,

And they shall be banished from off the face of His earth,

And they shall perish for ever and ever.

3 For I saw all the angels of punishment abiding (there) and preparing
all the instruments of Satan.¹⁴⁹

¹⁴⁷ Zeph. 1:18; Ezek. 7:19

¹⁴⁸ Prov. 27:20; 30:15-16; Is. 5:14; Hab. 2:5

¹⁴⁹ 1En. 54:6; Rev. 15:1-8

4 And I asked the angel of shalom who went with me: ' For whom are they preparing these Instruments?'

5 And he said unto me: ' They prepare these for the kings and the mighty of this earth, that they may thereby be destroyed.

6 And after this the Righteous and Chosen One shall cause the house of his congregation to appear: henceforth they shall be no more hindered in the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

7 And these mountains shall not stand as the earth before his righteousness,

But the hills shall be as a fountain of water,

And the righteous shall have rest from the oppression of sinners.'

CHAPTER 54

1 And I looked and turned to another part of the earth, and saw there a deep valley with burning fire.¹⁵⁰

2 And they brought the kings and the mighty, and began to cast them into this deep valley.

3 And there my eyes saw how they made these their instruments, iron chains of immeasurable weight.

4 And I asked the angel of shalom who went with me, saying: ' For whom are these chains being prepared? '

5 And he said unto me: ' These are being prepared for the hosts of Azazel, so that they may take them and cast them into the abyss of complete condemnation, and they shall cover their jaws with rough stones as YHWH Tzva'ot commanded.¹⁵¹

6 And Mikha'el, and Gavri'el, and Rafa'el, and P'nuel¹⁵² shall take hold of them on that great day, and cast them on that day into the burning furnace, that YHWH Tzva'ot may take vengeance on them for

¹⁵⁰ i.e. the valley of Gey Hinnom 1En. 53:1; Rev. 20:15; 21:8

¹⁵¹ 1En. 10:4-6; Rev. 20:10; 2Pt. 2:4; Jude 1:6

¹⁵² See note to 40:9

their unrighteousness in becoming subject to Satan and leading astray those who dwell on the earth.¹⁵³

7 And in those days shall punishment come from YHWH Tzva'ot, and he will open all the chambers of waters, which are above the heavens, and of the fountains, which are beneath the earth¹⁵⁴

8 And all the waters shall be joined with the waters: that which is above the heavens is the masculine, and the water, which is beneath the earth, is the feminine.

9 And they shall destroy all who dwell on the earth and those who dwell under the ends of the heaven.¹⁵⁵

10 And when they have recognized their unrighteousness, which they have wrought on the earth, then by these shall they perish.

CHAPTER 55

1 And after that the Ancient of Days repented and said: ' In vain have I destroyed all who dwell on the earth.'¹⁵⁶

2 And He swore by His great name: ' Henceforth I will not do so to all who dwell on the earth, and I will set a sign in the heaven: and this shall be a pledge of good faith between Me and them for ever, so long as heaven is above the earth. And this is in accordance with My command.¹⁵⁷

3 When I have desired to take hold of them by the hand of the angels on the day of tribulation and pain because of this, I will cause My chastisement and My wrath to abide upon them, says Elohim, YHWH Tzva'ot.

4 You mighty kings who dwell on the earth, you shall have to behold My Chosen One, how he sits on the throne of glory¹⁵⁸ and judges

¹⁵³ Rev. 19:20; 20:10, 14-15

¹⁵⁴ Gen. 7:11

¹⁵⁵ Mt. 24:39

¹⁵⁶ Ex. 32:14; 1Sam. 15:35; 2Sam. 24:16; Jonah 3:10; Gen. 9:12-17; 1En. 10:22

¹⁵⁷ Gen. 22:16; Jer. 22:5; 44:26; 49:13; 51:14; Amos 4:2; 6:8

¹⁵⁸ see note to 51:3

Azazel, and all his associates, and all his hosts in the name of YHWH
Tzva'ot.'

CHAPTER 56

1 And I saw there the hosts of the angels of punishment going, and
they held scourges and chains of iron and bronze.

2 And I asked the angel of shalom who went with me, saying: ' To
whom are these who hold the scourges going? '

3 And he said unto me: ' To their chosen and beloved ones, that they
may be cast into the chasm of the abyss of the valley.

4 And then that valley shall be filled with their chosen and beloved,
And the days of their lives shall be at an end,
And the days of their leading astray shall not thenceforward be
reckoned.

5 And in those days the angels shall return
And hurl themselves to the east upon the Parthians and Medes:
They shall stir up the kings, so that a spirit of unrest shall come upon
them,
And they shall rouse them from their thrones,
That they may break forth as lions from their lairs,
And as hungry wolves among their flocks.

6 And they shall go up and tread under foot the land of His chosen
ones

[And the land of His chosen ones shall be before them a threshing-
floor and a highway:]

7 But the city of my righteous shall be a hindrance to their horses.
And they shall begin to fight among themselves,
And their right hand shall be strong against themselves,
And a man shall not know his brother,

Nor a son his father or his mother,¹⁵⁹
Till there be no number of the corpses through their slaughter,
And their punishment be not in vain.
8 In those days Sheol shall open its jaws,
And they shall be swallowed up therein
And their destruction shall be at an end;
Sheol shall devour the sinners in the presence of the chosen.'

CHAPTER 57

1 And it came to pass after this that I saw another host of wagons, and men riding thereon, and coming on the winds from the east, and from the west to the south.
2 And the noise of their wagons was heard, and when this turmoil took place the set-apart ones from heaven remarked it, and the pillars of the earth were moved from their place, and the sound thereof was heard from the one end of heaven to the other, in one day.
3 And they shall all fall down and worship YHWH Tzva'ot. And this is the end of the second Parable.

CHAPTER 58

1 And I began to speak the third Parable concerning the righteous and chosen.
2 Blessed are you, you righteous and chosen,
For glorious shall be your lot.
3 And the righteous shall be in the light of the sun.
And the chosen in the light of eternal life:
The days of their life shall be unending,¹⁶⁰

¹⁵⁹ Mt. 10:34-36; Mic. 7:6

¹⁶⁰ Zech. 8:4; Is. 65:20

And the days of the set-apart without number.

4 And they shall seek the light and find righteousness with YHWH Tzva'ot:

There shall be shalom to the righteous in the name of the Eternal YHWH.

5 And after this it shall be said to the set-apart in heaven

That they should seek out the secrets of righteousness, the heritage of faith:

For it has become bright as the sun upon earth,

And the darkness is past.

6 And there shall be a light that never ended,

And to a limit (lit. 'number') of days they shall not come,¹⁶¹

For the darkness shall first have been destroyed,

[And the light established before YHWH Tzva'ot]

And the light of uprightness established for ever before YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 59

1 [In those days mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightnings, and of the lights, and the judgments they execute (lit. 'their judgment'): and they lighten for a blessing or a curse as YHWH Tzva'ot wills.

2 And there I saw the secrets of the thunder, and how when it resounds above in the heaven, the sound thereof is heard, and he caused me to see the judgments executed on the earth, whether they be for well-being and blessing, or for a curse according to the word of YHWH Tzva'ot.

3 And after that all the secrets of the lights and lightnings were shown to me, and they lighten for blessing and for satisfying.]

¹⁶¹ Rev. 22:5; 21:23; Zech. 14:7; Is. 60:19

CHAPTER 60

1 In the year 500, in the seventh month, on the fourteenth day of the month in the life of Chanoch. In that Parable I saw how a mighty quaking made the heaven of heavens to quake, and the host of the Most High, and the angels, a thousand thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, were disquieted with a great disquiet.

2 And the Ancient of Days¹⁶² sat on the throne of His glory, and the angels and the righteous stood around Him.

3 And a great trembling seized me,
And fear took hold of me,
And my loins gave way,
And dissolved were my reins,
And I fell upon my face.

4 And Mikha'el sent another angel from among the set-apart ones and he raised me up, and when he had raised me up my spirit returned; for I had not been able to endure the look of this host, and the commotion and the quaking of the heaven.

5 And Mikha'el said unto me: 'Why art you disquieted with such a vision? Until this day lasted the day of His mercy; and He has been merciful and long-suffering towards those who dwell on the earth.

6 And when the day, and the power, and the punishment, and the judgment come, which YHWH Tzva'ot has prepared for those who worship not the righteous Torah, and for those who deny the righteous judgment, and for those who take His name in vain-that day is prepared, for the chosen a covenant, but for sinners an inquisition.

7 And on that day were two monsters parted, a female monster named Leviathan,¹⁶³ to dwell in the abysses of the ocean over the fountains of the waters.

¹⁶² 1En. 47:3; Dan. 7:9-10; Rev. 20:12

¹⁶³ Job 41:1-34; Ps. 74:14; 104:25-26; Is. 27:1

8 But the male is named Behemoth,¹⁶⁴ who occupied with his breast a waste wilderness named Duidain, on the east of the garden¹⁶⁵ where the chosen and righteous dwell, where my grandfather was taken up, the seventh from Adam,¹⁶⁶ the first man whom YHWH Tzva'ot created.

9 And I besought the other angel that he should show me the might of those monsters, how they were parted on one day and cast, the one into the abyesses of the sea, and the other unto the dry land of the wilderness.

10 And he said to me: ' You son of man, herein you do seek to know what is hidden.'

11 And the other angel who went with me and showed me what was hidden told me what is first and last¹⁶⁷ in the heaven in the height, and beneath the earth in the depth, and at the ends of the heaven, and on the foundation of the heaven.

12 And the chambers of the winds, and how the winds are divided, and how they are weighed, and (how) the gates of the winds are reckoned, each according to the power of the wind, and the power of the lights of the moon, and according to the power that is fitting: and the divisions of the stars according to their names,¹⁶⁸ and how all the divisions are divided.

13 And the thunders according to the places where they fall, and all the divisions that are made among the lightnings that it may lighten, and their host that they may at once obey.

14 For the thunder has places of rest (which) are assigned (to it) while it is waiting for its peal; and the thunder and lightning are inseparable, and although not one and undivided, they both go together through the spirit and separate not.

15 For when the lightning lightens, the thunder utters its voice, and the spirit enforces a pause during the peal, and divides equally between

¹⁶⁴ Job 40:15-24

¹⁶⁵ Gen. 4:16

¹⁶⁶ Jude 1:14

¹⁶⁷ Is. 44:6; 48:12; Rev. 1:17

¹⁶⁸ 2En. 30:4

them; for the treasury of their peals is like the sand, and each one of them as it peals is held in with a bridle, and turned back by the power of the spirit, and pushed forward according to the many quarters of the earth.

16 And the spirit of the sea is masculine and strong, and according to the might of his strength he draws it back with a rein, and in like manner it is driven forward and disperses amid all the mountains of the earth.

17 And the spirit of the hoar-frost is his own angel, and the spirit of the hail is a good angel.¹⁶⁹

18 And the spirit of the snow has forsaken his chambers on account of his strength -There is a special spirit therein, and that which ascends from it is like smoke, and its name is frost.

19 And the spirit of the mist is not united with them in their chambers, but it has a special chamber; for its course is glorious both in light and in darkness, and in winter and in summer, and in its chamber is an angel.

20 And the spirit of the dew has its dwelling at the ends of the heaven, and is connected with the chambers of the rain, and its course is in winter and summer: and its clouds and the clouds of the mist are connected, and the one gives to the other.

21 And when the spirit of the rain goes forth from its chamber, the angels come and open the chamber and lead it out, and when it is diffused over the whole earth it unites with the water on the earth.

22 And when so ever it unites with the water on the earth . . . For the waters are for those who dwell on the earth; for they are nourishment for the earth from the Most High who is in heaven: therefore there is a measure for the rain, and the angels take it in charge.

23 And these things I saw towards the Garden of the Righteous.

24 And the angel of shalom who was with me said to me: ' These two monsters, prepared conformably to the greatness of Elohim, shall feed...

25 When the punishment of YHWH Tzva'ot shall rest upon them, it shall rest in order that the punishment of YHWH Tzva'ot may not

¹⁶⁹ Job 38:22; 2En. 5:1; 40:7

come, in vain, and it shall slay the children with their mothers and the children with their fathers. Afterwards the judgment shall take place according to His mercy and His patience.¹⁷⁰

CHAPTER 61

1 And I saw in those days how long cords were given to those angels, and they took to themselves wings and flew, and they went towards the north.

2 And I asked the angel, saying unto him: 'Why have those (angels) taken these cords and gone off?' And he said unto me: ' They have gone to measure.'

3 And the angel who went with me said unto me:

'These shall bring the measures of the righteous,¹⁷¹

And the ropes of the righteous to the righteous,

That they may stay themselves on the name of YHWH Tzva'ot for ever and ever.

4 The chosen shall begin to dwell with the chosen,

And those are the measures, which shall be given to faith

And which shall strengthen righteousness.

5 And these measures shall reveal all the secrets of the depths of the earth,

And those who have been destroyed by the desert,

And those who have been devoured by the beasts,

And those who have been devoured by the fish of the sea,

That they may return and stay themselves

On the day of the Chosen One;

For none shall be destroyed before YHWH Tzva'ot,

And none can be destroyed.

¹⁷⁰ 2Pt. 3:15

¹⁷¹ Rev. 11:1-2; Ezek. 40:3-42:20; Zech. 2:1-5

6 And all who dwell above in the heaven received a command and power and one voice and one light like unto fire.

7 And that One (with) their first words they blessed,

And extolled and lauded with wisdom,

And they were wise in utterance and in the spirit of life.¹⁷²

8 And YHWH Tzva'ot placed the Chosen one on the throne of glory.

And he shall judge all the works of the set-apart above in the heaven,

And in the balance shall their deeds be weighed

9 And when he shall lift up his countenance

To judge their secret ways according to the word of the name of YHWH Tzva'ot,

And their path according to the way of the righteous judgment of YHWH Tzva'ot,

Then shall they all with one voice speak and bless,

And glorify and extol and sanctify the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

10 And He will summon all the host of the heavens, and all the set-

apart ones above, and the host of Elohim, the Cherubim,¹⁷³ Seraphim¹⁷⁴ and Ofannim,¹⁷⁵ and all the angels of power,¹⁷⁶ and all the angels of principalities, and the Chosen One, and the other powers on the earth (and) over the water

11 On that day shall raise one voice, and bless and glorify and exalt in the spirit of faith, and in the spirit of wisdom, and in the spirit of patience, and in the spirit of mercy, and in the spirit of judgment and of shalom, and in the spirit of goodness, and shall all say with one voice: " Blessed is He, and may the name of YHWH Tzva'ot be blessed for ever and ever."

12 All who sleep not above in heaven shall bless Him:

¹⁷² Jn. 1:1-3, 14; 1En. 14:24; 2En. 22:7

¹⁷³ Strong's 3742

¹⁷⁴ Strong's 8314

¹⁷⁵ Strong's 212 (translated "wheels" in the KJV Ezek. 1)

¹⁷⁶ Ezek. 1:15-17; Jer. 23:19-20

All the set-apart ones who are in heaven shall bless Him,
And all the chosen who dwell in the garden of life:
And every spirit of light who is able to bless, and glorify, and extol,
and hallow Your blessed name,
And all flesh shall beyond measure glorify and bless Your name for
ever and ever.
13 For great is the mercy of YHWH Tzva'ot, and He is long-suffering,
And all His works and all that He has created He has revealed to the
righteous and chosen
In the name of YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 62

1 And thus YHWH commanded the kings and the mighty and the
exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, and said:
'Open your eyes and lift up your horns if you are able to recognize the
Chosen One.'
2 And YHWH Tzva'ot seated him on the throne of His glory,
And the spirit of righteousness was poured out upon him,
And the word of his mouth slays all the sinners,
And all the unrighteous are destroyed from before his face.
3 And there shall stand up in that day all the kings and the mighty,
And the exalted and those who hold the earth,
And they shall see and recognize How he sits on the throne of his
glory,
And righteousness is judged before him,
And no lying word is spoken before him.
4 Then shall pain come upon them as on a woman in travail,¹⁷⁷
[And she has pain in bringing forth]

¹⁷⁷ Is. 66:7

When her child enters the mouth of the womb,
 And she has pain in bringing forth.
 And one portion of them shall look on the other,
 And they shall be terrified,
 And they shall be downcast of countenance,
 And pain shall seize them,
 When they see that Son of Man Sitting on the throne of his glory.
 6 And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth shall
 bless and glorify and extol him who rules over all, who was hidden.¹⁷⁸
 7 For from the beginning the Son of Man was hidden,
 And the Most High preserved him in the presence of His might,
 And revealed him to the chosen.
 8 And the congregation of the chosen and set-apart shall be sown,
 And all the chosen shall stand before him on that day.
 9 And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule
 the earth
 Shall fall down before him on their faces,
 And worship and set their hope upon that Son of Man,
 And petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands.¹⁷⁹
 10 Nevertheless that YHWH Tzva'ot will so press them
 That they shall hastily go forth from His presence,
 And their faces shall be filled with shame,
 And the darkness grows deeper on their faces.
 11 And He will deliver them to the angels for punishment,
 To execute vengeance on them because they have oppressed His
 children and His chosen
 12 And they shall be a spectacle for the righteous and for His chosen:

¹⁷⁸ 1En. 48:6; Col. 1:26-27; Rom. 16:25-26; Eph. 3:3-4; Eccl. 1:9-10; 3:14-15; Rev. 13:8; Mal. 3:6; Heb. 13:8

¹⁷⁹ Mt. 7:21-23; 25:41-46

They shall rejoice over them,
Because the wrath of YHWH Tzva'ot rests upon them,
And His sword is drunk with their blood.
13 And the righteous and chosen shall be saved on that day,
And they shall never thenceforward see the face of the sinners and
unrighteous.
14 And YHWH Tzva'ot will abide over them,
And with that Son of Man shall they eat
And lie down and rise up for ever and ever.
15 And the righteous and chosen shall have risen from the earth,
And ceased to be of downcast countenance.¹⁸⁰
And they shall have been clothed with garments of glory,
16 And these shall be the garments of life from YHWH Tzva'ot.¹⁸¹
And your garments shall not grow old,
Nor your glory pass away before YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 63

1 In those days shall the mighty and the kings who possess the earth
implore (Him) to grant them a little respite from His angels of
punishment to whom they were delivered, that they might fall down
and worship before YHWH Tzva'ot, and confess their sins before
Him.¹⁸²

2 And they shall bless and glorify YHWH Tzva'ot, and say:
'Blessed is YHWH Tzva'ot and YHWH of kings,
And YHWH of the mighty and YHWH of the rich,
And YHWH of glory and YHWH of wisdom,

¹⁸⁰ Is. 65:17-19

¹⁸¹ Zech. 3:4-5

¹⁸² Rev. 6:14; Mt. 19:24-25; 1En. 94:8

3 And splendid in every secret thing is Your power from generation to generation,

And Your glory for ever and ever:

Deep are all Your secrets and innumerable,¹⁸³

And Your righteousness is beyond reckoning.

4 We have now learnt that we should glorify

And bless YHWH of kings and Him who is king over all kings.'

5 And they shall say:

' Would that we had rest to glorify and give thanks

And confess our faith before His glory!

6 And now we long for a little rest but find it not:

We follow hard upon and obtain (it) not:

And light has vanished from before us,

And darkness is our dwelling-place for ever and ever:¹⁸⁴

7 For we have not believed before Him

Nor glorified the name of YHWH Tzva'ot, [nor glorified our YHWH]

But our hope was in the scepter of our kingdom,

And in our glory.

8 And in the day of our suffering and tribulation He saves us not,

And we find no respite for confession

That our YHWH is true in all His works, and in His judgments and His justice,

And His judgments have no respect of persons.

9 And we pass away from before His face on account of our works,

And all our sins are reckoned up in righteousness.'

10 Now they shall say unto themselves: ' Our souls are full of unrighteous gain, but it does not prevent us from descending from the midst thereof into the burden of Sheol.'

¹⁸³ Eph. 5:11-13; Mt. 10:26-28; 1En. 16:3

¹⁸⁴ Rev. 9:6

11 And after that their faces shall be filled with darkness
And shame before that Son of Man,
And they shall be driven from his presence,
And the sword shall abide before his face in their midst.

12 Thus spoke YHWH Tzva'ot: ' This is the ordinance and judgment
with respect to the mighty and the kings and the exalted and those who
possess the earth before YHWH Tzva'ot.'

CHAPTER 64

1 And other forms I saw hidden in that place.
2 I heard the voice of the angel saying: ' These are the angels who
descended to the earth, and revealed what was hidden to the children
of men and seduced the children of men into committing sin.'

CHAPTER 65

1 And in those days Noach saw the earth that it had sunk down and its
destruction was near.
2 And he arose from thence and went to the ends of the earth, and
cried aloud to his grandfather Chanoch: and Noach said three times
with an embittered voice: Hear me, hear me, hear me.'
3 And I said unto him: ' Tell me what it is that is falling out on the
earth that the earth is in such evil plight and shaken, lest perchance I
shall perish with it?'
4 And thereupon there was a great commotion, on the earth, and a
voice was heard from heaven, and I fell on my face.
5 And Chanoch my grandfather came and stood by me, and said unto
me: ' Why have you cried unto me with a bitter cry and weeping¹⁸⁵
6 And a command has gone forth from the presence of YHWH
concerning those who dwell on the earth that their ruin is

¹⁸⁵ 1En. 65:1-5; 1En. 106:8; 1QapGen. Col. 3-6

accomplished because they have learnt all the secrets of the angels, and all the violence of the Satans, and all their powers - the most secret ones - and all the power of those who practice sorcery, and the power of witchcraft, and the power of those who make molten images for the whole earth.¹⁸⁶

7 And how silver is produced from the dust of the earth, and how soft metal originates in the earth.

8 For lead and tin are not produced from the earth like the first: it is a fountain that produces them, and an angel stands therein, and that angel is pre-eminent.'

9 And after that my grandfather Chanoch took hold of me by my hand and raised me up, and said unto me: ' Go, for I have asked YHWH Tzva'ot as touching this commotion on the earth.

10 And He said unto me: " Because of their unrighteousness their judgment has been determined upon and shall not be withheld by Me for ever. Because of the sorceries which they have searched out and learnt, the earth and those who dwell upon it shall be destroyed."

11 And these-they have no place of repentance for ever, because they have shown them what was hidden, and they are the damned: but as for you, my son, YHWH Tzva'ot knows that you art pure, and guiltless of this reproach concerning the secrets.

12 And He has destined thy name to be among the set-apart, And will preserve you among those who dwell on the earth, And has destined thy righteous seed both for kingship and for great honors,

And from thy seed shall proceed a fountain of the righteous and set-apart without number for ever.¹⁸⁷

CHAPTER 66

1 And after that he showed me the angels of punishment who are prepared to come and let loose all the powers of the waters which are

¹⁸⁶ Gen. 6:5-7

¹⁸⁷ Gen. 10:3; Wisdom 14:6

beneath in the earth in order to bring judgment and destruction on all who [abide and] dwell on the earth.

2 And YHWH Tzva'ot gave commandment to the angels who were going forth, that they should not cause the waters to rise but should hold them in check; for those angels were over the powers of the waters.

3 And I went away from the presence of Chanoch.

CHAPTER 67

1 And in those days the word of Elohim came unto me, and He said unto me: 'Noach, thy lot has come Up before Me, a lot without blame, a lot of love and uprightness.¹⁸⁸

2 And now the angels are making a wooden (building), and when they have completed that task I will place My hand upon it and preserve it, and there shall come forth from it the seed of life, and a change shall set in so that the earth will not remain without inhabitant.

3 And I will make fast your seed before me for ever and ever, and I will spread abroad those who dwell with you: it shall not be unfruitful on the face of the earth, but it shall be blessed and multiply on the earth in the name of YHWH.'

4 And He will imprison those angels, who have shown unrighteousness, in that burning valley which my grandfather Chanoch had formerly shown to me in the west among the mountains of gold and silver and iron and soft metal and tin.

5 And I saw that valley in which there was a great convulsion and a convulsion of the waters.

6 And when all this took place, from that fiery molten metal and from the convulsion thereof in that place, there was produced a smell of sulphur, and it was connected with those waters, and that valley of the angels who had led astray (mankind) burned beneath that land.

7 And through its valleys proceed streams of fire, where these angels are punished who had led astray those who dwell upon the earth.

¹⁸⁸ Gen. 6:14-21

8 But those waters shall in those days serve for the kings and the mighty and the exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, for the healing of the body,¹⁸⁹ but for the punishment of the spirit; now their spirit is full of lust, that they may be punished in their body, for they have denied YHWH Tzva'ot and see their punishment daily, and yet believe not in His name.

9 And in proportion as the burning of their bodies becomes severe, a corresponding change shall take place in their spirit for ever and ever; for before YHWH Tzva'ot none shall utter an idle word.

10 For the judgment shall come upon them, because they believe in the lust of their body and deny the Spirit of YHWH.

11 And those same waters will undergo a change in those days; for when those angels are punished in these waters, these water-springs shall change their temperature, and when the angels ascend, this water of the springs shall change and become cold.

12 And I heard Mikha'el answering and saying: 'This judgment wherewith the angels are judged is a testimony for the kings and the mighty who possess the earth.'

13 Because these waters of judgment minister to the healing of the body of the kings and the lust of their body; therefore they will not see and will not believe that those waters will change and become a fire which burns for ever.

CHAPTER 68

1 And after that my grandfather Chanoch gave me the teaching of all the secrets in the book¹⁹⁰ in the Parables which had been given to him, and he put them together for me in the words of the Book of the Parables.

2 And on that day Mikha'el answered Rafa'el and said: 'The power of the spirit transports and makes me to tremble because of the severity of the judgment of the secrets, the judgment of the angels: who can

¹⁸⁹ probably the hot springs of Kallirhoe east of the Dead Sea (see Josephus; Ant. of the Jews 17:6:5)

¹⁹⁰ 1En. 19:3

endure the severe judgment which has been executed, and before which they melt away? '

3 And Mikha'el answered again, and said to Rafa'el: ' Who is he whose heart is not softened concerning it, and whose reins are not troubled by this word of judgment (that) has gone forth upon them because of those who have thus led them out?'

4 And it came to pass when he stood before YHWH Tzva'ot, Mikha'el said thus to Rafa'el:'

I will not take their part under the eye of YHWH; for YHWH Tzva'ot has been angry with them because they do as if they were YHWH.

5 Therefore all that is hidden shall come upon them for ever and ever; for neither angel nor man shall have his portion (in it), but alone they have received their judgment for ever and ever.

CHAPTER 69

1 And after this judgment they shall terrify and make them to tremble because they have shown this to those who dwell on the earth.

2 And behold the names of those angels¹⁹¹ and these are their names:

the first of them is Shemikhazah,

the second Ar'tekif,

and the third Ramt'el,

the fourth Kokav'el,

the fifth Tami'el,

the sixth Ra'm'al,

the seventh Dani'el,

the eighth Ziki'el,

the ninth Barak'el,

the tenth Azazel,

the eleventh Hermoni,

¹⁹¹ 1En. 6:7

the twelfth Matr'el,
the thirteenth 'Anan'el,
the fourteenth Sitwa'el,
the fifteenth Shimsh'el,
and the sixteenth Sahr'el,
the seventeenth Tamm'el,
the eighteenth Tur'el,
the nineteenth Yammi'el,
the twentieth Zohari'el,

And these are the chiefs of their angels and their names, and their chief ones over hundreds and over fifties and over tens.

4 The name of the first Yekon:¹⁹²

that is, the one who led astray [all] the sons of Elohim,¹⁹³ and brought them down to the earth, and led them astray through the daughters of men.

5 And the second was named Asbeel:¹⁹⁴

he imparted to the set-apart sons of Elohim evil counsel, and led them astray so that they defiled their bodies with the daughters of men.

6 And the third was named Gadreel:¹⁹⁵

he it is who showed the children of men all the blows of death, and he led astray Eve,¹⁹⁶ and showed [the weapons of death to the sons of men] ~~the shield and the coat of mail, and the sword for battle, and all the weapons of death to the children of men.~~

7 And from his hand they have proceeded against those who dwell on the earth from that day and for evermore.

192 Perhaps the Hebrew was יקום “rebel”

193 1En. 69:4

194 The Hebrew may have been חשב־אל (thought of El), see 69:13

195 The Hebrew may have been גדראל “Mason of El”

196 Gen. 3:1-7; 2En. 31:3-5

8 And the fourth was named Penemue:¹⁹⁷

he taught the children of men the bitter and the sweet, and he taught them all the secrets of their wisdom.

9 And he instructed mankind in writing with ink and paper, and thereby many sinned from eternity to eternity and until this day.

10 For men were not created for such a purpose, to give confirmation to their good faith with pen and ink.

11 For men were created exactly like the angels, to the intent that they should continue pure and righteous, and death, which destroys everything, could not have taken hold of them, but through this their knowledge they are perishing, and through this power it is consuming me.

12 And the fifth was named Kasdeya:¹⁹⁸

this is he who showed the children of men all the wicked smitings of spirits and demons, and the smitings of the embryo in the womb,¹⁹⁹ that it may pass away, and [the smitings of the soul] the bites of the serpent, and the smitings which befall through the noontide heat, the son of the serpent named Taba'et.²⁰⁰

13 And this is the number of Kasbeel,²⁰¹ the chief of the oath, which he showed to the set-apart ones when he dwelt high above in glory, and its name is Biqa.²⁰²

14 This (angel) requested Mikha'el to show him the hidden name, that he might enunciate it in the oath, so that those might quake before that name and oath

¹⁹⁷ Perhaps פנה אמונה (He has abolished trust/faith) or פנמו (inside)

¹⁹⁸ The Hebrew may have been חסדיה (Yah has favored see 1Chr. 3:20) or כשריא (Chaldeans)

¹⁹⁹ i.e. abortion, see 1En. 99:5; Jasher 2:20

²⁰⁰ Perhaps related to Aramaic טביהא (gazalle) and its Hebrew cognate צביה perhaps relating to the usage of שעיר a goat demon (Lev. 17:7; 2Chron. 11:15)

²⁰¹ See footnote to 69:5

²⁰² The Hebrew is probably ביקה, which has a gematria (numerical value) of 117 the same as יהוה אלהים “YHWH Elohim”

15 who revealed all that was in secret to the children of men? And this is the power of this oath, for it is powerful and strong, and he placed this oath Akae²⁰³ in the hand of Mikha'el.

16 And these are the secrets of this oath . . .

And they are strong through his oath:

And the heaven was suspended before the world was created,

And for ever.

17 And through it the earth was founded upon the water,

And from the secret recesses of the mountains come beautiful waters,

From the creation of the world and unto eternity.

18 And through that oath the sea was created,

And as its foundation He set for it the sand against the time of (its) anger,

And it dare not pass beyond it from the creation of the world unto eternity.

19 And through that oath are the depths made fast,

And abide and stir not from their place from eternity to eternity.

20 And through that oath the sun and moon complete their course,

And deviate not from their ordinance from eternity to eternity.

21 And through that oath the stars complete their course,

And He calls them by their names,

And they answer Him from eternity to eternity.

22 [And in like manner the spirits of the water, and of the winds, and of all zephyrs, and (their) paths from all the quarters of the winds.

23 And there are preserved the voices of the thunder and the light of the lightnings: and there are preserved the chambers of the hail and the chambers of the hoarfrost, and the chambers of the mist, and the chambers of the rain and the dew.

²⁰³ The Hebrew was probably אכאע, which has a gematria (numerical value) of 91 the same as יהוה אדני "YHWH Adoni" as well as אמן "Amen", מלאך "angel" and מנא "manna".

24 And all these believe and give thanks before YHWH Tzva'ot, and glorify (Him) with all their power, and their food is in every act of thanksgiving: they thank and glorify and extol the name of YHWH Tzva'ot for ever and ever.]

25 And this oath is mighty over them
And through it [they are preserved and] their paths are preserved,
And their course is not destroyed.

26 And there was great joy among them,
And they blessed and glorified and extolled
Because the name of that Son of Man had been revealed unto them.

27 And he sat on the throne of his glory,
And the sum of judgment was given unto the Son of Man,
And he caused the sinners to pass away and be destroyed from off the face of the earth,

And those who have led the world astray.

28 With chains shall they be bound?
And in their assemblage-place of destruction shall they be imprisoned,
And all their works vanish from the face of the earth.

29 And from henceforth there shall be nothing corruptible;
For that Son of Man has appeared,
And has seated himself on the throne of his glory,
And all evil shall pass away before his face,
And the word of that Son of Man shall go forth
And be strong before YHWH Tzva'ot.

CHAPTER 70

1 And it came to pass after this that his name during his lifetime was raised aloft to that Son of Man and to YHWH Tzva'ot from among those who dwell on the earth.

2 And he was raised aloft on the chariots of the spirit and his name vanished among them.²⁰⁴

3 And from that day I was no longer numbered among them: and he set me between the two winds, between the North and the West, where the angels took the cords to measure for me the place for the chosen and righteous.

4 And there I saw the first fathers and the righteous who from the beginning dwell in that place.

CHAPTER 71

1 And it came to pass after this that my spirit was translated
And it ascended into the heavens:²⁰⁵

And I saw the set-apart sons of Elohim.

They were stepping on flames of fire:

Their garments were white [and their raiment],

And their faces shone like snow.

2 And I saw two streams of fire,

And the light of that fire shone like hyacinth,

And I fell on my face before YHWH Tzva'ot.

3 And the angel Mikha'el [one of the archangels] seized me by my right hand,

And lifted me up and led me forth into all the secrets,

And he showed me all the secrets of righteousness.

4 And he showed me all the secrets of the ends of the heaven,

And all the chambers of all the stars, and all the luminaries,

Whence they proceed before the face of the set-apart ones.

5 And he translated my spirit into the heaven of heavens,

²⁰⁴ Gen. 5:24; Heb. 11:5; 2Kn. 2:11; Wisdom 4:10-13; Sirach 44:16; 49:14; Jub. 4:23; 2En. 67:1-2; 68:3; Jasher 3:36; Josephus; Ant. 1:3:4

²⁰⁵ See 1 En. 70:2

And I saw there as it were a structure built of crystals,
And between those crystals tongues of living fire.²⁰⁶
6 And my spirit saw the girdle, which girt that house of fire,
And on its four sides were streams full of living fire,
And they girt that house.
7 And round about were Seraphim, Cherubim, and Ofannim.²⁰⁷
And these are they who sleep not
And guard the throne of His glory.
8 And I saw angels, who could not be counted,
A thousand thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand,
Encircling that house.
And Mikha'el, and Rafa'el, and Gavri'el, and P'nuel,²⁰⁸
And the set-apart angels, who are above the heavens,
Go in and out of that house.
9 And they came forth from that house,
And Mikha'el and Gavri'el, Rafa'el and P'nuel,²⁰⁹
And many set-apart angels without number.
10 And with them the Ancient of Days,²¹⁰
His head white and pure as wool,
And His raiment indescribable.
11 And I fell on my face,
And my whole body became relaxed,
And my spirit was transfigured;
And I cried with a loud voice, . . . with the spirit of power,

²⁰⁶ 1En. 14:9; Acts 2:3

²⁰⁷ see footnotes to 1En. 61:10

²⁰⁸ See note to 40:9

²⁰⁹ See note to 40:9

²¹⁰ Ps. 104:1-2; 93:1; 1En. 14:20; 46:1; Dan. 7:9; Is. 6:1; Rev. 1:14

And blessed and glorified and extolled.

12 And these blessings, which went forth out of my mouth, were well pleasing before that Ancient of Days.

13 And that Ancient of Days came with Mikha'el and Gavri'el, Rafa'el and P'nuel,²¹¹ thousands and ten thousands of angels without number.

14 And he (i.e. the angel) came to me and greeted me with His voice, and said unto me'

This is the Son of Man who is born unto righteousness,
And righteousness abides over him,

And the righteousness of the Ancient of Days forsakes him not.'

15 And he said unto me:

'He proclaims unto you shalom in the name of the world to come,²¹²
For from hence has proceeded shalom since the creation of the world,
And so shall it be unto you for ever and for ever and ever.

16 And all shall walk in his ways since righteousness never forsakes him:

With him will be their dwelling-places, and with him their heritage,
And they shall not be separated from him for ever and ever and ever.
And so there shall be length of days with that Son of Man,
And the righteous shall have shalom and an upright way
In the name of YHWH Tzva'ot for ever and ever.'

²¹¹ See note to 40:9

²¹² 2En. 50:6; Heb. 2:5; 6:5; Eph. 1:21 (Aramaic Peshitta); Mt. 12:32; Mt. 19:16 (Shem Tob Hebrew); Mt. 19:17 (DuTillet Hebrew)

Section 3

Chapters 72-82

The Book of the Heavenly Luminaries

CHAPTER 72

1 The book of the courses of the luminaries of the heaven, the relations of each, according to their classes, their dominion and their seasons, according to their names and places of origin, and according to their months, which Uri'el, the set-apart angel, who was with me, who is their guide, showed me; and he showed me all their laws exactly as they are, and how it is with regard to all the years of the world and unto eternity, till the new creation is accomplished which endures till eternity.

2 And this is the first law of the luminaries: the luminary the Sun has its rising in the eastern gates of the heaven, and its setting in the western gates of the heaven.

3 And I saw six gates in which the sun rises, and six gates²¹³ in which the sun sets and the moon rises and sets in these gates, and the leaders of the stars and those whom they lead: six in the east and six in the west, and all following each other in accurately corresponding order: also many windows to the right and left of these gates.

4 And first there goes forth the great luminary, named the Sun, and his circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and he is quite filled with illuminating and heating fire.

5 The chariot on which he ascends, the wind drives, and the sun goes down from the heaven and returns through the north in order to reach the east, and is so guided that he comes to the appropriate (lit. 'that') gate and shines in the face of the heaven.

6 In this way he rises in the first month in the great gate, which 7 is the fourth [those six gates in the east].

²¹³ 2En. 13:1-2; 14:1

7 And in that fourth gate from which the sun rises in the first month are twelve window-openings, from which proceeds a flame when they are opened in their season.

8 When the sun rises in the heaven, he comes forth through that fourth gate thirty, mornings in succession, and sets accurately in the fourth gate in the west of the heaven.

9 And during this period the day becomes daily longer and the night nightly shorter to the thirtieth morning.

10 On that day the day is longer than the night by a ninth part, and the day amounts exactly to ten parts and the night to eight parts.

11 And the sun rises from that fourth gate, and sets in the fourth and returns to the fifth gate of the east thirty mornings, and rises from it and sets in the fifth gate.

12 And then the day becomes longer by two parts and amounts to eleven parts, and the night becomes shorter and amounts to seven parts.

13 And it returns to the east and enters into the sixth gate, and rises and sets in the sixth gate one-and-thirty mornings on account of its sign.

14 On that day the day becomes longer than the night, and the day becomes double the night, and the day becomes twelve parts, and the night is shortened and becomes six parts.

15 And the sun mounts up to make the day shorter and the night longer, and the sun returns to the east and enters into the sixth gate, and rises from it and sets thirty mornings.

16 And when thirty mornings are accomplished, the day decreases by exactly one part, and becomes eleven parts, and the night seven.

17 And the sun goes forth from that sixth gate in the west, and goes to the east and rises in the fifth gate for thirty mornings, and sets in the west again in the fifth western gate.

18 On that day the day decreases by two parts, and amounts to ten parts and the night to eight parts.

19 And the sun goes forth from that fifth gate and sets in the fifth gate of the west, and rises in the fourth gate for one- and-thirty mornings on account of its sign, and sets in the west.

20 On that day the day is equalized with the night, [and becomes of equal length], and the night amounts to nine parts and the day to nine parts.

21 And the sun rises from that gate and sets in the west, and returns to the east and rises thirty mornings in the third gate and sets in the west in the third gate.

22 And on that day the night becomes longer than the day, and night becomes longer than night, and day shorter than day till the thirtieth morning, and the night amounts exactly to ten parts and the day to eight parts.

23 And the sun rises from that third gate and sets in the third gate in the west and returns to the east, and for thirty mornings rises in the second gate in the east, and in like manner sets in the second gate in the west of the heaven.

24 And on that day the night amounts to eleven parts and the day to seven parts.

25 And the sun rises on that day from that second gate and sets in the west in the second gate, and returns to the east into the first gate for one-and-thirty mornings, and sets in the first gate in the west of the heaven.

26 And on that day the night becomes longer and amounts to the double of the day: and the night amounts exactly to twelve parts and the day to six.

27 And the sun has (therewith) traversed the divisions of his orbit and turns again on those divisions of his orbit, and enters that gate thirty mornings and sets also in the west opposite to it.

28 And on that night has the night decreased in length by a ninth part, and the night has become eleven parts and the day seven parts.

29 And the sun has returned and entered into the second gate in the east, and returns on those his divisions of his orbit for thirty mornings, rising and setting.

30 And on that day the night decreases in length, and the night amounts to ten parts and the day to eight.

31 And on that day the sun rises from that gate, and sets in the west, and returns to the east, and rises in the third gate for one-and-thirty mornings, and sets in the west of the heaven.

32 On that day the night decreases and amounts to nine parts, and the day to nine parts, and the night is equal to the day and the year is exactly as to its days three hundred and sixty-four.

33 And the length of the day and of the night, and the shortness of the day and of the night arise-through the course of the sun these distinctions are made (lit. ' they are separated ').

34 So it comes that its course becomes daily longer, and its course nightly shorter.

35 And this is the law and the course of the sun, and his return as often as he returns sixty times and rises, i.e. the great luminary which is named the sun, for ever and ever.

36 And that which (thus) rises is the great luminary, and is so named according to its appearance, according as YHWH commanded.

37 As he rises, so he sets and decreases not, and rests not, but runs day and night, and his light is sevenfold brighter than that of the moon; but as regards size they are both equal.

CHAPTER 73

1 And after this law I saw another law dealing with the smaller luminary, which is named the Moon.

2 And her circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and her chariot in which she rides is driven by the wind, and light is given to her in (definite) measure.

3 And her rising and setting change every month: and her days are like the days of the sun, and when her light is uniform (i.e. full) it amounts to the seventh part of the light of the sun.

4 And thus she rises. And her first phase in the east comes forth on the thirtieth morning: and on that day she becomes visible, and constitutes for you the first phase of the moon on the thirtieth day together with the sun in the gate where the sun rises.

5 And the one half of her goes forth by a seventh part, and her whole circumference is empty, without light, with the exception of one-seventh part of it, (and) the fourteenth part of her light.

6 And when she receives one-seventh part of the half of her light, her light amounts to one-seventh part and the half thereof.

7 And she sets with the sun, and when the sun rises the moon rises with him and receives the half of one part of light, and in that night in the beginning of her morning [in the commencement of the lunar day] the moon sets with the sun, and is invisible that night with the fourteen parts and the half of one of them.

8 And she rises on that day with exactly a seventh part, and comes forth and recedes from the rising of the sun, and in her remaining days she becomes bright in the (remaining) thirteen parts.

CHAPTER 74

1 And I saw another course, a law for her, (and) how according to that law she performs her monthly revolution.

2 And all these Uri'el, the set-apart angel who is the leader of them all, showed to me, and their positions, and I wrote down their positions as he showed them to me, and I wrote down their months as they were, and the appearance of their lights till fifteen days were accomplished.

3 In single seventh parts she accomplishes all her light in the east, and in single seventh parts accomplishes all her darkness in the west.

4 And in certain months she alters her settings, and in certain months she pursues her own peculiar course.

5 In two months the moon sets with the sun: in those two middle gates the third and the fourth.

6 She goes forth for seven days, and turns about and returns again through the gate where the sun rises, and accomplishes all her light: and she recedes from the sun, and in eight days enters the sixth gate from which the sun goes forth.

7 And when the sun goes forth from the fourth gate she goes forth seven days, until she goes forth from the fifth and turns back again in

seven days into the fourth gate and accomplishes all her light: and she recedes and enters into the first gate in eight days.

8 And she returns again in seven days into the fourth gate from which the sun goes forth.

9 Thus I saw their position -how the moons rose and the sun set in those days.

10 And if five years are added together the sun has an over plus of thirty days, and all the days which accrue to it for one of those five years, when they are full, amount to 364 days.

11 And the over plus of the sun and of the stars amounts to six days: in 5 years 6 days every year come to 30 days: and the 12 moon falls behind the sun and stars to the number of 30 days.

12 And the sun and the stars bring in all the years exactly, so that they do not advance or delay their position by a single day unto eternity; but complete the years with perfect justice in 364 days.

13 In 3 years there are 1,092 days, and in 5 years 1,820 days, so that in 8 years there are 2,912 days.

14 For the moon alone the days amount in 3 years to 1,062 days, and in 5 years she falls 50 days behind: [i.e. to the sum (of 1,770) there is 5 to be added (1,000 and) 62 days.]

15 And in 5 years there are 1,770 days, so that for the moon the days 6 in 8 years amount to 21,832 days.

16 [For in 8 years she falls behind to the amount of 80 days], all the days she falls behind in 8 years are 80.

17 And the year is accurately completed in conformity with their world-stations and the stations of the sun, which rise from the gates through which it (the sun) rises and sets 30 days.

CHAPTER 75

1 And the leaders of the heads of the thousands, who are placed over the whole creation and over all the stars, have also to do with the four intercalary days, being inseparable from their office, according to the reckoning of the year, and these render service on the four days which are not reckoned in the reckoning of the year.

2 And owing to them men go wrong therein, for those luminaries truly render service on the world-stations, one in the first gate, one in the third gate of the heaven, one in the fourth gate, and one in the sixth gate, and the exactness of the year is accomplished through its separate three hundred and sixty-four stations.

3 For the signs and the times and the years and the days the angel Uri'el showed to me, whom YHWH of glory has set for ever over all the luminaries of the heaven, in the heaven and in the world, that they should rule on the face of the heaven and be seen on the earth, and be leaders for the day and the night, i.e. the sun, moon, and stars, and all the ministering creatures which make their revolution in all the chariots of the heaven.

4 In like manner twelve doors Uri'el showed me, open in the circumference of the sun's chariot in the heaven, through which the rays of the sun break forth: and from them is warmth diffused over the earth, when they are opened at their appointed seasons.

5 [And for the winds and the spirit of the dew when they are opened, standing open in the heavens at the ends.]

6 As for the twelve gates in the heaven, at the ends of the earth, out of which go forth the sun, moon, and stars, and all the works of heaven in the east and in the west,

7 There are many windows open to the left and right of them, and one window at its (appointed) season produces warmth, corresponding (as these do) to those doors from which the stars come forth according as He has commanded them, and wherein they set corresponding to their number.

8 And I saw chariots in the heaven, running in the world, above those gates in which revolve the stars that never set.

9 And one is larger than all the rest, and it is that that makes its course through the entire world.

CHAPTER 76

1 And at the ends of the earth I saw twelve gates open to all the quarters (of the heaven), from which the winds go forth and blow over the earth.

2 Three of them are open on the face (i.e. the east) of the heavens, and three in the west, and three on the right (i.e. the south) of the heaven, and three on the left (i.e. the north).

3 And the three first are those of the east, and three are of the north, and three [after those on the left] of the south, and three of the west.

4 Through four of these come winds which are for the healing of the earth and from those eight come hurtful winds: when they are sent, they bring destruction on all the earth and on the water upon it, and on all who dwell thereon, and on everything which is in the water and on the land.

5 And the first wind from those gates, called the east wind, comes forth through the first gate, which is in the east, inclining towards the south: from it come forth desolation, drought, heat, and destruction.

6 And through the second gate which is in the middle comes the east wind, and from it there comes rain and fruitfulness and prosperity and dew; and through the third gate comes the east-north wind, which is near the north wind and is cold and drought.

7 And after these come forth the south winds through three gates: first of all through the first gate of them inclining to the east comes forth a hot wind.

8 And through the middle gate next to it, which they call the south, there come forth-fragrant smells, and dew and rain, and prosperity and health.

9 And through the third gate lying to the west come forth dew and rain, locusts and desolation.

10 And after it comes forth the north winds: from the seventh gate in the east come dew and rain, locusts and desolation. And from the middle gate come in a direct direction health and rain and dew and prosperity; and through the third gate in the west come cloud and hoarfrost, and snow and rain, and dew and locusts.

12 And after these [four] are the west winds: through the first gate adjoining the north come forth dew and hoarfrost, and cold and snow and frost.

13 And from the middle gate come forth dew and rain, and prosperity and blessing; and through the last gate, which adjoins the south, come forth drought and desolation, and burning and destruction.

14 And the twelve gates of the four quarters of the heaven are therewith completed, and all their laws and all their plagues and all their benefactions have I shown to you, my son Metushelach.

CHAPTER 77

1 And the first quarter is called the east, because it is the first: and the second, the south, because the Most High will descend there, yea, there in quite a special sense will He who is blessed for ever descend.

2 And the west quarter is named the diminished, because they're all the luminaries of the heaven wane and go down.

3 And the fourth quarter, named the north, is divided into three parts: the first of them is for the dwelling of men: and the second contains seas of water, and the abysses and forests and rivers, and darkness and clouds; and the third part contains the garden of righteousness.

4 I saw seven high mountains, higher than all the mountains, which are on the earth: and thence comes forth hoarfrost, and days, seasons, and years pass away.

5 I saw seven rivers on the earth larger than all the rivers: one of them coming from the west pours its waters into the Great Sea.

6 And these two come from the north to the sea and pour their waters into the Erythraean Sea in the east.

7 And the remaining, four come forth on the side of the north to their own sea, two of them to the Red Sea, and two into the Great Sea and discharge themselves there [and some say: into the desert].

8 Seven great islands I saw in the sea and in the mainland: two in the mainland and five in the Great Sea.

CHAPTER 78

1 And the names of the sun are the following: the first Or Kheres,²¹⁴ and the second Shemesh.²¹⁵

2 And the moon has four names: the first name is Ishon,²¹⁶ the second L'banah,²¹⁷ the third L'banah Kesheh,²¹⁸ and the fourth Yarech.²¹⁹

3 These are the two great luminaries: their circumference is like the circumference of the heaven,

4 and the size of the circumference of both are alike. In the circumference of the sun there are seven portions of light, which are added to it more than to the moon, and in definite measures it is transferred till the seventh portion of the sun is exhausted.

5 And they set and enter the gates of the west, and make their revolution by the north, and come forth through the eastern gates on the face of the heaven.

6 And when the moon rises one-fourteenth part shines in the heaven to appear: and its light becomes fuller day by day until the fourteenth day and then she accomplishes her light.

7 And fifteen parts of light are transferred to her till the fifteenth day (when) her light is accomplished, according to the sign of the year, and she becomes fifteen parts, and the moon grows by (the addition of) fourteenth parts.

²¹⁴ The Ethiopic has “Oryares” but the Hebrew was probably אור חרם (אח Strong’s 2775) (אור Strong’s 215) “Light of the Sun”

²¹⁵ The Ethiopic has “Tomas” but this is probably a corruption of Hebrew שמש (Strong’s 8121) “Sun”

²¹⁶ The Ethiopic has “Asonya” but this is probably a corruption of Hebrew אִשׁוֹן (Strong’s 380) “black, obscure) and may have passed through an Aramaic version with an emphatic Aramaic ending אִשׁוֹנִי אִשׁוֹנִי ishonya.

²¹⁷ The Ethiopic has “Ebla” which is probably a corruption of לבנה (Strong’s 3842)

²¹⁸ The Ethiopic has “Benase” which is probably a corruption of לבנה כשה (כשה Strong’s 3780) לבנה ל (Strong’s 3842) “full (literally “fat”) moon”.

²¹⁹ The Ethiopic reads “Erae” but this is probably a corruption of Hebrew ירח (Strong’s 3394) “moon”

8 And in her waning (the moon) decreases on the first day to fourteen parts of her light, on the second to thirteen parts of light, on the third to twelve, on the fourth to eleven, on the fifth to ten, on the sixth to nine, on the seventh to eight, on the eighth to seven, on the ninth to six, on the tenth to five, on the eleventh to four, on the twelfth to three, on the thirteenth to two, on the fourteenth to the half of a seventh, and all her remaining light disappears wholly on the fifteenth.

9 And in certain months the month has twenty-nine days and once twenty-eight.

10 And Uri'el showed me another calculation: when light is transferred to the moon, and on which side it is transferred to her by the sun.

11 During all the period during which the moon is growing in her light, she is transferring it to herself when opposite to the sun during fourteen days [her light is accomplished in the heaven, and when she is illumined throughout, her light is accomplished full in the heaven.

12 And on the first day she is called the new moon, for on that day the light rises upon her.

13 She becomes full moon exactly on the day when the sun sets in the west, and from the east she rises at night, and the moon shines the whole night through till the sun rises over against her and the moon is seen over against the sun.

14 On the side whence the light of the moon comes forth, there again she wanes till all the light vanishes and all the days of the month are at an end, and her circumference is empty, void of light.

15 And three months she makes of thirty days, and at her time she makes three months of twenty- nine days each, in which she accomplishes her waning in the first period of time, and in the first gate for one hundred and seventy-seven days.

16 And in the time of her going out she appears for three months (of) thirty days each, and for three months she appears (of) twenty-nine each.

17 At night she appears like the image of a man for twenty days each time, and by day she appears like the heaven, and there is nothing else in her save her light.²²⁰

CHAPTER 79

1 And now, my son, I have shown you everything, and another calculation of all the stars of the heaven is completed.

2 And he showed me all the laws of these for every day, and for every season of bearing rule, and for every year, and for its going forth, and for the order prescribed to it every month and every week:

3 And the waning of the moon, which takes place in the sixth gate: for in this sixth gate her light is accomplished, and after that there is the beginning of the waning:

4 (And the waning) which takes place in the first gate in its season, till one hundred and seventy-seven days are accomplished: reckoned according to weeks, twenty-five (weeks) and two days.²²¹

5 She falls behind the sun and the order of the stars exactly five days in the course of one period, and when this place, which you see, has been traversed.

6 Such is the picture and sketch of every luminary which Uri'el the archangel, who is their leader, showed unto me.

CHAPTER 80

1 And in those days the angel Uri'el answered and said to me: ' Behold, I have shown you everything, Chanoch, and I have revealed everything to you that you should see this sun and this moon, and the leaders of the stars of the heaven and all those who turn them, their tasks and times and departures.

2 And in the days of the sinners the years shall be shortened,

²²⁰ In the Aramaic this verse follows 79:3-4

²²¹ In the Aramaic 79:3-4 precedes 78:17

And their seed shall be tardy on their lands and fields,
And all things on the earth shall alter,
And shall not appear in their time:
And the rain shall be kept back
And the heaven shall withhold (it).
3 And in those times the fruits of the earth shall be backward,
And shall not grow in their time,
And the fruits of the trees shall be withheld in their time.
4 And the moon shall alter her order,
And not appear at her time.
5 [And in those days the sun shall be seen and he shall journey in the
evening on the extremity of the great chariot in the west]
And shall shine more brightly than accords with the order of light.
6 And many chiefs of the stars shall transgress the order (prescribed).
And these shall alter their orbits and tasks,
And not appear at the seasons prescribed to them.
7 And the whole order of the stars shall be concealed from the sinners,
And the thoughts of those on the earth shall err concerning them,
[And they shall be altered from all their ways],
Yea, they shall err and take them to be gods.
8 And evil shall be multiplied upon them,
And punishment shall come upon them So as to destroy all.'

CHAPTER 81

1 And he said unto me:
' Observe, Chanoch, these heavenly tablets,
And read what is written thereon,
And mark every individual fact.'

2 And I observed the heavenly tablets, and read everything, which was written (thereon) and understood everything, and read the book of all the deeds of mankind, and of all the children of flesh that shall be upon the earth to the remotest generations.

3 And forthwith I blessed the great YHWH the King of glory for ever, in that He has made all the works of the world,
And I extolled YHWH because of His patience,
And blessed Him because of the children of men.

4 And after that I said:

'Blessed is the man who dies in righteousness and goodness,
Concerning whom there is no book of unrighteousness written,
And against whom no day of judgment shall be found.'

5 And those seven set-apart ones brought me and placed me on the earth before the door of my house, and said to me: 'Declare everything to thy son Metushelach, and show to all thy children that no flesh is righteous in the sight of YHWH, for He is their Creator.

6 One year we will leave you with thy son, till you gives you (last) commands, that you may teach thy children and record (it) for them, and testify to all thy children; and in the second year they shall take you from their midst.

7 Let your heart be strong,
For the good shall announce righteousness to the good;
The righteous with the righteous shall rejoice,
And shall offer congratulation to one another.

8 But the sinners shall die with the sinners,
And the apostate goes down with the apostate.

9 And those who practice righteousness shall die on account of the deeds of men,

And be taken away on account of the doings of the godless.'

10 And in those days they ceased to speak to me, and I came to my people, blessing YHWH of the world.

CHAPTER 82

1 And now, my son Metushelach, all these things I am recounting to you and writing down for you! And I have revealed to you everything, and given you books concerning all these: so preserve, my son Metushelach, the books from thy father's hand, and (see) that you deliver them to the generations of the world.

2 I have given Wisdom to you and to thy children,
[And thy children that shall be to you],
That they may give it to their children for generations,
This wisdom (namely) that passes their thought.

3 And those who understand it shall not sleep,
But shall listen with the ear that they may learn this wisdom,
And it shall please those that eat thereof better than good food.

4 Blessed are all the righteous, blessed are all those who walk In the way of righteousness and sin not as the sinners, in the reckoning of all their days in which the sun traverses the heaven, entering into and departing from the gates for thirty days with the heads of thousands of the order of the stars, together with the four which are intercalated which divide the four portions of the year, which lead them and enter with them four days.

5 Owing to them men shall be at fault and not reckon them in the whole reckoning of the year: yea, men shall be at fault, and not recognize them accurately.

6 For they belong to the reckoning of the year and are truly recorded (thereon) for ever, one in the first gate and one in the third, and one in the fourth and one in the sixth, and the year is completed in three hundred and sixty-four days.

7 And the account thereof is accurate and the recorded reckoning thereof exact; for the luminaries, and months and festivals, and years and days, has Uri'el shown and revealed to me, to whom YHWH of the whole creation of the world has subjected the host of heaven.

8 And he has power over night and day in the heaven to cause the light to give light to men sun, moon, and stars, and all the powers of the heaven, which revolve in their circular chariots.

9 And these are the orders of the stars, which set in their places, to their [Zodiac] signs, their new moons, their signs.

10 And these are the names of those who lead them, who watch that they enter at their times, in their orders, in their seasons, in their months, in their periods of dominion, and in their positions.

11 Their four leaders who divide the four parts of the year enter first; and after them the twelve leaders of the orders who divide the months; and for the three hundred and sixty (days) there are heads over thousands who divide the days; and for the four intercalary days there are the leaders which sunder the four parts of the year.

12 And these heads over thousands are intercalated between leader and leader, each behind a station, but their leaders make the division.

13 And these are the names of the leaders who divide the four parts of the year which are ordained: Milki'el, Hel'emmelek, and Mel'ejal, and Narel.

14 And the names of those who lead them: Adnar'el, and Ijasusa'el, and 'Elome'el- these three follow the leaders of the orders, and there is one that follows the three leaders of the orders which follow those leaders of stations that divide the four parts of the year.

15 In the beginning of the year Melkejal rises first and rules, who is named Tam'aini and sun, and all the days of his dominion whilst he bears rule are ninety-one days.

16 And these are the signs of the days, which are to be seen on earth in the days of his dominion: sweat, and heat, and calms; and all the trees bear fruit, and leaves are produced on all the trees, and the harvest of wheat, and the rose-flowers, and all the flowers which come forth in the field, but the trees of the winter season become withered. And these are the names of the leaders, which are under them:

17 Berka'el, Zelebs'el, and another who is added a head of a thousand, called Hilujaseph: and the days of the dominion of this (leader) are at an end.

18 The next leader after him is Hel'emmelek, whom one names the shining sun, and all the days of his light are ninety-one days.

19 And these are the signs of (his) days on the earth: glowing heat and dryness, and the trees ripen their fruits and produce all their fruits ripe and ready, and the sheep pair and become pregnant, and all the fruits

of the earth are gathered in, and everything that is in the fields, and the winepress: these things take place in the days of his dominion.

20 These are the names, and the orders, and the leaders of those heads of thousands: Gida'ljal, Ke'el, and He'el, and the name of the head of a thousand which is added to them, Asfa'el: and the days of his dominion are at an end.

Section 4

Chapters 83-90

The Book of Dream-Visions

CHAPTER 83

1 And now, my son Metushelach, I will show you all my visions which I have seen, recounting them before you.

2 Two visions I saw before I took a wife, and the one was quite unlike the other: the first when I was learning to write: the second before I took thy mother, (when) I saw a terrible vision.

3 And regarding them I prayed to YHWH. I had laid me down in the house of my grandfather Mahalalel, (when) I saw in a vision how the heaven collapsed and was borne off and fell to the earth.

4 And when it fell to the earth I saw how the earth was swallowed up in a great abyss, and mountains were suspended on mountains, and hills sank down on hills, and high trees were rent from their stems, and hurled down and sunk in the abyss.

5 And thereupon a word fell into my mouth, and I lifted up (my voice) to cry aloud, and said: ' The earth is destroyed.'

6 And my grandfather Mahalalel waked me as I lay near him, and said unto me: ' Why do you cry so, my son, and why dost you make such lamentation?'

7 And I recounted to him the whole vision which I had seen, and he said unto me: ' A terrible thing hast you seen, my son, and of grave moment is thy dream- vision as to the secrets of all the sin of the earth: it must sink into the abyss and be destroyed with a great destruction.

8 And now, my son, arise and make petition to YHWH of glory, since you art a believer, that a remnant may remain on the earth, and that He may not destroy the whole earth.

9 My son, from heaven all this will come upon the earth, and upon the earth there will be great destruction.

10 After that I arose and prayed and implored and besought, and wrote down my prayer for the generations of the world, and I will show everything to you, my son Metushelach.

11 And when I had gone forth below and seen the heaven, and the sun rising in the east, and the moon setting in the west, and a few stars, and the whole earth, and everything as He had known it in the beginning, then I blessed YHWH of judgment and extolled Him because He had made the sun to go forth from the windows of the east, and he ascended and rose on the face of the heaven, and set out and kept traversing the path shown unto him.

CHAPTER 84

1 And I lifted up my hands in righteousness and blessed the Set-apart and Great One, and spoke with the breath of my mouth, and with the tongue of flesh, which Elohim has made for the children of the flesh of men, that they should speak therewith, and He gave them breath and a tongue and a mouth that they should speak there with:

2 Blessed be You, O YHWH, King,

Great and mighty in Your greatness,

YHWH of the whole creation of the heaven,

King of kings and Elohim of the whole world.

And Your power and kingship and greatness abide for ever and ever,

And throughout all generations Your dominion;

And all the heavens are Your throne for ever,

And the whole earth Your footstool for ever and ever.

3 For You hast made and You rules all things,

And nothing is too hard for You,

Wisdom departs not from the place of Your throne,
Nor turns away from Your presence.
And You knows and sees and hears everything,
And there is nothing hidden from You [for You see everything].
4 And now the angels of Your heavens are guilty of trespass,
And upon the flesh of men abides Your wrath until the great day of
judgment.
5 And now, O Elohim and YHWH and Great King,
I implore and beseech You to fulfill my prayer,
To leave me a posterity on earth,
And not destroy all the flesh of man,
And make the earth without inhabitant,
So that there should be an eternal destruction.
6 And now, my Master, destroy from the earth the flesh which has
aroused Your wrath,
But the flesh of righteousness and uprightness establish as a plant of
the eternal seed,
And hide not Your face from the prayer of Your servant, O YHWH.'

CHAPTER 85

1 And after this I saw another dream, and I will show the whole dream
to you, my son.
2 And Chanoch lifted up (his voice) and spoke to his son Metushelach:
' To you, my son, will I speak: hear my words-incline your ear to the
dream-vision of thy father.
3 Before I took thy mother Edna,²²² I saw in a vision on my bed,²²³ and
behold a bull came forth from the earth, and that bull was white; and

²²² Jub. 4:29

²²³ 2En. 1:4

after it came forth a heifer, and along with this (latter) came forth two bulls, one of them black and the other red.

4 And that black bull gored the red one and pursued him over the earth, and thereupon I could no longer see that red bull.

5 But that black bull grew and that heifer went with him, and I saw that many oxen proceeded from him which resembled and followed him.

6 And that cow, that first one, went from the presence of that first bull in order to seek that red one, but found him not, and lamented with a great lamentation over him and sought him.

7 And I looked till that first bull came to her and quieted her, and from that time onward she cried no more.

8 And after that she bore another white bull, and after him she bore many bulls and black cows.

9 And I saw in my sleep that white bull likewise grow and become a great white bull, and from Him proceeded many white bulls, and they resembled him.

10 And they began to beget many white bulls, which resembled them, one following the other, (even) many.

CHAPTER 86

1 And again I saw with my eyes as I slept, and I saw the heaven above, and behold a star fell from heaven, and it arose and eat and pastured among them.

2 And after that I saw the large and the black oxen, and behold they all changed their pastures and stalls and their cattle, and began to live with each other.

3 And again I saw in the vision, and looked towards the heaven, and behold I saw many stars descend and cast themselves down from heaven to that first star, and they became bulls among those cattle and pastured with them [among them].

4 And I looked at them and saw, and behold they all let out their privy members, like horses, and began to cover the cows of the oxen, and they all became pregnant and bare elephants, camels, and asses.

5 And all the oxen feared them and were affrighted at them, and began to bite with their teeth and to devour, and to gore with their horns.

6 And they began, moreover, to devour those oxen; and behold all the children of the earth began to tremble and quake before them and to flee from them.

CHAPTER 87

1 And again I saw how they began to gore each other and to devour each other, and the earth began to cry aloud.

2 And I raised mine eyes again to heaven, and I saw in the vision, and behold there came forth from heaven beings who were like white men: and four went forth from that place and three with them.

3 And those three that had last come forth grasped me by my hand and took me up, away from the generations of the earth, and raised me up to a lofty place, and showed me a tower raised high above the earth, and all the hills were lower.

4 And one said unto me: ' Remain here till you see everything that befalls those elephants, camels and asses and the stars and the oxen, and all of them.'

CHAPTER 88

1 And I saw one of those four who had come forth first, and he seized that first star which had fallen from the heaven, and bound it hand and foot and cast it into an abyss: now that abyss was narrow and deep, and horrible and dark.

2 And one of them drew a sword, and gave it to those elephants and camels and asses: then they began to smite each other, and the whole earth quaked because of them.

3 And as I was beholding in the vision, lo, one of those four who had come forth stoned (them) from heaven, and gathered and took all the

great stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and bound them all hand and foot, and cast them in an abyss of the earth.

CHAPTER 89

1 And one of those four went to that white oxen and instructed him in a secret, without his being terrified: he was born an ox and became a man, and built for himself a ship and dwelt thereon; and three bulls dwelt with him in that ship was covered and roofed over.

2 And again I saw seven water torrents pouring out with much water unto the earth.

3 And I saw again, and behold chasm were opened on the inside of the earth, and that water began to swell and rise upon the surface, and I saw until the earth was covered with water.

4 And the water, the darkness, and mist increased upon it; and as I looked at the height of that water, that water had risen above the height of that enclosure, and was streaming over that enclosure, and it stood upon the earth.

5 And all the oxen were submerged and engulfed together until I saw how they sank and were swallowed up and perished in that water.

6 But that ship floated on the water, while all the oxen and elephants and camels and asses sank to the bottom with all the animals, so that I could no longer see them, and they were not able to escape, (but) perished and sank into the depths.

7 And again I saw in the vision till those water torrents were removed from that high roof, and the chasms of the earth were leveled up and other abysses were opened.

8 Then the water began to run down into these, till the waters vanished and the earth became visible; but that ship settled on the earth, and the darkness retired and light appeared.

9 But that white ox which had become a man came out of that vessel, and the three oxen with him, and one of those three was white like that ox, and one of them was red as blood, and one black: and that white ox departed from them.

10 And they began to bring forth beasts of the field and birds, so that there arose different kinds: lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, hyenas, wild boars, foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, and ravens; and among them was born a white ox.

11 And they began to bite and to chase one another; but that white bull which was born among them begat a wild ass and a white ox with it, and the wild asses multiplied.

12 But that white ox-calf which was born from him begat a black wild boar and a white sheep; and the former begat many boars, but that sheep begat twelve sheep.

13 And when those twelve sheep had grown, they gave up one of them to the asses, and those asses again gave up that sheep to the wolves, and that sheep grew up among the wolves.

14 And the ram led forth all the eleven sheep to live with it and to pasture with it among the wolves: and they multiplied and became many flocks of sheep.

15 And the wolves began to oppress the flock, and they oppressed them until they destroyed their little ones, and they cast their young into a river of much water: but those sheep began to cry aloud on account of their little ones, and to complain unto their Master.

16 And a sheep which had been saved from the wolves fled and escaped to the wild asses; and I saw the sheep how they lamented and cried, and besought their Master with all their might, till that Master of the sheep descended at the voice of the sheep from a lofty abode, and came to them and pastured them.

17 And He called that sheep which had escaped the wolves, and spoke with it concerning the wolves that it should admonish them not to touch the sheep.

18 And the sheep went to the wolves according to the word of the Master, and another sheep met it and went with it, and the two went and entered together into the assembly of those wolves, and spoke with them and admonished them not to touch the sheep from henceforth.

19 And thereupon I saw the wolves, and how they oppressed the sheep exceedingly with all their power; and the sheep cried aloud.

20 And the Master came to the sheep and they began to smite those wolves: and the wolves began to make lamentation; but the sheep became quiet and forthwith ceased to cry out.

21 And I saw the sheep till they departed from among the wolves; but the eyes of the wolves were blinded, and those wolves departed in pursuit of the sheep with all their power.

22 And the Master of the sheep went with them, as their leader, and all His sheep followed Him: and his face was dazzling and glorious and terrible to behold.

23 But the wolves began to pursue those sheep till they reached a sea of water.

24 And that sea was divided, and the water stood on this side and on that before their face, and their Master led them and placed Himself between them and the wolves.

25 And as those wolves did not yet see the sheep, they proceeded into the midst of that sea, and the wolves followed the sheep, and [those wolves] ran after them into that sea.

26 And when they saw the Master of the sheep, they turned to flee before His face, but that sea gathered itself together, and became as it had been created, and the water swelled and rose till it covered those wolves.

27 And I saw till all the wolves who pursued that flock perished and were drowned.

28 But the sheep escaped from that water and went forth into a wilderness, where there was no water and no grass; and they began to open their eyes and to see; and I saw the Master of the sheep pasturing them and giving them water to drink and grass to eat, and that sheep going and leading them.

29 And that sheep ascended to the summit of a certain lofty rock, and the Master of the sheep sent it to them. And they all stood at a distance.

30 And after that I saw the Master of the sheep who stood facing the flock, and His appearance was great and terrible and majestic, and all those sheep saw Him and were afraid before His face.

31 And they all feared and trembled before Him, and they cried to that sheep with them which was among them: ' We are not able to stand before our Master to behold Him.'

32 And that sheep which led them again ascended a second time to the summit of that rock, but the flock began to be blinded and to wander from the way, which he had showed them, but that sheep knew not thereof.

33 And the Master of the sheep was wrathful exceedingly against them, and that sheep discovered it, and went down from the summit of the rock, and came to the flock, and found the greatest part of them blinded and fallen away.

34 And when they saw it they feared and trembled at its presence, and desired to return to their folds.

35 And that sheep took other sheep with it, and came to those sheep which had fallen away, and began to slaughter every one that had gone astray and they began to fear its presence, and thus that sheep brought back those sheep that had fallen away, and they returned to their folds. That sheep began reproaching and slaughtering and punishing those who swore by the name of the golden calf

36 And I saw in this vision till that sheep became a man and built a tabernacle for the Master of the sheep, and placed all the sheep in that house.

37 And I saw till this sheep which had met that sheep which led them fell asleep: and I saw till all the great sheep perished and little ones arose in their place, and they came to a pasture, and approached a stream of water.

38 Then that sheep, their leader which had become a man, withdrew from them and fell asleep, and all the sheep sought it and cried over it with a great crying.

39 And I saw till they left off crying for that sheep and crossed that stream of water, and there arose the two sheep as leaders in the place of those which had led them and fallen asleep.²²⁴

²²⁴ literally: had fallen asleep and led them

40 And I saw till the sheep came to a goodly place, and a pleasant and glorious land, and I saw till those sheep were satisfied; and that house stood among them in the pleasant land.

41 And sometimes their eyes were opened, and sometimes blinded, till another sheep arose and led them and brought them all back, and their eyes were opened.

42 And the dogs and the foxes and the wild boars began to devour those sheep till the Master of the sheep raised up [another sheep] a ram from their midst, which led them.

43 And that ram began to butt on either side those dogs, foxes, and wild boars till he had destroyed many wild boars.

44 And that sheep whose eyes were opened saw that ram of the flock, till it forsook its glory and began to butt those sheep, and trampled upon them, and behaved itself unseemly.

45 And the Master of the sheep sent the lamb to another lamb and raised it to being a ram and leader of the sheep instead of that ram which had forsaken its glory.

46 And it went to it and spoke to it alone, and raised it to being a ram, and made it the prince and leader of the sheep; but during all these things those dogs oppressed the sheep.

47 And the first ram pursued that second ram, and that second ram arose and fled before it; and I saw till those dogs pulled down the first ram.

48 And that second ram arose and led the [little] sheep.

49 And those sheep grew and multiplied; but all the dogs, and foxes, and wild boars feared and fled before it, and that ram butted and killed the wild beasts, and those wild beasts had no longer any power among the sheep and robbed them no more of ought. And that ram begat many sheep and fell asleep; and a little sheep became ram in its stead, and became prince and leader of those sheep.

50 And that house became great and broad, and it was built for those sheep: (and) a tower lofty and great was built on the house for the Master of the sheep, and that house was low, but the tower was elevated and lofty, and the Master of the sheep stood on that tower and they offered a full table before Him.

51 And again I saw those sheep that they again erred and went many ways, and forsook that their house, and the Master of the sheep called some from among the sheep and sent them to the sheep, but the sheep began to slay them.

52 And one of them was saved and was not slain, and it sped away and cried aloud over the sheep; and they sought to slay it, but the Master of the sheep saved it from the sheep, and brought it up to me, and caused it to dwell there.

53 And many other sheep He sent to those sheep to testify unto them and lament over them.

54 And after that I saw that when they forsook the house of YHWH and His tower they fell away entirely, and their eyes were blinded; and I saw the Master of the sheep how He wrought much slaughter among them in their herds until those sheep invited that slaughter and betrayed His place.

55 And He gave them over into the hands of the lions and tigers, and wolves and hyenas, and into the hand of the foxes, and to all the wild beasts, and those wild beasts began to tear in pieces those sheep.

56 And I saw that He forsook that their house and their tower and gave them all into the hand of the lions, to tear and devour them, into the hand of all the wild beasts.

57 And I began to cry aloud with all my power, and to appeal to the Master of the sheep, and to represent to Him in regard to the sheep that they were devoured by all the wild beasts.

58 But He remained unmoved, though He saw it, and rejoiced that they were devoured and swallowed and robbed, and left them to be devoured in the hand of all the beasts.

59 And He called seventy shepherds, and cast those sheep to them that they might pasture them, and He spoke to the shepherds and their companions: ' Let each individual of you pasture the sheep henceforward, and everything that I shall command you that do you.

60 And I will deliver them over unto you duly numbered, and tell you which of them are to be destroyed-and them destroy you.'

61 And He gave over unto them those sheep. And He called another and spoke unto him:'

Observe and mark everything that the shepherds will do to those sheep; for they will destroy more of them than I have commanded them.

62 And every excess and the destruction which will be wrought through the shepherds, record (namely) how many they destroy according to my command, and how many according to their own caprice: record against every individual shepherd all the destruction he effects.

63 And read out before me by number how many they destroy, and how many they deliver over for destruction, that I may have this as a testimony against them, and know every deed of the shepherds, that I may comprehend and see what they do, whether or not they abide by my command which I have commanded them.

64 But they shall not know it, and you shall not declare it to them, nor admonish them, but only record against each individual all the destruction which the shepherds effect each in his time and lay it all before me.'

65 And I saw till those shepherds pastured in their season, and they began to slay and to destroy more than they were bidden, and they delivered those sheep into the hand of the lions.

66 And the lions and tigers eat and devoured the greater part of those sheep, and the wild boars eat along with them; and they burnt that tower and demolished that house.

67 And I became exceedingly sorrowful over that tower because that house of the sheep was demolished, and afterwards I was unable to see if those sheep entered that house.

68 And the shepherds and their associates delivered over those sheep to all the wild beasts, to devour them, and each one of them received in his time a definite number: it was written by the other in a book how many each one of them destroyed of them.

69 And each one slew and destroyed many more than was prescribed; and I began to weep and lament on account of those sheep.

70 And thus in the vision I saw that one who wrote, how he wrote down every one that was destroyed by those shepherds, day by day, and carried up and laid down and showed actually the whole book to the Master of the sheep- (even) everything that they had done, and all

that each one of them had made away with, and all that they had given over to destruction.

71 And the book was read before the Master of the sheep, and He took the book from his hand and read it and sealed it and laid it down.

72 And forthwith I saw how the shepherds pastured for twelve hours, and behold three of those sheep turned back and came and entered and began to build up all that had fallen down of that house; but the wild boars tried to hinder them, but they were not able.

73 And they began again to build as before, and they reared up that tower, and it was named the high tower; and they began again to place a table before the tower, but all the bread on it was polluted and not pure.

74 And as touching all this the eyes of those sheep were blinded so that they saw not, and (the eyes of) their shepherds likewise; and they delivered them in large numbers to their shepherds for destruction, and they trampled the sheep with their feet and devoured them.

75 And the Master of the sheep remained unmoved till all the sheep were dispersed over the field and mingled with them (i.e. the beasts), and they (i.e. the shepherds) did not save them out of the hand of the beasts.

76 And this one who wrote the book carried it up, and showed it and read it before the Master of the sheep, and implored Him on their account, and besought Him on their account as he showed Him all the doings of the shepherds, and gave testimony before Him against all the shepherds.

77 And he took the actual book and laid it down beside Him and departed.

CHAPTER 90

1 And I saw till that in this manner thirty-five shepherds undertook the pasturing (of the sheep), and they severally completed their periods as did the first; and others received them into their hands, to pasture them for their period, each shepherd in his own period.

2 And after that I saw in my vision all the birds of heaven coming, the eagles, the vultures, the kites, the ravens; but the eagles led all the

birds; and they began to devour those sheep, and to pick out their eyes and to devour their flesh.

3 And the sheep cried out because their flesh was being devoured by the birds, and as for me I looked and lamented in my sleep over that shepherd who pastured the sheep.

4 And I saw until those sheep were devoured by the dogs and eagles and kites, and they left neither flesh nor skin nor sinew remaining on them till only their bones stood there: and their bones too fell to the earth and the sheep became few.

5 And I saw until that twenty-three had undertaken the pasturing and completed in their several periods fifty-eight times.

6 But behold lambs were borne by those white sheep, and they began to open their eyes and to see, and to cry to the sheep.

7 Yea, they cried to them, but they did not hearken to what they said to them, but were exceedingly deaf, and their eyes were very exceedingly blinded.

8 And I saw in the vision how the ravens flew upon those lambs and took one of those lambs, and dashed the sheep in pieces and devoured them.

9 And I saw till horns grew upon those lambs, and the ravens cast down their horns; and I saw till there sprouted a great horn of one of those sheep, and their eyes were opened.

10 And it looked at them [and their eyes opened], and it cried to the sheep, and the rams saw it and all ran to it.

11 And notwithstanding all this those eagles and vultures and ravens and kites still kept tearing the sheep and swooping down upon them and devouring them: still the sheep remained silent, but the rams lamented and cried out.

12 And those ravens fought and battled with it and sought to lay low its horn, but they had no power over it.

13 And then I saw the shepherds coming; and those vultures and kites cried out loud to the ravens in order that they should smash the horn of that ram. And he waged war with them, in order that help might come.

14 And I saw until that man who writes down the names of the shepherds and exalts before the Master of the sheep had come; it was

he who helped him and revealed all things; thus help came down for that ram.

15 And I saw till the Master of the sheep came to them in wrath and all who saw him fled and descended into the darkness.

16 All the eagles and vultures and ravens and kites were gathered together, and there came with them all the sheep of the field, yea, they all came together, and helped each other to break that horn of the ram.

17 And I saw that man, who wrote the book according to the command of YHWH, till he opened that book concerning the destruction, which those twelve last, shepherds had wrought, and showed that they had destroyed much more than their predecessors, before the Master of the sheep.

18 And I saw till the Master of the sheep came unto them and took in His hand the staff of His wrath, and smote the earth, and the earth clave asunder, and all the beasts and all the birds of the heaven fell from among those sheep, and were swallowed up in the earth and it covered them.

19 And I saw till a great sword was given to the sheep, and the sheep proceeded against all the beasts of the field to slay them, and all the beasts and the birds of the heaven fled before their face.

20 And I saw till a throne was erected in the pleasant land, and the Master of the sheep sat Himself thereon, and the other took the sealed books and opened those books before the Master of the sheep.

21 And YHWH called those men the seven first white ones, and commanded that they should bring before Him, beginning with the first star which led the way, all the stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and they brought them all before Him.

22 And He said to that man who wrote before Him, being one of those seven white ones, and said unto him: ' Take those seventy shepherds to whom I delivered the sheep, and who taking them on their own authority slew more than I commanded them.'

23 And behold they were all bound, I saw, and they all stood before Him.

24 And the judgment was held first over the stars, and they were judged and found guilty, and went to the place of condemnation, and

they were cast into an abyss, full of fire and flaming, and full of pillars of fire.

25 And those seventy shepherds were judged and found guilty, and they were cast into that fiery abyss.

26 And I saw at that time how a like abyss was opened in the midst of the earth, full of fire, and they brought those blinded sheep, and they were all judged and found guilty and cast into this fiery abyss, and they burned; now this abyss was to the right of that house.

27 And I saw those sheep burning and their bones burning.

28 And I stood up to see till they folded up that old house; and carried off all the pillars, and all the beams and ornaments of the house were at the same time folded up with it, and they carried it off and laid it in a place in the south of the land.

29 And I saw till the Master of the sheep brought a new house greater and loftier than that first, and set it up in the place of the first which had been folded up: all its pillars were new, and its ornaments were new and larger than those of the first, the old one which He had taken away, and all the sheep were within it.

30 And I saw all the sheep, which had been left, and all the beasts on the earth, and all the birds of the heaven, falling down and doing homage to those sheep and making petition to and obeying them in every thing.

31 And thereafter those three who were clothed in white and had seized me by my hand [who had taken me up before], and the hand of that ram also seizing hold of me, they took me up and set me down in the midst of those sheep before the judgment took place.

32 And those sheep were all white, and their wool was abundant and clean.

33 And all that had been destroyed and dispersed, and all the beasts of the field, and all the birds of the heaven, assembled in that house, and the Master of the sheep rejoiced with great joy because they were all good and had returned to His house.

34 And I saw till they laid down that sword, which had been given to the sheep, and they brought it back into the house, and it was sealed before the presence of YHWH, and all the sheep were invited into that house, but it held them not.

35 And the eyes of them all were opened, and they saw the good, and there was not one among them that did not see.

36 And I saw that that house was large and broad and very full.

37 And I saw that a white ox was born, with large horns and all the beasts of the field and all the birds of the air feared him and made petition to him all the time.

38 And I saw till all their generations were transformed, and they all became white oxen; and the first among them became a lamb, and that lamb became a great animal and had great black horns on its head; and the Master of the sheep rejoiced over it and over all the oxen.

39 And I slept in their midst: and I awoke and saw everything.

40 This is the vision, which I saw while I slept, and I awoke and blessed YHWH of righteousness and gave Him glory.

41 Then I wept with a great weeping and my tears stayed not till I could no longer endure it: when I saw, they flowed on account of what I had seen; for everything shall come and be fulfilled, and all the deeds of men in their order were shown to me.

42 On that night I remembered the first dream, and because of it I wept and was troubled-because I had seen that vision.

Section 5

Chapters 91-108

The Epistle of Chanoch

CHAPTER 91

1 And now, my son Metushelach, call to me all your brothers
And gather together to me all the sons of thy mother;²²⁵
For the word calls me,
And the spirit is poured out upon me,
That I may show you everything

²²⁵ 2En. 1:10; 57:2

That shall befall you for ever.'

2 And there upon Metushelach went and summoned to him all his brothers and assembled his relatives.

3 And he spoke unto all the children of righteousness and said:

'Hear, you sons of Chanoch, all the words of your father,

And hearken aright to the voice of my mouth;

For I exhort you and say unto you, beloved:

4 Love uprightness and walk therein.

And draw not near to uprightness with a double heart,

And associate not with those of a double heart,

But walk in righteousness, my sons.

And it shall guide you on good paths,

And righteousness shall be your companion.

5 For I know that violence must increase on the earth,

And a great chastisement be executed on the earth,

And all unrighteousness comes to an end:

Yea, it shall be cut off from its roots,

And its whole structure be destroyed.

6 And unrighteousness shall again be consummated on the earth,

And all the deeds of unrighteousness and of violence

And transgression shall prevail in a twofold degree.

7 And when sin and unrighteousness and blasphemy

And violence in all kinds of deeds increase,

And apostasy and transgression and uncleanness increase,

A great chastisement shall come from heaven upon all these,

And the Set-apart YHWH will come forth with wrath and chastisement

To execute judgment on earth.

8 In those days violence shall be cut off from its roots,

And the roots of unrighteousness together with deceit,

And they shall be destroyed from under heaven.

9 And all the idols of the heathen shall be abandoned,
And the temples burned with fire,
And they shall remove them from the whole earth,
And they (i.e. the heathen) shall be cast into the judgment of fire,
And shall perish in wrath and in grievous judgment for ever.

10 And the righteous shall arise from their sleep,
And wisdom shall arise and be given unto them.

11 And they shall have rooted out the foundations of violence and the
structure of falsehood in it, to execute judgment.

12 And after that there shall arise the eighth week, that of
righteousness,
And a sword shall be given to it that a righteous judgment may be
executed on the oppressors,
And they shall be delivered into their hands.

13 And at its close they shall acquire riches through their
righteousness,
And a house shall be built for the kingly Temple of the Great One in
his glorious splendor, for all generations forever.

14 And after that, in the ninth week, the righteous judgment shall be
revealed in it for all the children of all the earth;
And all the workers of wickedness shall completely pass from all the
earth,
And they will be cast into the pit.
And all shall know the right, eternal way.
And the world shall be written down for destruction.
And all mankind shall look to the path of uprightness.

15 And after this, in the tenth week in the seventh part,
There shall be the great eternal judgment,
And the time of the great judgment,
In which He will execute vengeance among the angels.

16 And the first heaven shall depart and pass away,

And a new heaven shall appear,

And all the powers of the heavens shall rise for all eternity giving sevenfold light.

17 And after that there will be many weeks without number for ever,
And all shall be in goodness and righteousness,
And sin shall no more be mentioned forever.

18 And now I tell you, my sons, and show you
The paths of righteousness and the paths of violence.
Yea, I will show them to you again
That you may know what will come to pass.

19 And now, hearken unto me, my sons,
And walk in the paths of righteousness,
And walk not in the paths of violence;
For all who walk in the paths of unrighteousness shall be completely destroyed.'

CHAPTER 92

1 The book written by Chanoch- [Chanoch indeed wrote it and gave it to Metushelach, Chanoch the wisest of men and the chosen of the sons of men wrote this complete doctrine of wisdom, (which is) praised of all men and a judge of all the earth] for all my sins and for the future generations, to all who shall dwell on the earth who shall observe uprightness and shalom.

2 Let not your spirit be troubled on account of the times;
For the Set-apart and Great One has appointed days for all things.

3 And the righteous one shall arise from sleep,
[Shall arise] and walk in the paths of righteousness,
And all his path and conversation shall be in eternal goodness and grace.

4 He will be gracious to the righteous and give him eternal uprightness,

And He will give him power so that he shall be (endowed) with goodness and righteousness.

And he shall walk in eternal light.

5 And sin shall perish in darkness for ever,

And shall no more be seen from this day forth for evermore.

CHAPTER 93

1 And after that Chanoch both gave and began his discourse from the books.

2 And Chanoch said: 'Concerning the children of righteousness and concerning the chosen of the world, which come up from the plant of truth, I will speak these things,

Yea, I Chanoch will declare (them) unto you, my sons:

According to that which appeared to me in the heavenly vision,

And which I have known through the word of the watchers, the set-apart ones,

And have read all from the heavenly tablets.'

3 And Chanoch took up his discourse again and said:

'I was born the seventh in the first week,

While judgment and righteousness still endured.

4 And after me there shall arise in the second week

deceit and violence shall have sprung up;

And in it there shall be the first end.

And in it a man shall be saved;

And after it is ended unrighteousness shall grow up,

And a law shall be made for the sinners.

5 And after that in the third week at its close

A man shall be chosen as the plant of righteous judgment,

And his posterity shall become the plant of righteousness for evermore.

6 And after that in the fourth week, at its close,
Visions of the set-apart and righteous shall be seen,
And a law for all generations and an enclosure shall be made for them.

7 And after that in the fifth week, at its close,
The house of glory and dominion shall be built for ever.

8 And after that in the sixth week all who live in it shall be blinded,
And the hearts of all of them shall godlessly forsake wisdom.
And in it a man shall ascend;
And at its close the house of dominion shall be burnt with fire,
And the whole race of the chosen root shall be dispersed.

9 And after that in the seventh week shall an apostate generation arise,
And many shall be its deeds,
And all its deeds shall be apostate.

10 And at its close shall be chosen
The chosen righteous of the eternal plant of righteousness,
To receive sevenfold wisdom and knowledge concerning all His
creation.
And to understand the commandments.

11 [For who is there of all the children of men that is able to hear the
words of the Set-apart
One without being troubled? And who can think His thoughts? And
who is the man who can behold all the works of heaven?

12 and the corner-pillars upon which it rests, and sees a soul or a spirit
and could return to tell thereof, or ascend and see all their ends and
think them or do like them?

13 And who is there of all men that could know what is the length and
the breadth of all the earth, and to whom has been shown its shape?

14 Or what man is there who could discern the length of the heaven
and how great is its height, and upon what it is founded, and how great
is the number of the stars, and where all the luminaries rest?

CHAPTER 94

1 And now I say unto you, my sons, love righteousness and walk therein;

For the paths of righteousness are worthy of acceptation,

But the paths of unrighteousness shall suddenly be destroyed and vanish.

2 And to certain men of a generation shall the paths of violence and of death be revealed,

And they shall hold themselves afar from them,

And shall not follow them.

3 And now I say unto you the righteous:

Walk not in the paths of wickedness, nor in the paths of death,

And draw not near to them, lest you be destroyed.

4 But seek and choose for yourselves righteousness and an elect life,

And walk in the paths of shalom,

And you shall live and prosper.

5 And hold fast my words in the thoughts of your hearts,

And suffer them not to be effaced from your hearts;

For I know that sinners will tempt men to evilly-entreat wisdom,

So that no place may be found for her,

And no manner of temptation may minish.

6 Woe to those who build unrighteousness and oppression

And lay deceit as a foundation;

For they shall be suddenly overthrown,

And they shall have no shalom.

7 Woe to those who build their houses with sin;

For from all their foundations shall they be overthrown,

And by the sword shall they fall.

[And those who acquire gold and silver in judgment suddenly shall perish.]

8 Woe to you, you rich, for you have trusted in your riches,
And from your riches shall you depart,
Because you have not remembered the Most High in the days of your riches.

9 You have committed blasphemy and unrighteousness,
And have become ready for the day of slaughter,
And the day of darkness and the day of the great judgment.

10 Thus I speak and declare unto you:
He who has created you will overthrow you,
And for your fall there shall be no compassion,
And your Creator will rejoice at your destruction.

11 And your righteous ones in those days shall be
A reproach to the sinners and the godless.

CHAPTER 95

1 Oh that mine eyes were [a cloud of] waters
That I might weep over you,
And pour down my tears as a cloud of waters:
That so I might rest from my trouble of heart!

2 who has permitted you to practice reproaches and wickedness?
And so judgment shall overtake you, sinners.

3 Fear not the sinners, you righteous;
For again will YHWH deliver them into your hands,
That you may execute judgment upon them according to your desires.

4 Woe to you who fulminate anathemas, which cannot be reversed:
Healing shall therefore be far from you because of your sins.

5 Woe to you who requite your neighbor with evil;
For you shall be requited according to your works.

6 Woe to you, lying witnesses,

And to those who weigh out injustice,

For suddenly shall you perish.

7 Woe to you, sinners, for you persecute the righteous;

For you shall be delivered up and persecuted because of injustice,

And heavy shall its yoke be upon you.

CHAPTER 96

1 Be hopeful, you righteous; for suddenly shall the sinners perish before you,

And you shall have lordship over them according to your desires.

2 [And in the day of the tribulation of the sinners,

Your children shall mount and rise as eagles,

And higher than the vultures will be your nest,

And you shall ascend and enter the crevices of the earth,

And the clefts of the rock for ever as coney before the unrighteous,

And the sirens shall sigh because of you-and weep.]

3 Wherefore fear not, you that have suffered;

For healing shall be your portion,

And a bright light shall enlighten you,

And the voice of rest you shall hear from heaven.

4 Woe unto you, you sinners, for your riches make you appear like the righteous,

But your hearts convict you of being sinners,

And this fact shall be a testimony against you for a memorial of (your) evil deeds.

5 Woe to you who devour the finest of the wheat,

And drink wine in large bowls,

And tread under foot the lowly with your might.

6 Woe to you who drink water from every fountain,

For suddenly shall you be consumed and whither away,

Because you have forsaken the fountain of life.

7 Woe to you who work unrighteousness

And deceit and blasphemy:

It shall be a memorial against you for evil.

8 Woe to you, you mighty,

Who with might oppress the righteous?

For the day of your destruction is coming.

In those days many and good days shall come to the righteous-in the day of your judgment.²²⁶

CHAPTER 97

1 Believe, you righteous, that the sinners will become a shame

And perish in the day of unrighteousness.

2 Be it known unto you (you sinners) that the Most High is mindful of your destruction,

And the angels of heaven rejoice over your destruction.

3 What will you do, you sinners,

And whither will you flee on that Day of Judgment,

When you hear the voice of the prayer of the righteous?

4 Yea, you shall fare like unto them,

Against whom this word shall be a testimony:

" You have been companions of sinners."

5 And in those days the prayer of the righteous shall reach unto YHWH,

And for you the days of your judgment shall come.

6 And all the words of your unrighteousness shall be read out before the Great Set-apart One,

²²⁶ 1En. 5:7

And your faces shall be covered with shame,
And He will reject every work, which is grounded on unrighteousness.
7 Woe to you, you sinners, who live on the mid ocean and on the dry
land,
Whose remembrance is evil against you?
8 Woe to you who acquire silver and gold in unrighteousness and say:
" We have become rich with riches and have possessions;
And have acquired everything we have desired.
9 And now let us do what we purposed:
For we have gathered silver,
And many are the husbandmen in our houses."
And our granaries are (brim) full as with water,
10 Yea and like water your lies shall flow away;
For your riches shall not abide
But speedily ascend from you;
For you have acquired it all in unrighteousness,
And you shall be given over to a great curse.

CHAPTER 98

1 And now I swear unto you, to the wise and to the foolish,
For you shall have manifold experiences on the earth.
2 For you men shall put on more adornments than a woman,
And colored garments more than a virgin:
In royalty and in grandeur and in power,
And in silver and in gold and in purple,
And in splendor and in food they shall be poured out as water.
3 Therefore they shall be wanting in doctrine and wisdom,
And they shall perish thereby together with their possessions;
And with all their glory and their splendor,

And in shame and in slaughter and in great destitution,

Their spirits shall be cast into the furnace of fire.

4 I have sworn unto you, you sinners, as a mountain has not become a slave,

And a hill does not become the handmaid of a woman,

Even so sin has not been sent upon the earth,

But man of himself has created it,

And under a great curse shall they fall who commit it.

5 And barrenness has not been given to the woman,

But on account of the deeds of her own hands she dies without children.

6 I have sworn unto you, you sinners, by the Set-apart Great One,

That all your evil deeds are revealed in the heavens,

And that none of your deeds of oppression are covered and hidden.

7 And do not think in your spirit nor say in your heart that you do not know and that you do not see that every sin is every day recorded in heaven in the presence of the Most High.²²⁷

8 From henceforth you know that all your oppression wherewith you oppress is written down every day till the day of your judgment.

9 Woe to you, you fools, for through your folly shall you perish: and you transgress against the wise, and so good hap shall not be your portion.

10 And now, know you that you are prepared for the day of destruction: wherefore do not hope to live, you sinners, but you shall depart and die; for you know no ransom; for you are prepared for the day of the great judgment, for the day of tribulation and great shame for your spirits.

11 Woe to you, you obstinate of heart, who work wickedness and eat blood:²²⁸ Whence have you good things to eat and to drink and to be

²²⁷ 1En. 104:7; 2En. 50:1; Jer. 17:1; Rev. 20:17

²²⁸ 1En. 7:5; 98:11; Gen. 9:4; Lev. 17:11-12; Acts 15:20, 29; 21:25

filled? From all the good things which YHWH the Most High has placed in abundance on the earth; therefore you shall have no shalom.

12 Woe to you who love the deeds of unrighteousness: wherefore do you hope for good hap unto yourselves? Know that you shall be delivered into the hands of the righteous, and they shall cut off your necks and slay you, and have no mercy upon you.

13 Woe to you who rejoice in the tribulation of the righteous; for no grave shall be dug for you.

14 Woe to you who set at nought the words of the righteous; for you shall have no hope of life.

15 Woe to you who write down lying and godless words; for they write down their lies that men may hear them and act godlessly towards (their) neighbor.

16 Therefore they shall have no shalom but die a sudden death.

CHAPTER 99

1 Woe to you who work godlessness,
And glory in lying and extol them:
You shall perish, and no happy life shall be yours.

2 Woe to them who pervert the words of uprightness,
And transgress the eternal Torah,²²⁹
And transform themselves into what they were not [into sinners]:
They shall be trodden under foot upon the earth.

3 In those days make ready, you righteous, to raise your prayers as a memorial,
And place them as a testimony before the angels,
That they may place the sin of the sinners for a memorial before the Most High.

4 In those days the nations shall be stirred up,

²²⁹ 1En. 104:10-13; 2Tim. 2:15

And the families of the nations shall arise on the day of destruction.

5 And in those days the women shall become pregnant and abort²³⁰
their babies²³¹

And cast them out from their midst

Yea, they shall abandon their children (that are still) sucklings, and not
return to them,

And shall have no pity on their beloved ones.

6 And again I swear to you, you sinners that sin is prepared for a day
of unceasing bloodshed.

7 And they who worship stones, and grave images of gold and silver
and wood (and stone) and clay, and those who worship impure spirits
and demons, and all kinds of idols not according to knowledge, shall
get no manner of help from them.

8 And they shall become godless by reason of the folly of their hearts,

And their eyes shall be blinded through the fear of their hearts

And through visions in their dreams.

9 Through these they shall become godless and fearful;

For they shall have wrought all their work in a lie,

And shall have worshiped a stone:

Therefore in an instant shall they perish?

10 But in those days blessed are all they who accept the words of
wisdom, and understand them, And observe the paths of the Most
High, and walk in the path of His righteousness,

And become not godless with the godless; For they shall be saved.

11 Woe to you who spread evil to your neighbors;

For you shall be slain in Sheol.

12 Woe to you who make deceitful and false measures,

And (to them) who cause bitterness on the earth;

²³⁰ Ethiopic: MASIT a verb meaning “to pluck or tear out”; “to violently remove”;
“to carry off” or “to rob”.

²³¹ 1En. 69:12; Jasher 2:20

For they shall thereby be utterly consumed.

13 Woe to you who build your houses through the grievous toil of others,

And all their building materials are the bricks and stones of sin;

I tell you, you shall have no shalom.

14 Woe to them who reject the measure and eternal heritage of their fathers

And whose souls follow after idols;

For they shall have no rest.

15 Woe to them who work unrighteousness and help oppression,

And slay their neighbors until the day of the great judgment.

16 For He shall cast down your glory,

And bring affliction on your hearts,

And shall arouse His fierce indignation

And destroy you all with the sword;

And all the set-apart and righteous shall remember your sins.

CHAPTER 100

1 And in those days in one place the fathers together with their sons shall be smitten

And brothers one with another shall fall in death

Till the streams flow with their blood.

2 For a man shall not withhold his hand from slaying his sons and his sons' sons,

And the sinner shall not withhold his hand from his honored brother:

From dawn till sunset they shall slay one another.

3 And the horse shall walk up to the breast in the blood of sinners,

And the chariot shall be submerged to its height.

4 In those days the angels shall descend into the secret places

And gather together into one place all those who brought down sin

And the Most High will arise on that Day of Judgment

To execute great judgment among sinners.

5 And over all the righteous and set-apart He will appoint guardians
from among the set-apart angels

To guard them as the apple of an eye,

Until He makes an end of all wickedness and all sin,

And though the righteous sleeps a long sleep, they have naught to fear.

6 And (then) the children of the earth shall see the wise in security,

And shall understand all the words of this book,

And recognize that their riches shall not be able to save them

In the overthrow of their sins.

7 Woe to you, Sinners, on the day of strong anguish,

You who afflict the righteous and burn them with fire:

You shall be requited according to your works.

8 Woe to you, you obstinate of heart,

Who watch in order to devise wickedness?

Therefore shall fear come upon you?

And there shall be none to help you.

9 Woe to you, you sinners, on account of the words of your mouth,

And on account of the deeds of your hands which your godlessness as
wrought,

In blazing flames burning worse than fire shall you burn?

10 And now, know you that from the angels He will inquire as to your
deeds in heaven, from the sun and from the moon and from the stars in
reference to your sins because upon the earth you execute judgment on
the righteous.

11 And He will summon to testify against you every cloud and mist
and dew and rain; for they shall all be withheld because of you from
descending upon you, and they shall be mindful of your sins.

12 And now give presents to the rain that it be not withheld from
descending upon you, nor yet the dew, when it has received gold and
silver from you that it may descend. When the hoarfrost and snow with

their chilliness, and all the snowstorms with all their plagues fall upon you, in those days you shall not be able to stand before them.

CHAPTER 101

1 Observe the heaven, you children of heaven, and every work of the Most High, and fear you Him and work no evil in His presence.

2 If He closes the windows of heaven, and withholds the rain and the dew from descending on the earth on your account, what will you do then?

3 And if He sends His anger upon you because of your deeds, you cannot petition Him; for you spoke proud and insolent words against His righteousness: therefore you shall have no shalom.

4 And see you not the sailors of the ships, how their ships are tossed to and fro by the waves, and are shaken by the winds, and are in sore trouble?

5 And therefore do they fear because all their goodly possessions go upon the sea with them, and they have evil forebodings of heart that the sea will swallow them and they will perish therein.

6 Are not the entire sea and all its waters, and all its movements, the work of the Most High, and has He not set limits to its doings, and confined it throughout by the sand?

7 And at His reproof it is afraid and dries up, and all its fish die and all that is in it; But you sinners that are on the earth fear Him not. Has He not made the heaven and the earth, and all that is therein?

8 Who has given understanding and wisdom to everything that moves on the earth and in the sea?

9 Do not the sailors of the ships fear the sea? Yet sinners fear not the Most High.

CHAPTER 102

1 In those days when He has brought a grievous fire upon you,
Whither will you flee, and where will you find deliverance?

And when He launches forth His Word against you Will you not be affrighted and fear?

2 And all the luminaries shall be affrighted with great fear,
And all the earth shall be affrighted and tremble and be alarmed.

3 And all the angels shall execute their commands
And shall seek to hide themselves from the presence of the Great
Glory,

And the children of earth shall tremble and quake;
And you sinners shall be cursed for ever,
And you shall have no shalom.

4 Fear you not, you souls of the righteous,
And be hopeful you that have died in righteousness.

5 And grieve not if your soul into Sheol has descended in grief,
And that in your life your body fared not according to your goodness,
But wait for the day of the judgment of sinners
And for the day of cursing and chastisement.

6 And yet when you die the sinners speak over you:

"As we die, so die the righteous,
And what benefit do they reap for their deeds?"

7 Behold, even as we, so do they die in grief and darkness,
And what have they more than we?
From henceforth we are equal.

8 And what will they receive and what will they see for ever?

Behold, they too have died,
And henceforth for ever shall they see no light."

9 I tell you, you sinners, you are content to eat and drink,²³² and rob
and sin, and strip men naked, and acquire wealth and see good days.

10 Have you seen the righteous how their end falls out, that no manner
of violence is found in them till their death?"

²³² Mt. 24:37-38 (note the context "as in the days of Noach")

11 Nevertheless they perished and became as though they had not been, and their spirits descended into Sheol in tribulation."

CHAPTER 103

1 Now, therefore, I swear to you, the righteous, by the glory of the Great and Honored and Mighty One in dominion,

2 and by His greatness I swear to you.

I know a mystery

And have read the heavenly tablets,

And have seen the set-apart books,

And have found written therein and inscribed regarding them:

3 That all goodness and joy and glory are prepared for them,

And written down for the spirits of those who have died in righteousness,

And that manifold good shall be given to you in recompense for your labors,

And that your lot is abundantly beyond the lot of the living.

4 And the spirits of you who have died in righteousness shall live and rejoice,

And their spirits shall not perish, nor their memorial from before the face of the Great One unto all the generations of the world: wherefore no longer fear their contumely.

5 Woe to you, you sinners, when you have died,

If you die in the wealth of your sins,

And those who are like you say regarding you:

'Blessed are the sinners: they have seen all their days.

6 And how they have died in prosperity and in wealth,

And have not seen tribulation or murder in their life;

And they have died in honor,

And judgment has not been executed on them during their life."

7 Know you that their souls will be made to descend into Sheol

And they shall be wretched in their great tribulation.

8 And into darkness and chains and a burning flame where there is grievous judgment shall your spirits enter;

And the great judgment shall be for all the generations of the world.

Woe to you, for you shall have no shalom.

9 Say not in regard to the righteous and good who are in life:

" In our troubled days we have toiled laboriously and experienced every trouble,

And met with much evil and been consumed,

And have become few and our spirit small.

10 And we have been destroyed and have not found any to help us even with a word:

We have been tortured [and destroyed], and not hoped to see life from day to day.

11 We hoped to be the head and have become the tail:

We have toiled laboriously and had no satisfaction in our toil;

And we have become the food of the sinners and the unrighteous,

And they have laid their yoke heavily upon us.

12 They have had dominion over us that hated us and smote us;

And to those that hated us we have bowed our necks²³³

But they pitied us not.

13 We desired to get away from them that we might escape and be at rest,

But found no place whereunto we should flee and be safe from them.

14 And are complained to the rulers in our tribulation,

And cried out against those who devoured us,

But they did not attend to our cries

And would not hearken to our voice.

²³³ i.e. to be beheaded see Rev. 20:4

15 And they helped those who robbed us and devoured us and those who made us few; and they concealed their oppression, and they did not remove from us the yoke of those that devoured us and dispersed us and murdered us, and they concealed their murder, and remembered not that they had lifted up their hands against us.

CHAPTER 104

1 I swear unto you, that in heaven the angels remember you for good before the glory of the Great One: and your names are written before the glory of the Great One.

2 Be hopeful; for aforesaid you were put to shame through ill and affliction; but now you shall shine as the lights of heaven, you shall shine and you shall be seen, and the gates of heaven shall be opened to you.

3 And in your cry, cry for judgment, and it shall appear to you; for all your tribulation shall be visited on the rulers, and on all who helped those who plundered you.

4 Be hopeful, and cast not away your hopes for you shall have great joy as the angels of heaven.

5 What shall you be obliged to do? You shall not have to hide on the day of the great judgment and you shall not be found as sinners, and the eternal judgment shall be far from you for all the generations of the world.

6 And now fear not, you righteous, when you see the sinners growing strong and prospering in their ways: be not companions with them, but keep afar from their violence; for you shall become companions of the hosts of heaven. And, although you sinners say: "

7 All our sins shall not be searched out and be written down," nevertheless they shall write down all your sins every day.²³⁴

8 And now I show unto you that light and darkness, day and night, see all your sins.

²³⁴ Jer. 17:1; Rev. 20:12; 1En. 98:7; 2En. 50:1

9 Be not godless in your hearts, and lie not and alter not the words of uprightness, nor charge with lying the words of the Set-apart Great One, nor take account of your idols; for all your lying and all your godlessness issue not in righteousness but in great sin.

10 And now I know this mystery, that sinners will alter and pervert the words of righteousness in many ways, and will speak wicked words, and lie, and practice great deceits, and write books concerning their words.

11 But when they write down truthfully all my words in their languages, and do not change or minish ought from my words but write them all down truthfully -all that I first testified concerning them.

12 Then, I know another mystery, that books will be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom.

13 And to them shall the books be given, and they shall believe in them and rejoice over them, and then shall all the righteous who have learnt there from all the paths of uprightness be recompensed.¹²³⁵

CHAPTER 105

1 In those days YHWH bade (them) to summon and testify to the children of earth concerning their wisdom: Show (it) unto them; for you are their guides, and recompense over the whole earth.

2 For I and My son will be united with them forever in the paths of uprightness in their lives; and you shall have shalom: rejoice, you children of uprightness. Amen.

CHAPTER 106

1 And after some days I took a wife foe my son Metushelach and she bore a son and called his name Lamech, and said "Righteousness has been lowered to this day. And when he grew up, he took a wife and she had a child.

²³⁵ 1En. 104:10-13; 1En. 99:2; 2Tim. 2:15

2 And his body was white as snow and red as the blooming of a rose, and the hair of his head and his long locks were white as wool, and his eyes beautiful. And when he opened his eyes, he lighted up the whole house like the sun, and the whole house was very bright.

3 And thereupon he arose in the hands of the midwife, opened his mouth, and conversed with YHWH of righteousness.

4 And his father Lamech was afraid of him and fled, and came to his father Metushelach.

5 And he said unto him: ' I have begotten a strange son, diverse from and unlike man, and resembling the sons of the Elohim of heaven; and his nature is different and he is not like us, and his eyes are as the rays of the sun, and his countenance is glorious.

6 And it seems to me that he is not sprung from me but from the angels, and I fear that in his days a wonder may be wrought on the earth.²³⁶

7 And now, my father, I am here to petition you and implore you that you may go to Chanoch, our father, and learn from him the truth, for his dwelling-place is among the angels.'

8 And when Metushelach heard the words of his son, he came to me to the ends of the earth; for he had heard that I was there, and he cried aloud, and I heard his voice and I came to him.

9 And I said unto him: ' Behold, here am I, my son, wherefore hast you come to me?' And he answered and said: ' Because of a great cause of anxiety have I come to you, and because of a disturbing vision have I approached.

10 And now, my father, hear me: unto Lamech my son there has been born a son, the like of whom there is none, and his nature is not like man's nature, and the color of his body is whiter than snow and redder than the bloom of a rose, and the hair of his head is whiter than white wool, and his eyes are like the rays of the sun, and he opened his eyes and thereupon lighted up the whole house.

11 And he arose in the hands of the midwife, and opened his mouth and blessed YHWH of heaven.

²³⁶ 1En. 65:1-5; 1QApGen. Col. 3-6

12 And his father Lamech became afraid and fled to me, and did not believe that he was sprung from him, but that he was in the likeness of the angels of heaven; and behold I have come to you that you may make known to me the truth.'

13 And I, Chanoch, answered and said unto him: 'YHWH will restore his Torah on the earth, and I have already seen in a vision, and made known to you that in the days of my father Yared some of the angels of heaven transgressed the word of YHWH.

14 And behold they commit sin and transgress the Torah, and have perverted their ways with women and commit sin with them, and have married some of them, and have begot children by them. And they shall produce on the earth giants not according to the spirit, but according to the flesh, and there shall be a great punishment on the earth, and the earth shall be cleansed from all impurity.²³⁷

15 Yea, there shall come a great destruction over the whole earth, and there shall be a deluge and a great destruction for one year.²³⁸

16 And this son who has been born unto you shall be left on the earth, and his three children shall be saved with him: when all mankind that are on the earth shall die [he and his sons shall be saved].²³⁹

17 And upon the earth, they will give birth to tall ones, not of the spirit but of the flesh. And there will be a great plague on the earth and the earth will be cleansed from all the corruption.

18 And now make known to thy son Lamech that he is in truth his son, and call his name Noach; for he shall be left to you, and he and his sons shall be saved from the destruction, which shall come upon the earth on account of all the sin and all the unrighteousness, which shall be consummated on the earth in his days.²⁴⁰

19 And after that there shall be still more unrighteousness than that which was first consummated in his days; for I know the mysteries of YHWH; for the set-apart ones have showed me, and I have read (them) in the heavenly tablets.

²³⁷ Gen. 6:2; 7:2

²³⁸ Gen. 6:17; 7:11; 8:13; 1En. 10:2

²³⁹ See notes to 1En. 106:18

²⁴⁰ Gen. 6:8; 1Pt. 3:20; Heb. 11:7; Wisdom 14:6; 1Enoch 106:16

CHAPTER 107

1 And I saw written on them that generation upon generation shall do wickedness in this way and evil would continue, till a generation of righteousness, and evil and wickedness is ended and violence passes away from the earth, and all manner of good comes upon it.

2 And now, go to your son Lamech and make known that this child is in truth his son, and that (this) is no lie.'

3 And when Metushelach had heard the words of his father Chanoch-for he had shown to him everything in secret-he returned and showed (them) to him and called the name of that son Noach; for he will comfort the earth after all the destruction.

CHAPTER 108

1 Another book which Chanoch wrote for his son Metushelach and for those who will come after him, and keep the Torah in the last days.²⁴¹

2 You who have done good shall wait for those days till an end is made of those who work evil; and an end of the might of the transgressors.

3 And wait you indeed till sin has passed away, for their names shall be blotted out of the book of life²⁴² and out of the set-apart books, and their seed shall be destroyed for ever, and their spirits shall be slain, and they shall cry and make lamentation in a place that is a chaotic wilderness, and in the fire shall they burn; for there is no earth there.

4 And I saw there something like an invisible cloud; for by reason of its depth I could not look over, and I saw a flame of fire blazing brightly, and things like shining mountains circling and sweeping to and fro.

5 And I asked one of the set-apart angels who were with me and said unto him: 'What is this shining thing? For it is not a heaven but only

²⁴¹ 1En. 1:1

²⁴² Ex. 32:32-33; Dt. 29:20; Ps. 69:20; 109:13; Dan. 12:1-2; Rev. 3:5; 20:12, 15

the flame of a blazing fire, and the voice of weeping and crying and lamentation and strong pain.'

6 And he said unto me: 'This place which you sees-here are cast the spirits of sinners and blasphemers, and of those who work wickedness, and of those who pervert everything that YHWH has spoken through the mouth of the prophets-(even) the things that shall be.

7 For some of them are written and inscribed above in the heaven,²⁴³ in order that the angels may read them and know that which shall befall the sinners, and the spirits of the humble, and of those who have afflicted their bodies, and been recompensed by Elohim; and of those who have been put to shame by wicked men:

8 Who love Elohim and loved neither gold nor silver nor any of the good things which are in the world, but gave over their bodies to torture.

9 Who, since they came into being, longed not after earthly food, but regarded everything as a passing breath, and lived accordingly, and YHWH tried them much, and their spirits were found pure so that they should bless His name.

10 And all the blessings destined for them I have recounted in the books. And he has assigned them their recompense, because they have been found to be such as loved heaven more than their life in the world, and though they were trodden under foot of wicked men, and experienced abuse and reviling from them and were put to shame, yet they blessed Me.

11 And now I will summon the spirits of the good who belong to the generation of light, and I will transform those who were born in darkness, who in the flesh were not recompensed with such honor as their faithfulness deserved.

12 And I will bring forth in shining light those who have loved My set-apart name, and I will seat each on the throne of his honor.

13 And they shall be resplendent for times without number; for righteousness is the judgment of Elohim; for to the faithful

²⁴³ 2En. 40:11 (40:13 some editions); 53:2; 64:5

14 He will give faithfulness in the habitation of upright paths. And they shall see those who were, born in darkness led into darkness, while the righteous shall be resplendent.

15 And the sinners shall cry aloud and see them resplendent, and they indeed will go where days and seasons are prescribed for them.'

Sefer Sodot Chanoch

**THE
BOOK
OF THE
SECRETS
OF
ENOCH**

Translated out of the Slavonic by W.R. Morfill.

Revised, edited and annotated

**By
James Scott Trimm**

Introduction to 2Enoch

In addition to 1Enoch there is also a Second Book of Enoch known as “The Book of the Secrets of Enoch”. No copies of this book have been found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, nor have any Hebrew, Aramaic or Greek fragments come to light, instead only copies in ancient Slavonic have survived. None-the-less it is clear that the Slavonic was translated from Greek and that the Greek almost certainly had come from a Hebrew or Aramaic original.

Scholars have long noted that in ancient literature there are ancient quotations from, and citations of the Book of Enoch, which have no known parallels in 1Enoch. Some of these have been found to have their sources in 2Enoch.

I first had the pleasure of reading 2Enoch when I was only fourteen years old. I found a volume in my father’s library titled “The Lost Books of the Bible and the Forgotten Books of Eden” which included Morfill’s translation of the Secrets of Enoch. Through this book I found myself transported to whole new worlds and heavens. It is therefore with great personal satisfaction that I am able to now offer to the public a new and revised English version of this spectacular book. W. R. Morfill originally made the present translation of 2Enoch in 1896. I have substantially modified his translation based on my own research of the text of the book, as well as my own efforts to reach to the underlying Hebrew behind the Slavonic text. The result is a fresh new text of 2Enoch, which in many ways restores the Hebraic Roots of the original Hebrew of this book.

For those wishing to do more research on this book, another English version is available in Old Testament Pseudepigrapha Volume 1. The OTP translation includes Chapters 69-73, which goes on to cover details of the life of Enoch’s son Methuselah and the generations, which followed up to Melchizadek. These chapters were lacking in the copy, which Morfill worked from.

ספר סודות חנוך

Sefer Sodot Chanoch

(The Book of the Secrets of Enoch - 2Enoch)

CHAPTER 1

1 There was a wise man, a great artificer, and YHWH conceived love for him and received him, that he should behold the uppermost dwellings and be an eye-witness of the wise and great and inconceivable and immutable realm of Elohim Almighty, of the very wonderful and glorious and bright and many-eyed station of YHWH's servants, and of the inaccessible throne of YHWH, and of the degrees and manifestations of the incorporeal hosts, and of the ineffable ministration of the multitude of the elements, and of the various apparition and inexpressible singing of the host of Cherubim, and of the boundless light.

2 At that time, he said, when my one hundred and sixty-fifth year was completed, I begat my son Matushelach.

3 After this too I lived two hundred years and completed of all the years of my life three hundred and sixty-five years.²⁴⁴

4 On the first day of the month I was in my house alone²⁴⁵ and was resting on my bed and slept.

5 And when I was asleep, great distress came up into my heart, and I was weeping with my eyes in sleep, and I could not understand what this distress was, or what would happen to me.

6 And there appeared to me two men, exceeding big, so that I never saw such on earth; their faces were shining like the sun, their eyes too were like a burning light, and from their lips was fire coming forth

²⁴⁴ Gen. 5:23

²⁴⁵ 1En. 12:1

with clothing and singing of various kinds in appearance purple, their wings were brighter than gold, their hands whiter than snow.

7 They were standing at the head of my bed and began to call me²⁴⁶ by my name.

8 And I arose from my sleep and saw clearly those two men standing in front of me.

9 And I saluted them and was seized with fear and the appearance of my face was changed from terror, and those men said to me:

10 Have courage, Chanoch, do not fear; the eternal Elohim sent us to you, and lo! You shall today ascend with us into heaven, and you shall tell your sons and all your household all that they shall do without you on earth in your house, and let no one seek you till YHWH return you to them.

11 And I made haste to obey them and went out from my house, and made to the doors, as it was ordered me, and summoned my sons Matushelach and Regim²⁴⁷ and Gaidad²⁴⁸ and made known to them all the marvels those men had told me.

CHAPTER 2

1 Listen to me, my children, I know not where I go, or what will befall me; now therefore, my children, I tell you: turn not from Elohim before the face of the vain, who made not Heaven and earth, for these shall perish and those who worship them, and may YHWH make confident your hearts in the fear of him. And now, my children let no one think to seek me, until YHWH returns me to you.

²⁴⁶ 1En. 12:4

²⁴⁷ The Slavonic has “Regim” and in some copies Rigim. The Hebrew was likely רגמ “Regem” (Strong’s 7276)

²⁴⁸ The Slavonic has “Gaidad” which may be from Greek Γαϊδαδ from a Hebrew אַדָּד “Adad” (Strong’s 5752)

CHAPTER 3

1 It came to pass, when Chanoch had told his sons, that the angels took him on to their wings and bore him up on to the first heaven and placed him on the clouds. And there I looked, and again I looked higher, and saw the ether, and they placed me on the first heaven and showed me a very great Sea, greater than the earthly sea.

CHAPTER 4

1 They brought before my face the elders and rulers of the stellar orders, and showed me two hundred angels, who rule the stars and their services to the heavens, and fly with their wings and come round all those who sail.

CHAPTER 5

1 And here I looked down and saw the treasure houses of the snow, and the angels who keep their terrible store-houses, and the clouds whence they come out and into which they go.²⁴⁹

CHAPTER 6

1 They showed me the treasure house of the dew, like oil of the olive, and the appearance of its form, as of all the flowers of the earth; further many angels guarding the treasure-houses of these things, and how they are made to shut and open.

²⁴⁹ 1En. 34:2; 2En. 40:7; Job 38:22

CHAPTER 7

1 And those men took me and led me up on to the second heaven, and showed me darkness, greater than earthly darkness, and there I saw prisoners hanging, watched, awaiting the great and boundless judgment, and these angels were dark looking, more than earthly darkness, and incessantly making weeping through all hours.

2 And I said to the men who were with me: Wherefore are these incessantly tortured? They answered me: These are Elohim's apostates, who obeyed not Elohim's commands, but took counsel with their own will, and turned away with their prince, who also is fastened on the fifth heaven.²⁵⁰

3 And I felt great pity for them, and they saluted me, and said to me: Man of Elohim, pray for us to YHWH; and I answered to them: Who am I, a mortal man that I should pray for angels? Who knows whither I go, or what will befall me? Or who will pray for me?²⁵¹

CHAPTER 8

1 And those men took me thence, and led me up on to the third heaven,²⁵² and placed me there; and I looked downwards, and saw the produce of these places, such as have never been known for goodness.

2 And I saw all the sweet-flowering trees and beheld their fruits, which were sweet-smelling, and all the foods borne by them bubbling with fragrant exhalation.

3 And in the midst of the trees that of life,²⁵³ in that place whereon YHWH rests, when he goes up into Pardes; and this tree is of ineffable goodness and fragrance, and adorned more than every existing thing;

²⁵⁰ 2En. 7:1-2; 40:10; 1En. 18:14; 64:1-2

²⁵¹ 1En. 13:4-7

²⁵² 2Cor. 12:1-4

²⁵³ 1En. 24:4-5; 25:4

and on all sides it is in form gold-looking and vermilion and fire-like and covers all, and it has produce from all fruits.²⁵⁴

4 Its root is in the garden at the earth's end.

5 And Pardes is between corruptibility and incorruptibility.

6 And two springs come out which send forth honey and milk, and their springs send forth oil and wine, and they separate into four parts, and go round with quiet course, and go down into the PARDES OF EDEN, between corruptibility and incorruptibility.²⁵⁵

7 And thence they go forth along the earth, and have a revolution to their circle even as other elements.

8 And here there is no unfruitful tree, and every place is blessed.

9 And there are three hundred angels very bright, who keep the garden, and with incessant sweet singing and never-silent voices serve YHWH throughout all days and hours.

10 And I said: How very sweet is this place, and those men said to me:

CHAPTER 9

1 This place, O Chanoch, is prepared for the righteous, who endure all manner of offence from those that exasperate their souls, who avert their eyes from iniquity, and make righteous judgment, and give bread to the hungry, and cover the naked with clothing,²⁵⁶ and raise up the fallen, and help injured orphans, and who walk without fault before the face of YHWH, and serve him alone, and for them is prepared this place for eternal inheritance.²⁵⁷

²⁵⁴ 2En. 8:1-10:3; 1En. 24:1-25:7

²⁵⁵ Rev. 22:1

²⁵⁶ 2En. 63:1

²⁵⁷ Mt. 7:20; 25:34

CHAPTER 10

1 And those two men led me up on to the Northern side, and showed me there a very terrible place, and there were all manner of tortures in that place: cruel darkness and un-illumined gloom, and there is no light there, but murky fire constantly flaming aloft, and there is a fiery river coming forth, and that whole place is everywhere fire, and everywhere there is frost and ice, thirst and shivering, while the bonds are very cruel, and the angels fearful and merciless, bearing angry weapons, merciless torture, and I said:

2 Woe, woe, how very terrible is this place.

3 And those men said to me: This place, O Chanoch, is prepared for those who dishonor Elohim, who on earth practice sin against nature, which is child-corruption after the sodomitic fashion, magic-making, enchantments and devilish witchcrafts, and who boast of their wicked deeds, stealing, lies, calumnies, envy, rancor, fornication, murder, and who, accursed, steal the souls of men, who, seeing the poor take away their goods and themselves wax rich, injuring them for other men's goods; who being able to satisfy the empty, made the hungering to die; being able to clothe, stripped the naked; and who knew not their creator, and bowed to the soulless and lifeless gods, who cannot see nor hear, vain gods, who also built hewn images and bow down to unclean handiwork, for all these is prepared this place among these, for eternal inheritance.

CHAPTER 11

1 Those men took me, and led me up on to the fourth heaven, and showed me all the successive goings, and all the rays of the light of sun²⁵⁸ and moon.²⁵⁹

2 And I measure their goings, and compared their light, and saw that the sun's light is greater than the moon's.²⁶⁰

²⁵⁸ 1En. 72; 78

²⁵⁹ 1En. 73-74; 78

²⁶⁰ 1En. 78:4

3 Its circle and the wheels on which it goes always, like the wind going past with very marvelous speed, and day and night it has no rest.

4 Its passage and return are accompanied by four great stars, and each star has under it a thousand stars, to the right of the sun's wheel, and by four to the left, each having under it a thousand stars, altogether eight thousand, issuing with the sun continually.

5 And by day fifteen myriads of angels attend it, and by night a thousand.

6 And six-winged ones issue with the angels before the sun's wheel into the fiery flames, and a hundred angels kindle the sun and set it alight.

CHAPTER 12

1 And I looked and saw other flying elements of the sun, whose names are Seraphim,²⁶¹ marvelous and wonderful, with feet and tails in the form of a lion, and a crocodile's head, their appearance is empurpled, like the rainbow; their size is nine hundred measures, their wings are like those of angels, each has twelve, and they attend and accompany the sun, bearing heat and dew, as it is ordered them from Elohim.

2 Thus the sun revolves and goes, and rises under the heaven, and its course goes under the earth with the light of its ray's incessantly.²⁶²

²⁶¹ The Slavonic text reads "Phoenixes and Chalkydri" Since only one type of being is described, it appears that these are two names for the same class of being. "Chalkydri" or "brass serpents", Probably connected to Numbers 21:8-9 where Moshe is told to make a "fiery serpent" (שֶׁרֶפִּי) and set it up on a pole. Moshe then raises up a "serpent of brass" (נֹחַשׁ הַנְּחָשֶׁת) in the wilderness. The Hebrew word "Seraphim" (שֶׁרָפִיִּים) can mean "fiery serpents" or can refer to the class of angelic beings known as Seraphim (as in Isaiah 6). In 2En. 19:3 they are grouped with the Cherubim. 1Enoch 20:7 mentions the "serpents" (δρακοντων in the Greek) and Cherubim. The root for Seraphim (שֶׁרֶפִּי) is a verb meaning "to burn" or "to shine". At some stage a Greek translator or scribe may have added "phoenixes" to supply a Hellenistic parallel, perhaps for an Alexandrian audience (due to the Egyptian origin of the Phoenix legend). (See note to 1Enoch 20:7.)

²⁶² 1En. 72; 78

CHAPTER 13

1 Those men bore me away to the east, and placed me at the sun's gates, where the sun goes forth according to the regulation of the seasons and the circuit of the months of the whole year, and the number of the hours day and night.

2 And I saw six gates²⁶³ open, each gate having sixty-one stadia and a quarter of one stadium, and I measured them truly, and understood their size to be so much, through which the sun goes forth, and goes to the west, and is made even, and rises throughout all the months, and turns back again from the six gates according to the succession of the seasons; thus the period of the whole year is finished after the returns of the four seasons.

CHAPTER 14

1 And again those men led me away to the western parts, and showed me six great gates open corresponding to the eastern gates, opposite to where the sun sets,²⁶⁴ according to the number of the days three hundred and sixty-five and a quarter.

2 Thus again it goes down to the western gates, and draws away its light, the greatness of its brightness, under the earth; for since the crown of its shining is in heaven with YHWH, and guarded by four hundred angels, while the sun goes round on wheel under the earth, and stands seven great hours in night, and spends half its course under the earth, when it comes to the eastern approach in the eighth hour of the night, it brings its lights, and the crown of shining, and the sun flames forth more than fire.²⁶⁵

²⁶³ 1En. 72:3

²⁶⁴ 1En. 72:3

²⁶⁵ Apoc. of Moses (Tisc. Ed. P. 16)

CHAPTER 15

1 Then the elements of the sun, called Seraphim²⁶⁶ break into song, therefore every bird flutters with its wings, rejoicing at the giver of light, and they broke into song at the command of YHWH.

2 The giver of light comes to give brightness to the whole world, and the morning guard takes shape, which is the rays of the sun, and the sun of the earth goes out, and receives its brightness to light up the whole face of the earth, and they showed me this calculation of the sun's going.

3 And the gates which it enters, these are the great gates of the calculation of the hours of the year; for this reason the sun is a great creation, whose circuit lasts twenty-eight years, and begins again from the beginning.

CHAPTER 16

1 Those men showed me the other course that of the moon,²⁶⁷ twelve great gates, crowned from west to east, by which the moon goes in and out of the customary times.

2 It goes in at the first gate to the western places of the sun, by the first gates with thirty-one days exactly, by the second gates with thirty-one days exactly, by the third with thirty days exactly, by the fourth with thirty days exactly, by the fifth with thirty-one days exactly, by the sixth with thirty-one days exactly, by the seventh with thirty days exactly, by the eighth with thirty-one days perfectly, by the ninth with thirty-one days exactly, by the tenth with thirty days perfectly, by the eleventh with thirty-one days exactly, by the twelfth with twenty-eight days exactly.²⁶⁸

²⁶⁶ See note to 12:1

²⁶⁷ 1En. 73-74

²⁶⁸ There is a great deal of confusion in the readings of the various Slavonic manuscripts regarding the number of days related to each gate. For a full treatment of the issue see *Old Testament Pseudepigrapha* Vol. 1 p. 128 note d

3 And it goes through the western gates in the order and number of the eastern, and accomplishes the three hundred and sixty-five and quarter days of the solar year, while the lunar year has three hundred fifty-four, and there are wanting to it twelve days of the solar circle, which are the lunar epact of the whole year.

4 Thus, too, the great circle contains five hundred and thirty-two years.

5 The quarter of a day is omitted for three years the fourth fulfills it exactly.

6 Therefore they are taken outside of heaven for three years and are not added to the number of days, because they change the time of the years to two new months towards completion, to two others towards diminution.

7 And when the western gates are finished, it returns and goes to the eastern to the lights, and goes thus day and night about the heavenly circles, lower than all circles, swifter than the heavenly winds, and spirits and elements and angels flying; each angel has six wings.

8 It has a sevenfold course in nineteen years.

CHAPTER 17

1 In the midst of the heavens I saw armed soldiers, serving YHWH, with tympana and organs, with incessant voice, with sweet voice, with sweet and incessant voice and various singing, which it is impossible to describe, and which astonishes every mind, so wonderful and marvelous is the singing of those angels, and I was delighted listening to it.

CHAPTER 18

1 The men took me on to the fifth heaven and placed me, and there I saw many and countless soldiers, called Watchers,²⁶⁹ of human

²⁶⁹ Throughout 2Enoch the Slavonic transliterates the Greek word “Grigori” (εγγρηγορων) which is the Greek word for “Watchers” used throughout the Greek version of 1Enoch.

appearance, and their size was greater than that of great giants and their faces withered, and the silence of their mouths perpetual, and there was no service on the fifth heaven, and I said to the men who were with me:

2 Wherefore are these very withered and their faces melancholy, and their mouths silent, and wherefore is there no service on this heaven?

3 And they said to me: These are the Watchers, who with their prince Satan'el²⁷⁰ rejected YHWH of light, and after them are those who are held in great darkness on the second heaven, and three of them went down on to earth from YHWH's throne, to the place Hermon,²⁷¹ and broke through their vows on the shoulder of the hill Harmon and saw the daughters of men how good they are, and took to themselves wives, and befouled the earth with their deeds, who in all times of their age made lawlessness and mixing, and giants are born and marvelous big men and great enmity.²⁷²

4 And therefore Elohim judged them with great judgment, and they weep for their brothers and they will be punished on YHWH's great day.

5 And I said to the Watchers: I saw your brothers and their works, and their great torments, and I prayed for them,²⁷³ but YHWH has condemned them to be under earth²⁷⁴ till the existing heaven and earth shall end for ever.

6 And I said: Wherefore do you wait, brothers, and do not serve before YHWH's face, and have not put your services before YHWH's face, lest you anger your Lord utterly?

7 And they listened to my admonition, and spoke to the four ranks in heaven, and lo! As I stood with those two men four trumpets trumpeted together with great voice, and the Watchers broke into song with one voice, and their voice went up before YHWH pitifully and affectingly.

²⁷⁰ Slavonic: "Satanail" is certainly from the Hebrew Satan'el (Adversary of El).

²⁷¹ 1En. 6:1-8:4

²⁷² Test. of Dan 5

²⁷³ 1En. 13:6-7; 15:1-7

²⁷⁴ 1En. 10:4-5

CHAPTER 19

1 And thence those men took me and bore me up on to the sixth heaven, and there I saw seven bands of angels, very bright and very glorious, and their faces shining more than the sun's shining, glistening, and there is no difference in their faces, or behavior, or manner of dress; and these make the orders, and learn the goings of the stars, and the alteration of the moon, or revolution of the sun, and the good government of the world.²⁷⁵

2 And when they see evildoing they make commandments and instruction, and sweet and loud singing, and all songs of praise.

3 These are the archangels who are above angels, measure all life in heaven and on earth, and the angels who are appointed over seasons and years, the angels who are over rivers and sea, and who are over the fruits of the earth, and the angels who are over every grass, giving food to all, to every living thing, and the angels who write all the souls of men, and all their deeds, and their lives before YHWH's face; in their midst are seven Seraphim and seven Cherubim, six-winged ones continually with one voice singing one voice, and it is not possible to describe their singing, and they rejoice before YHWH at his footstool.

CHAPTER 20

1 And those two men lifted me up thence on to the seventh heaven, and I saw there a very great light, and fiery troops of great archangels, incorporeal forces, and dominions, orders and governments, cherubim and seraphim, thrones and many-eyed ones, nine regiments, the ofanim²⁷⁶ stations of light, and I became afraid, and began to tremble with great terror, and those men took me, and led me after them, and said to me:

²⁷⁵ Ascension of Isaiah 8:16

²⁷⁶ Although the Slavonic manuscripts vary widely as to the word they place here, most seem poor attempts at transliterating this Hebrew word. A copy in the State Historical Museum in Moscow (GIM 3(18)) has the best reading of ofanimiskoe (adding a Slavonic adjective ending to the Hebrew word).

2 Have courage, Chanoch, do not fear, and showed me YHWH from afar, sitting on His very high throne. For what is there on the tenth heaven, since YHWH dwells there?

3 On the tenth heaven is Elohim; in the Hebrew tongue he is called Aravot.²⁷⁷

4 And all the heavenly troops would come and stand on the ten steps according to their rank, and would bow down to YHWH, and would again go to their places in joy and felicity, singing songs in the boundless light with small and tender voices, gloriously serving him.

CHAPTER 21

1 And the cherubim and seraphim standing about the throne, the six-winged and many-eyed ones do not depart, standing before YHWH's face doing his will, and cover his whole throne, singing with gentle voice before YHWH's face: Set-apart, set-apart, set-apart, YHWH Ruler of Tzva'ot, heavens and earth are full of Your glory.²⁷⁸

2 When I saw all these things, those men said to me: Chanoch, thus far is it commanded us to journey with you, and those men went away from me and thereupon I saw them not.

3 And I remained alone at the end of the seventh heaven and became afraid, and fell on my face and said to myself: Woe is me, what has befallen me?

4 And YHWH sent one of his glorious ones, the archangel Gavri'el, and he said to me: Have courage, Chanoch, do not fear, arise before YHWH's face into eternity, arise, come with me.

5 And I answered him, and said in myself: My Lord, my soul is departed from me, from terror and trembling, and I called to the men who led me up to this place, on them I relied, and it is with them I go before YHWH's face.

²⁷⁷ 2En. 22:1 and 1En. 28:1 Hebrew עַרְבֹוֹת (Strong's 6160). In Ps. 68:4-5 the KJV renders this word as "heavens". In the Talmud (b.Hag. 12) Aravot is the seventh (highest) heaven and in 2Enoch Aravot is the tenth (highest) heaven.

²⁷⁸ 1En. 39:12; Is. 6:3; Rev. 4:8

6 And Gavri'el caught me up, as a leaf caught up by the wind, and placed me before YHWH's face.

7 And I saw the eighth heaven, which is called in the Hebrew tongue Mazalot,²⁷⁹ changer of the seasons, of drought, and of wet, and of the twelve constellations of the circle of the firmament, which are above the seventh heaven.

8 And I saw the ninth heaven, which is called in Hebrew Kokavim,²⁸⁰ where are the heavenly homes of the twelve constellations of the circle of the firmament.

CHAPTER 22

1 On the tenth heaven, which is called Aravot,²⁸¹ I saw the appearance of YHWH's face, like iron made to glow in fire, and brought out, emitting sparks, and it burns.

2 Thus in a moment of eternity I saw YHWH's face, but YHWH's face is ineffable, marvelous and very awful, and very, very terrible.²⁸²

3 And who am I to tell of YHWH's unspeakable being, and of his very wonderful face? And I cannot tell the quantity of his many instructions, and various voices, the Lord's throne is very great and not made with hands, nor the quantity of those standing round him, troops of cherubim and seraphim, nor their incessant singing, nor his immutable beauty, and who shall tell of the ineffable greatness of his glory.

4 And I fell prone and bowed down to YHWH, and YHWH with his lips said to me:²⁸³

5 Have courage, Chanoch, do not fear, arise and stand before my face into eternity.

²⁷⁹ מִזְלֹת "Zodiacal signs" (Strong's 4208)

²⁸⁰ כּוֹכָבִים "Stars" (Strong's 3556)

²⁸¹ See footnote to 2En. 20:3

²⁸² 1En. 14:17-25

²⁸³ 1En. 17:24

6 And the archistratege Mikha'el lifted me up, and led me to before YHWH's face.

7 And YHWH said to his servants tempting them: Let Chanoch stand before my face into eternity, and the glorious ones bowed down to YHWH, and said: Let Chanoch go according to Your Word.²⁸⁴

8 And YHWH said to Mikha'el: Go and take Chanoch from out of his earthly garments, and anoint him with my sweet ointment, and put him into the garments of My glory.

9 And Mikha'el did thus, as YHWH told him. He anointed me, and dressed me, and the appearance of that ointment is more than the great light, and his ointment is like sweet dew, and its smell mild, shining like the sun's ray, and I looked at myself, and I was like one of his glorious ones.

10 And YHWH summoned one of his archangels by name Uri'el,²⁸⁵ whose knowledge was quicker in wisdom than the other archangels, who wrote all the deeds of YHWH; and YHWH said to Uri'el: Bring out the books from my store-houses, and a reed of quick-writing, and give it to Chanoch, and deliver to him the choice and comforting books out of your hand.

CHAPTER 23

1 And he was telling me all the works of heaven, earth and sea, and all the elements, their passages and goings, and the thunderings of the thunders, the sun and moon, the goings and changes of the stars, the seasons, years, days, and hours, the risings of the wind, the numbers of the angels, and the formation of their songs, and all human things, the tongue of every human song and life, the commandments, instructions, and sweet-voiced singings, and all things that it is fitting to learn.

2 And Uri'el²⁸⁶ told me: All the things that I have told you, we have written. Sit and write all the souls of mankind, however many of them

²⁸⁴ 1En. 14:24; 61:7; 1Jn. 1:1-3, 14

²⁸⁵ Slavonic: "Vrevoil" and in one ms, "Pravuil". The original Hebrew was likely אוריאל "Uri'el"

²⁸⁶ See note to 22:10

are born, and the places prepared for them to eternity; for all souls are prepared to eternity, before the formation of the world.

3 And all double thirty days and thirty nights, and I wrote out all things exactly, and wrote three hundred and sixty-six books.

CHAPTER 24

1 And YHWH summoned me, and said to me: Chanoch, sit down on my left with Gavri'el.

2 And I bowed down to YHWH, and YHWH spoke to me: Chanoch, beloved, all that you see, all things that are standing finished I tell to you even before the very beginning, all that I created from non-being, and visible things from invisible.²⁸⁷

3 Hear, Chanoch, and take in these my words, for not to My angels have I told my secret,²⁸⁸ and I have not told them their rise, nor my endless realm, nor have they understood my creating, which I tell you to-day.

4 For before all things were visible, I alone used to go about in the invisible things, like the sun from east to west, and from west to east.

5 But even the sun has shalom in itself, while I found no shalom, because I was creating all things, and I conceived the thought of placing foundations, and of creating visible creation.

CHAPTER 25

1 I commanded in the very lowest parts that visible things should come down from invisible, and Adoil²⁸⁹ came down very great, and I beheld him, and lo! He had a belly of great light.

2 And I said to him: Become undone, Adoil, and let the visible come out of you.

²⁸⁷ Heb. 11:3; 2En. 24:2

²⁸⁸ 1En. 16:3

²⁸⁹ The Hebrew may have been אֲדוֹן־אֵל “Adon-El” or עֵל־אֵל “El is eternal”.

3 And he came undone, and a great light came out. And I was in the midst of the great light, and as there is born light from light, there came forth a great age, and showed all creation, which I had thought to create.

4 And I saw that it was good.

5 And I placed for myself a throne, and took my seat on it, and said to the light: Go thence up higher and fix yourself high above the throne, and be a foundation to the highest things.

6 And above the light there is nothing else, and then I bent up and looked up from my throne.

CHAPTER 26

1 And I summoned the very lowest a second time, and said: Let Archas²⁹⁰ come forth hard, and he came forth hard from the invisible.

2 And Archas came forth, hard, heavy, and very red.

3 And I said: Be opened, Archas, and let there be born from you, and he came undone, a world²⁹¹ came forth, very great and very dark, bearing the creation of all lower things, and I saw that it was good and said to him:

4 Go thence down below, and make yourself firm, and be a foundation for the lower things, and it happened and he went down and fixed himself, and became the foundation for the lower things, and below the darkness there is nothing else.

²⁹⁰ Slavonic “Arachas” the Hebrew may have been אָרַח Orech “length, continuance of time” (Strong’s 753) from the root אָרַח “arach” (Strong’s 748) “to stretch out”

²⁹¹ The Slavonic has “age” but the original Hebrew probably read עוֹלָם “age” or “world”. In this case “world” was probably the intended meaning.

CHAPTER 27

1 And I commanded that there should be taken from light and darkness, and I said: Be thick, and it became thus, and I spread it out with the light, and it became water, and I spread it out over the darkness, below the light, and then I made firm the waters, that is to say the bottomless, and I made foundation of light around the water, and created seven circles from inside, and imaged the water like crystal wet and dry, that is to say like glass, and the circumcision of the waters and the other elements, and I showed each one of them its road, and the seven stars each one of them in its heaven, that they go thus, and I saw that it was good.

2 And I separated between light and between darkness, that is to say in the midst of the water hither and thither, and I said to the light, that it should be the day, and to the darkness, that it should be the night, and there was evening and there was morning the first day.

CHAPTER 28

1 And then I made firm the heavenly circle, and made that the lower water which is under heaven collect itself together, into one whole, and that the chaos become dry, and it became so.

2 Out of the waves I created rock hard and big, and from the rock I piled up the dry, and the dry I called earth, and the midst of the earth I called abyss, that is to say the bottomless, I collected the sea in one place and bound it together with a yoke.

3 And I said to the sea: Behold I give you your eternal limits, and you shall not break loose from your component parts.

4 Thus I made fast the firmament. This day I called me the first created [Sunday].

CHAPTER 29

1 And for all the heavenly troops I imaged the image and essence of fire, and my eye looked at the very hard, firm rock, and from the

gleam of my eye the lightning received its wonderful nature, which is both fire in water and water in fire, and one does not put out the other, nor does the one dry up the other, therefore the lightning is brighter than the sun, softer than water and firmer than hard rock.

2 And from the rock I cut off a great fire, and from the fire I created the orders of the incorporeal ten troops of angels, and their weapons are fiery and their raiment a burning flame, and I commanded that each one should stand in his order.

3 And one from out the order of angels, having turned away with the order that was under him, conceived an impossible thought, to place his throne higher than the clouds above the earth, that he might become equal in rank to my power.

4 And I threw him out from the height with his angels, and he was flying in the air continuously above the bottomless.²⁹²

CHAPTER 30

1 On the third day I commanded the earth to make grow great and fruitful trees, and hills, and seed to sow, and I planted Pardes, and enclosed it, and placed as armed guardians flaming angels, and thus I created renewal.

2 Then came evening, and came morning the fourth day.

3 On the fourth day I commanded that there should be great lights on the heavenly circles.

²⁹² 2En. 29:3-4; Is. 14:9-15; Ezek. 28:12b-19; Rev. 12:3-4, 7-12; 1Adam & Eve 6, 8

4 On the first uppermost circle I placed the stars, Shabbatai,²⁹³ and on the second Nogah,²⁹⁴ on the third M'adim,²⁹⁵ on the fifth Tzedek,²⁹⁶ on the sixth Kokav,²⁹⁷ on the seventh lesser the moon, and adorned it with the lesser stars.

5 And on the lower I placed the sun for the illumination of day, and the moon and stars for the illumination of night.

6 The sun that it should go according to each constellation, twelve, and I appointed the succession of the months and their names and lives, their thunderings, and their hour-markings, how they should succeed.

7 Then evening came and morning came the fifth day.

8 On the fifth day I commanded the sea, that it should bring forth fishes, and feathered birds of many varieties, and all animals creeping over the earth, going forth over the earth on four legs, and soaring in the air, male sex and female, and every soul breathing the spirit of life.

9 And there came evening, and there came morning the sixth day.

10 On the sixth day I commanded my wisdom to create man from seven consistencies: one, his flesh from the earth; two, his blood from the dew; three, his eyes from the sun; four, his bones from stone; five, his intelligence from the swiftness of the angels and from cloud; six, his veins and his hair from the grass of the earth; seven, his soul from my breath and from the wind.

11 And I gave him seven natures: to the flesh hearing, the eyes for sight, to the soul smell, the veins for touch, the blood for taste, the bones for endurance, to the intelligence sweetness [enjoyment].

²⁹³ Slavonic: "Kruno" the planet we know as "Saturn" and which the Hebrews called שַׁבְּתָאִי "Shabbatai"

²⁹⁴ Slavonic: "Aphrodit" the planet we know as "Venus" and which the Hebrews called נוֹגַהּ "Nogah"

²⁹⁵ Slavonic: "Aris" the planet we know as "Mars" and which the Hebrews called מַאֲדִים "M'adim"

²⁹⁶ Slavonic: "Zoues" the planet we know as "Jupiter" and which the Hebrews called צֶדֶק "Tzedek"

²⁹⁷ Slavonic: "Ermis" the planet we know as "Mercury" and which the Hebrews called כּוֹכַב "Kokav"

12 I conceived a cunning saying to say, I created man from invisible and from visible nature, of both are his death and life and image, he knows speech like some created thing, small in greatness and again great in smallness, and I placed him on earth, a second angel, honorable, great and glorious, and I appointed him as ruler to rule on earth and to have my wisdom, and there was none like him of earth of all my existing creatures.

13 And I appointed him a name, from the four component parts, from east, from west, from south, from north, and I appointed for him four special stars, and I called his name Adam, and showed him the two ways, the light and the darkness, and I told him:

14 This is good, and that bad, that I should learn whether he has love towards me, or hatred, that it be clear which in his race love me.

15 For I have seen his nature, but he has not seen his own nature, therefore through not seeing he will sin worse, and I said After sin what is there but death?²⁹⁸

16 And I put sleep into him and he fell asleep. And I took from him a rib, and created him a wife, that death should come to him by his wife, and I took his last word and called her name mother, that is to say, Eve.

CHAPTER 31

1 Adam has life on earth, and I created a garden in Eden in the east, that he should observe the testament and keep the command.

2 I made the heavens open to him that he should see the angels singing²⁹⁹ the song of victory, and the gloom less light.³⁰⁰

3 And he was continuously in Pardes, and the devil understood that I wanted to create another world, because Adam was lord on earth, to rule and control it.

²⁹⁸ Epistle of Barnabas 15:5-8; 18:1

²⁹⁹ Job 38:4-7

³⁰⁰ 1Adam & Eve 6, 8

4 The devil is the evil spirit of the lower places, as a fugitive he made Satan from the heavens, as his name was Satan'el, thus he became different from the angels, but his nature did not change his intelligence as far as his understanding of righteous and sinful things.

5 And he understood his condemnation and the sin, which he had sinned before, therefore he conceived thought against Adam, in such form he entered and seduced Eve, but did not touch Adam.³⁰¹

6 But I cursed ignorance, but what I had blessed previously, those I did not curse, I cursed not man, nor the earth, nor other creatures, but man's evil fruit, and his works.

CHAPTER 32

1 I said to him: Earth you are, and into the earth whence I took you, you shall go, and I will not ruin you, but send you whence I took you.

2 Then I can again receive you at My second presence.

3 And I blessed all my creatures visible and invisible. And Adam was five and half-hours in Pardes.

4 And I blessed the seventh day, which is the Sabbath, on which he rested from all his works.

CHAPTER 33

1 And I appointed the eighth day also, that the eighth day should be the first-created after my work, and that the first seven revolve in the form of the seventh thousand, and that at the beginning of the eighth thousand there should be a time of not-counting, endless, with neither years nor months nor weeks nor days nor hours.³⁰²

2 And now, Chanoch, all that I have told you, all that you have understood, all that you have seen of heavenly things, all that you have seen on earth, and all that I have written in books by my great wisdom,

³⁰¹ 2En. 31:3-5; 1En. 69:6; Gen. 3:1-7

³⁰² Ps. 90:4; 2Pt. 3:8; Rev. 20:1-10; b.San. 97a

all these things I have devised and created from the uppermost foundation to the lower and to the end, and there is no counselor nor inheritor to my creations.

3 I am self-eternal, not made with hands, and without change.

4 My thought is my counselor, my wisdom and my word are made, and my eyes observe all things how they stand here and tremble with terror.

5 If I turn away my face, then all things will be destroyed.

6 And apply your mind, Chanoch, and know him who is speaking to you, and take thence the books, which you yourself have written.

7 And I give you Sh'mu'el³⁰³ and Ra'u'el,³⁰⁴ who led you up, and the books, and go down to earth, and tell your sons all that I have told you, and all that you have seen, from the lower heaven up to my throne, and all the troops.

8 For I created all forces, and there is none that resists me or that does not subject himself to me. For all subject themselves to my monarchy, and labour for my sole rule.

9 Give them the books of the handwriting, and they will read them and will know me for the creator of all things, and will understand how there is no other Elohim but me.

10 And let them distribute the books of your handwriting—children to children, generation to generation, nations to nations.

11 And I will give you, Chanoch, my intercessor, the archistrateger Mikha'el, for the handwritings of your fathers Adam, Shet, Enosh, Kenan, Mahalele'el, and Yared your father.

³⁰³ Slavonic: “Samuila” the Hebrew was probably שמואל Sh'mu'el” (Strong’s 8050) rather than סמאל “Sama’el” (a name which appears in Rabbinic literature as the Angel of Death or on some occasions as a synonym for Satan.

³⁰⁴ Slavonic: “Raguila” probably from Greek Ραγουηλ “Raguel” (See note to 1En. 20:4).

CHAPTER 34

1 They have rejected my commandments and my yoke, worthless seed has come up, not fearing Elohim, and they would not bow down to me, but have begun to bow down to vain gods, and denied my unity, and have laden the whole earth with untruths, offences, abominable lecheries, namely one with another, and all manner of other unclean wickedness, which are disgusting to relate.

2 And therefore I will bring down a deluge upon the earth and will destroy all men, and the whole earth will crumble together into great darkness.³⁰⁵

CHAPTER 35

1 Behold from their seed shall arise another generation, much afterwards, but of them many will be very insatiate.

2 He who raises that generation, shall reveal to them the books of your handwriting, of your fathers, to them to whom he must point out the guardianship of the world, to the faithful men and workers of my pleasure, who do not acknowledge my name in vain.

3 And they shall tell another generation, and those others having read shall be glorified thereafter, more than the first.³⁰⁶

CHAPTER 36

1 Now, Chanoch, I give you the term of thirty days to spend in your house, and tell your sons and all your household, that all may hear from my face what is told them by you, that they may read and understand, how there is no other Elohim but me.

2 And that they may always keep my commandments, and begin to read and take in the books of your handwriting.

³⁰⁵ 2En. 34:1-2; 1En. 10:2; 54:10; 106:15; Test. Naph. 4

³⁰⁶ Jub. 4:24

3 And after thirty days I shall send my angel for you, and he will take you from earth and from your sons to me.

CHAPTER 37

1 And YHWH called upon one of the older angels, terrible and menacing, and placed him by me, in appearance white as snow, and his hands like ice, having the appearance of great frost, and he froze my face, because I could not endure the terror of YHWH, just as it is not possible to endure a stove's fire and the sun's heat, and the frost of the air.

2 And YHWH said to me: Chanoch, if your face be not frozen here, no man will be able to behold your face.

CHAPTER 38

1 And YHWH said to those men who first led me up: Let Chanoch go down on to earth with you, and await him till the determined day.

2 And they placed me by night on my bed.

3 And Matushelach expecting my coming, keeping watch by day and by night at my bed, was filled with awe when he heard my coming, and I told him, Let all my household come together, that I tell them everything.

CHAPTER 39

1 Oh my children, my beloved ones, hear the admonition of your father, as much as is according to YHWH's will.

2 I have been let come to you to-day, and announce to you, not from my lips, but from YHWH's lips, all that is and was and all that is now, and all that will be till judgment-day.

3 For YHWH has let me come to you, you hear therefore the words of my lips, of a man made big for you, but I am one who has seen

YHWH's face, like iron made to glow from fire it sends forth sparks and burns.

4 You look now upon my eyes, the eyes of a man big with meaning for you, but I have seen YHWH's eyes, shining like the sun's rays and filling the eyes of man with awe.³⁰⁷

5 You see now, my children, the right hand of a man that helps you, but I have seen YHWH's right hand filling heaven as he helped me.

6 You see the compass of my work like your own, but I have seen YHWH's limitless and perfect compass, which has no end.

7 You hear the words of my lips, as I heard the words of YHWH, like great thunder incessantly with hurling of clouds.

8 And now, my children, hear the discourses of the father of the earth, how fearful and awful it is to come before the face of the ruler of the earth, how much more terrible and awful it is to come before the face of the ruler of heaven, the controller of quick and dead,³⁰⁸ and of the heavenly troops. Who can endure that endless pain?

CHAPTER 40

1 And now, my children, I know all things; for this is from YHWH's lips, and this my eyes have seen, from beginning to end.

2 I know all things, and have written all things into books, the heavens and their end, and their plenitude, and all the armies and their marchings.

3 I have measured and described the stars, the great countless multitude of them.

4 What man has seen their revolutions, and their entrances? For not even the angels see their number, while I have written all their names.

5 And I measured the sun's circle, and measured its rays, counted the hours, I wrote down too all things that go over the earth, I have written the things that are nourished, and all seed sown and unsown, which the earth produces and all plants, and every grass and every flower, and

³⁰⁷ 1En. 14:19-25

³⁰⁸ 1Pt. 4:5

their sweet smells, and their names, and the dwelling-places of the clouds, and their composition, and their wings, and how they bear rain and raindrops.

6 And I investigated all things, and wrote the road of the thunder and of the lightning, and they showed me the keys and their guardians, their rise, the way they go; it is let out gently in measure by a chain, lest by a heavy chain and violence it hurl down the angry clouds and destroy all things on earth.

7 I wrote the treasure houses of the snow, and the storehouses of the cold and the frosty airs, and I observed their season's key-holder, he fills the clouds with them, and does not exhaust the treasure houses.³⁰⁹

8 And I wrote the resting-places of the winds³¹⁰ and observed and saw how their key-holders bear weighing-scales and measures; first, they put them in one weighing-scale, then in the other the weights and let them out according to measure cunningly over the whole earth, lest by heavy breathing they make the earth to rock.

9 And I measured out the whole earth, its mountains, and all hills, fields, trees, stones, rivers, all existing things I wrote down, the height from earth to the seventh heaven, and downwards to the very lowest hell, and the judgment-place, and the very great, open and weeping hell.

10 And I saw how the prisoners are in pain, expecting the limitless judgment.³¹¹

11 And I wrote down all those being judged by the judge, and all their judgment and sentences and all their works.³¹²

CHAPTER 41

1 And I saw all forefathers from all time with Adam and Eve, and I sighed and broke into tears and said of the ruin of their dishonor:

³⁰⁹ 1En. 34:2; 2En. 5:1; Job 38:22

³¹⁰ 1En. 18:1

³¹¹ Jude 1:6; 2Pt. 2:4; 1En. 10:4, 7, 12; 18:16; 64:1-2; 2En. 7:1-2; Rev. 20:1-3

³¹² 1En. 6-8, 69

2 Woe is me for my infirmity and for that of my forefathers, and thought in my heart and said:

3 Blessed is the man who has not been born or who has been born and shall not sin before YHWH's face, that he come not into this place, nor bring the yoke of this place.

CHAPTER 42

1 I saw the key-holders³¹³ and guards of the gates of hell standing, like great serpents, and their faces like extinguishing lamps, and their eyes of fire, their sharp teeth, and I saw all YHWH's works, how they are right, while the works of man are some good, and others bad, and in their works are known those who lie evilly.

CHAPTER 43

1 I, my children, measured and wrote out every work and every measure and every righteous judgment.

2 As one year is more honorable than another, so is one man more honorable than another, some for great possessions, some for wisdom of heart, some for particular intellect, some for cunning, one for silence of lip, another for cleanliness, one for strength, another for comeliness, one for youth, another for sharp wit, one for shape of body, another for sensibility, let it be heard everywhere, but there is none better than he who fears Elohim, he shall be more glorious in time to come.

CHAPTER 44

1 YHWH with his hands having created man, in the likeness of his own face,³¹⁴ YHWH made him small and great.

³¹³ Rev. 9:1; 20:1-3

³¹⁴ Gen. 1:26-27

2 Whoever reviles the ruler's face, and abhors YHWH's face, has despised the Lord's face, and he who vents anger on any man without injury, YHWH's great anger will cut him down, he who spits on the face of man reproachfully, will be cut down at YHWH's great judgment.

3 Blessed is the man who does not direct his heart with malice against any man, and helps the injured and condemned, and raises the broken down, and shall do charity to the needy, because on the day of the great judgment every weight, every measure and every makeweight will be as in the market, that is to say they are hung on scales and stand in the market, and every one shall learn his own measure, and according to his measure shall take his reward.

CHAPTER 45

1 Whoever hastens to make offerings before YHWH's face, YHWH for his part will hasten that offering by granting of his work.

2 But whoever increases his lamp before YHWH's face and make not true judgment, YHWH will not increase his treasure in the realm of the highest.

3 When YHWH demands bread, or candles, or the flesh of beasts, or any other sacrifice, then that is nothing; but Elohim demands pure hearts, and with all that only tests the heart of man.³¹⁵

CHAPTER 46

1 Hear, my people, and take in the words of my lips.

2 If any one bring any gifts to an earthly ruler, and have disloyal thoughts in his heart, and the ruler know this, will he not be angry with him, and not refuse his gifts, and not give him over to judgment?

3 Or if one man make himself appear good to another by deceit of tongue, but have evil in his heart, then will not the other understand

³¹⁵ 2En. 45:1-3; Hos. 6:6

the treachery of his heart, and himself be condemned, since his untruth was plain to all?

4 And when YHWH shall send a great light, then there will be judgment for the just and the unjust,³¹⁶ and there no one shall escape notice.

CHAPTER 47

1 And now, my children lay thought on your hearts; mark well the words of your father, which are all come to you from YHWH's lips.

2 Take these books of your father's handwriting and read them.

3 For the books are many, and in them you will learn all YHWH's works, all that has been from the beginning of creation, and will be till the end of time.

4 And if you will observe my handwriting, you will not sin against YHWH; because there is no other except YHWH, neither in heaven, nor in earth, nor in the very lowest places, nor in the one foundation.

5 YHWH has placed the foundations in the unknown, and has spread forth heavens visible and invisible; he fixed the earth on the waters, and created countless creatures, and who has counted the water and the foundation of the unfixed, or the dust of the earth, or the sand of the sea, or the drops of the rain, or the morning dew, or the wind's breathings? Who has filled earth and sea, and the indissoluble winter?

6 I cut the stars out of fire, and decorated heaven, and put it in their midst.

CHAPTER 48

1 That the sun go along the seven heavenly circles, which are the appointment of one hundred and eighty-two thrones, that it go down on a short day, and again one hundred and eighty-two, that it go down on a big day, and he has two thrones on which he rests, revolving

³¹⁶ 1En. 1:7

hither and thither above the thrones of the months, from the seventeenth day of the month Sivan it goes down to the month Tevet, from the seventeenth of Tevat it goes up.³¹⁷

2 And thus it goes close to the earth, then the earth is glad and makes grow its fruits, and when it goes away, then the earth is sad, and trees and all fruits have no floescence.

3 All this he measured, with good measurement of hours, and fixed a measure by his wisdom, of the visible and the invisible.

4 From the invisible he made all things visible,³¹⁸ himself being invisible.³¹⁹

5 Thus I make known to you, my children, and distribute the books to your children, into all your generations, and among the nations who shall have the sense to fear Elohim, let them receive them, and may they come to love them more than any food or earthly sweets, and read them and apply themselves to them.

6 And those who understand not YHWH, who fear not Elohim, who accept not, but reject, who do not receive the books, a terrible judgment awaits these.

7 Blessed is the man who shall bear their yoke and shall drag them along, for he shall be released on the day of the great judgment.

CHAPTER 49

1 I swear to you, my children, but I swear not by any oath, neither by heaven nor by earth, nor by any other creature, which Elohim created.³²⁰

2 YHWH said: There is no oath in me, nor injustice, but truth.

³¹⁷ 1En. 74

³¹⁸ 2En. 25:1; Heb. 11:3

³¹⁹ Col. 1:15; Jn. 1:18; 1Jn. 4:12; Ex. 33:20; 1En. 14:21; 1Tim. 6:15-16

³²⁰ Mt. 5:34-37

3 If there is no truth in men, let them swear by the words, Yea, yea, or else, Nay, nay.³²¹

4 And I swear to you, yea, yea, that there has been no man in his mother's womb, but that already before, even to each one there is a place prepared for the repose of that soul, and a measure fixed how much it is intended that a man be tried in this world.

5 Yea, children, deceive not yourselves, for there has been previously prepared a place for every soul of man.³²²

CHAPTER 50

1 I have put every man's work in writing and none born on earth can remain hidden nor his works remain concealed.³²³

2 I see all things.

3 Now therefore, my children, in patience and meekness spend the number of your days, that you inherit endless life.

4 Endure for the sake of YHWH every wound, every injury, every evil word and attack.

5 If ill-requitals befall you, return them not either to neighbor or enemy, because YHWH will return them for you and be your avenger on the day of great judgment, that there be no avenging here among men.

6 Whoever of you spends gold or silver for his brother's sake, he will receive ample treasure in the world to come.³²⁴

7 Injure not widows nor orphans nor strangers, lest Elohim's wrath come upon you.

³²¹ Mt. 5:33-37; James 5:12

³²² 2En. 61:1

³²³ 1En. 98:7; 104:7; Rev. 20:12; Jer. 17:1

³²⁴ See footnote to 1En. 71:15

CHAPTER 51

1 Stretch out your hands to the poor according to your strength.³²⁵

2 Hide not your silver in the earth.

3 Help the faithful man in affliction, and affliction will not find you in the time of your trouble.

4 And every grievous and cruel yoke that come upon you bear all for the sake of YHWH, and thus you will find your reward in the Day of Judgment.

5 It is good to go morning, midday, and evening into YHWH's dwelling, for the glory of your creator.

6 Because every breathing thing glorifies him, and every creature visible and invisible returns him praise.

CHAPTER 52

1 Blessed is the man who opens his lips in praise of Elohim of Tzva'ot and praises YHWH with his heart.

2 Cursed every man who opens his lips for the bringing into contempt and calumny of his neighbor, because he brings Elohim into contempt.

3 Blessed is he who opens his lips blessing and praising Elohim.

4 Cursed is he before YHWH all the days of his life, who opens his lips to curse and abuse.

5 Blessed is he who blesses all YHWH's works.

6 Cursed is he who brings YHWH's creation into contempt.

7 Blessed is he who looks down and raises the fallen.

8 Cursed is he who looks to and is eager for the destruction of what is not his.

9 Blessed is he who keeps the foundations of his fathers made firm from the beginning.

³²⁵ Sibylline Oracles 2, 75

- 10 Cursed is he who perverts the decrees of his forefathers.
11 Blessed is he who imparts shalom and love.³²⁶
12 Cursed is he who disturbs those that love their neighbors.
13 Blessed is he who speaks with humble tongue and heart to all.
14 Cursed is he who speaks shalom with his tongue, while in his heart there is no shalom but a sword.
15 For all these things will be laid bare in the weighing-scales and in the books, on the day of the great judgment.

CHAPTER 53

- 1 And now, my children do not say: Our father is standing before Elohim, and is praying for our sins, for there is there no helper of any man who has sinned.
2 You see how I wrote all works of every man, before his creation, all that is done among all men for all time, and none can tell or relate my handwriting, because YHWH see all imaginings of man, how they are vain, where they lie in the treasure-houses of the heart.
3 And now, my children, mark well all the words of your father, that I tell you, lest you regret, saying: Why did our father not tell us?

CHAPTER 54

- 1 At that time, not understanding this let these books which I have given you be for an inheritance of your shalom.
2 Hand them to all who want them, and instruct them, that they may see YHWH's very great and marvelous works.

³²⁶ Mt. 5:9

CHAPTER 55

- 1 My children behold, the day of my term and time have approached.
- 2 For the angels who shall go with me are standing before me and urge me to my departure from you; they are standing here on earth, awaiting what has been told them.
- 3 For to-morrow I shall go up on to heaven, to my eternal inheritance.³²⁷
- 4 Therefore I bid you do before YHWH's face all his good pleasure.

CHAPTER 56

- 1 Metushelach having answered his father Chanoch, said: What is agreeable to your eyes, father, that I may make before your face, that you may bless our dwellings, and your sons, and that your people may be made glorious through you, and then that you may depart thus, as YHWH said?
- 2 Chanoch answered to his son Metushelach and said: Hear, child, from the time when YHWH anointed me with the ointment of his glory, there has been no food in me, and my soul remembers not earthly enjoyment, neither do I want anything earthly.

CHAPTER 57

- 1 My child Metushelach, summon all your brothers and all your household and the elders of the people, that I may talk to them and depart, as is planned for me.³²⁸

³²⁷ Jasher 3:28

³²⁸ Jasher 3:30; 1En. 37:2-3; 91:1

2 And Metushelach made haste, and summoned his brothers, Regim,³²⁹ Riman,³³⁰ Uchan,³³¹ Chermion, Gaidad,³³² and all the elders of the people before the face of his father Chanoch; and he blessed them, and said to them:

CHAPTER 58

1 Listen to me, my children, today.

2 In those days when YHWH came down on to earth for Adam's sake, and visited all his creatures, which he created himself, after all these he created Adam, and YHWH called all the beasts of the earth, all the reptiles, and all the birds that soar in the air, and brought them all before the face of our father Adam.

3 And Adam gave the names to all things living on earth.

4 And YHWH appointed him ruler over all, and subjected to him all things under his hands, and made them dumb and made them dull that they be commanded of man, and be in subjection and obedience to him.

5 Thus also YHWH created every man lord over all his possessions.

6 YHWH will not judge a single soul of beast for man's sake, but adjudges the souls of men to their beasts in this world; for men have a special place.

7 And as every soul of man is according to number, similarly beasts will not perish, nor all souls of beasts which YHWH created, till the great judgment, and they will accuse man, if he feed them ill.

CHAPTER 59

1 Whoever defiles the soul of beasts, defiles his own soul.

³²⁹ See note to 2En. 1:11

³³⁰ The Hebrew may have been אֲחִיזוּחַן (Strong's 7417)

³³¹ Some copies read "Achazuchan"

³³² See note to 2En. 1:11

2 For man brings clean animals to make sacrifice for sin, that he may have cure of his soul.

3 And if they bring for sacrifice clean animals, and birds man has cure, he cures his soul.

4 All is given you for food, bind it by the four feet³³³ that is to make good the cure, he cures his soul.

5 But whoever kills beast without wounds, kills his own souls and defiles his own flesh.

6 And he who does any beast any injury whatsoever, in secret, it is evil practice, and he defiles his own soul.

CHAPTER 60

1 He who works the killing of a man's soul, kills his own soul, and kills his own body, and there is no cure for him for all time.

2 He who puts a man in any snare shall stick in it himself, and there is no cure for him for all time.

3 He who puts a man in any vessel, his retribution will not be wanting at the great judgment for all time.

4 He who works crookedly or speaks evil against any soul will not make justice for himself for all time.

CHAPTER 61

1 And now, my children keep your hearts from every injustice, which YHWH hates. Just as a man asks something for his own soul from Elohim, so let him do to every living soul, because I know all things, how in the great time to come there is much inheritance prepared for men, good for the good, and bad for the bad, without number many.

³³³ According to the Talmud the “minim” had a practice of binding sacrificial animals in this manner. Some sources identify the “minim” as the “Believers in Yeshua of Nazareth” or the “Nazarenes”.

2 Blessed are those who enter the good houses, for in the bad houses there is no shalom nor return from them.³³⁴

3 Hear, my children, small and great! When man puts a good thought in his heart, brings gifts from his labors before YHWH's face and his hands made them not, then YHWH will turn away his face from the labor of his hand, and that man cannot find the labor of his hands.

4 And if his hands made it, but his heart murmur, and his heart cease not making murmur incessantly, he has not any advantage.

CHAPTER 62

1 Blessed is the man who in his patience brings his gifts with faith before YHWH's face, because he will find forgiveness of sins.

2 But if he takes back his words before the time, there is no repentance for him; and if the time pass and he do not of his own will what is promised, there is no repentance after death.

3 Because every work, which man does before the time, is all deceit before men, and sin before Elohim.

CHAPTER 63

1 When man clothes the naked and fills the hungry, he will find reward from Elohim.

2 But if his heart murmurs, he commits a double evil; ruin of himself and of that which he gives; and for him there will be no finding of reward on account of that.

3 And if his own heart is filled with his food and his own flesh, clothed with his own clothing, he commits contempt, and will forfeit all his endurance of poverty, and will not find reward of his good deeds.

4 Every proud and magniloquent man is hateful to YHWH, and every false speech, clothed in untruth; it will be cut with the blade of the sword of death, and thrown into the fire, and shall burn for all time.

³³⁴ Jn. 14:2

CHAPTER 64

1 When Chanoch had spoken these words to his sons, all people far and near heard how YHWH was calling Chanoch. They took counsel together:

2 Let us go and kiss Chanoch, and two thousand men came together and came to the place Achuzan where Chanoch was, and his sons.

3 And the elders of the people, the whole assembly, came and bowed down and began to kiss Chanoch and said to him:

4 Our father Chanoch, may you be blessed of YHWH, the eternal ruler, and now bless your sons and all the people, that we may be glorified today before your face.

5 For you shall be glorified before YHWH's face for all time, since YHWH chose you, rather than all men on earth, and designated you writer of all his creation, visible and invisible, and redeemed of the sins of man, and helper of your household.

CHAPTER 65

1 And Chanoch answered all his people saying: Hear, my children, before that all creatures were created, YHWH created the visible and invisible things.

2 And as much time as there was and went past, understand that after all that he created man in the likeness of his own form, and put into him eyes to see, and ears to hear, and heart to reflect, and intellect wherewith to deliberate.

3 And YHWH saw all man's works, and created all his creatures, and divided time, from time he fixed the years, and from the years he appointed the months, and from the months he appointed the days, and of days he appointed seven.

4 And in those he appointed the hours, measured them out exactly, that man might reflect on time and count years, months, and hours, their alternation, beginning, and end, and that he might count his own life, from the beginning until death, and reflect on his sin and write his work bad and good; because no work is hidden before YHWH, that

every man might know his works and never transgress all his commandments, and keep my handwriting from generation to generation.

5 When all creation visible and invisible, as YHWH created it, shall end, then every man goes to the great judgment, and then all time shall perish, and the years, and thenceforward there will be neither months nor days nor hours, they will be adhered together and will not be counted.

6 There will be one aeon, and all the righteous who shall escape YHWH's great judgment, shall be collected in the great aeon, for the righteous the great aeon will begin, and they will live eternally, and then too there will be among them neither labor, nor sickness, nor humiliation, nor anxiety, nor need, nor brutality, nor night, nor darkness, but great light.

7 And they shall have a great indestructible wall,³³⁵ and a Pardes bright and incorruptible, for all corruptible things shall pass away, and there will be eternal life.³³⁶

CHAPTER 66

1 And now, my children keep your souls from all injustice, such as YHWH hates.

2 Walk before his face with terror and trembling and serve him alone.

3 Bow down to the true Elohim, not to dumb idols, but bow down to his similitude, and bring all just offerings before YHWH's face. YHWH hates what is unjust.

4 For YHWH sees all things; when man takes thought in his heart, then he counsels the intellects, and every thought is always before YHWH, who made firm the earth and put all creatures on it.

5 If you look to heaven, YHWH is there; if you take thought of the sea's deep and all the under-earth, YHWH is there.

³³⁵ 1En. 14:9

³³⁶ 1En. 2-5

6 For YHWH created all things. Bow not down to things made by man, leaving YHWH of all creation, because no work can remain hidden before YHWH's face.

7 Walk, my children, in long-suffering, in meekness, honesty, in provocation, in grief, in faith and in truth, in reliance on promises, in illness, in abuse, in wounds, in temptation, in nakedness, in privation, loving one another, till you go out from this age of ills, that you become inheritors of endless time.

8 Blessed are the just who shall escape the great judgment, for they shall shine forth more than the sun sevenfold, for in this world the seventh part is taken off from all, light, darkness, food, enjoyment, sorrow, paradise, torture, fire, frost, and other things; he put all down in writing, that you might read and understand.³³⁷

CHAPTER 67

1 When Chanoch had talked to the people, YHWH sent out darkness on to the earth, and there was darkness, and it covered those men standing with Chanoch, and they took Chanoch up on to the highest heaven,³³⁸ where YHWH is; and he received him and placed him before his face, and the darkness went off from the earth, and light came again.

2 And the people saw and understood not how Chanoch had been taken, and glorified Elohim, and found a roll in which was traced The Invisible Elohim; and all went to their dwelling places.

CHAPTER 68

1 Chanoch was born on the sixth day of the month Sivan, and lived three hundred and sixty-five years.

2 He was taken up to heaven on the first day of the month Sivan and remained in heaven sixty days.

³³⁷ 1En. 57:1-3

³³⁸ See note to 1En. 70:1-4

3 He wrote all these signs of all creation, which YHWH created, and wrote three hundred and sixty-six books,³³⁹ and handed them over to his sons and remained on earth thirty days, and was again taken up to heaven³⁴⁰ on the sixth day of the month Sivan,³⁴¹ on the very day and hour when he was born.

4 As every man's nature in this life is dark, so are also his conception, birth, and departure from this life.

5 At what hour he was conceived, at that hour he was born, and at that hour too he died.

6 Metushelach and his brothers, all the sons of Chanoch, made haste, and erected an altar at that place called Achuzan, whence and where Chanoch had been taken up to heaven.

7 And they took sacrificial oxen and summoned all people and sacrificed the sacrifice before YHWH's face.

8 All people, the elders of the people and the whole assembly came to the feast and brought gifts to the sons of Chanoch.

9 And they made a great feast, rejoicing and making merry three days, praising Elohim, who had given them such a sign through Chanoch, who had found favor with him, and that they should hand it on to their sons from generation to generation, from age to age.

10 Amen.

³³⁹ 2En. 23:3

³⁴⁰ See note to 1En. 70:1-4

³⁴¹ This is always the date for Shavuot according to the Pharisaic/Rabbinic reckoning.

Appendix I
Leaders of the Fallen Angels
(1En. 6 & 69)

שמיחזה	Shemikhazah	My name has seen
ארעתקף	Ar'tekif	The earth is mighty
רמטאל	Ramt'el	Burning ashes of El
כוכבאל	Kokav'el	Star of El
[Ταμιηλ]	Tami'el	
רעמאל	Ra'm'el	Thunders of El
דניאל	Dani'el	My judge is El
זיקניאל	Ziki'el	Fireball of El
ברקאל	Barak'el	Lightning of El
עשאל עסאל	Asa'el	The Maker is El
הרמני	Hermoni	Of Hermon
מטראל	Matr'el	Rain of El
עננאל	'Anan'el	Cloud of El
סתואל	Sitwa'el	Winter of El
שמשאל	Shimsh'el	Sun of El
שהריאל	Sahar'el	Moon of El
תמיאל	Tammi'el	Perfection of El
טוריאל	Turi'el	Mountain of El
ימיאל	Yammi'el	Day of El
זהריאל	Zohari'el	Splendor of El

Appendix II
Rulers over
Leaders of the Fallen Angels
(1En. 69)

Yekon	Asbeel	Gadreel	Penemue	Kasdeya
Shemikhazah	Tami'el	Barak'el	'Anan'el	Tammi'el
Ar'tekif	Ra'm'el	Asa'el	Sitwa'el	Turi'el
Ramt'el	Dani'el	Hermoni	Shimsh'el	Yammi'el
Kokav'el	Ziki'el	Matr'el	Sahar'el	Zohari'el

According to the Book of Chanoch the Nefilim (Fallen Angels) had become subjects of HaSatan (1En. 54:6). 1Enoch 69:1-12 gives a list of five rulers over the Fallen angels who may be the “Satans” mentioned in 1En. 40:7. The above chart shows how these five “Satans” probably rule over the 20 leaders of the Nefilim.

Appendix III

The Seven Set-Apart Angels Who Watch (1En. 20)

אוריאל	Uri'el	My light is El
רפאל	Rafa'el	El is healer
רעואל	Ra'u'el	Friend of El
מיכאל	Mikha'el	Who is like El
שריאל	Sari'el	El is my Prince
גבראל	Gavri'el	Strength of El
רומיאל	Rumi'el	El raises me up

In 1Enoch 9 Uriel, Rafa'el, Mikha'el and Gavri'el are listed together as four chief angels but in 1Enoch 40 the same four are listed as “angel’s of the presence” except “P’nu’el” appears in place of “Uri’el”. Thus it would appear that P’nu’el is another name for Uri’el, or that P’nu’el replaced Uri’el.

Appendix IV

The Calendar

There is much controversy around the calendar section of the Book of Chanoch. The Book of Chanoch lays out a 364-day solar calendar (1En. 72). The solar calendar is divided into four seasons each having 91 days and twelve months which follow a pattern of 30 days, 30 days and 31 days each season. The months of this solar calendar are only given numbers and not names.

The Book of Enoch also lays out a lunar calendar of 354 days with six 30 day months and six 29 day months (1En. 73). The Book then tells us that the lunar year falls behind the solar year by six days each year or by 30 days (a month) every six years (1En. 74:10-11). However the gap between the 364 day solar year of 1Enoch 72 and the 354 day lunar year of 1Enoch 74 would be ten days each year and not the six reported in 1En. 74:10-11. There would be a six-day gap between the lunar year and a 360-day solar year, and in fact 1Enoch 82:4-7 criticizes those who use a 360-day solar year and not the 364-day solar year. And yet in 1En 74:10-12 insist that it speaks of the 364-day year. How a lunar calendar can fall six days a year behind a 364-day solar year instead of ten days a year is a mystery. The confusion continues because in 74:13-16 we are given accurate information about how many days the lunar calendar falls behind a 364-day solar calendar. Moreover the 364-day solar year loses $1\frac{1}{4}$ days a year, yet 1En. 74:10-12; 82:7 seems to maintain that this calendar is exact.

Much the same solar calendar that we find in 1Enoch also appears in the Sefer Raziel (Book of Raziel), which says:

In the first season the Sun is in Aries, Taurus and Gemini for 91 days, three hours, and one fourth of three hours. In the second season the Sun is in Cancer, Leo and Virgo for 91 days,

three hours, and one fourth of three hours. In the third season the Sun is in Libra, Scorpio and Sagittarius for 91 days, three hours, and one fourth of three hours. In the fourth season the Sun is in Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces for 91 days, three hours, and one fourth of three hours.

This is especially significant because the Zohar closely associates the Book of Enoch and Book of Raziel. The Zohar says of these two books:

God did indeed send down a book to Adam...
Tradition further tells us that Enoch also had a book,
which came from the same place as the book of the
generations of Adam... This is the source of the book
known as The Book of Enoch.
(Zohar 37b)

...when Adam was in the Garden of Eden, God
sent down to him a book by the hand of Raziel...
Similarly Enoch possessed a book through which
He learnt to discern the divine glory.
(Zohar 55b)

There is also great debate concerning the purpose of the lunar and solar calendars laid out in 1 Enoch. Some maintain that the Book of Chanoch is advocating a solar calendar instead of the lunar calendar which was used by Pharisaic and Sadducean Jews of the first century and which is used in Judaism today, a calendar which may have been used by Essenes. Other scholars maintain that the Book of Chanoch is simply making astronomical calculations comparing the lengths of the lunar and solar years.

Some scholars believe that the Essenes used the solar calendar of 1Enoch at Qumran. They see this same calendar as being expressed in many of the Dead Sea Scrolls (of course seven copies of 1Enoch were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls).

On the other hand the Qumran community may have themselves misunderstood the Book of Chanoch and wrongly adopted its solar year as a religious calendar. Since 1Enoch 73 lays out the 354 day lunar calendar, and since 1Enoch 74 concerns itself with calculating the rate at which the lunar calendar loses days, it may be that the solar calendar of 1En. 72 is simply presented as a baseline for adjusting the lunar calendar to keep it in sync with the solar year. In short the point of 1Enoch 72 may be to track the sun through the twelve houses of the zodiac so that one could calculate and predict the Spring Equinox. The traditional Jewish calendar is a lunar calendar, which adds an additional month whenever calculations show that Passover would otherwise occur before the Spring Equinox. The point of 1Enoch 72 may be to track the movements of the sun and to predict when the Spring Equinox would occur. The fact that such a solar calendar would lose $1\frac{1}{4}$ days a year would still be workable if it only had to work for about three years before being “reset” by adding of the additional month and going about predicting the next spring equinox.

Appendix V

Glossary

Enoch	Chanoch
Enosh	Enos
Gavri'el	Gabriel
Kenan	Cainan
Metushelach	Methuselah
Mikha'el	Michael
Noach	Noah
Pardes	Paradise
Rafa'el	Raphael
Shet	Seth
Uri'el	Uriel
Yared	Jared

Sefer HaYashar
The Book of Jasher

ספר הישר
Sefer HaYashar

“The Book of Jasher”

or

The Upright Book

Referred to in

Yahushua and Second Samuel

Translated
from the Original Hebrew
By
James Scott Trimm

"Is not this written in the Book of Jasher?"
--Yahushua, x. 13.

"Behold it is written in the Book of Jasher."
--II Samuel, i. 18

Published by:
The Institute for Nazarene Jewish Studies
PO Box 471
Hurst, TX 76053
<http://www.nazarene.co.nr>

© Copyright 2008 James Scott Trimm

Table of Contents

Introduction	7
Hebrew Preface	115
Book of Jasher	125
1840 Translator's Preface	497
1840 Publisher's Preface	507
1625 Printer's Preface	513

Introduction

The Book of Jasher is one of the so-called "Lost Books" of the Bible and is twice cited in the Tanak:

"Is not this written in the Book of Jasher?"
(Yahushua 10:13)

"Behold it is written in the Book of Jasher."
(2Sam. 1:18)

The term "Book of Jasher" is a bit misleading. This was not a book written by someone named "Jasher". In fact the word "Jasher" (Hebrew: Yashar) means "Upright" so that the Hebrew Sefer HaYashar is "The Upright Book". The definite article "Ha" tips us off that this is not a person's name but a modifier for the word "book". There are two references to Jasher in the Tanak: "And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. Is not this written in the book of Jasher? So the sun stood still. (Yahushua 10:13) (Also he bade them teach the children of Y'udah the use of the bow: behold, it is written in the book of Jasher.) (2 Samuel 1:18) From these two references in the Tanak there are several things we can learn about this mysterious book. From the usage in Yahushua 10:13 we can determine:

1. That Jasher contained the account of the prolonged day mentioned in Yahushua 10.
2. That Jasher was in circulation by the time the book of Yahushua was written. Since Yahushua was written prior to the death of Rahab, Jasher must have been written by that time as well.

3. The Book of Jasher had enough credibility that Yahushua would cite it as support for his assertion of the prolonged day. The usage in 2Sam. 1:18 tells us:

4. The Book of Jasher supported an admonition to teach the son's of Y'hudah "the bow". The identity of this lost book has been a matter of much speculation over the centuries.

The ancient translations and paraphrases offer little help to us in identifying the Book of Jasher. The Greek LXX omits the entire phrase from Yahushua 10:13 and translates the the phrase to mean "The Book of the Upright" in 2 Sam. 1:18. The Latin Vulgate has in both places "Liber Justorum" "The Book of the Upright Ones". In the Targums the phrase is Paraphrased as "The Book of the Law". The Aramaic Peshitta Tanak has "The Book of Praises" in Yahushua 10:13 and "The Book of the Song" in 2 Sam. 1:18. This may have resulted from a misreading of שׁוֹרֵץ (Upright) as שׁוֹרֵץ (Song). And some have speculated that the book in question was actually a book of songs which included reference to Yahushua 10:13 in the lyrics of a song. This theory also takes "the bow" in 2 Sam. 1:18 to be the name of a song.

Jasher and the Talmud

The Talmud discusses the identity of Jasher but also fails to offer us much real direction. In b.Avodah Zarah 25a several theories for the identity of the Book of Jasher are proposed. Rabbi Chiyya ben Abba taught in the name of Rabbi Yochanan that it is "the book of Avraham, Yitz'chak and Ya'akov" who are called "righteous". He seems to refer to

Genesis since he sites Gen. 49:8 as the reference to Y'udah being taught "the bow". Rabbi Eleazar identified Jasher as Deuteronomy based on Deut. 4:18. He cites Deut. 33:7 as the reference to Y'udah and archery. Rabbi Samuel ben Nachmani identified Jasher as the book of Judges based on Judges 17:6.

He found the reference to Y'udah and archery in Judges 3:2 & 1:1-2. None of these explanations offered by the Talmudic rabbis seek to explain how any of these biblical books could have been referenced by Yahushua 10:13 (especially Judges which was written *after* Yahushua). Could these Rabbis have used a text of Yahushua which agreed with the LXX in omitting reference to the Book of Jasher? At any rate if we accept the reference to Jasher in Yahushua 10:13 then we must reject these identifications of Jasher made in the Talmud. While the Rabbis of the Talmud seem to have lost knowledge of the identity of the Book of Jasher, its identity was known to earlier generations.

Josephus on Jasher

In his own recounting of the event of the prolonged day of Yahushua 10 the first century Jewish Roman historian Josephus identifies the Book of Jasher mentioned by Yahushua as one of "the books laid up in the Temple" (Ant. 5:1:17). Thus the Book of Jasher was known to Josephus and was known to be among the books laid up in the Temple in the first century.

The Three Books of Jasher

There are at least three books today with the title "Book of Jasher"/"Sefer HaYashar". One of these is a Hebrew book which was never intended to be identified with the Sefer HaYashar or the Bible. (Remember Sefer HaYashar means "The Upright Book").

Another "Book of Jasher" is a very bad English forgery published first in 1751 and again in 1829. This version claims to be written by a man named "Jasher". This forgery opens with the phrase "Whilst it was the beginning, darkness overspread the face of nature." Reprints of this forgery still circulate today.

The "Book of Jasher" presented in this volume was published in Hebrew in Venice in 1625, translated into English by Mosheh Samuel and published by Mordechai Noah in New York in 1840. It was Mosheh Samuel who first divided the work into chapter and verse (being 91 chapters.)

A second edition of this translation was published in Salt Lake City by J. H. Parry & Company in 1887. Both editions have been reprinted and republished several times. In 1954 Bible Corporation of America in Philadelphia reprinted the 1840 edition. They also translated it from English into Italian, Spanish, French and German for publication in those languages as well.

There has been some debate as to whether this Book of Jasher is the book mentioned in the Bible or just a Midrash which some have speculated originated in the 13th century. Certainly the book claims to be the same Book of Jasher

mentioned in the Bible.

The Real Book of Jasher?

The 1625 edition of Jasher has a Preface, which says in part (translated from the Hebrew):

...when the holy city Jerusalem was destroyed by Titus, all the military heads went in to rob and plunder, and among the officers of Titus was one whose name was Sidrus, who went in to search, and found in Jerusalem a house of great extent...

According to the preface this Sidrus found a false wall in this house with a hidden room. In this room he found an old man hiding with provisions and many books including the Book of Jasher. The old man found favor with Sidrus who took the old man and his books with him. The preface says "they went from city to city and from country to country until they reached Sevilia [a city in Spain]." At that time "Seville" was called "Hispalis" and was the capital of the Roman province of Hispalensis. The manuscript was donated to the Jewish college at Cordova, Spain. According to the 1625 edition of Jasher the first printed edition of the Book of Jasher was published in Naples Italy in 1552. However no copies of the 1552 edition are known to have survived. The earliest surviving Hebrew edition known is the 1625 edition.

The Book of Jasher is a narrative beginning with the creation of man and ends with the entry of Israel into Kanaan. The Book of Jasher passage related to Yahushua 10:13 reads as follows:

"And when they were smiting, the day was declining toward evening, and Yahushua said in the eyes of all the people, Sun, stand thou still upon Givon, and thou moon in the valley of Ajalon, until the nation shall have revenged itself upon its enemies. And the Lord hearkened to the voice of Yahushua, and the sun stood still in the midst of the heavens, and it stood still six and thirty moments, and the moon also stood still and hastened not to go down a whole day."
(Jasher 88:63-64)

The Book of Jasher passage which relates to 2 Sam. 1:18 involves Ya'akov's last words to his son Y'hudah:

"Only teach your sons the bow and all weapons of war, in order that they may fight the battles of their brother who will rule over his enemies."
(Jasher 56:9)

This reads very similar to the midrash which gives these last words as:

"You, my son, are stronger than all your brothers, and from your loins will kings arise. Teach your children how they may protect themselves from enemies and evil-doers"

It would seem that the author of Jasher did not create this account to fit with 2 Sam. 1:18 since the same account occurs in the midrash (which itself may have been drawn from Jasher). Certainly many serious scholars have concluded that this Book of Jasher is authentic.

The well known Hebraist and Rabbinic Scholar (and translator of the 1840 Book of Jasher) Mosheh Samuel wrote of Jasher:

"...the book is, with the exception of some doubtful parts, a venerable monument of antiquity; and that, notwithstanding some few additions have been made to it in comparatively modern times, it still retains sufficient to prove it a copy of the book referred to in Yahushua, and 2 Samuel, ch. 1."

- Mosheh Samuel - Hebraist and Rabbinic Scholar

The late Dr. Cyrus Gordon (who was the world's leading Semitist until his death) wrote:

"There can be little doubt that the book of Jasher was a national epic... The time is ripe for a fresh investigation of such genuine sources of Scripture, particularly against the background of the Dead Sea Scrolls."

- Dr. Cyrus Gordon; *A History of the Hebrews*

There is some evidence to suggest that the Book of Jasher was a sort of secular History of the Hebrews. Although the Book of Jasher acknowledges the hand of Elohim, its purpose seems to be largely historical. The Book of Jasher was an official historical record of events from the creation of Adam to the entry of Israel into the Promised Land. This would explain why Yahushua would appeal to the Book of Jasher to support the fact that the prolonged day of Yahushua 10 actually happened. Yahushua was appealing to the "official record" and not to a theological book as-such. The Hebrew preface to Jasher records that when Ptolemy king of Egypt first sought from the Jews a copy of the Torah

they sent him instead the Book of Jasher "for they could not give him the book of the Lord" but later he learned what they had done and they then provided for him the LXX. At the very least we have in Jasher an important collection of Jewish legends related to this time period.

James Scott Trimm

**Moses Samuel's
English Translation
of the
Hebrew Preface**

THIS BOOK IS THAT WHICH IS CALLED THE UPRIGHT BOOK

It has at this time been ascertained by us that when the holy city Jerusalem was destroyed by Titus, all the military heads went in to rob and plunder, and that amongst the officers¹ of Titus was one whose name was Sidrus, who went in to search, and found in Jerusalem a house of great extent, and took away all the spoils which he found there; when he wished to go out of the house, he looked at the wall and fancied that he saw treasures there, so he broke down the wall and the building and found a cask full of various books of the Law, the Prophets, and the Hagiographa,² also books of the kings of Israel, and of the kings of other nations, as well as many other books of Israel, together with the books of the Mishnah adopted and established; many rolls were also lying there; he also found there all sorts of provisions and wine in abundance, and discovered an old man sitting there, who was reading in those books. When the officer saw this great sight he was greatly astonished, and said to the old man, why dost thou sit alone in this place, without any person remaining with thee? So the old man answered, for many years past was I aware of this second destruction of Jerusalem, so I built this house and made for

¹ הגמורין Buxton gives this word “episcopus” which, besides a bishop, means also a lieutenant, overseer, superintendent. See Arach.

² Psalms, Proverbs, &c.

myself a balcony,³ and I brought with me these books to read, and I brought also sufficient provisions, thinking thereby to⁴ save my life.

And God caused the old man to find favor in the eyes of the officer, who brought him forth with respect with all his books, and they went from city to city and from country to country until they reached Sevilia; and the officer found that this old man was possessed of wisdom and understanding and acquainted with various kinds of science, upon discovering which he raised and honored him, was constantly in his house and was taught by him all sorts of wisdom, and they built for themselves a lofty and capacious house in the suburbs of Sevilia and placed there all those books.

This house is yet in Sevilia unto this day, and they wrote there all the events that would hereafter take place amongst the kings of the world unto the coming of our Messiah.

And it came to pass that when God carried⁵ us away with a mighty captivity by the hands of the kings of Edom, from city to city and from country to country in bitter anxiety, this book, called “The Generations of Adam” together with other books came into our hands, for they came from that house in Sevilia, and they came afterward to our city Napuli, which city is under the sway of the king of Spain, (whose glory may be exalted.) And when we saw these books, that they were books of all wisdom, we resolved in our minds to print them like all the books that

³ אַכְסֵדְרָה or porch, a Talmudical word derived from the Greek. See Arach.

⁴ See Jeremiah 38:2, the same expression.

⁵ See same expression, Isaiah 22:17.

came to our hands. Now this book is the best and most valuable of all, and of this book twelve copies have reached us, and we searched in them and found them all of one copy, there was no difference, nothing added and nothing deficient, nor any alteration in letters, words or events, for they were all alike as it were of one copy.

Since therefore, we saw in this book great merit urging us to this resolve, we are determined to print it – and it is found written that this book is called the Book Jasher, because all its transactions are in that order as they had taken place in the world as regards priority and succession, for thou wilt not find in this book any postponement of events that were anterior, or priority of those that were posterior, but every thing is recorded in its place and time.

Thou wilt thus find that it relates the death of such a one at the particular time of the life of another and thus throughout. Owing to this it was called Sepher Hajashar, but it is customary to call it the Generations of Adam, the reason of which is that they call it by that with which it commences, but the chief name thereof is the book “Jasher” owing to the reasons we have assigned. Now it is found that this book is translated into Greek, entitled “*Lo libris de los divtiis,*”

It is also found written in the book of the Asmoneans which has come down to us, that in the days of Ptolemy king of Egypt, he ordered his servants to go and gather all the books of laws, and all the books of Chronicles which they could find in the world, so that he might become wise through them, and by examining them become acquainted with the subjects and events of the world, and to compile from them a book in all matters of jurisdiction regarding the

affairs of life, thereby to exercise pure justice. So they went and collected for him nine hundred and sixty five books and brought to him, when commanded them to go again and seek to complete the number of a thousand books, and they did so. After this, some of the persecutors of Israel stood up before him and said, O king, why wilt thou trouble thyself in this manner? Send to the Jews in Jerusalem that they shall bring unto thee the book of their law which was written from them from the mouth of the Lord by their Prophets, from which thou mayest become wise, and regulate all judgments and laws according to they desire; so the king hearkened to their words, and sent to the Jews upon this matter, who sent to him this book, for they could not give unto him the book of the Lord, for they said, we cannot give the law of the Lord to a stranger. Now when this book came to the hands of Ptolemy he read it and it pleased him greatly, and he searched therein in his wisdom, and he examined it and found therein what he had desired, and he neglected all the other books which they had collected for him, and he blessed him who had advised him to this thing.

After some time the persecutors of Israel became aware of this, that the Israelites had not sent the book of the law to the king, and they came and said unto him, O king, the Israelites have treated thee with contempt, for they did not send to thee the book of the law which we had mentioned to thee, but they sent to thee another book which they had in their hands, therefore send to them that they may forward unto thee the book of their law, for from that book thou wilt obtain they desire much more than from the book which they have sent to thee; so when the king heard their words he became exceedingly wroth against the Israelites, and his anger burned within him until he sent again to them for them to forward to him the book of the law. Fearing that

they might still continue to scorn him, he acted prudently with them and sent to seventy of their elders and placed them in seventy house, that each should write the book of the law, so that no alteration might be found in them, and the divine spirit rested upon them, and they wrote for him seventy books and they were all of one version, without addition or diminution. At this the king rejoiced greatly and he honored the elders, together with all the Jews, and he sent offerings and gifts to Jerusalem as it is written there.⁶ At his death, the Israelites acted cunningly with his son and took from his treasures the book of the law, but left this book there and took it not away, in order that every future king might know the wonders of the Lord, blessed be his name, and that he had chosen Israel from all nations, and that there is no God beside him.

This book is therefore in Egypt unto this day, and from that time it became circulated throughout the earth, until it reached us in our captivity this day in the city of Napuli, which is under the rule of the king of Spain. Now thou wilt find in this book that some of the kings of Edom, of Chittim and the kings of Africa who were in those days, are mentioned, although it might appear that such was not the aim or intent of this book; but the reason of this was to show to every person obtaining this book the contrast between the wars of Israel and the wars of the Gentiles, for the conquest of Gentile kings one over the other was by accident, which is not so in the conquest of the kings of Israel over the Gentiles, which is by a miracle from our blessed Lord as long as the Israelites trust in his exalted name.

⁶ In the book of the Asmoneans mentioned above.

Now the uses of this book are many, all of which lead us to confidence in God, (whose name be exalted,) and to our adherence unto him and his ways.

The first use is the additional information it affords us upon the subjects of the creation of man and the deluge, recording also the years of the twenty generations and their misdeeds; also at what period they were born and when they died, by which means, our hearts may be inclined to adhere to the Lord, when we see the mighty works which he performed in days of old.

The second use is in the additional account respecting the birth of Abraham and how it was that he cleaved to the Lord, and the transactions that took place between him and Nimrod; and thus also of the account of the builders of the tower of Babel,⁷ how that the Lord drove them to the four corners of the earth, and how they established the countries and lands called after their names unto this day, by which means we may draw nigh to our Creator.

The third use is the explanation it gives us how the patriarchs adhered to the Lord, and of their transactions which convince us of their fear of God.

The fourth use is, in what it records of the affairs of Sodom and the iniquities of its people, and in what consisted their sins, as well as their punishment, by which means we may refrain from all evil doings.

The fifth use is in the account of the faith of Isaac and Jacob in the Lord, and the prayers and weeping of Sarah at

⁷ Called דִּוְרַר הַפְּלִגָּה because the earth was then divided.

the binding of Isaac *for a sacrifice*, which is of great use in inclining our hearts to the service of the Lord.

The sixth use is in the information it affords us upon the subject of the wars of the sons of Jacob with the people of Shechem and the seven cities of the Amorites. This will rouse our heart to faith in our God; for how could ten men destroy seven cities, if their hearts had not been impressed with faith in the Lord?

The seventh use is, in the information it gives us of all the events that happened to Joseph in Egypt, with Potiphar and his wife and with the king of Egypt, for this will also rouse our hearts to the fear of the Lord, and to remove ourselves from all sin, so that it may be well with us in the latter end.

The eighth use is in the account it furnishes us of what happened to Moses in Cush and in Midian, by which we may understand the wonders of Lord which he performs for the righteous, and that we may thereby adhere to him.

The ninth use is in its recording what had happened to the Israelites in Egypt, and when the commencement of their servitude took place, and how they served the Egyptians in all manner of hard work, and to what purpose all this tended – how after this God was favorable to them through their trusting in him, and there is no doubt of this that he who reads the events of Egypt from this book on the nights of the Passover, will receive a great reward, as our Rabbins of blessed memory says, he that is occupied in relating the exit from Egypt is to be praised, in which this book is included, for this is the true narration which ought to be read after the Hagadah, for such person (reading this) may be assured that

he will be greatly rewarded; we do so this day in our captivity in the countries of Spain, after having finished reading the Hagadah, we commence reading in this book the whole affair of Egypt, from the Israelites going down to Egypt unto their exit, for in this book a person ought to read.

The eleventh⁸ use is, that some of the comments of our Rabbies and of other commentators who have explained the law, thou wilt find illustrated in this book, such as the account of the messengers who met Jacob⁹ when he came from Mesopotamia after they had gone to Esau, also the account of Gabriel who taught Joseph seventy languages, also the illustration it affords of him¹⁰ who smote Midian the fields of Moab, and the like.

The twelfth use is, that every person lecturing in public may bring forward in his discourse, subjects from this book, which the commentators have not explained, by which means he may make an impression upon the hearts of his audience. The thirteenth use is, that all merchants and travelers, who have an opportunity to study the law, may read this book and receive their reward, for therein is the reward of the soul as well as the delight of the body, in the discovery of new matter not recorded in any other book, and by these means will man understand to know the Lord and cleave unto him.

Now because we have seen the merit of this book, and the great usefulness thereof, we have undertaken to print it

⁸ The eleventh use.—I cannot see any mention of the tenth use; this must have been omitted. I think, before the words above, “how after this God was favourable to them through their trusting in him.”

⁹ See the latter part of ch. 31.

¹⁰ The obscure passage in Genesis, 36:35 in the Bible, is cleared up in Jasher, ch. 62 where it gives a long history of Hadad, the son of Bedad.

without addition or diminution, and from this time we have commenced to print it in a book, that such books may be in the hands of the members of our covenant, the men of our captivity in order that it may be farther circulated throughout every generation, and every city, family and country, so that they may understand the wonders of the Lord which he performed for our ancestors, and his bounties toward them from the days of old, and that he chose us from all nations. May they who devote their hearts to the fear of the Lord, be rendered meritorious by studying therein whilst we confide in the Lord, the God of gods, and depend upon him and seek salvation and assistance from him, in this heavenly work, and may he prosper us in the right path, and deliver us from errors, and cleanse us from secret faults, as his anointed said, *“who can understand his errors? Cleanse thou me from secret faults.”*¹¹ May God teach us the good way and direct us in a prosperous path for the sake of his mercies and kindnesses, and may he graciously fulfill the desire of our hearts, Amen, and so be his will.

¹¹ Psalms, 19:12

ספר הישר

The Book of Jasher

Parshat B'reshit

This is the Book of the Generations of Man whom Elohim Created upon the earth on the day when YHWH Elohim made the Earth and Heaven.

CHAPTER 1

1 And Elohim said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness, and Elohim created man in his own image.

2 And YHWH Elohim formed man from the dust of the earth, and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living soul [endowed] with speech.

3 And YHWH said, It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make him a help meet.

4 And YHWH caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and he slept, and he took one of his ribs, and he built flesh upon it, and formed it and brought it to the man, and Adam awoke from his sleep, and behold a woman was standing before him.

5 And he said, This is a bone of my bones and it shall be called woman, because this has been taken from man; and the man called her name Havah, because she was the mother of all living.

6 And Elohim blessed them and called their names Adam [and Havah] in the day that he created them, and YHWH Elohim said, Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth.

7 And YHWH Elohim took the man and his wife, and he put them in the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it; and he commanded them and said unto them, Of every tree of the

garden you may eat, but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat thereof you shall surely die.

8 And when Elohim had blessed and commanded them, he went from them, and the man and his wife dwelt in the garden according to the command which YHWH had commanded them.

9 And the serpent, which Elohim had created with them in the earth, came to them to incite them to transgress the command of Elohim which he had commanded them.

10 And the serpent enticed and persuaded the woman to eat from the tree of knowledge, and the woman hearkened to the voice of the serpent, and she transgressed the word of YHWH, and took from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and she ate, and she took from it and gave also to her husband and he ate.

11 And the man and his wife transgressed against the command of Elohim which he commanded them, and Elohim knew it, and his anger was kindled against them and he cursed them.

12 And YHWH Elohim drove them in that day from the garden of Eden, to till the earth from which they were taken, and they went and dwelt at the east of the garden of Eden; and Adam knew Havah his wife and she bore two sons and three daughters.

13 And she called the name of the firstborn Kayin, saying, I have obtained a man from YHWH, and the name of the second she called Havel, for she said, In vanity we came into the earth, and in vanity we shall be taken from it.

14 And the boys grew up and their father gave them a possession in the land; and Kayin was a tiller of the earth, and Havel a keeper of sheep.

15 And it was at the expiration of days and years, that they brought an approximating offering to YHWH, and Kayin

brought from the fruit of the earth, and Havel brought from the firstlings of his flock from the fat thereof, and YHWH turned and inclined to Havel and his offering, and a fire came down from YHWH from heaven and consumed it.

16 And unto Kayin and his offering YHWH did not turn, and he did not incline to it, for he had brought from the inferior fruit of the earth before YHWH, and Kayin was jealous against his brother Havel on account of this thing, and he sought a matter to slay him.

17 And in some time after, Kayin and Havel his brother, went one day into the field to do their work; and they were both in the field, Kayin was tilling and ploughing his earth, and Havel feeding his flock; and the flock passed that part which Kayin had ploughed in the earth, and Kayin was sorely grieved about this thing.

18 And Kayin approached his brother Havel in anger, and he said unto him, What is there between me and you, that you come to dwell and bring your flock to feed in all my land?

19 And Havel also answered his brother Kayin and said unto him, What is there between me and you, that you shall eat the flesh of my flock and clothe yourself with their wool?

20 And now therefore, put off the wool of my sheep with which you have clothed yourself, and recompense me for their fruit and flesh which you have eaten, and when you shall have done this matter, then also will I go from your land as you have said. Either fly in the heavens or eat?

21 And Kayin said to his brother Havel, Surely if I slay you this day, who will require your blood from me?

22 And Havel answered Kayin, saying, Surely Elohim who has made us in the earth, he will avenge my cause, and he will require my blood from you if you should slay me, for YHWH is the judge and arbiter, and it is he who will requite man according to his evil, and the wicked man according to the wickedness that he may do upon earth.

23 And now, if you should slay me here, surely Elohim knows your secrets, and will judge you for the evil which you did declare to do unto me today.

24 And when Kayin heard the words which Havel his brother had spoken, afterward the anger of Kayin was kindled against his brother Havel for declaring this thing.

25 And Kayin hastened and rose up, and took the iron part of his ploughing instrument, with which he suddenly smote his brother and he slew him, and Kayin spilt the blood of his brother Havel upon the earth, and the blood of Havel streamed before the flock on the earth.

26 And after this Kayin mourned having slain his brother, and he was sadly grieved, and he wept over him and it vexed him exceedingly.

27 And Kayin rose up and dug a hole in the field, wherein he put his brother's body, and he turned the dust over it.

28 And YHWH knew what Kayin had done to his brother, and YHWH appeared to Kayin and said unto him, Where is Havel your brother that was with you?

29 And Kayin dissembled, and said, I do not know, am I my brother's keeper? And YHWH said unto him, What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries unto me from the earth where you have slain him.

30 For you have slain your brother and have dissembled before me, and did imagine in your heart saying that I saw you not, nor knew all your actions which you have done.

31 But you did this thing and did slay your brother for nothing and because he spoke rightly to you, and now, therefore, cursed be you from the earth which opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand, and which received him in it.

32 And it shall be when you shall till it, it shall no more give you its strength as in the beginning, for thorns and thistles shall the earth produce, and you shall be moving and

wandering in the earth until the day of your death.

33 And at that time Kayin went out from the presence of YHWH, from the place where he was, and he went moving and wandering in the land toward the east of Eden, he and all belonging to him.

34 And Kayin knew his wife in those days, and she conceived and bare a son, and he called his name Chanoch, saying, In that time YHWH began to give him rest and quiet in the earth.

35 And at that time Kayin also began to build a city: and he built the city and he called the name of the city Chanoch, according to the name of his son; for in those days YHWH had given him rest upon the earth, and he did not move about and wander as in the beginning.

36 And Irad was born to Chanoch, and Irad begat M'chuyael and M'chuyael begat M'tushael. And M'tushael begat Lamech.

CHAPTER 2

1 And it was in the hundred and thirtieth year of the life of Adam upon the earth, that he again knew Havah his wife, and she conceived and bare a son in his likeness and in his image, and she called his name Shet, saying, Because Elohim has appointed me another seed in the place of Havel, for Kayin has slain him.

2 And Shet lived one hundred and five years, and he begat a son; and Shet called the name of his son Enosh, saying, Because in that time the sons of men began to multiply upon the face of the earth, and to afflict their souls and hearts by transgressing and rebelling against Elohim.

3 And it was in the days of Enosh that the sons of men continued to rebel and transgress against Elohim, to increase

the anger of YHWH against the sons of men.

4 And the sons of men went and they served other gods, and they forgot YHWH who had created them in the earth: and in those days the sons of men made images of brass and iron, wood and stone, and they bowed down and served them.

5 And every man made his god and they bowed down to them and the sons of men forsook YHWH all the days of Enosh and his children; and the anger of YHWH was kindled on account of their works and abominations which they did in the earth.

6 And YHWH caused the waters of the river Gihon to overwhelm them, and he destroyed and consumed them, and he destroyed the third part of the earth, and notwithstanding this, the sons of men did not turn from their evil ways, and their hands were yet extended to do evil in the eyes of YHWH.

7 And in those days there was neither sowing nor reaping in the earth; and there was no food for the sons of men and the famine was very great in those days.

8 And the seed which they sowed in those days in the earth became thorns, thistles and briars; for from the days of Adam was this word concerning the earth, of the curse of Elohim, which he cursed the earth, on account of the sin which Adam sinned before YHWH.

9 And it was when the sons of men continued to rebel and transgress against Elohim, and to corrupt their ways, that the earth also became corrupt.

10 And Enosh lived ninety years and he begat Kayinan;

11 And Kayinan grew up and he was forty years old, and he became wise and had knowledge and skill in all wisdom, and he reigned over all the sons of men, and he led the sons of men in wisdom and in knowledge; for Kayinan was a very wise man and had understanding in all wisdom, and by

his wisdom he ruled over spirits and over shadim;

12 And Kayinan knew by his wisdom that Elohim would destroy the sons of men for having sinned upon earth, and that YHWH would in the latter days bring upon them the waters of the flood.

13 And in those days Kayinan wrote upon tablets of stone, what was to take place in time to come, and he put them in his treasures.

14 And Kayinan reigned over all the earth, and he turned some of the sons of men to serve Elohim.

15 And when Kayinan was seventy years old, he begat three sons and two daughters.

16 And these are the names of the children of Kayinan; the name of the firstborn Mahalal'el, the second Enan, and the third Mered, and their sisters were Adah and Zillah; these are the five children of Kayinan that were born to him.

17 And Lamech, the son of M'tushael, became related to Kayinan by marriage, and he took his two daughters for his wives, and Adah conceived and bare a son to Lamech, and she called his name Yaval.

18 And she again conceived and bare a son, and called his name Yuval; and Zillah, her sister, was barren in those days and had no offspring.

19 For in those days the sons of men began to trespass against Elohim, and to transgress the commandments which he had commanded to the man, to be fruitful and multiply in the earth.

20 And some of the sons of men caused their wives to drink a draught that would render them barren, in order that they might retain their figures and whereby their beautiful appearance might not fade.

21 And when the sons of men caused some of their wives to drink, Zillah drank with them.

22 And the child-bearing women appeared abominable in

the eyes of their husbands as widows, while their husbands lived, for to the barren ones only they were attached.

23 And in the end of many days and years, when Zillah became old, YHWH opened her womb.

24 And she conceived and bare a son and she called his name Tuval Kayin, saying, After I had withered away have I obtained him from El Shadai.

25 And she conceived again and bare a daughter, and she called her name Naamah, for she said, After I had withered away have I obtained pleasure and delight.

26 And Lamech was old and advanced in days, and his eyes were dim that he could not see, and Tuval Kayin, his son, was leading him and it was one day that Lamech went into the field and Tuval Kayin his son was with him, and while they were walking together in the field, Kayin the son of Adam advanced towards them; for Lamech was very old and could not see much, and Tuval Kayin his son was very young lad.

27 And Tuval Kayin told his father to draw his bow, and Lamech drew his bow, and with the arrows he smote Kayin, who was yet far off, and he slew him, for he appeared to them to be an animal.

28 And the arrows entered Kayin's body although he was distant from them, and he fell to the ground and died.

29 And YHWH requited Kayin's evil according to his wickedness, which he had done to his brother Havel, according to the word of YHWH which he had spoken.

30 And it came to pass when Kayin had died, that Lamech and Tuval Kayin his son went to see the animal which they had slain, and they saw, and behold Kayin their elder was fallen dead upon the earth.

31 And Lamech was very much grieved at having done this thing, and in clapping his hands together he struck his son with his hands and caused his death.

32. And the wives of Lamech heard the thing which Lamech had done, and they sought to kill him.

33 And the wives of Lamech hated him from that day, because he slew Kayin and Tuval Kayin, and the wives of Lamech separated from him, and would not hearken to him in those days.

34 And Lamech came to his wives, and he pressed them to listen to him about this matter.

35 And he said to his wives Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice O wives of Lamech, attend to my words, for now you have imagined and said that I slew a man with my wounds, and a child with my stripes for their having done no violence, but surely know that I am old and grey-headed, and that my eyes are heavy through age, and I did this thing unknowingly.

36 And the wives of Lamech listened to him in this matter, and they returned to him with the advice of their father Adam, but they bore no children to him from that time, knowing that anger, even [the anger of] YHWH goes forth and is great in those days against the sons of men, to destroy them with the waters of the flood for their evil doings.

37 And Mahalal'el the son of Kayinan lived sixty-five years and he begat Yared; and Yared lived sixty-two years and he begat Chanoch.

CHAPTER 3

1 And Chanoch lived sixty-five years and he begat Metushelach; and Chanoch walked with Elohim after having begot Metushelach, and he served YHWH, and despised the evil ways of the sons of men¹².

2 And the soul of Chanoch was wrapped up in the instruction of YHWH, in knowledge and in understanding;

¹² or "despised the ways of the sons of the men of evil"

and he knew the ways of YHWH, and he wisely retired from the sons of men, and secreted himself from them for many days.

3 And it was at the end of many days and years, while he was serving before YHWH, and praying before YHWH in [his] house and in [his] chamber, that an angel of YHWH called to him from Heaven saying: Chanoch, Chanoch, and he said, Here am I.

4 And he said, Rise, go forth from your house and from your hiding place, and rule over all the sons of men, in order that you may teach them the way in which they should go and the work which they must do to go in the ways of YHWH.

5 And Chanoch rose up according to the word of YHWH, and went forth from his house, from his place and from the chamber in which he was concealed; and he went to the sons of men and taught them the ways of YHWH, and at that time assembled the sons of men and acquainted them with the instruction of the YHWH.

6 And he ordered it to be proclaimed in all places of the sons of men, saying, Who is the man who wishes to know the ways of YHWH and good works? let him come to Chanoch.

7 And all the sons of men then assembled to him, for all who desired this thing went to Chanoch, and Chanoch reigned over the sons of men according to the word of YHWH, and they came and bowed to him and they heard his word.

8 And the spirit of Elohim was upon Chanoch, and he taught all his men the wisdom of Elohim and his ways, and the sons of men served YHWH all the days of Chanoch, and the sons of men came to hear his wisdom.

9 And also all the kings of the sons of men, the first and the last, and their princes and their judges, came to Chanoch when they heard of his wisdom, and they bowed down to him, and they also required of Chanoch to reign over them, and he consented to this thing.

10 And they assembled in all, one hundred and thirty kings and princes, and they made Chanoch king over them and they were all under his power and under his word.

11 And Chanoch taught them wisdom and knowledge and the way of YHWH; and he made peace among them all, and peace was throughout the earth in the days of Chanoch.

12 And Chanoch reigned over all the sons of men two hundred and forty-three years, and he did justice and righteousness to all his people, and he led them in the ways of the YHWH.

13 And these are the generations of Chanoch, Metushelach, Elishah, and Elimelekh, three sons; and their sisters were Milkah and Nahmah, and Metushelach lived eighty-seven years and he begat Lamech.

14 And it was in the fifty-sixth year of the life of Lamech when Adam died; nine hundred and thirty years old was he at his death, and his two sons, with Chanoch and Metushelach his son, buried him with great pomp, as at the burial of kings, in the cave which YHWH had told him.

15 And in that place all the sons of men made a great mourning and weeping on account of Adam; it has therefore become a custom among the sons of men to this day.

16 And Adam died because he ate of the tree of knowledge; he and his children after him, as YHWH had spoken to them.

17 And it was in the year of Adam's death which was the two hundred and forty-third year of the reign of Chanoch, in that time Chanoch resolved to separate himself from the sons of men and to secret himself as at first in order to serve YHWH.

18 And Chanoch did so, but did not entirely secret himself from them, but kept away from the sons of men three days and then went to them for one day.

19 And during the three days that he was in his chamber, he

prayed to, and praised YHWH his Elohim, and the day on which he went and appeared to his subjects he taught them the ways of YHWH, and all they asked him [about YHWH] he told them.

20 And he did in this manner for many years, and he afterward concealed himself for six days, and appeared to his people one day in seven; and after that once in a month, and then once in a year, until all the kings, princes and sons of men sought for him, and desired again to see the face of Chanoch, and to hear his word; but they could not, as all the sons of men were greatly afraid of Chanoch, and they feared to approach him because the awe of Elohim was upon his countenance; therefore no man could look at him, fearing he might be punished and die.

21 And all the kings and princes resolved to assemble the sons of men, and to come to Chanoch, thinking that they might all speak to him at the time when he should come forth among them, and they did so.

22 And the day came when Chanoch went forth and they all assembled and came to him, and Chanoch spoke to them all the words [of YHWH] and he taught them wisdom and knowledge, and he taught them the fear of YHWH. And all the sons of men feared him greatly and they were astonished by him concerning his wisdom. And all the land bowed to his face and they said, May the king live! May the king live!

23 And it came to pass in some days after, when all the kings and all the princes and all the sons of man were speaking with Chanoch, and Chanoch was teaching them the ways of YHWH, and an angel of YHWH called unto Chanoch from heaven at this time, and saying to bring him up [to] the heavens to make him reign there over the sons of Elohim in Heaven, as he had reigned over the sons of man upon earth.

24 At that time Chanoch heard this word and he went and

assembled to himself all the inhabitants of the earth, and taught them wisdom and knowledge and the instruction of YHWH, and he said to them, I have been asked to ascend [to] the heavens, I therefore do not know the day of my going.

25 And now therefore I will teach you wisdom and knowledge and instruction to do on the earth, before I leave you, whereby you may live; and he did so.

26 And he taught them wisdom and knowledge, and instruction, and he reproved them, and he placed before them statutes and judgments to do upon earth, and he established peace among them, and he taught them everlasting life, and dwelt with them some days and was teaching and was instructing them all these words.

27 And it came to pass at that time, and the sons of man were with Chanoch, and Chanoch was speaking to them, and they lifted up their eyes and saw and behold, the likeness of a great horse descended from the heavens, and the horse walked in the air¹³ of the earth;

28 And they told Chanoch what they had seen, and Chanoch said to them, On my account does this horse descend upon earth; for the time is come and the days when I must go from you and I shall no more be seen by you.

29 And the horse descended at that time and stood before Chanoch, and all the sons of men that were with Chanoch saw him.

30 And Chanoch then again ordered at that time a voice to be proclaimed, saying, Who is the man who delights to know the ways of YHWH his Elohim, let him come this day to Chanoch before he is taken from us.

31 And all the sons of man assembled and came to Chanoch in that day; and also all the kings of the earth with their princes and counselors remained with him that day; and

¹³ or “in the spirit”

Chanoch then taught all the sons of man wisdom and knowledge, and the instruction of YHWH in that day; and he bade them serve YHWH and walk in his ways all the days of their lives, and he continued to make peace among all of them.

32 And it was after this that he rose up and rode upon the horse; and he went forth and all the sons of man went after him, about eight hundred thousand men; and they went with him one day's journey.

33 And the second day he said to them, Return home to your tents, why will you go? perhaps you may die; and some of them went from him, and those that remained went with him six day's journey; and Chanoch said to them every day, Return to your tents, lest you may die; but they were not willing to return, and they went with him.

34 And it came to pass on the sixth day, and again spoke Chanoch to them saying, Return to your tents, for tomorrow I shall ascend to the heavens and it will be that all the remnant of you shall die. And they returned again on the sixth day and some of the men remained and clung to him, and they said to him, We will go with you to the place where you go; as YHWH lives, death only shall separate us.

35 And they urged so much to go with him, that he ceased speaking to them; and they went after him and would not return;

36 And these kings returned and caused a census to be taken, in order to know the number of remaining men that went after Chanoch; and it was upon the seventh day that Chanoch ascended into heaven in a whirlwind, with horses of fire and chariots of fire.

37 And on the eighth day all the kings that had been with Chanoch sent to bring back the number of men that were with Chanoch, in that place from which he ascended into heaven.

38 And all those kings went to the place and they found the earth filled with snow in that place, and upon the snow were large stones of snow, and one said to the other, Come, let us break through this snow and see, perhaps the men that remained with Chanoch are dead, and are now under the stones of snow, and they searched but could not find him, for he had ascended into heaven.

CHAPTER 4

1 And all the days that Chanoch lived upon earth, were three hundred and sixty-five years.

2 In the one hundred and thirtieth year of the life of Lemech the son of Metushelach, Chanoch ascended to the heavens. And when Chanoch had ascended into heaven, all the kings of the earth rose and took Metushelach his son and anointed him, and they caused him to reign over them in the place of his father.

3 And Metushelach acted uprightly in the eyes of YHWH, as in all that his father Chanoch had taught him, and he also during the whole of his life taught the sons of men wisdom, knowledge and the fear of YHWH, and he did not turn from the good way either to the right or to the left.

4 But in the latter days of Metushelach, the sons of man turned from [following] after YHWH, they corrupted the earth, they robbed and plundered each other, and they rebelled against Elohim and they transgressed, and they corrupted their ways, and would not hearken to the voice of Metushelach, but rebelled against him.

5 And the YHWH was exceedingly wroth against them, and YHWH continued to destroy the seed in those days, and there was neither sowing nor reaping on the earth.

6 And it came to pass when they sowed the ground in order

that they might obtain food for their support, behold, thorns and thistles were produced which they did not sow.

7 And in all this the sons of men did not turn from their evil ways, and their hands were still extended to do evil in the eyes of YHWH, and they provoked YHWH with their evil ways, and YHWH was very wroth, and mourned because he had made man.

8 And he was saying to destroy and annihilate them and he did so.

9 In those days when Lamech the son of Metushelach was one hundred and sixty years old, Shet the son of Adam died.

10 And all the days that Shet lived, were nine hundred and twelve years, and he died.

11 And it came to pass Lamech was one hundred and eighty years old when he took Ashmua, the daughter of Elishah the son of Chanoch his uncle, and she conceived.

12 And at that time the sons of man sowed the ground, and a little food was produced by the ground, yet the sons of man did not turn from their evil ways, and they trespassed and rebelled against the ground¹⁴.

13 And the wife of Lamech conceived and bare him a son at that time, at the revolution¹⁵ of the year.

14 And Metushelach called his name Noach, saying, The ground was in his days at rest and free from corruption, and Lamech his father called his name Menachem, saying, This one shall comfort us in our works and miserable toil from the ground, which YHWH had cursed.

15 And the child grew up and was weaned, and he went in the ways of his father Metushelach, and was perfect and upright with YHWH.

16 And all the sons of man departed from the ways of YHWH in those days as they multiplied upon the face of the

¹⁴ Moses Samuel wrongly renders “against God” in place of “with the ground”.

¹⁵ תְּקִיפָה (Strong’s 8622) “revolution, course, circuit, end, equinox”.

ground with sons and daughters, and they taught one another their evil ways and they continued sinning against YHWH.

17 And every man made unto himself his god, and they robbed and plundered every man his neighbor as well as his relative, and they corrupted the earth, and the earth was filled with violence.

18 And their judges¹⁶ and rulers¹⁷ went to all the daughters of man and took their wives by force from their husbands from all that they chose, and the sons of man in those days took from the cattle of the earth, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and taught the mixture of animals of one species with the other, to provoke YHWH by this thing; and Elohim saw all the earth and behold it was corrupt, for all flesh had corrupted its ways upon earth, all men and all animals.

19 And YHWH said, I will blot out man that I created from upon the face of the ground, yea from man to the birds of the heavens, together with cattle and beasts that are in the field for I mourn because I made them.

20 And all men who walked in the ways of YHWH, died in those days, before YHWH brought the evil upon man which he had declared, for this was from YHWH, that they should not see the evil which YHWH spoke of concerning the sons of man.

21 And Noach found grace in the eyes of YHWH, and YHWH chose him and his children to raise up seed from them upon the face of all the earth.

¹⁶ שופטים

¹⁷ שוטרים

Parshat Noach

CHAPTER 5

1 And it came to pass in the eighty-fourth year of the life of Noach, that Chanoch the son of Shet died, he was nine hundred and five years old at his death.

2 And in the one hundred and seventy ninth year of the life of Noach, Kayinan the son of Enosh died, and all the days of Kayinan were nine hundred and ten years, and he died.

3 And in the two hundred and thirty fourth year of the life of Noach, Mahalal'el the son of Kayinan died, and the days of Mahalal'el were eight hundred and ninety-five years, and he died.

4 And Yered the son of Mahalal'el died in those days, in the three hundred and thirty-sixth year of the life of Noach; and all the days of Yered were nine hundred and sixty-two years, and he died.

5 And also all the men who followed after YHWH died in those days, before they saw the evil which YHWH declared to do upon all the earth.

6 And after the lapse of many years, in the four hundred and eightieth year of the life of Noach, when all those men, who followed after YHWH had died away from among the sons of men, and only Metushelach was then left, YHWH said unto Noach and Metushelach, saying,

7 Speak you, and proclaim to the sons of men, saying, Thus says YHWH, return from your evil ways and forsake your works, and YHWH will repent of the evil that he declared to do to you, so that it shall not come to pass.

8 For thus says YHWH, Behold I give you a period of one hundred and twenty years; if you will turn to me and forsake your evil ways, then will I also turn away from the evil

which I told you, and it shall not exist, says YHWH.

9 And Noach and Metushelach spoke all the words of YHWH to all the sons of man, day after day, speaking every day to them.

10 But the sons of men would not hearken to them, nor incline their ears to their words, and they were stiffnecked.

11 And YHWH granted them a period of one hundred and twenty years, saying, If they will return, then will YHWH repent of the evil, so as not to destroy the earth.

12 Noach the son of Lemech refrained from taking a wife in those days, to beget children, for he said, Surely now YHWH will destroy the earth, wherefore then shall I beget children?

13 And Noach was a just man, he was perfect in his generation, and YHWH chose him to raise up seed from his seed upon the face of all the earth.

14 And YHWH said unto Noach, Take unto you a wife, and beget children, for I have seen you righteous before me in this generation.

15 And you shall raise up seed, and your children with you, in the midst of the earth; and Noach went and took a wife, and he chose Naamah the daughter of Chanoch, and she was five hundred and eighty years old.

16 And Noach was four hundred and ninety-eight years old, when he took Naamah for a wife.

17 And Naamah conceived and bare a son, and he called his name Yefet, saying, Elohim has enlarged me in the earth; and she conceived again and bare a son, and he called his name Shem, saying, Elohim has made me a remnant, to raise up seed in the midst of the earth.

18 And Noach was five hundred and two years old when Naamah bare Shem, and the boys grew up and went in the ways of YHWH, in all that Metushelach and Noach their father taught them.

19 And Lamech the father of Noah, died in those days; yet verily he did not go with all his heart in the ways of his father, and he died in the hundred and ninety-fifth year of the life of Noah.

20 And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred and seventy years, and he died.

21 And also all the sons of man who knew YHWH, died in that year before YHWH brought evil upon the sons of man; for YHWH willed them to die, so the man who knew YHWH would not see the evil that would brought upon their brothers and relatives, which YHWH had so declared to do.

22 In that time, YHWH said to Noah and Metushelach, Stand forth and proclaim to all the sons of men all the words that I spoke to you in those days, peradventure they may turn the sons of man from their evil ways, and I will then repent of the evil and will not bring it.

23 And Noah and Metushelach stood forth, and said in the ears of the sons of man, all which YHWH had declared to them.

24 But the sons of men would not hearken, neither would they incline their ears to all their declarations.

25 And it was after this that YHWH said to Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me, on account of their evil deeds, and behold I will destroy the earth.

26 And do you take unto you gopher wood, and go to a certain place and make a large ark, and place it in that spot.

27 And thus shall you make it; three hundred cubits its length, fifty cubits broad and thirty cubits high.

28 And you shall make unto you a door, open at its side, and to a cubit you shall finish above, and cover it within and without with pitch.

29 And behold I will bring the flood of waters upon the earth, and all flesh be destroyed, from under the heavens all

that is upon earth shall perish.

30 And you and your house shall go and gather two couple of all living things, male and female, and shall bring them to the ark, to raise up seed from them upon earth.

31 And also from all food that is eaten by all the animals, that there may be food for you and for them.

32 And you shall choose for your sons three maidens, from the daughters of men, and they shall be wives to your sons.

33 And Noah rose up, and he made the ark, in the place where YHWH had commanded him, and Noah did all He had ordered him.

34 In his five hundred and ninety-fifth year Noah commenced to make the ark, and by the six hundredth year all the ark according to all the his words and all his judgments. And he made the ark in five years, as YHWH had commanded.

35 Then Noah took the three daughters of Eliakim, son of Metushelach, for wives for his sons, as YHWH had commanded Noah.

36 And it was at that time Metushelach the son of Chanoch died, nine hundred and sixty years old was he, at his death.

CHAPTER 6

1 And it came to pass at that time Metushelach died the son of Chanoch, and was nine hundred sixty nine years old at his death. At that time after the death of Metushelach, YHWH said to Noah, Go you with your house into the ark; behold I will gather to you all the animals of the earth, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heavens, and they shall all come and surround the ark.

2 And you shall go and seat yourself by the doors of the ark,

and all the beasts, the animals, and the fowls, shall assemble and place themselves before you, and such of them as shall come and crouch before you, shall you take and deliver into the hands of your sons, who shall bring them to the ark, and all that will stand before you, you shall leave.

3 And YHWH brought this thing about on the morrow, and animals, beasts and fowls came in great multitudes and surrounded the ark.

4 And Noach went and seated himself by the door of the ark, and of all flesh that crouched before him, he brought into the ark, and all that stood before him he left upon earth.

5 And a lioness came, with her two whelps, male and female, and the three crouched before Noach, and the two whelps rose up against the lioness and smote her, and made her flee from her place, and she went away, and they returned to their places, and crouched upon the earth before Noach.

6 And the lioness ran away, and stood in the place of the lions.

7 And Noach saw this, and wondered greatly, and he rose and took the two whelps, and brought them into the ark.

8 And Noach brought into the ark from all living creatures that were upon earth, so that there was none left but which Noach brought into the ark.

9 Two and two came to Noach into the ark, but from the clean animals, and clean fowls, he brought seven couples, as Elohim had commanded him.

10 And all the animals, and beasts, and fowls, were in that place, and they surrounded the ark here and there, and the rain had not descended till seven days after.

11 And on that day, YHWH caused all the earth to shake, and the sun darkened, and the foundations of the world raged, and all the earth was moved violently, and the lightning flashed, and the thunder roared, and all the

fountains in the earth were broken up, such as was not known to the inhabitants before; and YHWH did this mighty act, in order to terrify the sons of man, that there might be no more evil upon earth.

12 And still the sons of man would not return from their evil ways, and they increased the anger of YHWH at that time, and did not even direct their hearts to all this.

13 And at the end of seven days, in the six hundredth year of the life of Noach, the waters of the flood were upon the earth.

14 And all the fountains of the deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened, and the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.

15 And Noach and his house, and all the living creatures that were with him, came into the ark on account of the waters of the flood, and YHWH shut him in.

16 And all the sons of man that were left upon the earth, became exhausted through evil on account of the rain, for the waters were coming more violently upon the earth, and the animals and beasts were still surrounding the ark.

17 And the sons of men assembled together, about seven hundred thousand men and women, and they came unto Noach to the ark.

18 And they called to Noach, saying, Open for us that we may come to you in the ark--and wherefore shall we die?

19 And Noach, with a loud voice, answered them from the ark, saying, Have you not all rebelled against YHWH, and said that he does not exist? and therefore YHWH brought upon you this evil, to destroy and cut you off from the face of the ground.

20 Is not this the thing that I spoke to you of one hundred and twenty years back, and you would not hearken to the voice of YHWH, and now do you desire to live upon earth?

21 And they all said to Noach, We are all ready to return to

YHWH; only open for us that we may live and not die.

22 And Noach answered them, saying, Behold now that you see the trouble of your souls, you wish to return to YHWH; why did you not return during these hundred and twenty years, which YHWH granted you as the determined period?

23 But now you come and tell me this on account of the troubles of your souls, now also YHWH will not listen to you, neither will he give ear to you on this day, so that you will not now succeed in your wishes today.

24 And the sons of men approached in order to break into the ark, to come in on account of the rain, for they could not bear the rain upon them.

25 And YHWH sent all the beasts and all the animals that stood round the ark. And the beasts overpowered them and they arose and they fled from before the ark, and many of them were killed by the beasts, and they drove them from that place, and every man went his way and they again scattered themselves upon the face of the earth.

26 And the rain was still descending upon the earth, and it descended forty days and forty nights, and the waters prevailed greatly upon the earth; and all flesh that was upon the earth or in the waters died, whether men, animals, beasts, creeping things or birds of the heavens, and there only remained Noach and those that were with him in the ark.

27 And the waters prevailed and they greatly increased upon the earth, and they lifted up the ark and it was raised from the earth.

28 And the ark floated upon the face of the waters, and it was tossed upon the face of the waters so that all the living creatures within were turned about like pottage in a cauldron.

29 And it came to pass great anxiety seized all the living creatures that were in the ark, and the ark was like to be broken.

30 And all the living creatures that were in the ark were terrified, and the lions roared, and the oxen lowed, and the wolves howled, and every living creature in the ark spoke and lamented in its own language, and their voices¹⁸ reached to a great distance, and also Noach and his sons cried and wept in their troubles; they were greatly afraid that they had reached the gates of death.

31 And Noach prayed unto YHWH, and cried unto him on account of this, and he said, O YHWH help us, for we have no strength to bear this evil that has encompassed us, for the waves of the waters have surrounded us, mischievous torrents have terrified us, the snares of death have come before us; answer us, O YHWH, answer us, light up your countenance toward us and be gracious to us, redeem us and deliver us.

32 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Noach, and YHWH remembered him.

33 And a wind¹⁹ passed over the earth, and the waters were still and the ark rested.

34 And the fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were stopped, and the rain from heaven was restrained.

35 And the waters decreased in those days, and the ark rested upon the mountains of Ararat.

36 And at that time Noach opened the windows of the ark, and Noach still called out to YHWH at that time and he said, O YHWH Elohi of all the land and the seas²⁰ and all that are therein, bring forth our souls from this confinement, and from the prison wherein you have placed us, for I am much wearied with sighing.

37 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Noach, and said to

¹⁸ or “sounds”

¹⁹ or “spirit”

²⁰ Moses Samuel misread this word as “and heaven” (וְהַשָּׁמַיִם) however the text actually reads “and the seas” (וְהַיָּם)

him, When though shall have completed a full year you shall then go forth.

38 And at the revolution²¹ of the year, when a full year was completed to Noach's dwelling in the ark, the waters were dried from off the earth, and Noach put off the covering of the ark.

39 At that time, on the twenty-seventh day of the second month, the earth was dry, but Noach and his sons, and those that were with him, did not go out from the ark until YHWH told them.

40 And it came to pass in that day came that YHWH told them to go out, and they all went out from the ark.

41 And they went and returned each man to his way and each man to his place, and Noach and his sons dwelt in the land that YHWH had told them, and they served YHWH all their days, and YHWH blessed Noach and his sons on their going out from the ark.

42 And YHWH said to them, Be fruitful and fill all the earth; become strong and increase abundantly in the earth and multiply therein.

CHAPTER 7

1 And these are the names of the sons of Noach: Yafet, Ham and Shem; and children were born to them after the flood, for they had taken wives before the flood.

2 These are the sons of Yafet; Gomer, Magog, Madai, Yavan, Tuval, Meshekh, and Tiras, seven sons.

3 And the sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Rifat and Togarmah.

4 And the sons of Magog were Elichanaf and Luval.

5 And the children of Madai were Achon, Zila, Choni and

²¹ or "equinox"

Lot.

6 And the sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Chittim and Dudonim.

7 And the sons of Tuval were Arifi, Chesed and Taari.

8 And the sons of Meshech were R'don, Z'don and Shebashni.

9 And the sons of Tiras were Benib, Gera, Chiz'yon, Lupirion and Gilak; these are the sons of Yafet according to their families, and their numbers in those days were about four hundred and sixty men.

10 And these are the sons of Ham; Kush, Mitzraim, Put and Kanaan, four sons; and the sons of Kush were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raama and Satecha, and the sons of Raama were Sheba and Dedan.

11 And the sons of Mitzraim were Lud, Enam, Lahav and Naf'toch, Pat'ros Chasloch and Caf'tor.

12 And the sons of Put were G'bal, Chadán, Caneh and Eden.

13 And the sons of Kanaan were Tzidon, Chet, Emori, Ger'gashi, Chivi, Ar'ki, Sini, Ar'vadi, Tz'mari and Chamati.

14 These are the sons of Ham, according to their families, and their numbers in those days were about seven hundred and thirty men.

15 And these are the sons of Shem; Elam, Ashur, Arpachshad, Lud and Aram, five sons; and the sons of Elam were Shushan, Machul and Harmon.

16 And the sons of Ashur were Mirus and Mokil, and the sons of Arpachshad were Shelach, Anar and Ashkol.

17 And the sons of Lud were Petor and Azyon, and the sons of Aram were Utz, Chul, Geter and Mash.

18 These are the sons of Shem, according to their families; and their numbers in those days were about three hundred and seventy men.

19 These are the generations of Shem; Shem begat

Arpachshad and Arpachshad begat Shelach, and Shelach begat Ever and to Ever were born two children, the name of one was Peleg, for in his days the sons of men were divided, and in the latter days, the earth was divided.

20 And the name of the second was Yoktan, meaning that in his day the lives of the sons of man were diminished and lessened.

21 These are the sons of Yoktan; Almodad, Shelaf, Chatzarmovet, Yerach, Hadurom, Ozel, Diklah, Oval, Avimael, Sheba, Ofir, Havilah and Yovav; all these are the sons of Yoktan.

22 And Peleg his brother begat Ro, and Ro begat Serug, and Serug begat Nachor and Nachor begat Terach, and Terach was thirty-eight years old, and he begat Charan and Nachor.

23 And Kush the son of Ham, the son of Noach, took a wife in those days in his old age, and she bare a son, and they called his name Nimrod, saying, At that time the sons of man again began to rebel and transgress against Elohim, and the child grew up, and his father loved him exceedingly, for he was the son of his old age.

24 And the garments of skin which Elohim made for Adam and his wife, when they went out of the garden, were given to Kush.

25 For after the death of Adam and his wife, the garments were given to Chanoch, the son of Yared, and when Chanoch was taken up to Elohim, he gave them to Metushelach, his son.

26 And at the death of Metushelach, Noach took them and brought them to the ark, and they were with him until he went out of the ark.

27 And in their going out, Ham stole those garments from Noach his father, and he took them and hid them from his brothers.

28 And when Ham begat his firstborn Kush, he gave him the

garments in secret, and they were with Kush many days.

29 And Kush also concealed them from his sons and brothers, and when Kush had begotten Nimrod, he gave him those garments through his love for him, and Nimrod grew up, and when he was twenty years old he put on those garments.

30 And Nimrod became strong when he put on the garments, and Elohim gave him might and strength, and he was a mighty hunter in the earth, yea, he was a mighty hunter in the field, and he hunted the animals and he built altars, and he offered upon them the animals before YHWH.

31 And Nimrod strengthened himself, and he rose up from among his brothers, and he fought the battles of his brothers against all their enemies round about.

32 And YHWH delivered all the enemies of his brothers in his hands, and YHWH prospered him from time to time in his battles, and he reigned upon earth.

33 Therefore it became current in those days, when a man ushered forth those that he had trained up for battle, he would say to them, Like Nimrod, who was a mighty hunter in the earth, and who succeeded in the battles that prevailed against his brothers, that he delivered them from the hands of their enemies, [so may God strengthen us and deliver us this day.]

34 And when Nimrod was forty years old, at that time there was a war between his brothers and the children of Yafet, and it happened that his brothers were in the hand of their enemies.

35 And Nimrod went forth at that time, and he assembled all the sons of Kush and their families, about four hundred and sixty men, and he hired also from some of his friends and acquaintances about eighty men, and he gave them their hire, and he went with them to battle, and when he was on the road, Nimrod strengthened the hearts of all the people

that went with him.

36 And he said to them, Do not fear, neither be alarmed, for all our enemies will be delivered into our hands, and you may do with them what seems good in your eyes.

37 And all the men that went were about five hundred, and they fought against their enemies, and they destroyed them, and subdued them, and Nimrod placed standing officers over them in their respective places.

38 And he took some of their children as security, and they were all servants to Nimrod and to his brothers, and Nimrod and all the people that were with him turned homeward.

39 And when Nimrod had joyfully returned from battle, after having conquered all his enemies, all his brothers, together with those who knew him before, assembled to make him king over them, and they placed the crown of kingship upon his head.

40 And he set over his subjects and over all his people, princes, judges, and rulers, as is the judgment of kings.

41 And he placed Terach the son of Nachor the prince of his host, and he dignified him and elevated him above all his princes.

42 And while he was reigning according to all his soul, after having conquered all his enemies around, he advised with his counselors to build a city for his palace, and they did so.

43 And they found a large valley opposite to the east, and they built him a large and extensive city, and Nimrod called the name of the city that he built Shinar, for YHWH had vehemently shaken his enemies and destroyed them.

44 And Nimrod dwelt in Shinar, and he reigned securely, and he fought with his enemies and he subdued them, and he prospered in all his battles, and all his kingdom became very great.

45 And all nations and tongues heard of his fame, and they gathered themselves to him, and they bowed down to the

earth, and they brought him offerings, and he became their lord and king, and they all dwelt with him in the city at Shinar, and Nimrod reigned in the earth over all the sons of Noach, and they were all under his power and counsel.

46 And all the earth was of one tongue and words of union, but Nimrod did not go in the ways of YHWH, and he was more wicked than all the men that were before him, from the days of the flood until those days.

47 And he made gods of wood and stone, and he bowed down to them, and he rebelled against YHWH, and taught all his subjects and the people of the earth all his wicked ways; and also Mardon his son was more wicked than his father.

48 And every one that heard of the acts of Mardon the son of Nimrod would say, concerning him, From the wicked goes forth wickedness; therefore it became a proverb in all the earth, saying, From the wicked goes forth wickedness, and it was current in the words of men from that time to this.

49 And Terach the son of Nachor, prince of Nimrod's host, was in those days very great in the eyes of the king and in the eyes of all his subjects, and the king and princes loved him, and they elevated him very high.

50 And Terach took a wife and her name was Amat'lai the daughter of Karn'vo; and the wife of Terach conceived and bare him a son in those days.

51 Terach was seventy years old when he begat him, and Terach called the name of his son that was born to him Avram, because the king had raised him in those days, and dignified him above all his princes that were with him.

CHAPTER 8

1 And it was in the night that Avram was born, that all the

servants of Terach, and all the wise men of Nimrod, and his magicians²² came and ate and drank in the house of Terach, and they rejoiced with him on that night.

2 And it came to pass that all the wise men and magicians went out from the house of Terach, they lifted up their eyes toward heaven that night to look at the stars, and they saw, and behold one very large star came from the east and ran in the heavens, and he swallowed up the four stars from the four sides of the heavens.²³

3 And all the wise men of the king and all his magicians were astonished, and the wise men understood this matter, and they knew its import.

4 And they said to each man to his neighbor, This only betokens the child that has been born to Terach this night, who will grow up and be fruitful, and multiply, and possess all the earth, he and his children for ever, and he and his seed will slay great kings, and inherit their lands.

5 And all the wise men and all the magicians went home that night, and in the morning all these wise men and magicians rose up early, and assembled in an appointed house.

6 And they spoke and said to each man to his neighbor, Behold the sight that we saw last night is hidden from the king, it has not been made known to him.

7 And should this thing become known to the king in the latter days, he will say to us, Why have you concealed this matter from me, and then we shall all suffer death; therefore, now let us go and tell the king the sight which we saw, and the interpretation thereof, and we shall then remain clear.

8 And they did so, and they all went to the king and bowed down to him to the ground, and they said, May the king live, may the king live.

9 We heard that a son was born to Terach the son of Nachor,

²² חרמיו (Strong's 2748)

²³ Compare with the visions recorded in Daniel 2 and Daniel 7.

the prince of your host, and we last night came to his house, and we ate and drank and rejoiced with him that night.

10 And when your servants went out from the house of Terach, to go to our respective homes to abide there for the night, we lifted up our eyes to heaven, and we saw a great star coming from the east, and the same star ran with great speed, and swallowed up four great stars, from the four sides of the heavens.

11 And your servants were astonished at the sight which we saw, and were greatly terrified, and we made our judgment upon the sight, and knew by our wisdom the proper interpretation thereof, that this thing applies to the child that is born to Terach, who will grow up and multiply greatly, and become powerful, and kill all the kings of the earth, and inherit all their lands, he and his seed forever.

12 And now our lord the king, behold we have truly acquainted you with what we have seen concerning this child concerning his being established.

13 If it seems good to the king to give his father value for this child, we will slay him before he shall grow up and increase in the land, and his evil increase against us, that we and our children perish through his evil.

14 And the king heard their words and they seemed good in his eyes, and he sent and called for Terach, and Terach came before the king.

15 And the king said to Terach, I have been told that a son was last night born to you, and after this manner was observed in the heavens at his birth.

16 And now therefore give me the child, that we may slay him before his evil springs up against us, and I will give you for his value, your house full of silver and gold.

17 And Terach answered the king and said to him: My lord the king, I have heard your words, all which my lord the

king desires shall his servant do.

18 But my lord and king, I will tell you what happened to me last night, that I may see what advice the king will give his servant, and then I will answer the king upon what he has just spoken; and the king said, Speak.

19 And Terach said to the king, for Ayon, son of Morad, came to me last night, saying,

20 Give unto me the great and beautiful horse that the king gave you, and I will give you a price of silver and gold, and straw and provender; and I said to him, Wait till I see the king concerning your words, and behold whatever the king says, that will I do.

21 And now my lord the king, behold I have made this thing known to you, and it shall come to pass, the advice which my king will give unto his servant, that will I follow.

22 And the king heard the words of Terach, and his anger was kindled and he considered him in the light of a fool.

23 And the king answered Terach, and he said to him, Are you so silly, ignorant, or deficient in understanding, to do this thing, to give your beautiful horse for silver and gold or even for straw and provender?

24 Are you so short of silver and gold, that you should do this thing, because you can not obtain straw and provender to feed your horse? and what is silver and gold to you, or straw and provender, that you should give away that fine horse which I gave you, like which there is none to be had in all the earth?

25 And the king left off speaking, and Terach answered the king, saying, Like unto this has the king spoken to his servant;

26 I beseech you, my lord and king, what is this which you did say unto me, saying, Give your son that we may slay him, and I will give you a price of silver and gold; what shall I do with silver and gold after the death of my son?

who shall inherit after me? And it shall come to pass at my death, the silver and gold will return to my lord the king who gave it.

27 And when the king heard the words of Terach, and the parable which he brought concerning the king, it grieved the king greatly and he was vexed at this thing, and his anger burned within him.

28 And Terach saw that the anger of the king was kindled against him, and he answered the king, saying, All that I have is in the king's power; whatever my lord the king desires to do to his servant, that let him do, and also my son, behold, he is in the king's power, without price in exchange, he and his two brothers that are older than he.

29 And the king said to Terach, No, for I will purchase your younger son for a price.

30 And Terach answered the king, saying, I beseech you my lord the king to let your servant speak a word before you, and let the king hear the word of his servant, And the king said, Speak, for I will hear you.

and Terach said, Let my lord the king give me three days' time till I consider this matter within my soul, and consult with my house concerning the words of my lord the king; and he pressed the king greatly to agree to this.

31 And the king hearkened to Terach, and he did so and he gave him three days' time, and Terach went out from the king's presence, and he came home to his house and spoke to them all the words of the king; and the men were greatly afraid.

32 And it was in the third day that the king sent to Terach, saying, Send me your son for a price as I spoke to you; and should you not do this thing, I will send and slay all who are in your house, and you shall not even have a dog remaining.

33 And Terach hastened, (as the thing was urgent from the

king), and he took a child, one from his servants, which his handmaid had born to him that day which Avram had been born. And Terach brought the child to the king and received a price for him.

34 And YHWH was with Terach in this matter, that Nimrod might not cause Avram's death, and the king took the child from the hand of Terach

and with all his might dashed his head to the ground by his hand and killed him, for he thought it had been Avram; and this thing was concealed from him from that day, and it was forgotten from the heart of the king, as it was the will of YHWH not to allow Avram's death.

35 And Terach took Avram his son in secret, and his mother and nurse, and he concealed them in a cave, and he gave them their provisions month by month.

36 And YHWH was with Avram in the cave and he grew up, and Avram was in the cave ten years, and the king and all his princes, and servants, and all the sorcerers and all the wise men of the king, thought that the king had killed Avram.

CHAPTER 9

1 And Charan, the son of Terach, Avram's oldest brother, took a wife in those days.

2 Charan was thirty-nine years old when he took her; and the wife of Charan conceived and bare a son, and he called his name Lot.

3 And she conceived again and bare a daughter, and she called her name Milka; and she again conceived and bare a daughter, and she called her name Sarai.

4 Charan was forty-two years old when he begat Sarai, which was in the tenth year of the life of Avram; and in those days Avram and his mother and nurse went out from the cave, as the king and his subjects had forgotten the affair of Avram.

5 And when Avram came out from the cave, he went to Noach and his son Shem, and he dwelt with them to learn the tradition of YHWH and his ways, and no man knew where Avram was, and Avram served Noach and Shem his son many days.

6 And Avram was in Noach's house thirty-nine years, and Avram knew YHWH from three years old, and he went in the ways of YHWH until the day of his death, as Noach and his son Shem had taught him; and all the sons of the earth in those days greatly transgressed against YHWH, and they rebelled against him and they served other gods, and they forgot YHWH who had created them in the earth; and the inhabitants of the earth made unto themselves, at that time, every man his god; gods of wood and stone which could neither speak, hear, nor deliver, and the sons of man served them and they became their gods.

7 And the king and all his servants, and Terach with all his house were then the first in those days of all those that served [gods of] wood and stone.

8 And Terach had twelve gods of large size, made of wood and stone, after the twelve months of the year, and he served each one monthly, and every month Terach would bring his meat offering and drink offering to his gods; thus did Terach all the days.

9 And also all that generation were wicked in the eyes of YHWH, and they thus made every man his god, but they forsook YHWH who had created them.

10 And there was not a man found in those days in all the earth, who knew YHWH (for they served each man his own

god) except Noah and his house, and all those who were under his counsel knew YHWH in those days.

11 And Avram the son of Terach was waxing great in those days in the house of Noach, and no man knew it, and YHWH was with him.

12 And YHWH gave Avram an understanding heart, and he knew all the works of that generation were vain, and that all their gods were vain and were of no avail.

13 And Avram saw the sun [shining] upon the earth, and Avram said unto himself Surely now this sun that shines upon all the earth is Elohim, and him will I serve.

14 And Avram served the sun in that day and he prayed to him, and when evening came the sun set as usual, and Avram said in his heart, Surely this is not Elohim?

15 And Avram still spoke within his heart, Who is he who made the heavens and the earth? who every man upon earth? where is he?

16 And night darkened over him, and he lifted up his eyes toward the west, north, south, and east, and he saw and behold the sun had vanished from the earth, and the day became dark.

17 And Avram saw the stars and moon before him, and he said, Surely now, behold this is Eloah who created all the earth and all man, and behold these his servants [are gods] around him: and Avram served the moon and prayed to it all that night.

18 And in the morning when it was light and the sun shone upon the earth as usual, Avram saw all the things that YHWH Elohim had made upon earth.

19 And Avram said in his heart, Surely these are not gods that made the earth and all man, but these are the servants of Elohim, and Avram remained in the house of Noach and there knew YHWH and his ways' and he served YHWH all the days of his life, and all that generation forgot YHWH,

and served other gods of wood and stone, and rebelled all their days.

20 And king Nimrod reigned securely, and all the earth was under his power, and all the earth was of one tongue and words of union.

21 And all the princes of Nimrod and his great men took counsel together; Put, Mitzraim, Kush and Kanaan with their families, and they said each man to his neighbour, Come let us build ourselves a city and in it a strong tower, and its top reaching heaven, and we will make ourselves famed, so that we may reign in all the world, in order that the evil of our enemies may cease from us, that we may reign mightily over them, and that we may not become scattered over the earth on account of their wars.

22 And they all went before the king, and they told the king these words, and the king agreed with them in this affair, and he did so.

23 And all the families assembled consisting of about six hundred thousand men, and they went to seek an extensive piece of ground to build the city and the tower, and they sought in all the earth and they found none like one valley at the east of the land of Shinar, about two days' walk, and they journeyed there and they dwelt there.

24 And they began to make bricks and burn fires to build the city and the tower that they had imagined to complete.

25 And the building of the tower was unto them a transgression and a sin, and they began to build it, and while they were building, and rebelling against YHWH Elohi of heaven, they imagined in their hearts to war against him and to ascend to heaven.

26 And all these men and all the families divided themselves in three parts; the first said We will ascend into heaven and fight against him; the second said, We will ascend to heaven and place our own gods there and serve them; and the third

part said, We will ascend to heaven and smite him with bows and spears; and Elohim knew all their works and all their evil thoughts, and he saw the city and the tower which they were building.

27 And when they were building they built themselves a great city and a very high and strong tower; and on account of its height the mortar and bricks did not reach the builders in their ascent to it, until those who went up had completed a full year, and after that, they reached to the builders and gave them the mortar and the bricks; thus was it on every daily.

28 And it came to pass these ascended and these [others] descended the whole day; and it came to pass that if a brick should fall from their hands and get broken, they would all weep over it, and if a man fell and died, none of them would look at him.

29 And YHWH knew their thoughts, and it came to pass when they were building they cast the arrows toward the heavens, and all the arrows fell upon them filled with blood, and when they saw them they said each man to his neighbor, Surely, behold, we have slain all those that are in heaven.

30 For this was from YHWH in order to cause them to err, and in order; to destroy them from off the face of the ground.

31 And they built the tower and the city, and they did this thing day by day until many days and many years were fulfilled.

32 And Elohim said to the seventy angels who stood foremost before him, to those who were near to him, saying, Come let us descend and confuse their tongues, that one man shall not understand the language of his neighbor, and they did so unto them.

33 And it came to pass from that day following, they forgot each man his neighbor's tongue, and they could not

understand to speak all of them unified in one tongue, and it came to pass when a man said to his neighbor, Give me a stone to build, and he is given lime, or when he said, Give me lime and the give lime stone. And when the builder took from the hands of his neighbor lime or stone which he did not order, the builder would cast it away and throw it upon his neighbor, that he would die.

34 And they did so many days, and they killed many of them in this manner.

35 And YHWH smote the three divisions that were there, and he punished them according to their works and designs; those who said, We will ascend to heaven and serve our gods, became like apes and elephants; and those who said, We will smite the heaven with arrows, YHWH killed them, one man through the hand of his neighbor; and the third division of those who said, We will ascend to heaven and fight against him, YHWH scattered them throughout the earth.

36 And those who were left among them, when they knew and understood the evil which was coming upon them, they forsook the building, and they also became scattered upon the face of all the earth.

37 And they ceased building the city and the tower; therefore he called that place Babel, for there YHWH confounded the Language of all the earth; behold it was at the east of the Land of Shinar.

38 And as to the tower which the sons of men built, the earth opened its mouth and swallowed up one third part thereof, and a fire also descended from heaven and burned another third, and the other third is left to this day, and it is of that part which was aloft, and its circumference is three days' walk.

39 And many of the sons of men died in that tower, a people without number.

CHAPTER 10

1 And Peleg the son of Ever died in those days, in the forty-eighth year of the life of Avram son of Terach, and all the days of Peleg were two hundred and thirty-nine years, and he died.

2 And when YHWH had scattered the sons of man on account of their sin of the tower upon the face of all the earth. They spread forth into many divisions, and all the sons of men were dispersed into the four winds of all the earth.

3 And all the families became each according to its language, its land, or its city.

4 And the sons of man built many cities according to their families, in all the places where they went, and throughout the earth where YHWH had scattered them.

5 And some of them built cities in places from which they were afterward destroyed, and they called these cities after their own names, or the names of their children, or after their particular occurrences.

6 And the sons of Yafet the son of Noach went and built themselves cities in the places where they were scattered, and they called all their cities after their names, and the sons of Yafet were divided upon the face of the earth into many divisions and languages.

6b And these are the names of all their families according to all their cities which were built to them in those days after the tower.²⁴

7 And these are the sons of Yafet according to their families, Gomer, Magog, Madai, Yavan, Tuval, Meshech and Tiras; these are the children of Yafet according to their

²⁴ This verse was omitted by Moses Samuel in his 1840 English translation.

generations.

8 And the children of Gomer, according to their cities, were the Prankos²⁵, who dwell in the land of Pranza²⁶, by the river Senah²⁷.

9 And the children of Rifat are the Bartonim, who dwell in the land of Bartonia by the river Lidah, which empties its waters in the great sea Gihon, that is, Oceanus²⁸.

10 And the children of Tugarma are ten families, and these are their names: Kuzar, Partzinak, Bulgar, Elikanus, Ragvina, Turki, Buz, Zabuk, Ongar and Tilmatz; all these spread and rested in the north and built themselves cities.

11 And they called their cities after their names, those are they who abide by the rivers Hital and Altak unto this day.

12 But [the families of] Angoli, Bulgar and Partzinak, they dwell by the great river Danuvi; and the names of their cities are also according to their names.

13 And the children of Yavan are the Yavanim who dwell in the land of Makdonia, and the children of Medaiare are the Arezlus that dwell in the land of Kurson, and the children of Tuval are those that dwell in the land of Tushkanah by the river Pashiah.

14 And the children of Meshech are the Shevshani and the children of Tiras are Roshash, Boshni, and Ongolis; all these went and built themselves cities; ‘those are the cities that are situate by the sea Y’bus by the river Kira, which empties itself in the river Gurgan.

15 And the children of Elishah are the Almania, and they also went and built themselves cities; those are the cities sit between the mountains of Yov and Shivatmu; [and of them were the people of Lombardi who dwell opposite the

²⁵ פרנקוס “Franks?”

²⁶ פרנצה “France?”

²⁷ סינה “Seine?”

²⁸ “that is, oceanus” Heb.: אוקינוס

mountains of Yov and Shivatmu]²⁹, and they conquered the land of Italia³⁰ and remained there unto this day.

16 And the children of Chittim are the Romim who dwell in the valley of C'napania by the river Tiberaiu.

17 And the children of Dudanim are those who dwell in the cities of the sea Gihon, in the land of Bar'danah.

18 These are the families of the children of Yafet according to their cities and languages, when they were scattered after the tower.³¹

19 And the children of Ham the son of Noach went also and built to themselves cities in places where they were scattered and called also the names of the cities by their names and by their occurrences and these are the names of all their cities according to their families which built to them in those days after the tower and the children of Ham³² were Kush, Mitzraim, Put and Kanaan according to their generation and cities.

20 All these went and built themselves cities as they found [fit places for them], and they called their cities after the names of their fathers Kush, Mitzraim, Put and Kanaan.

21 And the children of Mitzraim are the Ludim, Anamim, Lehavim, Naftuchim, Patrusim, Kasluchim and Kafturim, seven families.

22 All these dwell by the river Shichor, that is the brook of

²⁹ My Hebrew edition appears to lack this line of text which must have been present in Moses Samuel's copy. The copiest must have accidentally omitted the words between the two occurrences of the phrase "mountains of Yov and Shivatmu".

³⁰ Heb.: אִיטַלְיָה "Italy"

³¹ Moses Samuel follows this verse with "...and they called their cities after their names and occurrences; and these are the names of all their cities according to their families, which they built in those days after the tower." Which appears to be his translation which appears in verse 6b above. It is unknown why he transplanted this material from just after verse 6 to just after verse 8.

³² Moses Samuel in his 1840 translation seems to have omitted everything between the first and second appearances of "the children of Ham". He must have taken his eyes off of the text and then found the key phrase "the children of Ham" in the wrong place.

Egypt, and they built themselves cities and called them after their names.

23 And the children of Patros and Kasluch intermarried together, and from them went forth the P'lishtim, the Gerarim, the Azatim, the Gitim and the Ekronim, in all five families; these also built themselves cities, and they called their cities after the names of their fathers unto this day.

24 And the children of Kanaan also built themselves cities, and they called their cities after their names, eleven cities and others without number.

25 And four men from the family of Ham went to the land of the plain; these are the names of the four men, Sodom, Amorah, Admah and Tz'voyim.

26 And these men built themselves four cities in the land of the plain, and they called the names of their cities after their names.

27 And they and their children and all belonging to them dwelt in those cities, and they were fruitful and multiplied greatly and dwelt peaceably.

28 And Seir the son of Chur, son of Chivi, son of Kanaan, went and found a valley opposite to Mount Paran, and he built a city there, and he and his seven sons and his house dwelt there, and he called the city which he built Seir, according to his name; that is the land of Seir unto this day.

29 These are the families of the children of Ham, according to their languages and cities, when they were scattered to their countries after the tower.

30 And some of the children of Shem son of Noach, father of all the children of Ever, also went and built themselves cities in the places wherein they were scattered, and they called their cities after their names.

31 And the sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arpachshad, Lud and Aram, and they built themselves cities and called the names of all their cities after their names.

32 And Ashur son of Shem and his children and his house went forth at that time, a very large [body of them], and they went to a distant land that they found, and they met with a very extensive valley in the land that they went to, and they built themselves four cities, and they called them after their names and occurrences.

33 And these are the names of all the cities which the children of Ashur built, Ninevah, Resen, Kalach and R'chovot City; and the children of Ashur dwell there unto this day.

34 And the children of Aram also went and built themselves a city, and they called the name of the city Utz after their eldest brother, and they dwell therein; that is the land of Utz to this day.

35 And in the second year after the tower a man from the house of Ashur, whose name was Bala, went from the land of Ninevah to sojourn with his house wherever he could find a place; and they came until opposite the cities of the plain against Sodom, and they dwelt there.

36 And the man rose up and built there a small city, and called its name Bala, after his name; that is the land of Tzoar unto this day.

37 And these are all the families of the children of Shem according to their language and cities, after they were scattered upon the earth after the tower.

38 And every province, and province city and city, and family of the families of the children of Noach built themselves many cities after this.

39 And they established kingdoms in all their cities, in order to be regulated by their orders; so did all the families of the children of Noach forever.

CHAPTER 11

1 And Nimrod son of Kush was still in the land of Shinar, and he reigned over it and dwelt there, and he built cities in the land of Shinar.

2 And these are the names of the four cities which he built, and he called their names after the occurrences that happened to them in the building of the tower.

3 And he called the first Bavel, saying, Because YHWH there confounded the language of all the earth; and the name of the second he called Erech, because from there YHWH dispersed them.

4 And the third Achad, saying there was a great battle at that place; and the fourth Kalneh, saying, because his princes and mighty men were consumed there, and they vexed him, they rebelled and transgressed against him.

5 And when Nimrod had built these cities in the land of Shinar, he placed in them the remainder of his people, his princes and his mighty men that were left in his kingdom.

6 And Nimrod dwelt in Bavel, and he there renewed his reign over the rest of his subjects, and he reigned securely, and the subjects and princes of Nimrod called his name Amrafel, saying that at the tower his princes and men fell through his means.

7 And notwithstanding this, Nimrod did not return to YHWH, and he continued in wickedness and teaching wickedness to all the sons of man; and Mardon, his son, was worse than his father, and continued to add to all the abominations of his father.

8 And he caused the sons of man to sin, therefore it is said, From the wicked goes forth wickedness.

9 At that time there was war between the families of the children of Ham, as they were dwelling in the cities which

they had built.

10 And Chedarlaomer, king of Elam, went away from the families of the children of Ham, and he fought with them and he subdued them, and he went to the five cities of the plain and he fought against them and he subdued them, and they were under his power.

11 And they served him twelve years, and they gave him a yearly tax.

12 At that time died Nachor, son of Serug, in the forty-ninth year of the life of Avram son of Terach.

13 And it came to pass all the days of Nachor were one hundred and forty years and he died. And in the fiftieth year of the life of Avram son of Terach, Avram came forth from the house of Noach, and went to his father's house.

14 And Avram knew YHWH, and he went in his ways and traditions of YHWH, and YHWH his Elohim was with him.

15 And Terach his father in those days, served as captain of the host of king Nimrod, and he served following after the ways of Nimrod to serve gods of wood and stone.

16 And Avram came to his father's house and saw twelve gods standing there in his father's house in their temples, and the anger of Avram was kindled when he saw these images in his father's house.

17 And also Avram said, As YHWH lives these images shall not stand in my father's house; so shall Elohim who created me do unto me if in three days' time I do not break them all.

18 And Avram went from them, and his anger burned within him. And Avram hastened and went from the chamber to his father's outer court, and he found his father sitting in the court, and all his servants with him, and Avram came and sat before him.

19 And Avram asked his father, saying, Father, tell me where is Elohim who created heaven and earth, and which created all the sons of man upon earth, and who created you

and which created me, even me upon the earth. And Terach answered his son Avram and said, Behold those who created all of us are with us in the house.

20 And Avram said to his father, My lord, show them to me I pray you; and Terach brought Avram into the chamber of the inner court, and Avram saw, and behold the whole room was full of gods of wood and stone, twelve great images and others less than they without number.

21 And Terach said to his son, Behold these are they which made all which you see upon all the earth, and which created me and you, and all man upon the earth.

22 And Terach bowed down to his gods, and he then went away from them, and Avram, his son, went away with him.

23 And when Avram had gone from them he went to his mother and sat before her, and he said to his mother, Behold, my father has shown me those who made heaven and earth, and all the sons of man.

24 Now, therefore, hasten and fetch a kid from the flock, and make of it savory meat, that I may bring it to my father's gods as an offering for them to eat; perhaps I may thereby become acceptable to them.

25 And his mother did so, and she fetched a kid, and made savory meat thereof, and brought it to Avram, and Avram took the savory meat from his mother and brought it before his father's gods, and he drew near to them that they might eat; and Terach his father, did not know of it.

26 And Avram saw on the day when he was sitting among them, that they had no voice, no hearing, no motion, and not one of them could stretch forth his hand to eat.

27 And Avram mocked them, and said, Surely the savory meat that I prepared was not pleasing in their eyes, or perhaps it was too little for them, and for that reason they would not eat; therefore tomorrow I will prepare fresh savory meat, better and more plentiful than this, in order that

I may see the result.

28 And it was on the morrow that Avram directed his mother concerning the savory meat, and his mother rose and fetched three fine kids from the flock, and she made of them some excellent savory meat, such as her son was fond of, and she gave it to her son Avram; and Terach his father did not know of it.

29 And Avram took the savory meat from his mother, and brought it before his father's gods into the chamber; and he came near unto them that they might eat, and he placed it before them, and Avram sat before them all day, thinking perhaps they might eat.

30 And Avram viewed them, and behold they had neither voice nor hearing, nor did one of them stretch forth his hand to the meat to eat.

31 And in the evening of that day in that house Avram was clothed with the Spirit of Elohim.

32 And he called out and said, Wo, wo unto my father and this wicked generation, whose hearts are all inclined to vanity, who serve these idols of wood and stone which can neither eat, smell, hear nor speak, who have mouths without speech, eyes without sight, ears without hearing, hands without feeling, and legs which cannot walk; like them are all those that made them and all that trust in them and all that serve them and bow to them.

33 And when Avram saw all these things his anger was kindled against his father, and he hastened and took a hatchet in his hand, and came unto the chamber of the gods, and he broke all his father's gods.

34 And when he had done breaking the images, he placed the hatchet in the hand of the great god which was there before them, and he went out; and Terach his father came home, for he had heard at the door of the house the sound of the striking of the hatchet; so Terach came into the house to

know what is this and what is that.

35 And Terach, having heard the noise of the hatchet in the room of images, and Terach ran to the room to the images, and he met Avram going out from there.

36 And Terach entered the room and found all the idols fallen down and broken, and the hatchet in the hand of the largest, which was not broken, and the savory meat which Avram his son had made was still before them.

37 And when Terach saw this that had been done, his anger was greatly kindled, and he hastened and went from the room to Avram.

38 And he found Avram his son still sitting in the house; and he said to him, What is this work you have done to my gods?

39 And Avram answered Terach his father and he said, Not so my lord, for I brought savory meat before them, and when I came near to them with the meat that they might eat, they all at once stretched forth their hands to eat before the great one had put forth his hand to eat.

40 And the large one saw their works that they did before him, and his anger was violently kindled against them, and he went and took the hatchet that was in the house and came to them and broke them all, and behold the hatchet is yet in his hand as you see.

41 And Terach's anger was kindled against his son Avram, when he spoke this; and Terach said to Avram his son in his anger, What is this tale that you have told? you speak lies to me.

42 Is there in these gods spirit and soul and power to do all you have told me? Are they not wood and stone, and have I not myself made them, and canst you speak such lies, saying that the large god that was with them smote them? It is you that did place the hatchet in his hands, and then say he smote them all.

43 And Avram answered his father and said to him, And how can you then serve these idols in whom there is no power to do any thing? Can those idols in which you trust deliver you? can they hear your prayers when you call upon them? can they deliver you from the hands of your enemies, or will they fight your battles for you against your enemies, that you should serve wood and stone which can neither speak nor hear?

44 And now surely it is not good for you nor for the sons of men that are connected with you, to do these things; are you so silly, so foolish or so short of understanding that you will serve wood and stone, and do after this thing?

45 And forget YHWH Elohim who made heaven and earth, and who created you on the earth, and thereby bring a great evil upon your souls in this thing by serving wood and stone?

46 Did not our fathers in days of old sin in this thing, and YHWH Elohi of all the earth brought the waters of the flood upon them and destroyed all the earth?

47 And how can you continue to do this thing and serve other gods of wood and stone, who cannot hear, or speak, or deliver you from oppression, thereby bringing down the anger of the Elohi of all the earth upon you?

48 Now therefore my father refrain from this, and bring not evil upon your soul and the souls of your house.

49 And Avram hastened and sprang from before his father, and took the hatchet from his father's largest idol, with which Avram broke it and ran away.

50 And Terach, seeing all that Avram had done, hastened to go from his house, and he went to the king and he came before Nimrod and stood before him, and he bowed down to the king; and the king said, What do you want?

51 And he said, I beseech you my lord, to hear me--Now fifty years back a child was born to me, and thus has he done

to my gods and thus has he spoken; and now therefore, my lord the king, send for him that he may come before you, and judge him according to the law, that we may be delivered from his evil.

52 And the king sent three men of his servants, and they went and brought Avram before the king. And Nimrod and all his princes and servants were that day sitting before him in that day, and Terach sat also before them.

53 And the king said to Avram, What is this that you have done to your father and to his gods? And Avram answered the king in the words that he spoke to his father, and he said, The large god that was with them in the house did to them what you have heard.

54 And the king said to Avram, Which one of them had power to speak and eat and do as you have said? And Avram answered the king, saying, And if there be no power in them why do you serve them and cause the sons of men to err through your follies?

55 Do you imagine that they can deliver you or do anything small or great, that you should serve them? And why will you not serve the Elohim of all the earth, who created you and in whose power it is to kill and keep alive?

56 O foolish, simple, and ignorant king, woe unto you forever.

57 I thought you would teach your servants the upright way, but you have not done this, but have filled all the earth with your sins and the sins of your men who have followed your ways.

58 Do you not know, or have you not heard, that this evil which you do, our ancestors sinned therein in days of old, and Elohi of Eternity brought the waters of the flood upon them and destroyed them all, and also destroyed all the earth on their account? And will you and your men rise up now and do like unto this work, in order to bring down the anger

of YHWH Elohi the Eternal, and to bring evil upon you and all the earth?

59 Now therefore put away this evil deed which you do, and serve the Elohi of Eternity, as your soul is in his hands, and then it will be well with you.

60 And if your wicked heart will not hearken to my words to cause you to forsake your evil ways, and to serve Elohi the Eternal, then will you die in shame in the latter days, you, your men and all who are connected with you, hearkening to your words or walking in your evil ways.

61 And when Avram had ceased speaking before the king and princes, Avram lifted up his eyes to the heavens, and he said, YHWH sees all the wicked, and he will judge them.

CHAPTER 12

1 And when the king heard all the words of Avram he ordered him to be put into prison; and Avram was ten days in prison.

2 And it came to pass at the end of those days sent the king and ordered that all the princes of the king and all the princes of different provinces and the wise men should come before him, and they sat before him, and Avram was still in the house of confinement.

3 And the king said to all the princes and all the wise men, Have you heard what Avram, the son of Terach, has done to his father? Thus has he done to him, and I ordered him to be brought before me, and thus has he spoken; his heart did not misgive him, neither did he stir in my presence, and behold now he is confined in the prison.

4 And therefore decide what judgment is due to this man who reviled the king; who spoke and who did all these things that you heard.

5 And they all answered the king saying, The man who reviles the king should be hanged upon a tree; but having done all the things that he said, and having despised our gods, he must therefore be burned to death, for this is the law in this matter.

6 If it pleases the king to do this, let him send his servants, and his servants kindle a fire three days, both night and day in your brick furnace, and then we will cast this man into it. And the king did so, and he commanded his servants that they should prepare a fire for three days and three nights in the king's furnace, that is in Casdim; and the king ordered them to take Avram from prison and bring him out to be burned in the fire.

7 And all the king's servants, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of the king, and all the governors, and all the judges about nine hundred thousand men, stood opposite the furnace to see Avram.

8 And all the women and all the little ones crowded upon the roofs and towers to see [what was being done] with Avram, and they all stood together at a distance; and there was not a man left that did not come on that day to see.

9 And when Avram was come, the sorcerers of the king and the wise men saw Avram, and they cried out to the king, saying, Our lord the king, surely this is the man whom we know to have been the child at whose birth the great star swallowed the four stars, which we declared to the king now fifty years today.

10 And behold now his father has also transgressed your commands, and mocked you by bringing you another child, which you did kill.

11 And when the king heard their words, he was exceedingly wroth, and he ordered Terach to be brought before him.

12 And the king said to Terach, Have you heard what the

wise men have spoken? Now tell me truly, how did you; and if you shall speak truth you shall be acquitted.

13 And Terach saw that the king's anger was so much kindled, Terach said to the king, My lord the king, you have heard the truth, and what the wise men have spoken is right. And the king said, How could you do this thing, to transgress my orders and to give me a child that you did not beget, and to take a price for him?

14 And Terach answered the king, Because my tender feelings were excited for my son, at that time, and I took a son of my handmaid, and I brought him to the king.

15 And the king said Who advised you to do this thing? Tell me, do not hide a thing from me, and then you shall not die.

16 And Terach was greatly terrified in the king's presence, and he said to the king, It was Charan my eldest son who advised me to this; and Charan was in those days that Avram was born, two and thirty years old.

17 But Charan did not advise his father to anything, for Terach said this thing to the king in order to deliver his soul from the king, for he feared greatly; and the king said to Terach, Charan your son who advised you to this shall die through fire with Avram; for the sentence of death is upon him for having rebelled against the king's desire in doing this thing.

18 And Charan at that time felt inclined to follow the ways of Avram, but he kept it within his heart.

19 And Charan said in his heart, Behold now the king has seized Avram on account of these things which Avram did, and it shall come to pass, that if Avram prevail over the king I will follow him, but if the king prevail I will go after the king.

20 And it came to pass that Terach had spoken this to the king concerning Charan his son, the king ordered Charan to be seized with Avram.

21 And they brought them both before the king, Avram and Charan his brother, and the king commanded them to cast them into the fire; and all the inhabitants of the land and the king's servants and princes and all the women and little ones were there, standing that day over them.

22 And the king's servants took Avram and his brother, and they stripped them of all their clothes excepting their lower garments which were upon them.

23 And they bound their hands and feet with linen cords, and the servants of the king lifted them up and cast them together into the furnace.

24 And YHWH was zealous for Avram and he had compassion over him, and YHWH came down and delivered Avram from the fire and he was not burned.

25 But all the cords with which they bound him were burned, and Avram remained and walked about in the fire.

26 And Charan died when they had cast him into the fire, and he was burned to ashes, for his heart was not at peace with YHWH; and those men who cast him into the fire, the flame of the fire spread over them, and they were burned, and twelve men of them died.

27 And it came to pass Avram walked in the midst of the fire three days and three nights, and all the servants of the king saw him walking in the midst of the fire, and all the servants of the king came and told the king, saying, Behold we have seen Avram walking about in the midst of the fire, and even the lower garments which are upon him are not burned, but the cord with which he was bound is burned.

28 And when the king heard their words his heart fainted and he would not believe them; so he sent other faithful princes to see this thing, and they went and saw it and told it to the king; and the king rose to go and see it, and he saw Avram walking to and fro in the midst of the fire, and he saw Charan's body burned in the fire, and the king wondered

greatly at this.

29 And the king ordered Avram to be taken out from the fire; and his servants approached to take him out and they could not, for the fire was round about and the flame ascending toward them from the furnace.

30 And the king's servants fled from it, and the king rebuked them, saying, Make haste and bring Avram out of the fire that you shall not die.

31 And the servants of the king again approached to bring Avram out, and the flames came upon them and burned their faces so that eight men of them died.

32 And when the king saw that his servants could not approach the fire lest they should be burned, the king called to Avram saying, O servant of Elohim who is in heaven, go forth from amidst the fire and come here before me; and Avram hearkened to the voice of the king, and he went forth from the fire and came and stood before the king.

33 And when Avram came out the king and all his servants saw Avram coming before the king, with his lower garments upon him, for they were not burned, but the cord with which he was bound was burned.

34 And the king said to Avram, How is it that you were not burned in the fire?

35 And Avram said to the king, Elohi of heaven and earth in whom I trust and who has all in his power, he delivered me from the fire into which you did cast me.

36 And Charan the brother of Avram was burned in the fire and became ashes, and they sought for his body, and they found it consumed.

37 And Charan was eighty-two years old when he died in the fire of Kasdim³³. And the king, princes, and inhabitants of the land, seeing that Avram was delivered from the fire, they came and bowed down to Avram.

³³ “in the fire of Kasdim” or “in Ur of the Kasdim (Chaldees)” (Compare Gen. 11:28)

38 And Avram said to them, Do not bow down to me, but bow down to Elohi of the world who made you, and serve him, and go in his ways for it is he who delivered me from out of this fire, and it is he who created the souls of all men and their spirits, and formed man in his mother's womb, and brought him forth into the land, and it is he who will deliver all those who trust in him from all pain.

39 And this thing seemed very wonderful in the eyes of the king and princes, that Avram was saved from the fire and that Charan was burned; and the king gave Avram many presents and he gave him his two head servants from the king's house; the name of one was Eni and the name of the other was Eliezer.

40 And also all the princes of the king and his servants gave Avram many gifts of silver and gold and pearl, and the king and his princes sent him away, and he went in peace.

41 And Avram went forth from the king in peace, and many men of the king's servants followed him, and about three hundred men joined him.

42 And Avram returned on that day and went to his father's house, he and all the men that followed him, and Avram served YHWH his Elohi all the days of his life, and he walked in his ways and followed his law³⁴.

43 And from that day forward Avram inclined the hearts of the sons of man to serve YHWH.

44 And it came to pass at that time Nachor and Avram took unto themselves wives, the daughters of their brother Charan; the wife of Nachor was Milka and the name of Avram's wife was Sarai. And Sarai, wife of Avram, was barren; she had no offspring in those days.

45 And at the end of two years from Avram's going out of the fire, that is in the fifty-second year of his life, behold king Nimrod sat in Bavel upon the throne, and the king fell

³⁴ Or "Torah"

asleep and dreamed that he was standing with his troops and hosts in a valley opposite the king's furnace.

46 And he lifted up his eyes and behold a man in the likeness of Avram coming forth from the furnace, and that he came and stood before the king with his drawn sword in his hand, and then sprang to the king with his sword, when the king fled from the man, for he was afraid; and while he was running, the man threw an egg upon the king's head, and the egg became a great river.

47 And he dreamed that all his troops sank in that river and died, and the king took flight with three men who were before him and he escaped.

48 And the king looked at these men and behold they were clothed in princely clothing as the garments of the king, and had the appearance and majesty of the king.

49 And it came to pass while they were running, the river again turned to an egg before the king, and there came forth from the egg a little bird which came before the king, and flew upon his head and plucked out the king's eye.

50 And the king was grieved at the sight, and he awoke out of his sleep and his spirit was agitated; and he felt a great terror.

51 And it came to pass in the morning the king rose from his couch in fear, and he ordered all the wise men and magicians to come before him, when the king related his dream to them.

52 And one wise servant of the king, whose name was Enoki, answered the king, saying, This is nothing else but the evil of Avram and his seed which will spring up against my lord the king in the latter days.

53 And behold the day will come when Avram and his seed and the children of his house will war with my lord the king, and they will smite all the king's hosts and his troops.

54 And as to what you have said concerning three men

which you did see like unto yourself, and which did escape, this means that only you will escape with three kings from the kings of the earth who will be with you in battle.

55 And that which you saw of the river which turned to an egg as at first, and the little bird plucking out your eye, this means nothing else but the seed of Avram which will slay the king in latter days.

56 This is my king's dream, and this is its interpretation, and the dream is true, and the interpretation which your servant has given you is right.

57 Now therefore my king, surely you know that it is now fifty-two years since your wise men saw this at the birth of Avram, and if my king will allow Avram to live in the earth it will be to the injury of my lord the king, for all the days that Avram lives neither you nor your kingdom will be established, for this was known formerly at his birth; and why will not my king slay him, that his evil may be kept from you in latter days?

58 And Nimrod hearkened to the voice of Enoki, and he sent some of his servants in secret to go and seize Avram, and bring him before the king to suffer death.

59 And Eliezer, Avram's servant whom the king had given him, was at that time in the presence of the king, and he heard what Enoki had advised the king, and what the king had said to cause Avram's death.

60 And Eliezer said to Avram, Hasten, rise up and save your soul, that you may not die through the hands of the king, for thus did he see in a dream concerning you, and thus did Enoki interpret it, and thus also did Enoki advise the king concerning you.

61 And Avram hearkened to the voice of Eliezer, and Avram hastened and ran for safety to the house of Noach and his son Shem, and he concealed his soul there and found a place of safety; and the king's servants came to Avram's house to

seek him, but they could not find him, and they searched through out the country and he was not to be found, and they went and searched in every direction and he was not to be met with.

62 And when the king's servants could not find Avram they returned to the king, but the king's anger against Avram was stilled, as they did not find him, and the king drove from his mind this matter concerning Avram.

63 And Avram was concealed in Noach's house for one month, until the king had forgotten this matter, but Avram was still afraid of the king; and Terach came to see Avram his son secretly in the house of Noach, and Terach was very great in the eyes of the king.

64 And Avram said to his father, Do you not know that the king thinks to slay me, and to annihilate my name from the earth by the advice of his wicked counselors?

65 Now whom have you here and what have you in this land? Arise, let us go together to the land of Kanaan, that we may be delivered from his hand, lest you perish also through him in the latter days.

66 Do you not know or have you not heard, that it is not through love that Nimrod gives you all this honor, but it is only for his benefit that he bestows all this good upon you?

67 And if he do unto you greater good than this, surely these are only vanities of the world, for wealth and riches cannot avail in the day of wrath and anger.

68 Now therefore hearken to my voice, and let us arise and go to the land of Kanaan, out of the reach of injury from Nimrod; and serve you YHWH who created you in the earth and it will be well with you; and cast away all the vain things which you pursue.

69 And Avram ceased to speak, when Noach and his son Shem answered Terach, saying, True is the word which Avram has said unto you.

70 And Terach hearkened to the voice of his son Avram, and Terach did all that Avram said, for this was from YHWH, that the king should not cause Avram's death.

CHAPTER 13

1 And Terach took his son Avram and his grandson Lot, the son of Charan, and Sarai his daughter-in-law, the wife of his son Avram, and all the souls of his house and went with them from Ur Kasdim to go to the land of Kanaan. And when they came as far as the land of Charan they remained there, for they found it was exceedingly good land for pasture, and of sufficient extent for those men who accompanied them.

2 And the men of the land of Charan saw that Avram was good and upright with Elohim and men, and YHWH his Elohi was with him, and some of the people of the land of Charan came and joined Avram, and he taught them the tradition of YHWH and his ways; and these men remained with Avram in his house and they adhered to him.

3a And Avram remained in Charan three years,

Parashat Lekh

3b And it came to pass at the expiration of three years YHWH appeared to Avram and said to him; I am YHWH who brought you forth from Ur Kasdim, and delivered you from the hands of all your enemies.

4 And now therefore if you will hearken to my voice and keep my commandments, my statutes and my laws, then will I cause your enemies to fall before you, and I will multiply your seed like the stars of heaven, and I will send my

blessing upon all the works of your hands, and you shall lack nothing.

5 Arise now, take your wife and all belonging to you and go to the land of Kanaan and remain there, and I will there be unto you for an Elohim, and I will bless you. And Avram rose and took his wife and all belonging to him, and he went to the land of Kanaan as YHWH had told him; and Avram was fifty years old when he went from Charan.

6 And Avram came to the land of Kanaan and dwelt in the midst of the city, and he there pitched his tent among the children of Kanaan, inhabitants of the land.

7 And YHWH appeared to Avram when he came to the land of Kanaan, and said to him, This is the land which I gave unto you and to your seed after you forever, and I will make your seed like the stars of heaven, and I will give unto your seed for an inheritance all the lands which you see.

8 And Avram built an altar in the place where YHWH had spoken to him, and Avram there called upon the name of YHWH at that time.

9 At the end of three years of Avram's dwelling in the Land, in that year Noach died, which was the fifty-eighth year of the life of Avram; and all the days that Noach lived were nine hundred and fifty years and he died.

10 And Avram dwelt in the land of Kanaan, he, his wife, and all belonging to him, and all those that accompanied him, together with those that joined him from the people of the land; but Nachor, Avram's brother, and Terach his father, and Lot the son of Charan and all belonging to them dwelt in Charan.

11 In the fifth year of Avram's dwelling in the land of Kanaan the men of Sodom and Amarah and all the cities of the plain revolted from the power of Chedarlaomer, king of Elam; for all the kings of the cities of the plain had served Chedarlaomer for twelve years, and given him a yearly tax,

but in those days in the thirteenth year, they rebelled against him.

12 And in the tenth year of Avram's dwelling in the land of Kanaan there was war between Nimrod king of Shinar and Chedarlaomer king of Elam, and Nimrod came to fight with Chedarlaomer and to put him under his power.

13 For Chedarlaomer was at that time one of the princes of the hosts of Nimrod, and when all the people at the tower were dispersed and those that remained were also scattered upon the face of all the earth, Chedarlaomer went to the land of Elam and reigned over it and rebelled against his lord.

14 And in those days when Nimrod saw that the cities of the plain had rebelled, he came with pride and anger to war with Chedarlaomer, and Nimrod assembled all his princes and subjects, about seven hundred thousand men, and went against Chedarlaomer, and Chedarlaomer went out to meet him with five thousand men, and they prepared for battle in the valley of Bavel which is between Elam and Shinar.

15 And all those kings fought in that place, and Nimrod and all his people were smitten before the men of Chedarlaomer, and there fell from Nimrod's men about six hundred thousand, and Mardon the king's son fell among them.

16 And Nimrod fled and returned in shame and disgrace to his land, and he was under subjection to Chedarlaomer for a long time, and Chedarlaomer returned to his land and sent princes of his host to the kings that dwelt around him, to Arioeh king of Elasar, and to Tidal king of Goyim³⁵, and made a covenant with them, and they were all obedient to his commands.

17 And it was in the fifteenth year of Avram's dwelling in the Land, which is the seventieth year of the life of Avram, and YHWH appeared to Avram in that year and he said to

³⁵ or "nations" or "gentiles"

him, I am YHWH who brought you out from Ur Kasdim³⁶ to give you this land for an inheritance.

18 Now therefore walk before me and be perfect and keep my commands, for to you and to your seed I will give this land for an inheritance, from the river Mitzraim unto the great river Euphrates.

19 And you shall come to your fathers in peace and in good age, and the fourth generation shall return here in this land and shall inherit it forever; and Avram built an altar, and he called upon the name of YHWH who appeared to him, and he brought up sacrifices upon the altar to YHWH.

20 At that time Avram returned and went to Charan to see his father and mother, and his father's house, and Avram and his wife and all belonging to him returned to Charan, and Avram dwelt in Charan five years.

21 And many of the men of Charan, about seventy-two men, followed Avram and Avram taught them the tradition of YHWH and his ways, and he taught them to know YHWH.

22 In those days YHWH appeared to Avram in Charan, and he said to him, Behold, I spoke unto you these twenty years back saying,

23 Go forth from your land, from your birth-place and from your father's house, to the land which I have shown you to give it to you and to your children, for there in that land will I bless you, and make you a great nation, and make your name great, and in you shall the families of the earth be blessed.

24 Now therefore arise, go forth from this place, you, your wife, and all belonging to you, and also every one born in your house and all the souls you have made in Charan, and bring them out with you from here, and rise to return to the land of Kanaan.

25 And Avram arose and took his wife Sarai and all

³⁶ Ur Kasdim “the fire of the Chaldeans” or “Ur of the Chaldeans”

belonging to him and all that were born to him in his house and the souls which they had made in Charan, and they came out to go to the land of Kanaan.

26 And Avram went and returned to the land of Kanaan, according to the Word of YHWH. And Lot the son of his brother Charan went with him, and Avram was seventy-five years old when he went forth from Charan to return to the land of Kanaan.

27 And he came to the land of Kanaan according to the Word of YHWH to Avram, and he pitched his tent and he dwelt in the plain of Mamre, and with him was Lot his brother's son, and all belonging to him.

28 And YHWH again appeared to Avram and said, To your seed will I give this land; and he there built an altar to YHWH who appeared to him, which is still to this day in the plains of Mamre.

CHAPTER 14

1 In those days there was in the land of Shinar a wise man who had understanding in all wisdom, and of a beautiful appearance, but he was a poor man and head of nothing at all; his name was Rakayon and he was hard set to support himself.

2 And he resolved to go to Egypt, to Asweros³⁷ the son of Enam king of Egypt, to show the king his wisdom; for perhaps he might find grace in his eyes, to raise him up and give him maintenance; and Rakayon did so.

3 And when Rakayon came to Egypt he asked the inhabitants of Egypt concerning the passing by of the king, and the inhabitants of Egypt told him the custom of the king of Egypt, for it was the custom of the king of Egypt in those

³⁷ Osiris?

days that he went from his royal palace and was not seen in the land only one day in the year, and after that the king would return to his palace to remain there.

4 And it came to pass on the day when the king went forth he passed judgment in all the land, and every man having a suit came before the king that day to obtain his request.

5 And it came to pass when Rakayon heard of the custom in Egypt and that he could not come into the presence of the king, he grieved greatly and was very sorrowful.

6 And in the evening Rakayon went out and found a house in ruins, formerly a bake house in Egypt, and he abode there all night in bitterness of soul and pinched with hunger, and sleep was removed from his eyes.

7 And Rakayon considered in his heart what he should do in the city until the king made his appearance, and how he might maintain himself there.

8 And he rose in the morning and walked in the city, and asked them and inquired of them where they merchandised in vegetables and in seeds with which they merchandised and supplied the inhabitants of the land.

9 And Rakayon wished to do the same in order to get a maintenance in the city, but he did not know the custom of the men of the land, and he was like a blind man among them.

10 And he went and obtained vegetables even to sell them for his support, and the sons of Belial assembled about him and ridiculed him, and took all his vegetables from him and left him nothing.

11 And he rose up from there in bitterness of soul, and went sighing to the bake house in which he had remained all the night before, and he slept there the second night.

12 And on that night again he reasoned in his heart how he could save himself from starvation, and he devised a scheme

how to act.

13 And he rose up in the morning and acted imaginatively, and went and hired thirty strong men of the sons of Belial, all carrying their war instruments in their hands, and he led them to the top of the Egyptian tombs, and he placed them there.

14 And he commanded them, saying, Thus says the king, Strengthen yourselves and be valiant men, and let no man be buried here until two hundred pieces of silver be given, and then he may be buried; and those men did according to the order of Rakayon to the men of Egypt the whole of that year.

15 And it came to pass in eight months Rakayon and his men gathered great riches of silver and gold, and stones of onyx and pearls without number. And Rakayon took a great quantity of horses and other animals, and he hired more men, and he gave them horses and they remained with him.

16 And when the end³⁸ of the year came round, at the time the king went forth into the city, all the inhabitants of Egypt assembled together to speak to him concerning the work of Rakayon and his men.

17 And the king went forth on the appointed day, and all the Egyptians came before him and cried unto him, saying,

18 May the king live forever. What is this thing you do in the city to your servants, not to allow a dead body to be buried until so much silver and gold be given? Was there ever the like unto this done in all the earth, from the days of former kings yes even from the days of Adam, unto this day, that the dead should not be buried only for a set price?

19 We know it to be the custom of kings to take a yearly tax from the living, but you do not only do this, but from the dead also you exact a tax day by day.

20 Now, O king, we can no more bear this, for the whole city is ruined on this account, and do you not know it?

³⁸ Or "Equinox"

21 And when the king heard all that they had spoken he was very wroth, and his anger burned within him at this affair, for he had known nothing of it.

22 And the king said, Who and where is he that dares to do this wicked thing in my land without my command? Surely you will tell me.

23 And they told him all the works of Rakayon and his men, and the king's anger was aroused, and he ordered Rakayon and his men to be brought before him.

24 And Rakayon took about a thousand children, sons and daughters, and clothed them in silk and embroidery, and he set them upon horses and sent them to the king by means of his men, and he also took a great quantity of silver and gold and stones of onyx and pearls, and a very strong and beautiful horse, and brought it before the king, and bowed down to the king of the land before him; and the king, his servants and all the inhabitants of Egypt wondered at the work of Rakayon, and they saw all his riches and the present that he had brought to the king.

25 And it greatly pleased the king and he wondered at it; and when Rakayon sat before him the king asked him concerning all his works, and Rakayon spoke all his words wisely before the king, his servants and all the inhabitants of Egypt.

26 And when the king heard the words of Rakayon and his wisdom, Rakayon found grace before him, and he met with grace and kindness from all the servants of the king and from all the inhabitants of Egypt, on account of his wisdom and excellent words, and from that day they loved him exceedingly.

27 And the king answered and said to Rakayon, Your name shall no more be called Rakayon but Pharaoh shall be your name, since you did exact a tax from the dead; and he called his name Pharaoh.

28 And the king and his subjects loved Rakayon for his wisdom, and they consulted with all the inhabitants of Egypt to make him prefect under the the power of the king.

29 And all the inhabitants of Egypt and its wise men did so, and it was made a law in Egypt.

30 And they made Rakayon Pharaoh prefect under the power of Asweros³⁹ king of Egypt, and Rakayon Pharaoh governed over Egypt, daily administering justice to the whole city, but Asweros the king would judge the people of the land one day in the year, when he went out to make his appearance.

31 And Rakayon Pharaoh cunningly usurped the Kingdom of Egypt, and he exacted a tax from all the inhabitants of Egypt.

32 And all the inhabitants of Egypt greatly loved Rakayon Pharaoh, and they made a decree to call every king that should reign over them and their seed in Egypt, Pharaoh.

33 Therefore all the kings that reigned in Egypt from that time forward were called Pharaoh unto this day.

CHAPTER 15

1 And in that year it came to pass there was a heavy famine throughout the land of Kanaan, and the inhabitants of the land could not remain on account of the famine for it was very grievous.

2 And Avram and all belonging to him rose and went down to Egypt on account of the famine, and when they were at the brook Mitzraim they remained by the brook some days to rest on account of the road.

3 And Avram and Sarai were walking at the border of the brook Mitzraim,

³⁹ Osiris?

and Avram looked at the water and saw his wife Sarai, that she was very, very beautiful.

4 And Avram said to his wife Sarai, Since Elohim has created you with such a beautiful countenance, I am afraid of the Egyptians lest they should slay me and take you away, for the fear of Elohim is not in these places.

5 Surely then you shall do this, Say you are my sister to all that may ask you, in order that it may be well with me, and that we may live and not be put to death.

6 And Avram commanded the same to all those that came with him to Egypt on account of the famine; also his nephew Lot he commanded, saying, If the Egyptians ask you concerning Sarai say she is the sister of Avram.

7 And yet with all these orders Avram did not put confidence in them, but he took Sarai and placed her in a chest and concealed it among their vessels, for Avram was greatly concerned about Sarai on account of the wickedness of the Egyptians.

8 And Avram and all belonging to him rose up from the brook Mitzraim and came to Egypt; and they entered the gates of the city when the guards of the city stood up to them saying, Give tithe to the king from what you have, and then you may come into the city; and Avram and those that were with him did so.

9 And Avram and the men that were with him came to Egypt, and when they came they brought the chest in which Sarai was concealed and the Egyptians saw the chest.

10 And all the king's servants approached Avram, saying, What have you here in this chest which we have not seen? Now open you the chest and give tithe to the king of all that it contains.

11 And Avram said, This chest I will not open, but all you demand upon it I will give. And Pharaoh's officers answered Avram, saying, It is a chest of stones of onyx, give us the

tenth thereof.

12 Avram said, All that you desire I will give, but you must not open the chest.

13 And the king's officers pressed Avram, and they reached the chest and opened it with force, and they saw, and behold a beautiful woman was in the chest.

14 And it came to pass when the officers of the king beheld Sarai they were struck with admiration at her beauty, and all the princes and servants of Pharaoh assembled to see Sarai, for she was very beautiful. And the king's officers ran and told Pharaoh all that they had seen, and they praised Sarai to the king; and Pharaoh ordered her to be brought, and the woman came before the king.

15 And Pharaoh saw Sarai and she pleased him exceedingly, and she was beautiful in his eyes, and the king rejoiced greatly on her account, and made presents to those who brought him the tidings concerning her.

16 And the woman was then brought to Pharaoh's house in those days, and Avram grieved greatly on account of his wife, and he prayed to YHWH to deliver her from the hands of Pharaoh.

17 And Sarai also prayed at that time and said, YHWH Elohim you did tell my lord Avram to go from his land and from his father's house to the land of Kanaan, and you did promise to do well with him if he would do your words; now behold we have done that which you did command us, and we left our land and our families, and we went to a strange land and to a people whom we have not known before.

18 And we came to this land to avoid the famine, and this evil accident has befallen me; now therefore, YHWH Elohim, deliver us and save us from the hand of this oppressor, and do well with me for the sake of your mercy.

19 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Sarai, and YHWH sent an angel to deliver Sarai from the hand of Pharaoh.

20 And the king came and sat before Sarai and behold an angel of YHWH was standing over them, and he appeared to Sarai and said to her, Do not fear, for YHWH has heard your prayer.

21 And the king approached Sarai and said to her, the man who brought you here, behold, who is he to you? and she said, He is my brother.

22 And the king said, It is incumbent upon us to make him great, to elevate him and to do unto him all the good which you shall command us; and at that time the king sent to Avram silver and gold and stones of onyx in abundance, together with cattle, men servants and maid servants; and the king ordered Avram to be brought, and he sat in the court of the king's house, and the king greatly exalted Avram on that night.

23 And the king approached to speak to Sarai, and he reached out his hand to touch her, when the angel smote him heavily, and he was terrified and he refrained from reaching to her.

24 And when the king came near to Sarai, the angel smote him to the earth, and acted thus to him the whole night, and the king was terrified.

25 And the angel on that night smote heavily all the servants of the king, and his whole house, on account of Sarai, and there was a great lamentation that night among the people of Pharaoh's house.

26 And Pharaoh, seeing the evil that befell him, said, Surely on account of this woman has this thing happened to me, and he removed himself at some distance from her and spoke pleasing words to her.

27 And the king said to Sarai, Tell me I pray you concerning the man with whom you came here; and Sarai said, This man is my husband, and I said to you that he was my brother for I was afraid, lest you should put him to death through

wickedness.

28 And the king kept away from Sarai, and the plagues of the angel of YHWH ceased from him and his house; and Pharaoh knew that he was smitten on account of Sarai, and the king was greatly astonished at this.

29 And it came to pass in the morning the king called for Avram and said to him, What is this you have done to me? Why did you say, She is my sister, owing to which I took her unto me for a wife, and this heavy plague has therefore come upon me and my house.

30 Now behold, here is your wife, take her and go. Go from our land lest we all die on her account. And Pharaoh took more cattle, men servants and maid servants, and silver and gold, to give to Avram, and he returned unto him Sarai his wife.

31 And the king took a maiden whom he begat by his concubines, and he gave her to Sarai for a handmaid.

32 And the king said to his daughter, It is better for you my daughter to be a handmaid in this man's house than to be mistress in my house, after we have beheld the evil that befell us on account of this woman.

33 And Avram arose, and he and all belonging to him went away from Egypt; and Pharaoh ordered some of his men to accompany him and all that went with him.

34 And Avram returned to the land of Kanaan, to the place where he had made the altar, where he at first had pitched his tent.

35 And also Lot the son of Charan, Avram's brother, had a heavy stock of cattle, flocks and herds and tents, for YHWH was bountiful to them on account of Avram.

36 And it came to pass when Avram was dwelling in the land the herdsmen of Lot quarreled with the herdsmen of Avram, for their property was too great for them to remain together in the land, and the land could not bear them on

account of their cattle.

37 And when Avram's herdsmen went to feed their flock they would not go into the fields of the people of the land, but the cattle of Lot's herdsmen did otherwise, for they were allowed to feed in the fields of the men of the land.

38 And the men of the land saw this occurrence daily, and they came to Avram and quarreled with him on account of Lot's herdsmen.

39 And Avram said to Lot, What is this you are doing to me, to make me despicable to the inhabitants of the land, that you order your herdsmen to feed your cattle in the fields of other people? Do you not know that I am a stranger in this land among the children of Kanaan, and why will you do this to me?

40 And Avram quarreled daily with Lot on account of this, but Lot would not listen to Avram, and he continued to do the same and the inhabitants of the land came and told Avram.

41 And Avram said unto Lot, How long will you be to me for a stumbling block with the inhabitants of the land? Now I beseech you let there be no more quarrelling between you and me, for men of brothers are we.

42 But I pray you separate from me, go and choose a place where you may dwell with your cattle and all belonging to you, but Keep yourself at a distance from me, you and your house.

43 And now be not afraid in going from me, for if any one do an injury to you, let me know and I will avenge your cause from him, only remove from me.

44 And it came to pass when Avram had spoken all these words to Lot, then Lot arose and lifted up his eyes toward the plain of Yordan.

45 And he saw that the whole of this place was well watered, and good for man as well as affording pasture for

the cattle.

46 And Lot went from Avram to that place, and he there pitched his tent and he dwelt in Sodom, and they were separated from each other.

47 And Avram dwelt in the plain of Mamre, which is in Chevron, and he pitched his tent there, and Avram remained in that place many days and years.

CHAPTER 16

1 At that time Ch'darlaomer king of Elam sent to all the neighboring kings, to Nimrod, king of Shinar who was then under his power, and to Tidal, king of Goyim, and to Arioch, king of Elasar, with whom he made a covenant, saying, Come up to me and assist me, that we may smite all the cities of Sodom and its inhabitants, for they have rebelled against me these thirteen years.

2 And these four kings went up with all their camps, about eight hundred thousand men, and they went as they were, and smote every man they found on their road.

3 And all of the five kings of Sodom and Amorah, Shinav king of Admah, Shemever king of Tz'voyim, Bera king of Sodom, Bersha king of Amorah, and Bela king of Tzoar, went out to meet them, and they all joined together in the valley of Siddim.

4 And these nine kings made war in the valley of Siddim; and the kings of Sodom and Amorah were smitten before the kings of Elam.

5 And the valley of Siddim was full of lime pits and the kings of Elam pursued the kings of Sodom, and the kings of Sodom with their camps fled and fell into the lime pits, and all that remained went to the mountain for safety, and the five kings of Elam came after them and pursued them to the

gates of Sodom, and they took all that there was in Sodom.

6 And they plundered all the cities of Sodom and Amarah, and they also took Lot, Avram's brother's son, and his property, and they seized all the goods of the cities of Sodom, and they went away; and Ug⁴⁰, Avram's servant, who was in the battle, saw this, and told Avram all that the kings had done to the cities of Sodom, and that Lot was taken captive by them.

7 And Avram heard this, and he rose up with about three hundred and eighteen men that were with him, and he that night pursued these kings and smote them, and they all fell before Avram and his men, and there was none remaining but the four kings who fled, and they went each his own road.

8 And Avram recovered all the property of Sodom, and he also recovered Lot and his property, his wives and little ones and all belonging to him, so that Lot lacked nothing.

9 And when he returned from smiting these kings, he and his men passed the valley of Siddim where the kings had made war together.

10 And Bera king of Sodom, and the rest of his men that were with him, went out from the lime pits into which they had fallen, to meet Avram and his men.

11 And also Adoni-Tzedek king of Jerusalem, the same was Shem, went out with his men to meet Avram and his people, with bread and wine, and they remained together in the valley of Melech.

12 And Adoni-Tzedek blessed Avram, and Avram gave him a tenth from all that he had brought from the spoil of his enemies, for Adoni-Tzedek was a priest before Elohim.

13 And all the kings of Sodom and Amarah who were there, with their servants, approached Avram and begged of him to

⁴⁰ Heb.: עִגְגָּ which Moses Samuel renders “Unic” but which is better rendered “Ug”. Moses Samuel may have misread the letters as עִגְגָּ.

return them their servants whom he had made captive, and to take unto himself all the property.

14 And Avram answered the kings of Sodom, saying, As YHWH lives who created heaven and earth, and who redeemed my soul from all affliction, and who delivered me this day from my enemies, and gave them into my hand, I will not take anything belonging to you, that you may not boast tomorrow, saying, Avram became rich from our property that he saved.

15 For YHWH my Eloah in whom I trust said unto me, you shall lack nothing, for I will bless you in all the works of your hands with which you have made.

16 And now therefore behold, here is all belonging to you, take it and go; as YHWH lives I will not take from you from a living soul down to a sandal strap or thread, excepting the expense of the food of those who went out with me to battle, as also the portions of the men who went with me, Aner, Ashkol, and Mamre, they and their men, as well as those also who had remained to watch the baggage, they shall take their portion of the spoil.

17 And the kings of Sodom gave Avram according to all that he had said, and they pressed him to take of whatever he chose, but he would not.

18 And he sent away the kings of Sodom and the remainder of their men, and he gave them orders about Lot, and they went to their respective places.

19 And also Lot, his brother's son, he also sent away with his property, and he went with them, and Lot returned to his home, to Sodom, and Avram and his people returned to their home to the plains of Mamre, which is in Chevron.

20 At that time YHWH again appeared to Avram in Chevron, and he said to him, Do not fear, your reward is very great before me, for I will not leave you, until I shall have multiplied you, and blessed you and made your seed

like the stars in heaven, which cannot be measured nor numbered.

21 And I will give unto your seed all these lands that you see with your eyes, to them will I give them for an inheritance forever, only be strong and do not fear, walk before me and be perfect.

22 And in the seventy-eighth year of the life of Avram, in that year died Reu, the son of Peleg, and all the days of Reu were two hundred and thirty-nine years, and he died.

23 And Sarai, the daughter of Charan, Avram's wife, was still barren in those days; she did not bear to Avram either son or daughter.

24 And when she saw that she bare no children she took her handmaid Hagar, whom Pharaoh had given her, and she gave her to Avram her husband for a wife⁴¹.

25 For Hagar learned all the ways of Sarai as Sarai taught her, she was not in any way deficient in following her good ways.

26 And Sarai said to Avram, Behold here is my handmaid Hagar, go to her that she may bring forth upon my knees, that I may also obtain children through her.

27 And at the end of ten years of Avram's dwelling in the land of Kanaan, which is the eighty-fifth year of Avram's life, Sarai gave Hagar unto him.

28 And Avram hearkened to the voice of his wife Sarai, and he took his handmaid Hagar and Avram came to her and she conceived.

29 And when Hagar saw that she had conceived she rejoiced greatly, and her mistress was despised in her eyes, and she said within herself, This can only be that I am better before YHWH than Sarai my mistress, for all the days that my mistress has been with my lord, she did not conceive, but me YHWH has caused in so short a time to conceive by him.

⁴¹ Or "for a woman"

30 And when Sarai saw that Hagar had conceived by Avram, Sarai was jealous of her handmaid, and Sarai said in her heart, This is surely nothing else but that she must be better than I am.

31 And Sarai said unto Avram, My wrong be upon you, for at the time when you did pray before YHWH for children why did you not pray on my account, that YHWH should give me seed from you?

32 And when I speak to Hagar in your presence, she despises my words, because she has conceived, and you will say nothing to her; may YHWH judge between me and you for what you have done to me.

33 And Avram said to Sarai, Behold your handmaid is in your hand, do unto her as it may seem good in your eyes; and Sarai afflicted her, and Hagar fled from her to the wilderness.

34 And an angel of YHWH found her in the place where she had fled, by a well, and he said to her, Do not fear, for I will multiply your seed, for you shall bear a son and you shall call his name Yishmael; now then return to Sarai your mistress, and submit yourself under her hands.

35 And Hagar called the place of that well B'er-lachai-roi, it is between Kadesh and the wilderness of Bared.

36 And Hagar at that time returned to her lord's house, and at the end of days Hagar bare a son to Avram, and Avram called his name Yishmael; and Avram was eighty-six years old when he begat him.

CHAPTER 17

1 And in those days, in the ninety-first year of the life of Avram, the children of Chittim made war with the children of Tuval, for when YHWH had scattered the sons of men

upon the face of the earth, the children of Chittim went and embodied themselves in the plain of K'nafania, and they built themselves cities there and dwelt by the river Tibreu.

2 And the children of Tuval dwelt in Tush'kanah, and their boundaries reached the river Tibreu, and the children of Tuval built a city in Tush'kanah, and they called the name Sabinah, after the name of Sabinah son of Tuval their father, and they dwelt there unto this day.

3 And it came to pass at that time the children of Chittim made war with the children of Tuval, and the children of Tuval were smitten before the children of Chittim, and the children of Chittim caused three hundred and seventy men to fall from the children of Tuval.

4 And at that time the children of Tuval swore to the children of Chittim, saying, You shall not intermarry among us, and no man shall give his daughter to any of the sons of Chittim.

5 For all the daughters of Tuval were in those days fair, for no women were then found in all the earth so fair as the daughters of Tuval.

6 And it came to pass all men who delighted in the beauty of women went to the daughters of Tuval and took wives from them, and the sons of men, kings and princes, who greatly delighted in the beauty of women, took wives in those days from the daughters of Tuval.

7 And at the end of three years after the children of Tuval had sworn to the children of Chittim not to give them their daughters for wives, about twenty men of the children of Chittim went to take some of the daughters of Tuval, but they found none.

8 For the children of Tuval kept their oaths not to intermarry with them, and they would not break their oaths.

9 And in the days of harvest the children of Tuval went into their fields to get in their harvest, when the young men of

Chittim assembled and went to the city of Sabinah, and each man took a girl from the daughters of Tuval, and they came to their cities.

10 And the children of Tuval heard of it and they went to make war with them, and they could not prevail over them, for the mountain was exceedingly high from them, and when they saw they could not prevail over them they returned to their land.

11 And at the revolution⁴² of the year the children of Tuval went and hired about ten thousand men from those cities that were near them, and they went to war with the children of Chittim.

12 And the children of Tuval went to war with the children of Chittim, to destroy their land and to distress them, and in this engagement the children of Tuval prevailed over the children of Chittim, and the children of Chittim, seeing that they were greatly distressed, lifted up the children which they had had by the daughters of Tuval, upon the wall which had been built, to be before the eyes of the children of Tuval.

13 And the children of Chittim said to them, Have you come to make war with your own sons and daughters, and have we not been considered your flesh and bones from that time till now?

14 And when the children of Tuval heard this they ceased to make war with the children of Chittim, and they went away.

15 And they went and returned to their cities, and the children of Chittim at that time assembled and built two cities by the sea, and they called one Portu and the other Aritza.

16 And Avram the son of Terach was then ninety-nine years old.

17 At that time YHWH appeared to him and he said to him,

⁴² or "Equinox"

I will make my covenant between me and you, and I will greatly multiply your seed, and this is the covenant which I make between me and you, that every male child be circumcised, you and your seed after you.

18 At eight days old shall it be circumcised, and this covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.

19 And now therefore your name shall no more be called Avram but Avraham, and your wife shall no more be called Sarai but Sarah.

20 For I will bless you both, and I will multiply your seed after you that you shall become a great nation, and kings shall come forth from you.

CHAPTER 18

1 And Avraham rose and did all that Elohim had ordered him, and he took the men of his house and those bought with his money, and he circumcised them as the YHWH had commanded him.

2 And there was not one left whom he did not circumcise, and also Avraham and his son Yishmael were circumcised in the flesh of their foreskin; thirteen years old was Yishmael when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

Parashat Vayera

3 And in the third day Avraham went out of his tent and sat at the door to enjoy the heat of the sun, during the pain of his flesh.

4 And YHWH appeared to him in the plain of Mamre, and sent three of his ministering angels to visit him, and he was sitting at the door of the tent, and he lifted his eyes and saw, and lo three men were coming from a distance, and he rose

up and ran to meet them, and he bowed down to them and brought them into his house.

5 And he said to them, If now I have found favor in your eyes, turn in and eat a morsel of bread; and he pressed them, and they turned in and he gave them water and they washed their feet, and he placed them under a tree at the door of the tent.

6 And Avraham ran and took a calf, tender and good, and he hastened to kill it, and gave it to his servant Eliezer to dress.

7 And Avraham came to Sarah into the tent, and he said to her, Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead it and make cakes to cover the pot containing the meat, and she did so.

8 And Avraham hastened and brought before them butter and milk, beef and mutton, and gave it before them to eat before the flesh of the calf was sufficiently done, and they did eat.

9 And when they had done eating one of them said to him, I will return to you according to the time of life, and behold Sarah your wife shall have a son.

10 And the men afterward departed and went their ways, to the places to which they were sent.

11 In those days all the men of Sodom and Amarah, and of the whole five cities, were exceedingly wicked and sinful against YHWH and they provoked YHWH with their abominations, and they strengthened in aging abominably and scornfully before YHWH, and their wickedness and crimes were in those days great before YHWH.

12 And they had in their land a very extensive valley, about half a day's walk, and in it there were fountains of water and a great deal of herbage surrounding the water.

13 And all the men of Sodom and Amarah went there four times in the year, with their wives and children and all belonging to them, and they rejoiced there with timbrels and

dances.

14 And in the time of rejoicing they would all rise and lay hold of their neighbor's wives, and some, the virgin daughters of their neighbors, and they enjoyed them, and each man saw his wife and daughter in the hands of his neighbor and did not say a word.

15 And they did so from morning to night, and they afterward returned home each man to his house and each woman to her tent; so they always did four days in the year.

16 Also when a stranger came into their cities and brought goods which he had purchased with a view to dispose of there, the men of these cities would assemble, men, women and children, young and old, and go to the man and take his goods by force, giving a little to each man until there was an end to all the goods of the owner which he had brought into the land.

17 And if the owner of the goods quarreled with them, saying, What is this work which you have done to me, then they would approach to him one by one, and each would show him the little which he took and taunt him, saying, I only took that little which you did give me; and when he heard this from them all, he would arise and go from them in sorrow and bitterness of soul, when they would all arise and go after him, and drive him out of the city with great noise and tumult.

18 And there was a man from the country of Elam who was leisurely going on the road, seated upon his ass, which carried a fine mantle of divers colors, and the mantle was bound with a cord upon the ass.

19 And the man was on his journey passing through the street of Sodom when the sun set in the evening, and he remained there in order to abide during the night, but no one would let him into his house; and at that time there was in Sodom a wicked and mischievous man, one skillful to do

evil, and his name was Hedod.

20 And he lifted up his eyes and saw the traveler in the street of the city, and he came to him and said, Whence come you and where do you go?

21 And the man said to him, I am traveling from Chevron to Elam where I belong, and as I passed the sun set and no one would allow me to enter his house, though I had bread and water and also straw and provender for my ass, and am short of nothing.

22 And Hedod answered and said to him, But all that you shall want shall be supplied by me, but in the street you shall not abide all night.

23 And Hedod brought him to his house, and he took off the mantle from the ass with the cord, and brought them to his house, and he gave the ass straw and provender while the traveler ate and drank in Hedod's house, and he abode there that night.

24 And it came to pass in the morning the traveler rose up early to continue his journey, when Hedod said to him, Wait, comfort your heart with a morsel of bread and then go, and the man did so; and he remained with him, and they both ate and drank together during the day, when the man rose up to go.

25 And Hedod said to him, Behold now the day is declining, you had better remain all night that your heart may be comforted; and he pressed him so that he tarried there all night, and on the second day he rose up early to go away, when Hedod pressed him, saying, Comfort your heart with a morsel of bread and then go, and he remained and ate with him also the second day, and then the man rose up to continue his way.

26 And Hedod said to him, Behold now the day is declining, remain with me to comfort your heart and in the morning rise up early and go your way.

27 And the man would not remain, but rose and saddled his ass, and while he was saddling his ass the wife of Hedod said to her husband, Behold this man has remained with us for two days eating and drinking and he has given us nothing, and now shall he go away from us without giving anything? and Hedod said to her, Be silent.

28 And the man saddled his ass to go, and he asked Hedod to give him the cord and mantle to tie it upon the ass.

29 And Hedod said to him, What say you? And he said to him, That you my lord shall give me the cord and the mantle made with divers colors which you did conceal with you in your house to take care of it.

30 And Hedod answered the man, saying, This is the interpretation of your dream, the cord which you did see, means that your life will be lengthened out like a cord, and having seen the mantle colored with all sorts of colors, means that you shall have a vineyard in which you will plant trees of all fruits.

31 And the traveler answered, saying, Not so my lord, for I was awake when I gave you the cord and also a mantle woven with different colors, which you did take off the ass to put them by for me; and Hedod answered and said, Surely I have told you the interpretation of your dream and it is a good dream, and this is the interpretation thereof.

32 Now the sons of men give me four pieces of silver, which is my charge for interpreting dreams, and of you only I require three pieces of silver.

33 And the man was provoked by the words of Hedod, and he cried greatly and bitterly, and he brought Hedod to Sharek judge of Sodom.

34 And the man laid his cause before Sharek the judge, when Hedod replied, saying, It is not so, but thus the matter stands; and the judge said to the traveler, This man Hedod tells you truth, for he is known in these cities for the

accurate interpretation of dreams.

35 And the man cried at the word of the judge, and he said, Not so my lord, for it was in the day that I gave him the cord and mantle which was upon the ass, in order to put them by in his house; and they both disputed before the judge, the one saying, Thus the matter was, and the other declaring otherwise.

36 And Hedod said to the man, Give me four pieces of silver that I charge for my interpretations of dreams; I will not make any allowance; and give me the expense of the four meals that you did eat in my house.

37 And the man said to Hedod, Truly I will pay you for what I ate in your house, only give me the cord and mantle which you did conceal in your house.

38 And Hedod replied before the judge and said to the man, Did I not tell you the interpretation of your dream? the cord means that your days shall be prolonged like a cord, and the mantle, that you will have a vineyard in which you will plant all kinds of fruit trees.

39 This is the proper interpretation of your dream, now give me the four pieces of silver that I require as a compensation, for I will make you no allowance.

40 And the man cried at the words of Hedod and they both quarreled before the judge, and the judge gave orders to his servants, who drove them rashly from the house.

41 And they went away quarreling from the judge, when the people of Sodom heard them, and they gathered about them and they exclaimed against the stranger, and they drove him rashly from the city.

42 And the man continued his way upon his ass with bitterness of soul, lamenting and weeping.

43 And while he was going along he wept at what had happened to him in the corrupt city of Sodom.

CHAPTER 19

1 And the cities of Sodom had four judges to four cities, and these were their names, Sherek in the city of Sodom, Sharkar in Amarah, Zavnak in Admah, and Manon in Tzevoyim.

2 And Eliezer Avraham's servant applied to them different names, and he converted Sherak to Shikra⁴³, Sharkar to Shakrura⁴⁴, Zavnak to Kazvan⁴⁵, and Menon to M'tzaley-din⁴⁶.

3 And by desire of their four judges the men of Sodom and Amarah had beds erected in the streets of the cities, and it came to pass every man who came and went to these cities they laid hold of him and brought him to one of their beds, and by force made him to lie in them.

4 And it came to pass as he lay down, three men would stand at his head and three at his feet, and measure him by the length of the bed, and if the man was less than the bed these six men would stretch him at each end, and when he cried out to them they would not answer him.

5 And it came to pass if the man, he was longer than the bed they would draw together the two sides of the bed at each end, until the man had reached the gates of death.

6 And if he continued to cry out to them, they would answer him, saying, Thus shall it be done to a man that comes into our land.

7 And when men heard all these things that the people of the cities of Sodom did, they refrained from coming there.

8 And when a poor man came to their land they would give him silver and gold, and cause a proclamation in the whole

⁴³ "liar"

⁴⁴ "that which is cold"

⁴⁵ "deceiver"

⁴⁶ "shady-judge"

city not to give him a morsel of bread to eat, and if the stranger should remain there some days, and die from hunger, not having been able to obtain a morsel of bread, then at his death all the people of the city would come and take their silver and gold which they had given to him.

9 And it came to pass that all the men that could recognize the silver or gold which they had given him took it back, and at his death they also stripped him of his garments, and they would fight about them, and he that prevailed over his neighbor took them.

10 They would after that carry him and bury him under some of the shrubs in the deserts; so they did all the days to any one that came to them and died in their land.

11 And it came to pass in those days that Sarah sent Eliezer to Sodom, to see Lot and inquire after his welfare.

12 And Eliezer went to Sodom, and he met a man of Sodom fighting with a stranger, and the man of Sodom stripped the poor man of all his clothes and went away.

13 And this poor man cried to Eliezer and supplicated his favor on account of what the man of Sodom had done to him.

14 And he said to him, Why do you act thus to the poor man who came to your land?

15 And the man of Sodom answered Eliezer, saying, Is this man your brother, or have the men of Sodom made you a judge this day, that you speak about this man?

16 And Eliezer strove with the man of Sodom on account of the poor man, and when Eliezer approached to recover the poor man's clothes from the man of Sodom, he hastened and with a stone smote Eliezer in the forehead.

17 And much blood flowed from Eliezer's forehead, and when the man saw the blood he caught hold of Eliezer, saying, Give me my hire for having rid you of this bad blood that was in your forehead, for such is the custom and the law

in our land.

18 And Eliezer said to him, you have wounded me and also require me to pay you your hire? and Eliezer would not hearken to the words of the Sodomite.

19 And the man laid hold of Eliezer and brought him to Shakra the judge of Sodom for judgment.

20 And the man spoke to the judge, saying, I beseech you my lord, thus has this man done, for I smote him with a stone that the blood flowed from his forehead, and he is unwilling to give me my hire.

21 And the judge said to Eliezer, This man speaks truth to you, give him his hire, for this is the custom in our land; and Eliezer heard the words of the judge, and he lifted up a stone and smote the judge, and the stone struck on his forehead, and much blood flowed from the forehead of the judge, and Eliezer said, If this then is the custom in your land give you unto this man what I should have given him, for this has been your decision, you did decree it.

22 And Eliezer left the man of Sodom with the judge, and he went away.

23 And it came to pass that the kings of Elam had made war with the kings of Sodom, the kings of Elam captured all the property of Sodom, and they took Lot captive, with his property, and when it was told to Avraham he went and made war with the kings of Elam, and he recovered from their hands all the property of Lot as well as the property of Sodom.

24 At that time the wife of Lot bare him a daughter, and he called her name Paltit, saying, Because Elohim had delivered him and his whole house from the kings of Elam; and Paltit daughter of Lot grew up, and one of the men of Sodom took her for a wife.

25 And a poor man came into the city to seek a maintenance, and he remained in the city some days, and all the men of

Sodom caused a proclamation of their custom not to give this man a morsel of bread to eat, until he dropped dead upon the earth, and they did so.

26 And Paltit the daughter of Lot saw this man lying in the streets starved with hunger, and no one would give him any thing to keep him alive, and his soul was brought near to being cast out.

27 And her soul was filled with pity on account of the poor man, and she fed him secretly with bread for many days, and the soul of this man was revived.

28 For when she went forth to fetch water she would put the bread in the water pitcher, and when she came to the place where the poor man was, she took the bread from the pitcher and gave it him to eat; so she did many days.

29 And all the men of Sodom and Amarah wondered how this man could bear starvation for so many days.

30 And they said to each man to his neighbor, This can only be that he eats and drinks, for no man can bear starvation for so many days or live as this man has, without even his countenance changing; and three men concealed themselves in a place where the poor man was stationed, to know who it was that brought him bread to eat.

31 And Paltit daughter of Lot went forth that day to fetch water, and she put bread into her pitcher of water, and she went to draw water by the poor man's place, and she took out the bread from the pitcher and gave it to the poor man and he ate it.

32 And the three men saw what Paltit did to the poor man, and they said to her, It is you then who have supported him, and therefore has he not starved, nor changed in appearance nor died like the rest.

33 And the three men went out of the place in which they were concealed, and they seized Paltit and the bread which was in the poor man's hand.

34 And they took Paltit and brought her before their judges, and they said to them, Thus did she do, and it is she who supplied the poor man with bread, therefore did he not die all this time; now therefore declare to us the punishment due to this woman for having transgressed our law.

35 And the men of Sodom and Amarah assembled and kindled a fire in the street of the city, and they took the woman and cast her into the fire and she was burned to ashes.

36 And also in the city of Admah there was a certain girl, a daughter of a noble of the men of Admah and they did the same thing to her.

37 For a traveler came into the city of Admah to abide there all night, with the intention of going home in the morning, and he sat opposite the door of the house of the girl's father, to remain there, as the sun had set when he had reached that place; and the girl saw him sitting by the door of the house.

38 And he asked her for a drink of water and she said to him, Who are you? and he said to her, I was this day going on the road, and reached here when the sun set, so I will abide here all night, and in the morning I will arise early and continue my way.

39 And the girl went into the house and fetched the man bread and water to eat and drink.

40 And this thing became known to the men Admah, and they assembled and brought the girl before the judges, that they should judge her for this thing.

41 And the judge said, The judgment of death must pass upon this girl because she transgressed our law, and this therefore is the decision concerning her.

42 And all the men of those cities assembled and brought out the girl, and anointed her with honey from head to foot, as the judge had decreed, and they placed her before a swarm of bees which were then in their hives, and the bees

flew upon her and stung her that her whole body was swelled.

43 And the girl cried out on account of the bees, but no one took notice of her or pitied her, and her cries ascended to heaven.

44 And YHWH was provoked at this thing and at all the works of the cities of Sodom, for they had abundance of food, and had tranquility among them, and still would not sustain the poor and the needy, and in those days their evil doings and sins became great before YHWH.

45 And YHWH sent for two of the angels that had come to Avraham's house, to destroy Sodom and its cities.

46 And the angels rose up from the door of Avraham's tent, after they had eaten and drunk, and they reached Sodom in the evening, and Lot was then sitting in the gate of Sodom, and when he saw them he rose to meet them, and he bowed down to the earth.

47 And he pressed them greatly and brought them into his house, and he gave them victuals and they ate, and they abode all night in his house.

48 And the angels said to Lot, Arise, go forth from this place, you and all belonging to you, lest you be consumed in the iniquity of this city, for YHWH will destroy this place.

49 And the angels laid hold upon the hand of Lot and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hands of his children, and all belonging to him, and they brought him forth and set him without the cities.

50 And they said to Lot, Escape for your life, and he fled and all belonging to him.

51 At that time YHWH rained upon Sodom and upon Amorah and upon all these cities brimstone and fire from YHWH out of heaven.

52 And he overthrew these cities, all the plain and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the

ground; and Adit the wife of Lot looked back to see the destruction of the cities, for her compassion was moved on account of her daughters who remained in Sodom, for they did not go with her.

53 And when she looked back she became a pillar of salt, and it is yet in that place unto this day.

54 And the oxen which stood in that place daily licked up the salt to the extremities of their feet, and in the morning it would spring forth afresh, and they again licked it up unto this day.

55 And Lot and two of his daughters that remained with him fled and escaped to the cave of Adellam, and they remained there for some days.

56 And Avraham rose up early in the morning to see what had been done to the cities of Sodom; and he looked and beheld the smoke of the cities going up like the smoke of a furnace.

57 And Lot remained in the cave with his two daughters, and they made their father drink wine, and they lay with him, for they said there was no man upon earth that could raise up seed from them, for they thought that all the earth was destroyed.

58 And they both lay with their father, and they conceived and bare sons, and the firstborn called the name of her son Moav, saying, From my father did I conceive him; he is the father of the Moabites unto this day.

59 And the younger also called her son Ben-Ami; he is the father of the children of Ammon unto this day.

60 And after this Lot and his two daughters went away from there, and he dwelt on the other side of the Yordan with his two daughters and their sons, and the sons of Lot grew up, and they went and took themselves wives from the land of Kanaan, and they begat children and they were fruitful and multiplied.

CHAPTER 20

1 And at that time Avraham journeyed from the plain of Mamre, and he went to the land of the Philistines, and he dwelt in Gerar; it was in the twenty-fifth year of Avraham's being in the land of Kanaan, and the hundredth year of the life of Avraham, that he came to Gerar in the land of the Philistines.

2 And when they entered the land he said to Sarah his wife, Say you are my sister, to any one that shall ask you, in order that we may escape the evil of the inhabitants of the land.

3 And as Avraham was dwelling in the land of the Philistines, the servants of Avimelech, king of the Philistines, saw that Sarah was exceedingly beautiful, and they asked Avraham concerning her, and he said, She is my sister.

4 And the servants of Avimelech came and praised Sarah to the king⁴⁷ saying, A man from the land of Kanaan is come to dwell in the land, and he has a sister that is exceeding beautiful.

5 And Avimelech heard the words of his servants who praised Sarah to him, and Avimelech sent his officers, and they brought Sarah to the king.

6 And Sarah came to the house of Avimelech, and the king saw that Sarah was beautiful, and she pleased him exceedingly.

7 And he approached her and said to her, What is that man to you with whom you did come to our land? and Sarah answered and said He is my brother, and we came from the land of Kanaan to dwell wherever we could find a place.

8 And Avimelech said to Sarah, Behold my land is before

⁴⁷ “came and praised Sarah to the king”; Moses Samuel has “went to Avimelech”

you, place your brother in any part of this land that pleases you, and it will be our duty to exalt and elevate him above all the people of the land since he is your brother.

9 And Avimelech sent and called for Avraham, and Avraham came before the king.

10 And Avimelech said to Avraham, Behold I have given orders that you shall be honored as you desire on account of your sister Sarah.

11 And Avraham went forth from the king, and the king's present followed him.

12 And it came to pass at evening time, before men lie down to rest, the king was sitting upon his throne, and a deep sleep fell upon him, and he lay upon the throne and slept till morning.

13 And he dreamed and behold an angel of YHWH came to him with a drawn sword in his hand, and the angel stood over Avimelech, and wished to slay him with the sword, and the king was terrified in his dream, and said to the angel, In what have I sinned against you that you come to slay me with your sword?

14 And the angel answered and said to Avimelech, Behold you die on account of the woman which you did last night bring to your house, for she is a married woman, the wife of Avraham who came to your house; now therefore return that man his wife, for she is his wife; and should you not return her, know that you will surely die, you and all belonging to you.

15 And on that night there was a great outcry in the land of the Philistines, and the inhabitants of the land saw the figure of a man standing with a drawn sword in his hand, and he smote the inhabitants of the land with the sword, yea he continued to smite them.

16 And the angel of YHWH smote the whole land of the Philistines on that night, and there was a great confusion on

that night and on the morrow.

17 And every womb was closed, and all their issues, and the hand of YHWH was upon them on account of Sarah, wife of Avraham, whom Avimelech had taken.

18 And it came to pass in the morning Avimelech rose with terror and confusion and with a great dread, and he sent and had his servants called in, and he related his dream to them, and the men were greatly afraid.

19 And one man standing among the servants of the king answered the king, saying to the king, O lord the king, restore this woman to her husband, for he is her husband, for the like happened to Pharaoh, the king of Egypt when this man came to Egypt.

20 And he said concerning his wife, She is my sister, for such is his manner of doing when he comes to dwell in the land in which he is a stranger.

21 And Pharaoh sent and took this woman for a wife and YHWH brought upon him grievous plagues until he returned the woman to her husband.

22 Now therefore, O lord the king, know what happened last night to the whole land, for there was a very great consternation and great pain and lamentation, and we know that it was on account of the woman which you did take.

23 Now, therefore, restore this woman to her husband, lest it should befall us as it did to Pharaoh king of Egypt and his subjects, and that we may not die; and Avimelech hastened and called and had Sarah called for, and she came before him, and he had Avraham called for, and he came before him.

24 And Avimelech said to them, What is this work you have been doing in saying you are brother and sister, and I took this woman for a wife?

25 And Avraham said, Because I thought I should suffer death on account of my wife; and Avimelech took flocks

and herds, and men servants and maid servants, and a thousand pieces of silver, and he gave them to Avraham, and he returned Sarah to him.

26 And Avimelech said to Avraham, Behold the whole land is before you, dwell in it wherever you shall choose.

27 And Avraham and Sarah, his wife, went forth from the king's presence with honor and respect, and they dwelt in the land, even in Gerar.

28 And all the inhabitants of the land of the Philistines and the king's servants were still in pain, through the plague which the angel had inflicted upon them the whole night on account of Sarah.

29 And Avimelech sent for Avraham, saying, Pray now for your servants to YHWH your Elohim, that he may put away this mortality from among us.

30 And Avraham prayed on account of Avimelech and his subjects, and YHWH heard the prayer of Avraham, and he healed Avimelech and all his subjects.

CHAPTER 21

1 And it was at that time at the end of a year and four months of Avraham's dwelling in the land of the Philistines in Gerar, that Elohim visited Sarah, and YHWH remembered her, and she conceived and bare a son to Avraham.

2 And Avraham called the name of the son which was born to him, which Sarah bare to him, Yitz'chak.

3 And Avraham circumcised his son Yitz'chak at eight days old, as Elohim had commanded Avraham to do unto his seed after him; and Avraham was one hundred, and Sarah ninety years old, when Yitz'chak was born to them.

4 And the child grew up and he was weaned, and Avraham

made a great feast upon the day that Yitz'chak was weaned.
5 And Shem and Ever and all the great people of the land, and Avimelech king of the Philistines, and his servants, and Pikol, the captain of his host, came to eat and drink and rejoice at the feast which Avraham made upon the day of his son Yitz'chak's being weaned.
6 And also Terach, the father of Avraham, and Nachor his brother, came from Charan, they and all belonging to them, for they greatly rejoiced on hearing that a son had been born to Sarah.
7 And they came to Avraham, and they ate and drank at the feast which Avraham made upon the day of Yitz'chak's being weaned.
8 And Terach and Nachor rejoiced with Avraham, and they remained with him many days in the land of the Philistines.
9 At that time Serug the son of Reu died, in the first year of the birth of Yitz'chak son of Avraham.
10 And all the days of Serug were two hundred and thirty-nine years, and he died.
11 And Yishmael the son of Avraham was grown up in those days; he was fourteen years old when Sarah bare Yitz'chak to Avraham.
12 And Elohim was with Yishmael the son of Avraham, and he grew up, and he learned to use the bow and became an archer.
13 And when Yitz'chak was five years old he was sitting with Yishmael at the door of the tent.
14 And Yishmael came to Yitz'chak and seated himself opposite to him, and he took the bow and drew it and put the arrow in it, and intended to slay Yitz'chak.
15 And Sarah saw the act which Yishmael desired to do to her son Yitz'chak, and it grieved her exceedingly on account of her son, and she sent for Avraham, and said to him, Cast out this bondwoman and her son, for her son shall not be

heir with my son, for thus did he seek to do unto him this day.

16 And Avraham hearkened to the voice of Sarah, and he rose up early in the morning, and he took twelve loaves and a bottle of water which he gave to Hagar, and sent her away with her son, and Hagar went with her son to the wilderness, and they dwelt in the wilderness of Paran with the inhabitants of the wilderness, and Yishmael was an archer, and he dwelt in the wilderness a long time.

17 And he and his mother afterward went to the land of Egypt, and they dwelt there, and Hagar took a wife for her son from Egypt, and her name was Merivah.

18 And the wife of Yishmael conceived and bare four sons and two daughters, and Yishmael and his mother and his wife and children afterward went and returned to the wilderness.

19 And they made themselves tents in the wilderness, in which they dwelt, and they continued to travel and then to rest by month and by year.

20 And Elohim gave Yishmael flocks and herds and tents on account of Avraham his father, and the man increased in cattle.

21 And Yishmael dwelt in deserts, in tents, traveling and resting many days, and he did not see the face of Avraham.

22 And days came to pass, and Avraham said to Sarah his wife, I will go and see my son Yishmael, for I have a desire to see him, for I have not seen him these days.

23 And Avraham rode upon one of his camels to the wilderness to seek his son Yishmael, for he heard that he was dwelling in a tent in the wilderness with all belonging to him.

24 And Avraham went to the wilderness, and he reached the tent of Yishmael about mid day, and he asked after Yishmael, and he found the wife of Yishmael sitting in the

tent with her children, and Yishmael her husband and his mother were not with them.

25 And Avraham asked the wife of Yishmael, saying, Where has Yishmael gone? and she said, He has gone to the field to hunt, and Avraham was still mounted upon the camel, for he would not get off to the earth as he had sworn to his wife Sarah that he would not get down from the camel to the earth.

26 And Avraham said to Yishmael's wife, My daughter, give me a little water that I may drink, for I am fatigued from the way.

27 And Yishmael's wife answered and said to Avraham, We have neither water nor bread, and she continued sitting in the tent and did not notice Avraham, neither did she ask him who he was.

28 But she was beating her son in the tent, and she was cursing them, and she also cursed her husband Yishmael and reproached him, and Avraham heard the words of Yishmael's wife to her children, and he was very angry and displeased.

29 And Avraham called to the woman to come out to him from the tent, and the woman came and stood opposite to Avraham, for Avraham was still mounted upon the camel.

30 And Avraham said to Yishmael's wife, When comes your husband Yishmael behold speak these words to him,

31 A very old man from the land of the Philistines came to seek you, and thus was his appearance and figure; I did not ask him who he was, and seeing you were not here he spoke unto me and said, When Yishmael your husband comes tell him thus did this man say, When you come home put away this nail of the tent which you have placed here, and place another nail in its stead.

32 And Avraham finished his instructions to the woman, and he turned and went off on the camel and returned to his way.

33 And after that Yishmael came from the chase he and his mother, and returned to the tent, and his wife spoke these words to him,

34 Behold a very old man from the land of the Philistines came to seek you, and thus was his appearance and figure; I did not ask him who he was, and seeing you were not at home he said to me, When your husband comes home tell him, thus said the old man, Put away the nail of the tent which you have placed here and place another nail in its stead.

35 And Yishmael heard the words of his wife, and he knew that it was his father, and that his wife did not honor him.

36 And Yishmael understood his father's words that he had spoken to his wife, and Yishmael hearkened to the voice of his father, and Yishmael cast off that woman and she went away.

37 And Yishmael afterward went to the land of Kanaan, and he took another wife and he brought her to his tent to the place where he then dwelt.

38 And at the end of three years Avraham said, I will go again and see Yishmael my son, for I have not seen him for a long time.

39 And he rode upon his camel and went to the wilderness, and he reached the tent of Yishmael about mid day.

40 And he asked after Yishmael, and his wife came out of the tent and she said, He is not here my lord, for he has gone to hunt in the fields, and to feed the camels, and the woman said to Avraham, Turn in my lord into the tent, and eat a morsel of bread, for your soul must be wearied on account of the way.

41 And Avraham said to her, I will not stop for I am in haste to go on my way, but give me a little water to drink, for I have thirst; and the woman hastened and ran into the tent and she brought out water and bread to Avraham, which she

placed before him and she urged him to eat, and he ate and drank and his heart was comforted and he blessed his son Yishmael.

42 And he finished his meal and he blessed YHWH, and he said to Yishmael's wife, When Yishmael comes home say these words to him,

43 Behold a very old man from the land of the Philistines came, and appeared to me so and so,

44 And said to me, When Yishmael comes, behold, say to him thus, The old man said, The nail of the tent which you have is very good, do not put it away from the tent.

45 And Avraham finished commanding the woman, and he rode off on his way to the land of the Philistines; and when Yishmael came to his tent his wife went forth to meet him with joy and with a good heart.

46 And she said to him, An old man came here from the land of the Philistines and thus was his appearance, and he asked after you and you were not here, so I brought out bread and water, and he ate and drank and his heart was comforted.

47 And he spoke these words to me, When Yishmael your husband comes say to him, The nail of the tent which you have is very good, do not put it away from the tent.

48 And Yishmael knew that it was his father, and that his wife had honored him, and YHWH blessed Yishmael.

CHAPTER 22

1 And Yishmael rose up at that time and took his wife and his children and his cattle and all belonging to him, and he journeyed from there and he went to the land of the Philistines, to his father.

2 And Avraham related to Yishmael his son the transaction

with the first wife that Yishmael took, according to what she did.

3 And Yishmael and his children dwelt with Avraham many days in that land, and Avraham dwelt in the land of the Philistines many days.

4 And the days increased and reached twenty six years, and after that Avraham with his servants and all belonging to him went from the land of the Philistines and removed to a great distance, and they came near to Chevron, and they remained there, and the servants of Avraham dug wells of water, and Avraham and all belonging to him dwelt by the water, and the servants of Avimelech king of the Philistines heard the report that Avraham's servants had dug wells of water in the borders of the land.

5 And they came and quarreled with the servants of Avraham, and they robbed them of the great well which they had dug.

6 And Avimelech king of the Philistines heard of this affair, and he with Pikol the captain of his host and twenty of his men came to Avraham, and Avimelech spoke to Avraham concerning his servants, and Avraham rebuked Avimelech concerning the well of which his servants had robbed him.

7 And Avimelech said to Avraham, As YHWH lives who created all the earth, I did not hear of the act which my servants did unto your servants until this day.

8 And Avraham took seven ewe lambs and gave them to Avimelech, saying, Take these, I pray you, from my hands that it may be a testimony for me that I dug this well.

9 And Avimelech took the seven ewe lambs which Avraham had given to him, for he had also given him cattle and herds in abundance, and Avimelech swore to Avraham concerning the well, therefore he called that well B'ersheva, for there they both swore concerning it.

10 And they both made a covenant in B'ersheva, and

Avimelech rose up with Pikol the captain of his host and all his men, and they returned to the land of the Philistines, and Avraham and all belonging to him dwelt in B'ersheva and he was in that land many days.

11 And Avraham planted a large grove in B'ersheva, and he made to it four gates facing the four sides of the earth, and he planted a vineyard in it, so that if a traveler came to Avraham he entered any gate which was in his way, and dwelt there and ate and drank and satisfied himself and then departed.

12 For the house of Avraham was always open to all the sons of men that passed and returned, who came daily to eat and drink in the house of Avraham.

13 And every man who had hunger and came to Avraham's house, Avraham would give him bread that he might eat and drink and be satisfied, and any one that came naked to his house he would clothe with garments as he might choose, and give him silver and gold and make known to him YHWH who had created him in the earth; this did Avraham all his days.

14 And Avraham and his children and all belonging to him dwelt in B'ersheva, and he pitched his tent as far as Chevron.

15 And Avraham's brother Nachor and his father and all belonging to them dwelt in Charan, for they did not come with Avraham to the land of Kanaan.

16 And children were born to Nachor which Milka the daughter of Charan, and sister to Sarah, Avraham's wife, bare to him.

17 And these are the names of those that were born to him, Utz, Buz, Kemuel, Chesed, Chazo, Pildash, Yidlaf, and Betuel, being eight sons, these are the children of Milka which she bare to Nachor, Avraham's brother.

18 And Nachor had a concubine and her name was Reumah, and she also bare to Nachor, Tebach, Gacham, Tachash and Maacha, being four sons.

19 And the children that were born to Nachor were twelve sons besides his daughters, and they also had children born to them in Charan.

20 And the children of Utz the firstborn of Nachor were Avi-Charef, Gadin, Milos, and Devorah their sister.

21 And the sons of Buz were Berachel, Naamat, Sheva, and M'dani.

22 And the sons of Kemuel were Aram and Rechov.

23 And the sons of Chesed were Anamelech, Meshai, Banon and Yifi; and the sons of Chazo were Pildash, Menai and Epher.

24 And the sons of Pildash were Arud, Chamum, Mered and Moloch.

25 And the sons of Yidlaf were Mushan, Kushan and Mutzia.

26 And the children of Betuel were Sachar, Lavan and their sister Riv'kah.

27 These are the families of the children of Nachor, that were born to them in Charan; and Aram the son of Kemuel and Rechov his brother went away from Charan, and they found a valley in the land by the river Euphrates.

28 And they built a city there, and they called the name of the city after the name of Petar the son of Aram, that is Aram Naherayim unto this day.

29 And the children of Chesed also went to dwell where they could find a place, and they went and they found a valley opposite to the land of Shinar, and they dwelt there.

30 And they there built themselves a city, and they called the name at the city Chesed after the name of their father, that is the land Kasdim unto this day, and the Kasdim dwelt in that land and they were fruitful and multiplied

exceedingly.

31 And Terach, father of Nachor and the father of Avraham, went and took another wife in his old age, and her name was Pelilah, and she conceived and bare him a son and he called his name Tzova.

32 And Terach lived twenty-five years after he begat Tzova.

33 And Terach died in that year, that is in the thirty-fifth year of the birth of Yitz'chak son of Avraham.

34 And it came to pass the days of Terach were two hundred and five years, and he was buried in Charan.

35 And Tzova the son of Terach lived thirty years and he begat Aram, Achlio and Merik.

36 And Aram son of Tzova son of Terach, had three wives and he begat twelve sons and three daughters; and YHWH gave to Aram the son of Tzova, riches and possessions, and abundance of cattle, and flocks and herds, and the man increased greatly.

37 And Aram the son of Tzova and his brother and all his hous journeyed from Charan, and they went to dwell where they should find a place, for their property was too great to remain in Charan; for they could not stop in Charan together with their brothers the children of Nachor.

38 And Aram the son of Tzova went with his brothers, and they found a valley at a distance toward the eastern country and they dwelt there.

39 And they also built a city there, and they called the name thereof Aram, after the name of their eldest brother; that is Aram Tzova to this day.

40 And Yitz'chak the son of Avraham was growing up in those days, and

Avraham his father taught him the way of YHWH to know YHWH, and YHWH was with him.

41 And when Yitz'chak was thirty-seven years old, Yishmael his brother was going about with him in the tent.

42 And Yishmael boasted of himself to Yitz'chak, saying, I was thirteen years old when YHWH spoke to my father to circumcise us, and I did according to the word of YHWH which he spoke to my father, and I gave my soul unto YHWH, and I did not transgress his word which he commanded my father.

43 And Yitz'chak answered Yishmael, saying, Why do you boast to me about this, about a little bit of your flesh which you did take from your body, concerning which YHWH commanded you?

44 YHWH lives, the Elohi of my father Avraham, if YHWH should say unto my father, Take now your son Yitz'chak and bring him up an offering before me, I would not refrain but I would joyfully accede to it.

45 And YHWH heard the word that Yitz'chak spoke to Yishmael, and it seemed good in the eyes of YHWH, and he thought to try Avraham in this thing.

46 And the day came when the sons of Elohim came and placed themselves before YHWH, and HaSatan also came with the sons of Elohim before YHWH.

47 And YHWH said unto HaSatan, Whence come you? and HaSatan answered YHWH and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

48 And YHWH said to HaSatan, What is your word to me concerning all the children of the earth? and HaSatan answered YHWH and said, I have seen all the children of the earth who serve you and remember you when they require anything from you.

49 And when you give them the thing which they require from you, they sit at their ease, and forsake you and they remember you no more.

50 Have you seen Avraham the son of Terach, who at first had no children, and he served you and erected altars to you wherever he came, and he brought up offerings upon them,

and he proclaimed your name continually to all the children of the earth.

51 And now that his son Yitz'chak is born to him, he has forsaken you, he has made a great feast for all the inhabitants of the land, and YHWH he has forgotten.

52 For amidst all that he has done he brought you no offering; neither burnt offering nor peace offering, neither ox, lamb nor goat of all that he killed on the day that his son was weaned.

53 Also from the day of his son's birth till now, being thirty-seven years, he built no altar before you, nor brought any offering to you, for he saw that you did give what he requested before you, and he therefore forsook you.

54 And YHWH said to HaSatan, Have you thus considered my servant Avraham? for there is none like him upon earth, a perfect and an upright man before me, one that fears Elohim and avoids evil; as I live, were I to say unto him, Bring up Yitz'chak your son before me, he would not withhold him from me, much more if I told him to bring up a burnt offering before me from his flock or herds.

55 And HaSatan answered YHWH and said, Speak then now unto Avraham as you have said, and you will see whether he will not today transgress and cast aside your words.

CHAPTER 23

1 At that time the word of YHWH came to Avraham, and he said unto him, Avraham, and he said, Here I am.

2 And he said to him, Take now your son, your only son whom you love, even Yitz'chak, and go to the land of Moriah, and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which shall be shown to you, for there will

you see a cloud and the glory of YHWH.

3 And Avraham said in his heart, How shall I separate my son Yitz'chak from Sarah his mother, in order to bring him up for a burnt offering before YHWH?

4 And Avraham came into the tent, and he sat before Sarah his wife, and he spoke these words⁴⁸ to her,

5 My son Yitz'chak is grown up and he has not for some time studied the service of his Elohim, now tomorrow I will go and bring him to Shem, and Ever his son, and there he will learn the ways of YHWH, for they will teach him to know YHWH as well as to know that when he prays continually before YHWH, he will answer him, therefore there he will know the way of serving YHWH his Elohim.

6 And Sarah said, you have spoken well, go my lord and do unto him as you have said, but remove him not at a great distance from me, neither let him remain there too long, for my soul is bound within his soul.

7 And Avraham said unto Sarah, My daughter, let us pray to YHWH our Elohim that he may do good with us.

8 And Sarah took her son Yitz'chak and he abode all that night with her, and she kissed and embraced him, and gave him instructions till morning.

9 And she said to him, O my son, how can my soul separate itself from you? And she still kissed him and embraced him, and she gave Avraham instructions concerning him.

10 And Sarah said to Avraham, O my lord, I pray you take heed of your son, and place your eyes over him, for I have no other son nor daughter but him.

11 O forsake him not. If he be hungry give him bread, and if he be thirsty give him water to drink; do not let him go on foot, neither let him sit in the sun.

12 Neither let him go by himself in the road, neither force

⁴⁸ literally "like these words"

him from whatever he may desire, but do unto him all that he may say to you.

13 And Sarah wept bitterly the whole night on account of Yitz'chak, and she gave him instructions till morning.

14 And in the morning Sarah selected a very fine and beautiful garment from those garments which she had in the house, that Avimelech had given to her.

15 And she dressed Yitz'chak her son therewith, and she put a turban upon his head, and she enclosed a precious stone in the top of the turban, and she gave them provision for the way, and they went forth, and Yitz'chak went with his father Avraham, and some of their servants accompanied them to see them off the way.

16 And Sarah went out with them, and she accompanied them upon the way to see them off, and they said to her, Return to the tent.

17 And when Sarah heard the words of her son Yitz'chak she wept bitterly, and Avraham her husband wept with her, and their son wept with them a great weeping; also those who went with them wept greatly.

18 And Sarah caught hold of her son Yitz'chak, and she held him in her arms, and she embraced him and continued to weep with him, and Sarah said, Who knows if after this day I shall ever see you again?

19 And they still wept together, Avraham, Sarah and Yitz'chak, and all those that accompanied them on the way wept with them, and Sarah afterward turned away from her son, weeping bitterly, and all her men servants and maid servants returned with her to the tent.

20 And Avraham went with Yitz'chak his son to bring him up as an offering before YHWH, as He had commanded him.

21 And Avraham also took two of his young men with him, Yishmael the son of Hagar and Eliezer his servant, and they

went together with them, and while they were walking in the way the young men spoke these words to themselves,

22 And Yishmael said to Eliezer, Behold my father Avraham is going with Yitz'chak to bring him up for a burnt offering to YHWH, as He commanded him.

23 Now when he returns he will give unto me all that he possesses, to inherit after him, for I am his firstborn.

24 And Eliezer answered Yishmael and said, Surely Avraham did cast you away with your mother, and swear that you should not inherit any thing of all he possesses, and to whom will he give all that he has, with all his treasures, but unto me his servant, who has been faithful in his house, who has served him night and day, and has done all that he desired me? to me will he bequeath at his death all that he possesses.

25 And while Avraham was proceeding with his son Yitz'chak along the way, HaSatan came and appeared to Avraham in the figure of a very aged man, humble and of contrite spirit, and he approached Avraham and said to him, Are you silly or brutish, that you go to do this thing this day to your only son?

26 For Elohim gave you a son in your latter days, in your old age, and will you go and slaughter him this day because he committed no violence, and will you cause the soul of your only son to perish from the earth?

27 Do you not know and understand that this thing cannot be from YHWH? for YHWH cannot do unto man such evil upon earth to say to him, Go slaughter your child.

28 And Avraham heard this and knew that it was the word of HaSatan who endeavored to draw him aside from the way of YHWH, but Avraham would not hearken to the voice of HaSatan, and Avraham rebuked him so that he went away.

29 And HaSatan returned and came to Yitz'chak; and he appeared unto Yitz'chak in the figure of a young man

comely and well favored.

30 And he approached Yitz'chak and said unto him, Do you not know and understand that your old silly father brings you to the slaughter this day for naught?

31 Now therefore, my son, do not listen nor attend to him, for he is a silly old man, and let not your precious soul and beautiful figure be lost from the earth.

32 And Yitz'chak heard this, and said unto Avraham, Have you heard, my father, that which this man has spoken? even thus has he spoken.

33 And Avraham answered his son Yitz'chak and said to him, Take heed of him and do not listen to his words, nor attend to him, for he is Satan, endeavoring to draw us aside today from the commands of our Elohim.

34 And Avraham still rebuked Satan, and HaSatan went from them, and seeing he could not prevail over them he hid himself from them, and he went and passed before them in the way; and he transformed himself to a large brook of water in the way, and Avraham and Yitz'chak and his two young men reached that place, and they saw a brook large and powerful as the mighty waters.

35 And they entered the brook and passed through it, and the waters at first reached their legs.

36 And they went deeper in the brook and the waters reached up to their necks, and they were all terrified on account of the water; and while they were going over the brook Avraham recognized that place, and he knew that there was no water there before.

37 And Avraham said to his son Yitz'chak, I know this place in which there was no brook nor water, now therefore it is this HaSatan who does all this to us, to draw us aside today from the commands of our Elohim.

38 And Avraham rebuked Satan and said unto him, YHWH rebuke you, O HaSatan, begone from us for we go by the

commands of our Elohim.

39 And HaSatan was terrified at the voice of Avraham, and he went away from them, and the place again became dry land as it was at first.

40 And Avraham went with Yitz'chak toward the place that Elohim had told him.

41 And on the third day Avraham lifted up his eyes and saw the place at a distance which Elohim had told him of.

42 And a pillar of fire appeared to him that reached from the earth to heaven, and a cloud of glory upon the mountain, and the glory of YHWH was seen in the cloud.

43 And Avraham said to Yitz'chak, My son, do you see in that mountain, which we perceive at a distance, that which I see upon it?

44 And Yitz'chak answered and said unto his father, I see and lo a pillar of fire and a cloud, and the glory of YHWH is seen upon the cloud.

45 And Avraham knew that his son Yitz'chak was accepted before YHWH for a burnt offering.

46 And Avraham said unto Eliezer and unto Yishmael his son, Do you also see that which we see upon the mountain which is at a distance?

47 And they answered and said, We see nothing more than like the other mountains of the earth. And Avraham knew that they were not accepted before YHWH to go with them, and Avraham said to them, Abide you here with the ass while I and Yitz'chak my son will go to yonder mount and worship there before YHWH and then return to you.

48 And Eliezer and Yishmael remained in that place, as Avraham had commanded.

49 And Avraham took wood for a burnt offering and placed it upon his son Yitz'chak, and he took the fire and the knife, and they both went to that place.

50 And when they were going along Yitz'chak said to his

father, Behold, I see here the fire and wood, and where then is the lamb that is to be the burnt offering before YHWH?

51 And Avraham answered his son Yitz'chak, saying, YHWH has made choice of you my son, to be a perfect burnt offering instead of the lamb.

52 And Yitz'chak said unto his father, I will do all that YHWH spoke to you with joy and with a good heart.

53 And Avraham again said unto Yitz'chak his son, Is there in your heart any thought or counsel concerning this, which is not proper? tell me my son, I pray you, O my son conceal it not from me.

54 And Yitz'chak answered his father Avraham and said unto him, O my father, as YHWH lives and as your soul lives, there is nothing in my heart to cause me to deviate either to the right or to the left from the word that YHWH has spoken to you.

55 Neither limb nor muscle has moved or stirred at this, nor is there in my heart any thought or evil counsel concerning this.

56 But I am of joyful and with a good heart in this matter, and I say, Blessed is YHWH who has this day chosen me to be a burnt offering before Him.

57 And Avraham greatly rejoiced at the words of Yitz'chak, and they went on and came together to that place that the Lord had spoken of.

58 And Avraham approached to build the altar in that place, and Avraham was weeping, and Yitz'chak took stones and mortar until they had finished building the altar.

59 And Avraham took the wood and placed it in order upon the altar which he had built.

60 And he took his son Yitz'chak and bound him in order to place him upon the wood which was upon the altar, to slay him for a burnt offering before YHWH.

61 And Yitz'chak said to his father, Bind me securely and

then place me upon the altar lest I should turn and move, and break loose from the force of the knife upon my flesh and thereof profane the burnt offering; and Avraham did so.

62 And Yitz'chak still said to his father, O my father, when you shall have slain me and burnt me for an offering, take with you that which shall remain of my ashes to bring to Sarah my mother, and say to her, This is the sweet smelling savor of Yitz'chak; but do not tell her this if she should sit near a well or upon any high place, lest she should cast her soul after me and die.

63 And Avraham heard the words of Yitz'chak, and he lifted up his voice and wept when Yitz'chak spake these words; and Avraham's tears gushed down upon Yitz'chak his son, and Yitz'chak wept bitterly, and he said to his father, Hasten you, O my father, and do with me the will of YHWH our Elohim as He has commanded you.

64 And it came to pass the hearts of Avraham and Yitz'chak rejoiced at this thing which YHWH had commanded them; but the eye wept bitterly while the heart rejoiced.

65 And Avraham bound his son Yitz'chak, and placed him on the altar upon the wood, and Yitz'chak stretched forth his neck upon the altar before his father, and Avraham stretched forth his hand to take the knife to slay his son as a burnt offering upon the altar.

66 At that time the angels of mercy came before YHWH and spoke to him concerning Yitz'chak, saying,

67 O YHWH, you are a merciful and compassionate King over all that you have created in heaven and in earth, and you support them all; give therefore ransom and redemption instead of your servant Yitz'chak, and pity and have compassion upon Avraham and Yitz'chak his son, who are today performing your way.

68 Have you seen, O YHWH, how Yitz'chak the son of Avraham your servant is bound down to the slaughter like

an animal? now therefore let your pity be roused for them, O YHWH.

69 At that time YHWH appeared unto Avraham, and called to him, from heaven, and said unto him, Lay not your hand upon the lad, neither do you any thing unto him, for now I know that you fear Elohim in performing this thing, and in not withholding your son, your only son, from me.

70 And Avraham lifted up his eyes and saw, and behold, a ram was caught in a thicket by his horns; that was the ram which YHWH Elohim had created in the earth in the day that he made earth and heaven.

71 For YHWH Elohim had prepared this ram from that day, to be a burnt offering instead of Yitz'chak.

72 And this ram was going toward Avraham when HaSatan caught hold of him and entangled his horns in the thicket, that he might not advance to Avraham, in order that Avraham might slay his son.

73 And Avraham, seeing the ram advancing to him and HaSatan withholding him, fetched him and brought him before the altar, and he loosened his son Yitz'chak from his binding, and he put the ram in his stead, and Avraham killed the ram upon the altar, and brought it up as an offering in the place of his son Yitz'chak.

74 And Avraham sprinkled some of the blood of the ram upon the altar, and he exclaimed and said, This is in the place of my son, and may this be considered today as the blood of my son before YHWH.

75 And all that Avraham did on this occasion by the altar, he would exclaim and say, This is in the room of my son, and may it this day be considered before YHWH in the place of my son; and Avraham finished the whole of the service by the altar, and the service was accepted before YHWH, and was accounted as if it had been Yitz'chak; and YHWH blessed Avraham and his seed on that day.

Parashat Hayyei-Sarah

76 And HaSatan went to Sarah, and he appeared to her in the figure of an old man very humble and meek, and Avraham was yet engaged in the burnt offering before YHWH.

77 And he said unto her, Do you not know all the work that Avraham has made with your only son today? for he took Yitz'chak and built an altar, and killed him, and brought him up as a sacrifice upon the altar, and Yitz'chak cried and wept before his father, but he looked not at him, neither did he have compassion over him.

78 And HaSatan repeated these words, and he went away from her, and Sarah heard all the words of HaSatan, and she imagined him to be an old man from among the sons of men who had been with her son, and had come and told her these things.

79 And Sarah lifted up her voice and wept and cried out bitterly on account of her son; and she threw herself upon the earth and she cast dust upon her head, and she said, O my son, Yitz'chak my son, O that I had this day died instead of you. And she continued to weep and said, It grieves me for you,⁴⁹

80 I have reared you and have brought you up; and my joy is turned into mourning over you, I that had a longing for you, and cried and prayed till I bare you at ninety years old; and now have you served this day for the knife and the fire, to be made an offering.

81 But I console myself with you, my son, in its being the word of YHWH, for you did perform the command of your

⁴⁹ At the end of verse 79 and the beginning of verse 80 Mosheh Samual accidentally repeated the same text over adding "O my son, my son Yitz'chak, O that I had died today in your stead. 23:80 And she still continued to weep, and said, It grieves me for you after that".

Elohim; for who can transgress the word of our Elohim, in whose hands is the soul of every living creature?

82 you are just, O YHWH our Elohim, for all your works are good and righteous; for I also am rejoiced with your word which you did command, and while my eye weeps bitterly my heart rejoices.

83 And Sarah laid her head upon the bosom of one of her handmaids, and she became as still as a stone.

84 She afterward rose up and went about making inquiries till she came to Chevron, and she inquired of all those whom she met walking in the road, and no one could tell her what had happened to her son.

85 And she came with her maid servants and men servants to Kir'at-Ar'va, which is Chevron, and she asked concerning her son, and she remained there while she sent some of her servants to seek where Avraham had gone with Yitz'chak; they went to seek him in the house of Shem and Ever, and they could not find him, and they sought throughout the land and he was not there.

86 And behold, HaSatan came to Sarah in the shape of an old man, and he came and stood before her, and he said unto her, I spoke falsely unto you, for Avraham did not kill his son and he is not dead; and when she heard the word her joy was so exceedingly violent on account of her son, that her soul went out through joy; she died and was gathered to her people.

87 And when Avraham had finished his service he returned with his son Yitz'chak to his young men, and they rose up and went together to B'ersheva, and they came home.

88 And he sought for Sarah, and could not find her, and he made inquiries concerning her, and they said unto him, She went as far as Chevron to seek you both where you had gone, for thus was she informed.

89 And Avraham and Yitz'chak went to her to Chevron, and

when they found that she was dead they lifted up their voices and wept bitterly over her; and Yitz'chak fell upon his mother's face and wept over her, and he said, O my mother, my mother, how have you left me, and where have you gone? O how, how have you left me!

90 And Avraham and Yitz'chak wept greatly and all their servants wept with them on account of Sarah, and they mourned over her a great and heavy mourning.

CHAPTER 24

1 And the life of Sarah was one hundred and twenty-seven years, and Sarah died; and Avraham rose up from before his dead to seek a burial place to bury his wife Sarah; and he went and spoke to the children of Chet, the inhabitants of the land, saying,

2 I am a stranger and a sojourner with you in your land; give me a possession of a burial place in your land, that I may bury my dead from before me.

3 And the children of Chet said unto Avraham, behold the land is before you, in the choice of our land bury your dead, for no man shall withhold you from burying your dead.

4 And Avraham said unto them, If you are agreeable to this go and entreat for me to Efron, the son of Tzochar, requesting that he may give me the cave of Mak'pelah, which is in the end of his field, and I will purchase it of him for whatever he desire for it.

5 And Efron dwelt among the children of Chet, and they went and called for him, and he came before Avraham, and Efron said unto Avraham, Behold all you require your servant will do; and Avraham said, No, but I will buy the cave and the field which you have for value, In order that it may be for a possession of a burial place for ever.

6 And Efron answered and said, Behold the field and the cave are before you, give whatever you desire; and Avraham said, Only at full value will I buy it from your hand, and from the hands of those that go in at the gate of your city, and from the hand of your seed for ever.

7 And Efron and all his brothers heard this, and Avraham weighed to Efron four hundred shekels of silver in the hands of Efron and in the hands of all his brothers; and Avraham wrote this transaction, and he wrote it and testified it with four witnesses.

8 And these are the names of the witnesses, Amigal son of Avishua the Hittite, Alichoran son of Ashunash the Hivite, Avdon son of Achira the Gomerite, Akdil the son of Avidish the Tzidonite.

9 And Avraham took the book of the purchase, and placed it in his treasures, and these are the words that Avraham wrote in the book, saying:

10 That the cave and the field Avraham bought from Efron the Hittite, and from his seed, and from those that go out of his city, and from their seed for ever, are to be a purchase to Avraham and to his seed and to those that go forth from his loins, for a possession of a burial place for ever; and he put a signet to it and testified it with witnesses.

11 And the field and the cave that was in it and all that place were made sure unto Avraham and unto his seed after him, from the children of Chet; behold it is before Mamre in Chevron, which is in the land of Kanaan.

12 And after this Avraham buried his wife Sarah there, and that place and all its boundary became to Avraham and unto his seed for a possession of a burial place.

13 And Avraham buried Sarah with pomp as observed at the interment of kings, and she was buried in very fine and beautiful garments.

14 And at her bier was Shem, his sons Ever and Avimelech,

together with Anar, Ashkol and Mamre, and all the grandees of the land followed her bier.

15 And the days of Sarah were one hundred and twenty-seven years and she died, and Avraham made a great and heavy mourning for Sarah his wife, and he performed the rites of mourning for seven days.

16 And all the inhabitants of the land comforted Avraham and Yitz'chak his son on account of Sarah.

17 And when the days of their mourning passed by Avraham sent away his son Yitz'chak, and he went to the house of Shem and Ever, to learn the ways of YHWH and his traditions, and Avraham remained there three years.

18 At that time Avraham rose up with all his servants, and they went and returned homeward to B'ersheva, and Avraham and all his servants remained in B'ersheva.

19 And at the revolution⁵⁰ of the year Avimelech king of the Philistines died in that year; he was one hundred and ninety-three years old at his death; and Avraham went with his people to the land of the Philistines, and they comforted the whole house and all his servants, and he then turned and went home.

20 And it was after the death of Avimelech that the people of Gerar took Benmelek his son, and he was only twelve years old, and they made him lying in the place of his father.

21 And they called his name Avimelech after the name of his father, for thus was it their custom to do in Gerar, and Avimelech reigned instead of Avimelech his father, and he sat upon his throne.

22 And Lot the son of Charan also died in those days, in the thirty-ninth year of the life of Yitz'chak, and all the days that Lot lived were one hundred and forty years and he died.

23 And these are the children of Lot, that were born to him by his daughters, the name of the firstborn was Moav, and

⁵⁰ Or "equinox"

the name of the second was Ben-Ami.

24 And the two sons of Lot went and took themselves wives from the land of Kanaan, and they bare children to them, and the children of Moav were Ed, Ma'ayon, Taras'yon⁵¹, and Kanvil, four sons, these are fathers to the children of Moav unto this day.

24a And the sons of Ben-Ami: Gerim and Ishon and Rabbot and Tzilon and Eynon and Mayom, six sons, these are the fathers to the children of Ammon to this day.⁵²

25 And all the families of the children of Lot went to dwell wherever they should light upon, for they were fruitful and increased abundantly.

26 And they went and built themselves cities in the land where they dwelt, and they called the names of the cities which they built after their own names.

27 And Nachor the son of Terach, brother to Avraham, died in those days in the fortieth year of the life of Yitz'chak, and all the days of Nachor were one hundred and seventy-two years and he died and was buried in Charan.

28 And when Avraham heard that his brother was dead he grieved sadly, and he mourned over his brother many days.

29 And Avraham called for Eliezer his head servant, to give him orders concerning his house, and he came and stood before him.

30 And Avraham said to him, Behold I am old, I do not know the day of my death; for I am advanced in days; now therefore rise up, go forth and take a wife for my son from my family and from the house of my father, from Charan. I adjure you by YHWH Elohi of Heaven, do not take a wife for my son from this place and from this land, from the

⁵¹ Tarsus

⁵² Moses Samuel seems to have omitted verse 24a. He probably lifted his eyes off of the text remembering the key phrase "to this day" in verse 24 and picked back up with the phrase "to this day" at the end of verse 24a omitting the material between the two identical terms.

daughters of the Kanaanites among whom we dwell.”⁵³

31 But go to my land and to my birthplace, and take from thence a wife for my son, and YHWH Elohi of heaven and earth who took me from my father's house and brought me to this place, and said unto me, To your seed will I give this land for an inheritance for ever, he will send his angel before you and prosper your way, that you may obtain a wife for my son from my family and from my father's house.

32 And the servant answered his lord Avraham and said, Behold I go to your birthplace and to your father's house, and take a wife for your son from there; but if the woman be not willing to follow me to this land, shall I take your son back to the land of your birthplace?

33 And Avraham said unto him, Take heed that you bring not my son here again, for YHWH before whom I have walked he will send his angel before you and prosper your way.

34 And Eliezer did as Avraham ordered him, and Eliezer swore unto

Avraham his lord upon this matter; and Eliezer rose up and took ten camels of the camels of his lord, and ten men from his lord's servants with him, and they rose up and went to Charan, the city of Avraham and Nachor, in order to fetch a wife for Yitz'chak the son of Avraham; and while they were gone Avraham sent to the house of Shem and Ever, and they brought from there his son Yitz'chak.

35 And Yitz'chak came home to his father's house to B'ersheva, while Eliezer and his men came to Charan; and they stopped in the city by the watering place, and he made his camels to kneel down by the water and they remained there.

36 And Eliezer, Avraham's servant, prayed and said, O

⁵³ Moses Samuel omitted the material between the two occurrences of the phrase “do not take a wife” in this verse.

YHWH Elohi Adonai of Avraham⁵⁴; send me I pray you good speed this day and show kindness unto my lord, that you shall appoint this day a wife for my lord's son from his family.

37 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Eliezer, for the sake of his servant Avraham, and he happened to meet with the daughter of Betuel, the son of Milkah, the wife of Nachor, brother to Avraham, and Eliezer came to her house.

38 And Eliezer related to them all his concerns, and that he was Avraham's servant, and they very greatly rejoiced at him.

39 And they all blessed YHWH who brought this thing about, and they gave him Riv'kah, the daughter of Betuel, for a wife for Yitz'chak.

40 And the girl was of very comely appearance, she was a virgin, and Riv'kah was ten years old in those days.

41 And Bethuel and Lavan and his children made a feast on that night, and Eliezer and his men came and ate and drank and rejoiced there on that night.

42 And Eliezer rose up in the morning, he and the men that were with him, and he called to the whole house of Betuel, saying, Send me away that I may go to my lord; and they rose up and sent away Riv'kah and her nurse Devorah, the daughter of Utz, and they gave her silver and gold, men servants and maid servants, and they blessed her.

43 And they sent Eliezer away with his men; and the servants took Riv'kah, and he went and returned to his lord to the land of Kanaan.

44 And Yitz'chak took Riv'kah and she became his wife, and he brought her into the tent.

45 And Yitz'chak was forty years old when he took Riv'kah, the daughter of his uncle Betuel, for a wife.

⁵⁴ Or "YHWH Elohi of my lord Avraham"

CHAPTER 25

1 And it was at that time that Avraham again took a wife in his old age, and her name was K'turah, from the land of Kanaan.

2 And she bare unto him Zimran, Yakshan, M'dan, Mid'yan, Ishbak and Shuach, being six sons. And the children of Zimran were Avihan, Molich and Merich.

3 And the sons of Yakshan were Sheva and Dedan, and the sons of Dedan were Amidah, Yov, Gochi, Elisha, Notach; and the sons of Midyan were Efah, Afer, Chanoch, Avida and Eldaah.

4 And the sons of Ishbak were Makiri, Bidua and Tatur.

5 And the sons of Shuach were Bildad, Chemdad, Moshan and Mevan; all these are the families of the children of Keturah the Kanaanitess

which she bore unto Avraham the Hebrew.

6 And Avraham sent all these away, and he gave them gifts, and they went away from his son Yitz'chak to dwell wherever they should find a place.

7 And all these went to the mountain at the east, and they built themselves six cities in which they dwelt unto this day.

8 But the children of Sheva and Dedan, children of Yakshan, with their children, did not dwell with their brothers in their cities, and they journeyed and encamped in the countries and wildernesses unto this day.

9 And the children of Midyan, son of Avraham, went to the east of the land of Kush, and they there found a large valley in the eastern country, and they remained there and built a city, and they dwelt therein, that is the land of Midyan unto this day.

10 And Midyan dwelt in the city which he built, he and his five sons and all belonging to him.

11 And these are the names of the sons of Midyan according to their names in their cities, Efah, Efer, Chanoch, Avida and Eldaa.

12 And the sons of Efah were Metach, Meshar, Avi and Etzloa, and the sons of Efer were Efron, Tzur, Aliron and Medon, and the sons of Chanoch were Reuel, Rekem, Azai, Alyoshav and Cheled.

13 And the sons of Avida were Chur, Melur, Karvil, Milchi; and the sons of Eldaah were Yakkir, and Reva, and Malchyah and Geval; these are the names of the Midyanites according to their families; and afterward the families of Midyan spread throughout the land of Midyan.

14 And these are the generations of Yishmael the son Avraham, whom Hagar, Sarah's handmaid, bore unto Avraham.

15 And Yishmael took a wife from the land of Egypt, and her name was Rivah, the same is Merivah.

16 And Rivah bore unto Yishmael: N'vayot, Kedar, Adbeel, Mivsam and their sister Bosmat.

17 And Yishmael cast away his wife Rivah, and she went from him and returned to Egypt to the house of her father, and she dwelt there, for she had been very bad in the eyes of Yishmael, and in the eyes of his father Avraham.

18 And Yishmael afterward took a wife from the land of Kanaan, and her name was Malkit, and she bare unto him Mishma, Dumah, Masa, Chadad, Tema, Yetur, Nafish and Kedma.

19 These are the sons of Yishmael, and these are their names, being twelve princes according to their nations; and the families of Yishmael afterward spread forth, and Yishmael took his children and all the property that he had gained, together with the souls of his house and all belonging to him, and they went to dwell where they should find a place.

20 And they went and dwelt near the wilderness of Paran, and their dwelling was from Chavilah unto Shur, that is before Egypt as you come toward Assyria.

21 And Yishmael and his sons dwelt in the land, and they had children born to them, and they were fruitful and increased abundantly.

22 And these are the names of the sons of Nevayot the firstborn of Yishmael; Miod, Soad, Mayan; and the sons of Kedar were Alyon, Ketzem, Chemed and Eli⁵⁵.

23 And the sons of Adbeel were Chamod and Yavin; and the sons of

Mibsam were Avadyah⁵⁶, Eved-Melech and Yeush; these are the families of the children of Rivah the wife of Yishmael.

24 And the sons of Mishma the son of Yishmael were Shamua, Zikron and Oved; and the sons of Dumah were Ketzem, Eli⁵⁷, Machmad⁵⁸ and Amad.

25 And the sons of Masa were Malon, Mulah and Eved-Adon; and the sons of Chadad were Atzur, Mintzar and Eved-Melech; and the sons of Tema were Sair, Sadon and Yakol.

26 And the sons of Yetur were Merik, Yaish, Alyoi, and Pachit; and the sons of Nafish were Ebed-Tamid, Aviyosef⁵⁹ and Mir; and the sons of Kedma were Kalif⁶⁰, Tacht, and Omir⁶¹; these were the children of Malchut the wife of Yishmael according to their families.

27 All these are the families of Yishmael according to their generations, and they dwelt in those lands wherein they had built themselves cities unto this day.

28 And Riv'kah the daughter of Betuel, the wife of

⁵⁵ Ali?

⁵⁶ Abdallah?

⁵⁷ Ali?

⁵⁸ Mohammed?

⁵⁹ Abu Jussuf?

⁶⁰ Caliph?

⁶¹ Emir?

Avraham's son Yitz'chak, was barren in those days, she had no offspring; and Yitz'chak dwelt with his father in the land of Kanaan; and YHWH was with Yitz'chak; and Arpachshad the son of Shem the son of Noach died in those days, in the forty-eighth year of the life of Yitz'chak, and all the days that Arpachshad lived were four hundred and thirty-eight years, and he died.

Parshat Toldot

CHAPTER 26

- 1 And in the fifty-ninth year of the life of Yitz'chak the son of Avraham, Riv'kah his wife was still barren in those days.
- 2 And Riv'kah said unto Yitz'chak, Truly I have heard, my lord, that your mother Sarah was barren in her days until my lord Avraham, your father, prayed for her and she conceived by him.
- 3 Now therefore stand up, pray you also to Elohim and he will hear your prayer and remember us through his mercies.
- 4 And Yitz'chak answered his wife Riv'kah, saying, Avraham has already prayed for me to Elohim to multiply his seed, now therefore this barrenness must proceed to us from you.
- 5 And Riv'kah said unto him, But arise now you also and pray, that YHWH may hear your prayer and grant me children, and Yitz'chak hearkened to the words of his wife, and Yitz'chak and his wife rose up and went to the land of Moriah to pray there and to seek YHWH, and when they had reached that place Yitz'chak stood up and prayed to YHWH on account of his wife because she was barren.
- 6 And Yitz'chak said, O YHWH Elohi of heaven and earth, whose goodness and mercies fill the earth, you who did take

my father from his father's house and from his birthplace, and did bring him unto this land, and did say unto him, To your seed will I give the land, and you did promise him and did declare unto him, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven and as the sand of the sea, now may your words be verified which you did speak unto my father.

7 For you are YHWH our Elohim, our eyes are toward you to give us seed of men, as you did promise us, for you are YHWH our Elohim and our eyes are directed toward you only.

8 And YHWH heard the prayer of Yitz'chak the son of Avraham, and YHWH was entreated of him and Riv'kah his wife conceived.

9 And it came to pass in about seven months after the children struggled together within her, and it pained her greatly that she was wearied on account of them, and she said to all the women who were then in the land, Did such a thing happen to you as it has to me? and they said unto her, No.

10 And she said unto them, Why am I alone in this among all the women that were upon earth? and she went to the land of Moriah to seek the Lord on account of this; and she went to Shem and Ever his son to make inquiries of them in this matter, and that they should seek YHWH concerning this thing respecting her.

11 And she also asked Avraham to seek and inquire of YHWH about all that had befallen her.

12 And they all inquired of YHWH concerning this thing, and they brought her word from YHWH and told her, Two children are in your womb, and two nations shall rise from them; and one nation shall be stronger than the other, and the greater shall serve the younger.

13 And when her days to be delivered were completed, she knelt down, and behold there were twins in her womb, as

YHWH had spoken to her.

14 And the first came out red all over like a hairy garment, and all the people of the land called his name Esau, saying, That this one was made complete from the womb.

15 And after that came his brother, and his hand took hold of Esau's heel, therefore they called his name Ya'akov.

16 And Yitz'chak, the son of Avraham, was sixty years old when he begat them.

17 And the boys grew up to their fifteenth year, and they came among men. Esau was a designing and deceitful man, and an expert hunter in the field, and Ya'akov was a man perfect and wise, dwelling in tents, feeding flocks and learning the traditions of YHWH and the commands of his father and mother.

18 And Yitz'chak and the children of his house dwelt with his father Avraham in the land of Kanaan, as Elohim had commanded them.

19 And Yishmael the son of Avraham went with his children and all belonging to them, and they returned there to the land of Chavilah, and they dwelt there.

20 And also all the children of Avraham's concubines went to dwell in the land of the east, for Avraham had sent them away from his son, and had given them presents, and they went away.

21 And Avraham gave all that he had to his son Yitz'chak, and he also gave him all his treasures.

22 And he commanded him saying, Do you not know and hear that YHWH is Elohim in heaven and in earth, and there is no other beside him?

23 And it was he who took me from my father's house, and from my birth place, and gave me all the delights upon earth; who delivered me from the counsel of the wicked, for in him did I trust.

24 And he brought me to this place, and he delivered me

from Ur Kasdim; and he said unto me, To your seed will I give all these lands, and they shall inherit them when they keep my commandments, my statutes and my judgments that I have commanded you, and which I shall command them.

25 Now therefore my son, hearken to my voice, and keep the commandments of YHWH your Elohim, which I commanded you, do not turn from the right way either to the right or to the left, in order that it may be well with you and your children after you forever.

26 And remember the wonderful works of YHWH, and his kindness

that he has shown toward us, in having delivered us from the hands of our enemies, and YHWH our Elohim caused them to fall into our hands; and now therefore keep all that I have commanded you, and turn not away from the commandments of YHWH your Elohim, and serve none beside him, in order that it may be well with you and your seed after you.

27 And teach you your children and your seed the traditions of YHWH and his commandments, and teach them the upright way in which they should go, in order that it may be well with them forever.

28 And Yitz'chak answered his father and said unto him, That which Adonai⁶² has commanded that will I do, and I will not depart from the commands of the YHWH Elohi, I will keep all that he commanded me; and Avraham blessed his son Yitz'chak, and also his children; and Avraham taught Ya'akov the tradition of YHWH and his ways.

29 And it was at that time that Avraham died, in the fifteenth year of the life of Ya'akov and Esau, the sons of Yitz'chak, and all the days of Avraham were one hundred and seventy-five years, and he died and was gathered to his people in good old age, old and satisfied with days, and Yitz'chak and

⁶² Or "my lord" referring to Avraham.

Yishmael his sons buried him.

30 And when the inhabitants of the Land of Kanaan heard that Avraham was dead, they all came with their kings and princes and all their men to bury Avraham.

31 And all the inhabitants of the Land of Charan, and all the families of the house of Avraham, and all the princes and grandees, and the sons of Avraham by the concubines, all came when they heard of Avraham's death, and they requited Avraham's kindness, and comforted Yitz'chak his son, and they buried Avraham in the cave which he bought from Efron the Hittite and his children, for the possession of a burial place.

32 And all the inhabitants of Kanaan, and all those who had known Avraham, wept for Avraham a whole year, and men and women mourned over him.

33 And all the little children, and all the inhabitants of the land wept on account of Avraham, for Avraham had been good to them all, and because he had been upright with Elohim and with men.

34 And there arose not a man who feared Elohim like unto Avraham, for he had feared his Elohim from his youth, and had served YHWH, and had gone in all his ways during his life, from his childhood to the day of his death.

35 And YHWH was with him and delivered him from the counsel of Nimrod and his people, and when he made war with the four kings of Elam he conquered them.

36 And he brought all the children of the earth to the service of Elohim, and he taught them the ways of YHWH, and caused them to know YHWH.

37 And he formed a grove and he planted a vineyard therein, and he had always prepared in his tent meat and drink to those that passed through the land, that they might satisfy themselves in his house.

38 And YHWH delivered all the earth on account of

Avraham.

38b And YHWH delivered him from the heat which was burning in those days on account of Avraham.

39 And it was after the death of Avraham that Elohim blessed his son Yitz'chak and his children, and YHWH was with Yitz'chak as he had been with his father Avraham, for Yitz'chak kept all the commandments of YHWH as Avraham his father had commanded him; he did not turn to the right or to the left from the way of the upright which his father had commanded him.

CHAPTER 27

1 And Esau at that time, after the death of Avraham, frequently went in the field to hunt.

2 And Nimrod king of Bavel, the same was Amrafel, also frequently went with his mighty men to hunt in the field, and to walk about with his men in the cool of the day.

3 And Nimrod was observing Esau all the days, for a jealousy was formed in the heart of Nimrod against Esau all the days.

4 And it came to pass on a certain day Esau went in the field to hunt, and he found Nimrod walking in the wilderness with his two men.

5 And all his mighty men and his people were with him in the wilderness, but they removed at a distance from him, and they went from him in different directions to hunt, and Esau concealed himself for Nimrod, and he lurked for him in the wilderness.

6 And Nimrod and his men that were with him did not know him, and Nimrod and his men frequently walked about in the field at the cool of the day, and to know where his men were hunting in the field.

7 And Nimrod and two of his men that were with him came to the place where they were, when Esau started suddenly from his lurking place, and drew his sword, and hastened and ran to Nimrod and cut off his head.

8 And Esau fought a desperate fight with the two men that were with Nimrod, and when they called out to him, Esau turned to them and smote them to death with his sword.

9 And all the mighty men of Nimrod, who had left him to go to the wilderness, heard the cry at a distance, and they knew the voices of those two men, and they ran to know the cause of it, when they found their king and the two men that were with him lying dead in the wilderness.

10 And when Esau saw the mighty men of Nimrod coming at a distance, he fled, and thereby escaped; and Esau took the valuable garments of Nimrod, which Nimrod's father had bequeathed to Nimrod, and with which Nimrod prevailed over the whole land, and he ran and concealed them in his house.

11 And Esau took those garments and ran into the city on account of Nimrod's men, and he came unto his father's house wearied and exhausted from fight, and he was ready to die through grief when he approached his brother Ya'akov and sat before him.

12 And he said unto his brother Ya'akov, Behold I shall die this day, and wherefore then do I want the birthright? And Ya'akov acted wisely with Esau in this matter, and Esau sold his birthright to Ya'akov, for it was so brought about by YHWH.

13 And Esau's portion in the cave of the field of Makpelah, which Avraham had bought from the children of Chet for the possession of a burial ground, Esau also sold to Ya'akov, and Ya'akov bought all this from his brother Esau for value given.

14 And Ya'akov wrote the whole of this in a book, and he

testified the same with witnesses, and he sealed it, and the book remained in the hands of Ya'akov.

15 And when Nimrod the son of Kush died, his men lifted him up and brought him in consternation, and buried him in his city, and all the days that Nimrod lived were two hundred and fifteen years and he died.

16 And the days that Nimrod reigned upon the people of the land were one hundred and eighty-five years; and Nimrod died by the sword of Esau in shame and contempt, and the seed of Avraham caused his death as he had seen in his dream.

17 And at the death of Nimrod his kingdom became divided into many divisions, and all those parts that Nimrod reigned over were restored to the respective kings of the land, who recovered them after the death of Nimrod, and all the people of the house of Nimrod were for many days enslaved to all the other kings of the land.

CHAPTER 28

1 And in those days, after the death of Avraham, in that year YHWH brought a heavy famine in the land, and while the famine was raging in the land of Kanaan, Yitz'chak rose up to go down to Egypt on account of the famine, as his father Avraham had done.

2 And YHWH appeared that night to Yitz'chak and he said to him, Do not go down to Egypt but rise and go to Gerar, to Avimelech king of the Philistines, and remain there till the famine shall cease.

3 And Yitz'chak rose up and went to Gerar, as YHWH commanded him, and he remained there a full year.

4 And when Yitz'chak came to Gerar, the men of the land saw that Riv'kah his wife was of a beautiful appearance, and

the men of Gerar asked Yitz'chak concerning his wife, and he said, She is my sister, for he was afraid to say she was his wife lest the men of the land should slay him on account of her.

5 And the princes of Avimelech went and praised the woman to Avimelech, and he answered them not, and he did not attend to their words.

6 But he heard that which they declared, [as Yitz'chak had said]: for say the woman is my sister, so the king reserved this in his heart.

7 And when Yitz'chak had remained three months in the land, Avimelech looked out at the window, and he saw, and behold Yitz'chak was sporting with Riv'kah his wife, for Yitz'chak dwelt in the outer house belonging to the king, so that the house of Yitz'chak was opposite the house of the king.

8 And the king said unto Yitz'chak, What is this you have done to us in saying of your wife, She is my sister? how easily might one of the great men of the people have lain with her, and you would then have brought guilt upon us.

9 And Yitz'chak said unto Avimelech, Because I was afraid lest I die on account of my wife, therefore I said, She is my sister.

10 At that time Avimelech gave orders to all his princes and great men, and they took Yitz'chak and Riv'kah his wife and brought them before the king.

11 And the king commanded that they should dress them in princely garments, and make them ride through the streets of the city, and proclaim before them throughout the land, saying, This is the man and this is his wife; whoever touches this man or his wife shall surely die. And Yitz'chak returned with his wife to the king's house, and YHWH was with Yitz'chak and he continued to wax great and lacked nothing.

12 And YHWH gave to Yitz'chak to find favor in the eyes of the king, and in the eyes of all his subjects, and Avimelech acted well with Yitz'chak, for Avimelech remembered the oath and the covenant that existed between his father and Avraham.

13 And Avimelech said unto Yitz'chak, Behold all the earth is before you; dwell wherever it may seem good in your eyes until you shall return to your land; and Avimelech gave Yitz'chak fields and vineyards and the best part of the land of Gerar, to sow and reap and eat the fruits of the ground until the days of the famine should have passed by.

14 And Yitz'chak sowed in that land, and received a hundred-fold in the same year, and YHWH blessed him.

15 And the man waxed great, and he had possession of flocks and possession of herds and great store of servants.

16 And when the days of the famine had passed away YHWH appeared to Yitz'chak and said unto him, Rise up, go forth from this place and return to your land, to the land of Kanaan; and Yitz'chak rose up and returned to Chevron which is in the land of Kanaan, he and all belonging to him as YHWH commanded him.

17 And after this Shelach the son at Arpachshad died in that year, which is the eighteenth year of the lives of Ya'akov and Esau; and all the days that Shelach lived were four hundred and thirty-three years and he died.

18 At that time Yitz'chak sent his younger son Ya'akov to the house of Shem and Ever, and he learned the tradition of YHWH and his Torah, and Ya'akov remained in the house of Shem and Ever for thirty-two years, and Esau his brother did not go, for he was not willing to go, and he remained in his father's house in the land of Kanaan.

19 And Esau was continually hunting in the fields to bring home what he could get, so did Esau all the days.

20 And Esau was a designing and deceitful man, one who

hunted after the hearts of men and inveigled them, and Esau was a valiant man in the field, and in the course of time went as usual to hunt; and he came as far as the field of Seir, the same is Edom.

21 And he dwelt in the land of Seir hunting in the field a year and four months.

22 And Esau there saw in the land of Seir the daughter of a man of Kanaan, and her name was Yehudit, the daughter of B'eri, son of Efer, from the families of Chet the son of Kanaan.

23 And Esau took her for a wife, and he came unto her; forty years old was Esau when he took her, and he brought her to Chevron, the land of his father's dwelling place, and he dwelt there.

24 And it came to pass in those days, in the hundred and tenth year of the life of Yitz'chak, that is in the fiftieth year of the life of Ya'akov, in that year died Shem the son of Noach; Shem was six hundred years old at his death.

25 And when Shem died Ya'akov returned to his father to Chevron which is in the land of Kanaan.

26 And in the fifty-sixth year of the life of Ya'akov, men came from Charan, and Riv'kah was told concerning her brother Lavan the son of Betuel.

27 For the wife of Lavan was barren in those days, and bare no children, and also all his handmaids bare none to him.

28 And YHWH afterward remembered Adinah the wife of Lavan, and she conceived and bore twin daughters, and Lavan called the names of his daughters, the name of the elder Leah, and the name of the younger Rakhel.

29 And those men came and told these things to Riv'kah, and Riv'kah rejoiced greatly that YHWH had visited her brother and that he had got children.

CHAPTER 29

1 And Yitz'chak the son of Avraham became old and advanced in days, and his eyes became heavy through age; they were dim and could not see.

2 At that time Yitz'chak called unto Esau his son, saying, Get I pray you your weapons, your quiver and your bow, rise up and go forth into the field and get me some venison, and make me savory meat and bring it to me, that I may eat in order that I may bless you before my death, as I have now become old and gray-headed.

3 And Esau did so; and he took his weapon and went forth into the field to hunt for venison, as usual, to bring to his father as he had ordered him, so that he might bless him.

4 And Riv'kah heard all the words that Yitz'chak had spoken unto Esau, and she hastened and called her son Ya'akov, saying, Thus did your father speak unto your brother Esau, and thus did I hear, now therefore hasten you and make that which I shall tell you.

5 Rise up and go, I pray you, to the flock and fetch me two fine kids of the goats, and I will get the savory meat for your father, and you shall bring the savory meat that he may eat before your brother shall have come from the chase, in order that your father may bless you.

6 And Ya'akov hastened and did as his mother had commanded him, and he made the savory meat and brought it before his father before Esau had come from his chase.

7 And Yitz'chak said unto Ya'akov, Who are you, my son? And he said, I am your firstborn Esau, I have done as you did order me, now therefore rise up I pray you, and eat of my hunt, in order that your soul may bless me as you did speak unto me.

8 And Yitz'chak rose up and he ate and he drank, and his heart was comforted, and he blessed Ya'akov and Ya'akov

went away from his father; and as soon as Yitz'chak had blessed Ya'akov and he had gone away from him, behold Esau came from his hunt from the field, and he also made savory meat and brought it to his father to eat thereof and to bless him.

9 And Yitz'chak said unto Esau, And who was he that has taken venison and brought it me before you came and whom I did bless? And Esau knew that his brother Ya'akov had done this, and the anger of Esau was kindled against his brother Ya'akov that he had acted thus toward him.

10 And Esau said, Is he not rightly called Ya'akov? for he has supplanted me twice, he took away my birthright and now he has taken away my blessing; and Esau wept greatly; and when Yitz'chak heard the voice of his son Esau weeping, Yitz'chak said unto Esau, What can I do, my son, your brother came with subtlety and took away your blessing; and Esau hated his brother Ya'akov on account of the blessing that his father had given him, and his anger was greatly roused against him.

11 And Ya'akov was very much afraid of his brother Esau, and he rose up and fled to the house of Ever the son of Shem, and he concealed himself there on account of his brother, and Ya'akov was sixty-three years old when he went forth from the land of Kanaan from Chevron, and Ya'akov was concealed in Ever's house fourteen years on account of his brother Esau, and he there continued to learn the ways of YHWH and his commandments.

12 And when Esau saw that Ya'akov had fled and escaped from him, and that Ya'akov had cunningly obtained the blessing, then Esau grieved exceedingly, and he was also vexed at his father and mother; and he also rose up and took his wife and went away from his father and mother to the land of Seir, and he dwelt there; and Esau saw there a woman from among the daughters of Chet whose name was

Basmat, the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and he took her for a wife in addition to his first wife, and Esau called her name Adah, saying the blessing had in that time passed from him.

13 And Esau dwelt in the land of Seir six months without seeing his father and mother, and afterward Esau took his wives and rose up and returned to the land of Kanaan, and Esau placed his two wives in his father's house in Chevron.

14 And the wives of Esau vexed and provoked Yitz'chak and Riv'kah with their works, for they walked not in the ways of YHWH, but served their father's gods of wood and stone as their father had taught them, and they were more wicked than their father.

15 And they went according to the evil desires of their hearts, and they sacrificed and burnt incense to the Baalim, and Yitz'chak and Riv'kah became weary of them.

16 And Riv'kah said, I am weary of my life because of the daughters of Chet; if Ya'akov take a wife of the daughters of Chet, such as these which are of the daughters of the land, what good then is life unto me?

17 And it came to pass in those days Adah the wife of Esau conceived and bare him a son, and Esau called the name of the son that was born unto him Elifaz, and Esau was sixty-five years old when she bare him.

18 And Yishmael the son of Avraham died in those days, in the sixty-forth year of the life of Ya'akov, and all the days that Yishmael lived were one hundred and thirty-seven years and he died.

19 And when Yitz'chak heard that Yishmael was dead he mourned for him, and Yitz'chak lamented over him many days.

20 And at the end of fourteen years of Ya'akov's residing in the house of Ever, Ya'akov desired to see his father and mother, and Ya'akov came to the house of his father and mother to Chevron, and Esau had in those days forgotten

what Ya'akov had done to him in having taken the blessing from him in those days.

21 And when Esau saw Ya'akov coming to his father and mother he remembered what Ya'akov had done to him, and he was greatly incensed against him and he sought to slay him.

22 And Yitz'chak the son of Avraham was old and advanced in days, and Esau said, Now my father's time is drawing near that he must die, and when he shall die I will slay my brother Ya'akov.

23 And this was told to Riv'kah, and she hastened and sent and called for Ya'akov her son, and she said unto him, Arise, go and flee to Charan to my brother Lavan, and remain there for some time, until your brother's anger be turned from you and then shall you come back.

24 And Yitz'chak called unto Ya'akov and said unto him, Take not a wife from the daughters of Kanaan, for thus did our father Avraham command us according to the word of YHWH which he had commanded him, saying, Unto your seed will I give this land; if your children keep my covenant that I have made with you, then will I also perform to your children that which I have spoken unto you and I will not forsake them.

25 Now therefore my son hearken to my voice, to all that I shall command you, and refrain from taking a wife from among the daughters of Kanaan; arise, go to Charan to the house of Betuel your mother's father, and take unto you a wife from there from the daughters of Lavan your mother's brother.

26 Therefore take heed lest you should forget the YHWH your Elohim and all his ways in the land to which you go, and should get connected with the men of the land and pursue vanity and forsake YHWH your Elohim.

27 But when you comes to the land serve there YHWH, do

not turn to the right or to the left from the way which I commanded you and which you did learn.

28 And may El Shaddai grant you favor in the eyes of the men of the land, that you may take there a wife according to your choice; one who is good and upright in the ways of YHWH.

29 And may Elohim give unto you and your seed the blessing of your father Avraham, and make you fruitful and multiply you, and may you become a multitude of people in the land whither you go, and may YHWH cause you to return to this land, the land of your father's dwelling, with children and with great riches, with joy and with pleasure.

30 And Yitz'chak finished commanding Ya'akov and blessing him, and he gave him many gifts, together with silver and gold, and he sent him away; and Ya'akov hearkened to his father and mother; he kissed them and arose and went to Padan-Aram; and Ya'akov was seventy-seven years old when he went out from the land of Kanaan from B'ersheva.

31 And when Ya'akov went away to go to Charan Esau called unto his son Elifaz, and secretly spoke unto him, saying, Now hasten, take your sword in your hand and pursue Ya'akov and pass before him in the road, and lurk for him, and slay him with your sword in one of the mountains, and take all belonging to him and come back.

32 And Elifaz the son of Esau was an active man and expert with the bow as his father had taught him, and he was a noted hunter in the field and a valiant man.

33 And Elifaz did as his father had commanded him, and Elifaz was at that time thirteen years old, and Elifaz rose up and went and took ten of his mother's brothers with him and pursued Ya'akov.

34 And he followed in the way of Ya'akov, and he lurked for him in the border of the land of Kanaan opposite to the

city of Shechem.

35 And Ya'akov saw Elifaz and his men pursuing him, and Ya'akov stood still in the place in which he was going, in order to know what this was, for he did not know the thing; and Elifaz drew his sword and he went on advancing, he and his men, toward Ya'akov; and Ya'akov said unto them, What is to do with you that you have come, and what means it that you pursue with your swords.

36 And Elifaz came near to Ya'akov and he answered and said unto him, Thus did my father command me, and now therefore I will not deviate from the orders which my father gave me; and when Ya'akov saw that Esau had spoken to Elifaz to employ force, Ya'akov then approached and supplicated Elifaz and his men, saying to him,

37 Behold all that I have and which my father and mother gave unto me, that take unto you and go from me, and do not slay me, and may this thing be accounted unto you a righteousness.

38 And YHWH gave unto Ya'akov to find favor in the eyes of Elifaz the son of Esau, and his men, and they hearkened to the voice of Ya'akov, and they did not put him to death, and Elifaz and his men took all belonging to Ya'akov together with the silver and gold that he had brought with him from B'ersheva; they left him nothing.

39 And Elifaz and his men went away from him and they returned to Esau to B'ersheva, and they told him all that had occurred to them with Ya'akov, and they gave him all that they had taken from Ya'akov.

40 And Esau was indignant at Elifaz his son, and at his men that were with him, because they had not put Ya'akov to death.

41 And they answered and said unto Esau, Because Ya'akov supplicated us in this matter not to slay him, our pity was excited toward him, and we took all belonging to him and

brought it unto you; and Esau took all the silver and gold which Elifaz had taken from Ya'akov and he put them by in his house.

42 At that time when Esau saw that Yitz'chak had blessed Ya'akov, and had commanded him, saying, you shall not take a wife from among the daughters of Kanaan, and that the daughters of Kanaan were bad in the eyes of Yitz'chak and Riv'kah,

43 Then he went to the house of Yishmael his uncle, and in addition to his older wives he took Machalat the daughter of Yishmael, the sister of N'vayot, for a wife.

Parashat Vayetze

CHAPTER 30

1 And Ya'akov went forth continuing his road to Charan, and he came as far as mount Moriah, and he tarried there all night near the city of Luz; and YHWH appeared there unto Ya'akov on that night, and he said unto him, I am YHWH Elohi of Avraham and the Elohi of Yitz'chak your father; the land upon which you lie I will give unto you and your seed.

2 And behold I am with you and will keep you wherever you go, and I will multiply your seed as the stars of Heaven, and I will cause all your enemies to fall before you; and when they shall make war with you they shall not prevail over you, and I will bring you again unto this land with joy, with children, and with great riches.

3 And Ya'akov awoke from his sleep and he rejoiced greatly at the vision which he had seen; and he called the name of that place Beit-El.

4 And Ya'akov rose up from that place quite rejoiced, and

when he walked his feet felt light to him for joy, and he went from there to the land of the children of the East, and he returned to Charan and he set by the shepherd's well.

5 And he there found some men; going from Charan to feed their flocks, and Ya'akov made inquiries of them, and they said, We are from Charan.

6 And he said unto them, Do you know Lavan, the son of Nachor? and they said, We know him, and behold his daughter Rakhel is coming along to feed her father's flock.

7 While he was yet speaking with them, Rakhel the daughter of Lavan came to feed her father's sheep, for she was a shepherdess.

8 And when Ya'akov saw Rakhel, the daughter of Lavan, his mother's brother, he ran and kissed her, and lifted up his voice and wept.

9 And Ya'akov told Rakhel that he was the son of Riv'kah, her father's sister, and Rakhel ran and told her father, and Ya'akov continued to cry because he had nothing with him to bring to the house of Lavan.

10 And when Lavan heard that his sister's son Ya'akov had come, he ran and kissed him and embraced him and brought him into the house and gave him bread, and he ate.

11 And Ya'akov related to Lavan what his brother Esau had done to him, and what his son Elifaz had done to him in the way.

12 And Ya'akov resided in Lavan's house for one month, and Ya'akov ate and drank in the house of Lavan, and afterward Lavan said unto Ya'akov, Tell me what shall be your wages, for how can you serve me for nought?

13 And Lavan had no sons but only daughters, and his other wives and handmaids were still barren in those days; and these are the names of Lavan's daughters which his wife Adinah had borne unto him; the name of the elder was Leah and the name of the younger was Rakhel; and Leah was

tender-eyed, but Rakhel was beautiful and well favored, and Ya'akov loved her.

14 And Ya'akov said unto Lavan, I will serve you seven years for Rakhel your younger daughter; and Lavan consented to this and Ya'akov served Lavan seven years for his daughter Rakhel.

15 And in the second year of Ya'akov's dwelling in Charan, that is in the seventy ninth year of the life of Ya'akov, in that year died Ever the son of Shem, he was four hundred and sixty-four years old at his death.

16 And when Ya'akov heard that Ever was dead he grieved exceedingly, and he lamented and mourned over him many days.

17 And in the third year of Ya'akov's dwelling in Charan, Bosmat, the daughter of Yishmael, the wife of Esau, bare unto him a son, and Esau called his name Reuel.

18 And in the fourth year of Ya'akov's residence in the house of Lavan, YHWH visited Lavan and remembered him on account of Ya'akov, and sons were born unto him, and his firstborn was B'or, his second was Eliv, and the third was Chorash.

19 And YHWH gave Lavan riches and honor, sons and daughters, and the man increased greatly on account of Ya'akov.

20 And Ya'akov in those days served Lavan in all manner of work, in the house and in the field, and the blessing of YHWH was in all that belonged to Lavan in the house and in the field.

21 And in the fifth year died Yehudit, the daughter of B'eri, the wife of Esau, in the land of Kanaan, and she had no sons but daughters only.

22 And these are the names of her daughters which she bore to Esau, the name of the elder was Martzit, and the name of the younger was Puit.

23 And when Yehudit died, Esau rose up and went to Seir to hunt in the field, as usual, and Esau dwelt in the land of Seir for many days.

24 And in the sixth year Esau took for a wife, in addition to his other wives, Ahalivamah, the daughter of Tz'von the Hivite, and Esau brought her to the land of Kanaan.

25 And Ahalivamah conceived and bore unto Esau three sons, Yeush, Yaalam, and Korach.

26 And in those days, in the land of Kanaan, there was a quarrel between the herdsmen of Esau and the herdsmen of the inhabitants of the land of Kanaan, for Esau's cattle and goods were too abundant for him to remain in the land of Kanaan, in his father's house, and the land of Kanaan could not bear him on account of his cattle.

27 And when Esau saw that his quarreling increased with the inhabitants of the land of Kanaan, he rose up and took his wives and his sons and his daughters, and all belonging to him, and the cattle which he possessed, and all his property that he had acquired in the land of Kanaan, and he went away from the inhabitants of the land to the land of Seir, and Esau and all belonging to him dwelt in the land of Seir.

28 But from day to day Esau would go and see his father and mother in the land of Kanaan, and Esau intermarried with the Horites, and he gave his daughters to the sons of Seir, the Horite.

29 And he gave his elder daughter Marzit to Anah, the son of Tz'von, his wife's brother, and Puit he gave to Atzar, the son of Bilhan the Horite; and Esau dwelt in the mountain, he and his children, and they were fruitful and multiplied.

CHAPTER 31

1 And in the seventh year, Ya'akov's service which he served Lavan was completed, and Ya'akov said unto Lavan, Give me my wife, for the days of my service are fulfilled; and Lavan did so, and Lavan and Ya'akov assembled all the men of that place and they made a feast.

2 And in the evening Lavan came to the house, and afterward Ya'akov came there with the men of the feast, and Lavan extinguished all the lights that were there in the house.

3 And Ya'akov said unto Lavan, Wherefore do you do this thing unto us? and Lavan answered, Such is our custom to act in this land.

4 And afterward Lavan took his daughter Leah, and he brought her to Ya'akov, and he came to her and Ya'akov did not know that she was Leah.

5 And Lavan gave his daughter Leah his maid Zilpah for a handmaid.

6 And all the sons of the feast knew what Lavan had done to Ya'akov, but they did not tell the thing to Ya'akov.

7 And all the neighbors came that night to Ya'akov's house, and they ate and drank and rejoiced, and played before Leah upon timbrels, and with dances, and they responded before Ya'akov, Hil'lah⁶³, Hil'lah.

8 And Ya'akov heard their words but did not understand their meaning, but he thought such might be their custom in this land.

9 And the neighbors spoke these words before Ya'akov during the night, and all the lights that were in the house Lavan had that night extinguished.

⁶³ Running together the Hebrew phrase "hi Leah, hi Leah" meaning "she is Leah, she is Leah"

10 And it came to pass in the morning, when daylight appeared, Ya'akov turned to his wife and he saw, and behold it was Leah that had been lying in his bosom, and Ya'akov said, Behold now I know what the neighbors said last night, Hil'lah, they said, and I knew it not.

11 And Ya'akov called unto Lavan, and said unto him, What is this that you did unto me? Surely I served you for Rakhel, and why did you deceive me and did give me Leah?

12 And Lavan answered Ya'akov, saying, Not so is it done in our place to give the younger before the elder now therefore if you desire to take her sister likewise, take her unto you for the service which you will serve me for another seven years.

13 And Ya'akov did so, and he also took Rakhel for a wife, and he served Lavan seven years more, and Ya'akov also came to Rakhel, and he loved Rakhel more than Leah, and Lavan gave her his maid Bilhah for a handmaid.

14 And when YHWH saw that Leah was hated, YHWH opened her womb, and she conceived and bare Ya'akov four sons in those days.

15 And these are their names, Re'uven, Shim'on, Levi, and Y'hudah, and she afterward left bearing.

16 And at that time Rakhel was barren, and she had no offspring, and Rakhel envied her sister Leah, and when Rakhel saw that she bare no children to Ya'akov, she took her handmaid Bilhah, and she bare Ya'akov two sons, Dan and Naftali.

17 And when Leah saw that she had left bearing, she also took her handmaid Zilpah, and she gave her to Ya'akov for a wife, and Ya'akov also came to Zilpah, and she also bare Ya'akov two sons, Gad and Asher.

18 And Leah again conceived and bare Ya'akov in those days two sons and one daughter, and these are their names, Yissakhar, Z'vulun, and their sister Dinah.

19 And Rakhel was still barren in those days, and Rakhel prayed unto YHWH at that time, and she said, O YHWH Elohim remember me and visit me, I beseech you, for now my husband will cast me off, for I have borne him no children.

20 Now O YHWH Elohim, hear my supplication before you, and see my affliction, and give me children like one of the handmaids, that I may no more bear my reproach.

21 And Elohim heard the voice of Rakhel, and Elohim remembered, and opened her womb, and Rakhel conceived and bare a son, and she said, Elohim has taken away my reproach, and she called his name Yosef, saying, May the YHWH add to me another son; and Ya'akov was ninety-one years old when she bare him.

22 At that time Ya'akov's mother, Riv'kah, sent her nurse Devorah the daughter of Utz, and two of Yitz'chak's servants unto Ya'akov.

23 And they came to Ya'akov to Charan and they said unto him, Riv'kah has sent us to you that you shall return to your father's house to the land of Kanaan; and Ya'akov hearkened unto them in this which his mother had spoken.

24 At that time, the other seven years which Ya'akov served Lavan for Rakhel were completed, and it was at the end of fourteen years that he had dwelt in Charan that Ya'akov said unto Lavan, give me my wives and send me away, that I may go to my land, for behold my mother did send unto me from the land at Kanaan that I should return to my father's house.

25 And Lavan said unto him, Not so I pray you; if I have found favor in your eyes do not leave me; appoint me your wages and I will give them, and dwell with me.

26 And Ya'akov said unto him, This is what you shall give me for wages, that I shall this day pass through all your flock and take away from them every lamb that is speckled

and spotted and such as are brown among the sheep, and among the goats, and if you will do this thing for me I will return and feed your flock and keep them as at first.

27 And Lavan did so, and Lavan removed from his flock all that Ya'akov had said and gave them to him.

28 And Ya'akov gave all that he had removed from Lavan's flock into the hands of his sons, and Ya'akov was feeding the remainder of Lavan's flock.

29 And when the servants of Yitz'chak which he had sent unto Ya'akov saw that Ya'akov would not then return with them to the land of Kanaan to his father, they then went away from him, and they returned home to the land of Kanaan.

30 And Devorah dwelt with Ya'akov in Charan, and she did not return with the servants of Yitz'chak to the land of Kanaan, and Devorah resided with Ya'akov's wives and children in Charan.

31 And Ya'akov served Lavan six years longer, and when the sheep brought forth, Ya'akov removed from them such as were speckled and spotted, as he had determined with Lavan, and Ya'akov did so at Lavan's for six years, and the man increased abundantly and he had cattle and maid servants and men servants, camels, and asses.

32 And Ya'akov had two hundred drove of cattle, and his cattle were of large size and of beautiful appearance and were very productive, and all the families of the sons of men desired to get some of the cattle of Ya'akov, for they were exceedingly prosperous.

33 And many of the sons of men came to procure some of Ya'akov's flock, and Ya'akov gave them a sheep for a man servant or a maid servant or for an ass or a camel, or whatever Ya'akov desired from them they gave him.

34 And Ya'akov obtained riches and honor and possessions by means of these transactions with the sons of men, and the

children of Lavan envied him of this honor.

35 And after some days he heard the words of Lavan's sons, saying, Ya'akov has taken away all that was our father's, and of that which was our father's has he acquired all this glory.

36 And Ya'akov saw the countenance of Lavan and of his children, and behold it was not toward him in those days as it had been before.

37 And in those days at the expiration of the six years, YHWH appeared to Ya'akov and said unto him, Arise, go forth out of this land, and return to the land of your birthplace and I will be with you.

38 And Ya'akov rose up at that time and he mounted his children and wives and all belonging to him upon camels, and he went forth to go to the land of Kanaan to his father Yitz'chak.

39 And Lavan did not know that Ya'akov had gone from him, for Lavan had been that day sheep-shearing.

40 And Rakhel stole her father's images, and she took them and she concealed them upon the camel upon which she sat, and she went on.

41 And this is the manner of the images; in taking a man who is the firstborn and slaying him and taking the hair off his head, and taking salt and salting the head and anointing it in oil, then taking a small tablet of copper or a tablet of gold and writing the name upon it, and placing the tablet under his tongue, and taking the head with the tablet under the tongue and putting it in the house, and lighting up lights before it and bowing down to it.

42 And at the time when they bow down to it, it speaks to them in all matters that they ask of it, through the power of the name which is written in it.

43 And some make them in the figures of men, of gold and silver, and go to them in times known to them, and the figures receive

the influence of the stars, and tell them future things, and in this manner were the images which Rakhel stole from her father.

44 And Rakhel stole these images which were her father's, in order that Lavan might not know through them where Ya'akov had gone.

45 And Lavan came home and he asked concerning Ya'akov and his house, and he was not to be found, and Lavan sought his images to know where Ya'akov had gone, and could not find them, and he went to some other images, and he inquired of them and they told him that Ya'akov had fled from him to his father's, to the land of Kanaan.

46 And Lavan rose up at that time and he took his brothers and all his servants, and he went forth and pursued Ya'akov, and he overtook him in mount Gilead.

47 And Lavan said unto Ya'akov, What is this you have done to me to flee and steal my heart, and lead my daughters and their children as captives taken by the sword?

48 And you did not suffer me to kiss them and send them away with joy, and you did steal my gods and did go away.

49 And Ya'akov answered Lavan, saying, Because I was afraid lest you would take your daughters by force from me; and now with whomsoever you find your gods he shall die.

50 And Lavan searched for the images and he examined in all Ya'akov's tents and furniture, but could not find them.

51 And Lavan said unto Ya'akov, We will make a covenant together and it shall be a testimony between me and you; if you shall afflict my daughters, or shall take other wives besides my daughters, even Elohim shall be a witness between me and you in this thing.

52 And they took stones and made a heap, and Lavan said, This heap is a witness between me and you, therefore he called the name thereof Gilead.

53 And Ya'akov and Lavan offered sacrifice upon the

mount, and they ate there by the heap, and they tarried in the mount all night, and Lavan rose up early in the morning, and he wept with his daughters and he kissed them, and he returned unto his place.

54 And he hastened and sent off his son B'or, who was seventeen years old, with Avichoref the son of Utz, the son of Nachor, and with them were ten men.

55 And they hastened and went and passed on the road before Ya'akov, and they came by another road to the land of Seir.

56 And they came unto Esau and said unto him, Thus says your brother and relative, your mother's brother Lavan, the son of Betuel, saying,

57 Have you heard Esau what Ya'akov your brother has done unto me, who first came to me naked and bare, and I went to meet him, and brought him to my house with honor, and I made him great, and I gave him my two daughters for wives and also two of my maids.

58 And Elohim blessed him on my account, and he increased abundantly, and had sons, daughters and maid servants.

59 He has also an immense stock of flocks and herds, camels and asses, also silver and gold in abundance; and when he saw that his wealth increased, he left me while I went to shear my sheep, and he rose up and fled in secrecy.

60 And he lifted his wives and children upon camels, and he led away all his cattle and property which he acquired in my land, and he lifted up his countenance to go to his father Yitz'chak, to the land of Kanaan.

61 And he did not suffer me to kiss my daughters and their children, and he led my daughters as captives taken by the sword, and he also stole my gods and he fled.

62 And now I have left him in the mountain of the brook of Yabuk, him and all belonging to him; he lacks nothing.

63 If it be your wish to go to him, go then and there will you find him, and you can do unto him as your soul desires; and Lavan's messengers came and told Esau all these things.

64 And Esau heard all the words of Lavan's messengers, and his anger was greatly kindled against Ya'akov, and he remembered his hatred, and his anger burned within him.

65 And Esau hastened and took his children and servants and the souls of his house, being sixty men, and he went and assembled all the children of Seir the Horite and their people, being three hundred and forty men, and took all this number of four hundred men with drawn swords, and he went unto Ya'akov to smite him.

66 And Esau divided all this number into several parts, and he took the sixty men of his children and servants and the souls of his house as one head, and gave them in care of Elifaz his eldest son.

67 And the remaining heads he gave to the care of the six sons of Seir the Horite, and he placed every man over his generations and over his children.

68 And the whole of this camp went as it was, and Esau went among them toward Ya'akov, and he conducted them with speed.

69 And Lavan's messengers departed from Esau and went to the land of Kanaan, and they came to the house of Riv'kah the mother of Ya'akov and Esau.

70 And they told her saying, Behold your son Esau has gone against his brother Ya'akov with four hundred men, for he heard that he was coming, and he is gone to make war with him, and to smite him and to take all that he has.

71 And Riv'kah hastened and sent seventy two men from the servants of Yitz'chak to meet Ya'akov on the road; for she said, Peradventure, Esau may make war in the road when he meets him.

72 And these messengers went on the way to meet Ya'akov,

and they met him in the road of the brook on the opposite side of the brook Yabuk, and Ya'akov said when he saw them, This camp is destined to me from Elohim, and Ya'akov called the name of that place Machnayim.

73 And Ya'akov knew all his father's men, and he kissed them and embraced them and came with them, and Ya'akov asked them concerning his father and mother, and they said, They were well.

74 And these messengers said unto Ya'akov, Riv'kah your mother has sent us to you, saying, I have heard, my son, that your brother Esau has gone forth against you on the road with men from the children of Seir the Horite.

75 And now, my son, hearken to my voice and see with your counsel what you will do, and when he comes up to you, supplicate him, and do not speak rashly to him, and give him a present from what you possess, and from what Elohim has favored you with.

76 And when he asks you concerning your affairs, conceal nothing from him, perhaps he may turn from his anger against you and you will thereby save your soul, you and all belonging to you, for it is your duty to honor him, for he is your elder brother.

77 And when Ya'akov heard the words of his mother which the messengers had spoken to him, Ya'akov lifted up his voice and wept bitterly, and did as his mother then commanded him.

Parashat Vayishalch

CHAPTER 32

1 And at that time Ya'akov sent messengers to his brother Esau toward the land of Seir, and he spoke to him words of

supplication.

2 And he commanded them, saying, Thus shall you say to my lord, to Esau, Thus says your servant Ya'akov, Let not my lord imagine that my father's blessing with which he did bless me has proved beneficial to me.

3 For I have been these twenty years with Lavan, and he deceived me and changed my wages ten times, as it has all been already told unto my lord.

4 And I served him in his house very laboriously, and Elohim afterward saw my affliction, my labor and the work of my hands, and he caused me to find grace and favor in his eyes.

5 And I afterward through Elohim's great mercy and kindness acquired oxen and asses and cattle, and men servants and maid servants.

6 And now I am coming to my land and my home to my father and mother, who are in the land of Kanaan; and I have sent to let my lord know all this in order to find favor in the eyes of my lord, so that he may not imagine that I have of myself obtained wealth, or that the blessing with which my father blessed me has benefited me.

7 And those messengers went to Esau, and found him on the borders of the land of Edom going toward Ya'akov, and four hundred men of the children of Seir the Horite were standing with drawn swords.

8 And the messengers of Ya'akov told Esau all the words that Ya'akov had spoken to them concerning Esau.

9 And Esau answered them with pride and contempt, and said unto them, Surely I have heard and truly it has been told unto me what Ya'akov has done to Lavan, who exalted him in his house and gave him his daughters for wives, and he begat sons and , Thus shall you say to my lord, to Esau, Thus says your servant Ya'akov, and abundantly increased in wealth and riches in Lavan's house through his means.

10 And when he saw that his wealth was abundant and his riches great he fled with all belonging to him, from Lavan's house, and he led Lavan's daughters away from the face of their father, as captives taken by the sword without telling him of it.

11 And not only to Lavan has Ya'akov done thus but also unto me has he done so and has twice supplanted me, and shall I be silent?

12 Now therefore I have this day come with my camps to meet him, and I will do unto him according to the desire of my heart.

13 And the messengers returned and came to Ya'akov and said unto him, We came to your brother, to Esau, and we told him all your words, and thus has he answered us, and behold he comes to meet you with four hundred men.

14 Now then know and see what you shall do, and pray before your Elohim to deliver you from him.

15 And when he heard the words of his brother which he had spoken to the messengers of Ya'akov, Ya'akov was greatly afraid and he was distressed.

16 And Ya'akov prayed to YHWH his Elohim, and he said, O YHWH Elohi of my fathers, Avraham and Yitz'chak, you did say unto me when I went away from my father's house, saying,

17 I am YHWH Elohim of your father Avraham and Elohi of Yitz'chak, unto you do I give this land and your seed after you, and I will make your seed as the stars of heaven, and you shall spread forth to the four sides of heaven, and in you and in your seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed.

18 And you did establish your words, and did give unto me riches and children and cattle, as the utmost wishes of my heart did you give unto your servant; you did give unto me all that I asked from you, so that I lacked nothing.

19 And you did afterward say unto me, Return to your

parents and to your birth place and I will still do well with you.

20 And now that I have come, and you did deliver me from Lavan, I shall fall in the hands of Esau who will slay me, yea, together with the mothers of my children.

21 Now therefore, O YHWH Elohim, deliver me, I pray you, also from the hands of my brother Esau, for I am greatly afraid of him.

22 And if there is no righteousness in me, do it for the sake of Avraham and my father Yitz'chak.

23 For I know that through kindness and mercy have I acquired this wealth; now therefore I beseech you to deliver me this day with your kindness and to answer me.

24 And Ya'akov ceased praying to YHWH, and he divided the people that were with him with the flocks and cattle into two camps, and he gave the half to the care of Damesek, the son of Eliezer, Avraham's servant, for a camp, with his children, and the other half he gave to the care of his brother Elyanos the son of Eliezer, to be for a camp with his children.

25 And he commanded them, saying, Keep yourselves at a distance with your camps, and do not come too near each other, and if Esau come to one camp and slay it, the other camp at a distance from it will escape him.

26 And Ya'akov tarried there that night, and during the whole night he gave his servants instructions concerning the forces and his children.

27 And YHWH heard the prayer of Ya'akov on that day, and YHWH then delivered Ya'akov from the hands of his brother Esau.

28 And YHWH sent three angels of the angels from on high, and they went before Esau and came to him.

29 And these angels appeared before Esau and his men as two thousand men, riding upon horses furnished with all

sorts of war instruments, and they appeared in the eyes of Esau and all his men to be divided into four camps, with four chiefs to them.

30 And one camp went on and they found Esau coming with four hundred men toward his brother Ya'akov, and this camp ran toward Esau and his men and terrified them, and Esau fell off the horse in alarm, and all his men separated from him in that place, for they were greatly afraid.

31 And the whole of the camp shouted after them when they fled from Esau, and all the warlike men answered, saying,

32 Surely we are the servants of Ya'akov, who is the servant of Elohim, and who then can stand against us? And Esau

said unto them, O then, my lord

and brother Ya'akov is your lord, whom I have not seen for these twenty years, and now that I have this day come to see him, do you treat me in this manner?

33 And the angels answered him saying, As YHWH lives, were not Ya'akov of whom you speaks your brother, we had not let one remaining from you and your men, but only on account of Ya'akov we will do nothing to them.

34 And this camp passed from Esau and his men and it went away, and Esau and his men had gone from them about a league when the second camp came toward him with all sorts of weapons, and they also did unto Esau and his men as the first camp had done to them.

35 And when they had left it to go on, behold the third camp came toward him and they were all terrified, and Esau fell off the horse, and the whole camp cried out, and said, Surely we are the servants of Ya'akov, who is the servant of Elohim, and who can stand against us?

36 And Esau again answered them saying, O then, Ya'akov my lord and your lord is my brother, and for twenty years I have not seen his countenance and hearing this day that he was coming, I went this day to meet him, and do you treat

me in this manner?

37 And they answered him, and said unto him, As YHWH lives, were not Ya'akov your brother as you did say, we had not left a remnant from you and your men, but on account of Ya'akov of whom you speak being your brother, we will not speak with you or your men.

38 And the third camp also passed from them, and he still continued his way with his men toward Ya'akov, when the fourth camp came toward him, and they also did unto him and his men as the others had done.

39 And when Esau saw the evil which the four angels had done to him and to his men, he became greatly afraid of his brother Ya'akov, and he went to meet him in peace.

40 And Esau concealed his hatred against Ya'akov, because he was afraid of his life on account of his brother Ya'akov, and because he imagined that the four camps that he had lighted upon were Ya'akov's servants.

41 And Ya'akov tarried that night with his servants in their camps, and he resolved with his servants to give unto Esau a present from all that he had with him, and from all his property; and Ya'akov rose up in the morning, he and his men, and they chose from among the cattle a present for Esau.

42 And this is the number of all the present which Ya'akov chose from his flock to give unto his brother Esau: and he selected two hundred and forty head from the flocks, and he selected from the camels and asses thirty each, and of the herds he chose fifty kine.

43 And he put them all in ten droves, and he placed each sort by itself, and he delivered them into the hands of ten of his servants, each drove by itself.

44 And he commanded them, and said unto them, Keep yourselves at a distance from each other, and put a space between the droves, and when Esau and those who are with

him shall meet you and ask you, saying, Whose are you, and whither do you go, and to whom belongs all this before you, you shall say unto them, We are the servants of Ya'akov, and we come to meet Esau in peace, and behold Ya'akov comes behind us.

45 And that which is before us is a present sent from Ya'akov to his brother Esau.

46 And if they shall say unto you, Why does he delay behind you, from coming to meet his brother and to see his face, then you shall say unto them, Surely he comes joyfully behind us to meet his brother, for he said, I will appease him with the present that goes to him, and after this I will see his face, peradventure he will accept of me.

47 So the whole present passed on in the hands of his servants, and went before him on that day, and he lodged that night with his camps by the border of the brook of Yabuk, and he rose up in the midst of the night, and he took his wives and his maid servants, and all belonging to him, and he that night passed them over the ford Yabuk.

48 And when he passed all belonging to him over the brook, Ya'akov was left by himself, and a man met him, and he wrestled with him that night until the breaking of the day, and the hollow of Ya'akov's thigh was out of joint through wrestling with him.

49 And at the break of day the man left Ya'akov there, and he blessed him and went away, and Ya'akov passed the brook at the break of day, and he halted upon his thigh.

50 And the sun rose upon him when he had passed the brook, and he came up to the place of his cattle and children.

51 And they went on till mid day, and while they were going the present was passing on before them.

52 And Ya'akov lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold Esau was at a distance, coming along with many men, about four hundred, and Ya'akov was greatly afraid of his brother.

53 And Ya'akov hastened and divided his children unto his wives and his handmaids, and his daughter Dinah he put in a chest, and delivered her into the hands of his servants.

54 And he passed before his children and wives to meet his brother, and he bowed down to the ground, yea he bowed down seven times until he approached his brother, and Elohim gave to Ya'akov to find grace and favor in the eyes of Esau and his men, for Elohim had heard the prayer of Ya'akov.

55 And the fear of Ya'akov and his terror fell upon his brother Esau, for Esau was greatly afraid of Ya'akov for what the angels of Elohim had done to Esau, and Esau's anger against Ya'akov was turned into kindness.

56 And when Esau saw Ya'akov running toward him, he also ran toward him and he embraced him, and he fell upon his neck, and they kissed and they wept.

57 And Elohim put fear and kindness toward Ya'akov in the hearts of the men that came with Esau, and they also kissed Ya'akov and embraced him.

58 And also Elifaz, the son of Esau, with his four brothers, sons of Esau, wept with Ya'akov, and they kissed him and embraced him, for the fear of Ya'akov had fallen upon them all.

59 And Esau lifted up his eyes and saw the women with their offspring, the children of Ya'akov, walking behind Ya'akov and bowing along the way to Esau.

60 And Esau said unto Ya'akov, Who are these with you, my brother? are they your children or your servants? and Ya'akov answered Esau and said, They are my children which Elohim has graciously given to your servant.

61 And while Ya'akov was speaking to Esau and his men, Esau beheld the whole camp, and he said unto Ya'akov, Whence did you get the whole of the camp that I met last night? and Ya'akov said, To find favor in the eyes of my

lord, it is that which Elohim graciously gave to your servant.
62 And the present came before Esau, and Ya'akov pressed Esau, saying, Take I pray you the present that I have brought to my lord, and Esau said, Wherefore is this my purpose? keep that which you have unto yourself.

63 And Ya'akov said, It is incumbent upon me to give all this, since I have seen your face, that you still live in peace.

64 And Esau refused to take the present, and Ya'akov said unto him, I beseech you my lord, if now I have found favor in your eyes, then receive my present at my hand, for I have therefore seen your face, as though I had seen a god-like face, because you were pleased with me.

65 And Esau took the present, and Ya'akov also gave unto Esau silver and gold and bdellium, for he pressed him so much that he took them.

66 And Esau divided the cattle that were in the camp, and he gave the half to the men who had come with him, for they had come on hire, and the other half he delivered unto the hands of his children.

67 And the silver and gold and bdellium he gave in the hands of Elifaz his eldest son, and Esau said unto Ya'akov, Let us remain with you, and we will go slowly along with you until you come to my place with me, that we may dwell there together.

68 And Ya'akov answered his brother and said, I would do as my lord speaks unto me, but my lord knows that the children are tender, and the flocks and herds with their young who are with me, go but slowly, for if they went swiftly they would all die, for you know their burdens and their fatigue.

69 Therefore let my lord pass on before his servant, and I will go on slowly for the sake of the children and the flock, until I come to my lord's place to Seir.

70 And Esau said unto Ya'akov, I will place with you some

of the people that are with me to take care of you in the way, and to bear your fatigue and burden, and he said, What needs it my lord, if I may find grace in your eyes?

71 Behold I will come unto you to Seir to dwell there together as you have spoken, go you then with your men for I will follow you.

72 And Ya'akov said this same thing to Esau in order to remove Esau and his men from him, so that Ya'akov might afterward go to his father's house to the land of Kanaan.

73 And Esau hearkened to the voice of Ya'akov, and Esau returned with the four hundred men that were with him on their way to Seir, and Ya'akov and all belonging to him went that day as far as the extremity of the land of Kanaan in its borders, and he remained there many days.

CHAPTER 33

1 And in some time after Ya'akov went away from the borders of the land, and he came to the land of Shalem, that is the city of Shechem, which is in the land of Kanaan, and he rested in front of the city.

2 And he bought a parcel of the field which was there, from the children of Chamor the people of the land, for five shekels.

3 And Ya'akov there built himself a house, and he pitched his tent there, and he made booths for his cattle, therefore he called the name of that place Sukkot.

4 And Ya'akov dwelt in Sukkot a year and six months.

5 At that time some of the women of the inhabitants of the land went to the city of Shechem to dance and rejoice with the daughters of the men of the city, and when they went forth then Rakhel and Leah the wives of Ya'akov with their families also went to behold the rejoicing of the daughters of

the city.

6 And Dinah the daughter of Ya'akov also went along with them and saw the daughters of the city, and they remained there before these daughters while all the men of the city were standing by them to behold their rejoicings, and all the great ones of the city were there.

7 And also Shechem the son of Chamor, the prince of the land was also standing there to see them.

8 And Shechem saw Dinah the daughter of Ya'akov sitting with her mother before the daughters of the city, and the damsel pleased him greatly, and he there asked his friends and his people, saying, Whose daughter is that sitting among the women, whom I do not know in this city?

9 And they said unto him, Surely this is the daughter of Ya'akov the son of Yitz'chak the Hebrew, who has dwelt in this city for some time, and when it was reported that the daughters of the land were going forth to rejoice she went with her mother and maid servants to sit among them as you see.

10 And Shechem beheld Dinah the daughter of Ya'akov, and when he looked at her his soul became fixed upon Dinah.

11 And he sent and had her taken by force, and Dinah came to the house of Shechem and he seized her forcibly and lay with her and humbled her, and he loved her exceedingly and placed her in his house.

12 And they came and told the thing unto Ya'akov, and when Ya'akov heard that Shechem had defiled his daughter Dinah, Ya'akov sent twelve of his servants to fetch Dinah from the house of Shechem, and they went and came to the house of Shechem to take away Dinah from there.

13 And when they came Shechem went out to them with his men and drove them from his house, and he would not suffer them to come before Dinah, but Shechem was sitting with

Dinah kissing and embracing her before their eyes.

14 And the servants of Ya'akov came back and told him, saying, When we came, he and his men drove us away, and thus did Shechem do unto Dinah before our eyes.

15 And Ya'akov knew moreover that Shechem had defiled his daughter, but he said nothing, and his sons were feeding his cattle in the field, and Ya'akov remained silent till their return.

16 And before his sons came home Ya'akov sent two maidens from his servants' daughters to take care of Dinah in the house of Shechem, and to remain with her, and Shechem sent three of his friends to his father Chamor the son of Chiddekem, the son of Pered, saying, Get me this damsel for a wife.

17 And Chamor the son of Chiddekem the Hivite came to the house of Shechem his son, and he sat before him, and Chamor said unto his son, Shechem, Is there then no woman among the daughters of your people that you will take an Hebrew woman who is not of your people?

18 And Shechem said to him, Her only must you get for me, for she is delightful in my sight; and Chamor did according to the word of his son, for he was greatly beloved by him.

19 And Chamor went forth to Ya'akov to commune with him concerning this matter, and when he had gone from the house of his son Shechem, before he came to Ya'akov to speak unto him, behold the sons of Ya'akov had come from the field, as soon as they heard the thing that Shechem the son of Chamor had done.

20 And the men were very much grieved concerning their sister, and they all came home fired with anger, before the time of gathering in their cattle.

21 And they came and sat before their father and they spoke unto him kindled with wrath, saying, Surely death is due to

this man and to his house, because the YHWH Elohi of all the earth commanded Noach and his children that man shall never rob, nor commit adultery; now behold Shechem has both ravaged and committed fornication with our sister, and not one of all the men of the city spoke a word to him.

22 Surely you know and understand that the judgment of death is due to Shechem, and to his father, and to the whole city on account of the thing which he has done.

23 And while they were speaking before their father in this matter, behold Chamor the father of Shechem came to speak to Ya'akov the words of his son concerning Dinah, and he sat before Ya'akov and before his sons.

24 And Chamor spoke unto them, saying, The soul of my son Shechem longs for your daughter; I pray you give her unto him for a wife and intermarry with us; give us your daughters and we will give you our daughters, and you shall dwell with us in our land and we will be as one people in the land.

25 For our land is very extensive, so dwell you and trade therein and get possessions in it, and do therein as you desire, and no one shall prevent you by saying a word to you.

26 And Chamor ceased speaking unto Ya'akov and his sons, and behold Shechem his son had come after him, and he sat before them.

27 And Shechem spoke before Ya'akov and his sons, saying, May I find favor in your eyes that you will give me your daughter, and whatever you say unto me that will I do for her.

28 Ask me for abundance of dowry and gift, and I will give it, and whatever you shall say unto me that will I do, and whoever he be that will rebel against your orders, he shall die; only give me the damsel for a wife.

29 And Shim'on and Levi answered Chamor and Shechem

his son deceitfully, saying, All you have spoken unto us we will do for you.

30 And behold our sister is in your house, but keep away from her until we send to our father Yitz'chak concerning this matter, for we can do nothing without his consent.

31 For he knows the ways of our father Avraham, and whatever he says unto us we will tell you, we will conceal nothing from you.

32 And Shim'on and Levi spoke this unto Shechem and his father in order to find a pretext, and to seek counsel what was to be done to Shechem and to his city in this matter.

33 And when Shechem and his father heard the words of Shim'on and Levi, it seemed good in their sight, and Shechem and his father came forth to go home.

34 And when they had gone, the sons of Ya'akov said unto their father, saying, Behold, we know that death is due to these wicked ones and to their city, because they transgressed that which YHWH our Elohim had commanded unto Noach and his children and his seed after them.

35 And also because Shechem did this thing to our sister Dinah in defiling her, for such vileness shall never be done among us.

36 Now therefore know and see what you will do, and seek counsel and pretext what is to be done to them, in order to kill all the inhabitants of this city.

37 And Shim'on said to them, Here is a proper advice for you: tell them to circumcise every male among them as we are circumcised, and if they do not wish to do this, we shall take our daughter from them and go away.

38 And if they consent to do this and will do it, then when they are sunk down with pain, we will attack them with our swords, as upon one who is quiet and peaceable, and we will slay every male person among them.

39 And Shim'on's advice pleased them, and Shim'on and

Levi resolved to do unto them as it was proposed.

40 And it came to pass on the morrow Shechem and Chamor his father came again unto Ya'akov and his sons, to speak concerning Dinah, and to hear what answer the sons of Ya'akov would give to their words.

41 And the sons of Ya'akov spoke deceitfully to them, saying, We told our father Yitz'chak all your words, and your words pleased him.

42 But he spoke unto us, saying, Thus did Avraham his father command him from our Elohim, Adon of all the earth, that any man who is not of his descendants that should wish to take one of his daughters, shall cause every male belonging to him to be circumcised, as we are circumcised, and then we may give him our daughter for a wife.

43 Now we have made known to you all our ways that our father spoke unto us, for we cannot do this of which you spoke unto us, to give our daughter to an uncircumcised man, for it is a disgrace to us.

44 But in this will we consent to you, to give you our daughter, and we will also take unto ourselves your daughters, and will dwell among you and be one people as you have spoken, if you will hearken to us, and consent to be like us, to circumcise every male belonging to you, as we are circumcised.

45 And if you will not hearken unto us, to have every male circumcised as we are circumcised, as we have commanded, then we will come to you, and take our daughter from you and go away.

46 And Shechem and his father Chamor heard the words of the sons of Ya'akov, and the thing pleased them exceedingly, and Shechem and his father Chamor hastened to do the wishes of the sons of Ya'akov, for Shechem was very fond of Dinah, and his soul was riveted to her.

47 And Shechem and his father Chamor hastened to the gate

of the city, and they assembled all the men of their city and spoke unto them the words of the sons of Ya'akov, saying,
48 We came to these men, the sons of Ya'akov, and we spoke unto them concerning their daughter, and these men will consent to do according to our wishes, and behold our land is of great extent for them, and they will dwell in it, and trade in it, and we shall be one people; we will take their daughters, and our daughters we will give unto them for wives.

49 But only on this condition will these men consent to do this thing, that every male among us be circumcised as they are circumcised, as their Elohim commanded them, and when we shall have done according to their instructions to be circumcised, then will they dwell among us, together with their cattle and possessions, and we shall be as one people with them.

50 And when all the men of the city heard the words of Shechem and his father Chamor, then all the men of their city were agreeable to this proposal, and they obeyed to be circumcised, for Shechem and his father Chamor were greatly esteemed by them, being the princes of the land.

51 And on the morrow, Shechem and Chamor his father rose up early in the morning, and they assembled all the men of their city into the middle of the city, and they called for the sons of Ya'akov, who circumcised every male belonging to them on that day and the morrow.

52 And they circumcised Shechem and Chamor his father, and the five brothers of Shechem, and then every one rose up and went home, for this thing was from YHWH against the city of Shechem, and from YHWH was Shim'on's counsel in this matter, in order that YHWH might deliver the city of Shechem into the hands of Ya'akov's two sons.

CHAPTER 34

1 And the number of all the males that were circumcised, were six hundred and forty-five men, and two hundred and forty-six children.

2 But Chiddekem, son of Pered, the father of Chamor, and his six brothers, would not listen unto Shechem and his father Chamor, and they would not be circumcised, for the proposal of the sons of Ya'akov was loathsome in their sight, and their anger was greatly roused at this, that the people of the city had not hearkened to them.

3 And it came to pass in the evening of the second day, they found eight small children who had not been circumcised, for their mothers had concealed them from Shechem and his father Chamor, and from the men of the city.

4 And Shechem and his father Chamor sent to have them brought before them to be circumcised, when Chiddekem and his six brothers sprang at them with their swords, and sought to slay them.

5 And they sought to slay also Shechem and his father Chamor and they sought to slay Dinah with them on account of this matter.

6 And they said unto them, What is this act that you have done? are there no women among the daughters of your brothers the Kanaanites, that you wish to take unto yourselves daughters of the Hebrews, whom you knew not before, and will do this act which your fathers never commanded you?

7 Do you imagine that you will succeed through this act which you have done? and what will you answer in this thing to your brothers the Kanaanites, who will come tomorrow and ask you concerning this thing?

8 And if your act shall not appear upright and good in their sight, what will you do for your lives, and me for our lives,

in your not having hearkened to our voices?

9 And if the inhabitants of the land and all your brothers the children of Ham, shall hear of your act, saying,

10 On account of a Hebrew woman did Shechem and Chamor his father, and all the inhabitants of their city, do that with which they had been unacquainted and which their ancestors never commanded them, where then will you fly or where conceal your shame, all your days before your brothers, the inhabitants of the land of Kanaan?

11 Now therefore we cannot bear up against this thing which you have done, neither can we be burdened with this yoke upon us, which our ancestors did not command us.

12 Behold tomorrow we will go and assemble all our brothers, the Kanaanitish brothers who dwell in the land, and we will all come and smite you and all those who trust in you, that there shall not be a remnant left from you or them.

13 And when Chamor and his son Shechem and all the people of the city heard the words of Chiddekem and his brothers, they were terribly afraid of their lives at their words, and they repented of what they had done.

14 And Shechem and his father Chamor answered their father Chiddekem and his brothers, and they said unto them, All the words which you spoke unto us are right.

15 Now do not say, nor imagine in your hearts that on account of the love of the Hebrews we did this thing that our ancestors did not command us.

16 But because we saw that it was not their intention and desire to accede to our wishes concerning their daughter as to our taking her, except on this condition, so we hearkened to their voices and did this act which you saw, in order to obtain our desire from them.

17 And when we shall have obtained the thing which we request from them, we will then return to them and do unto them that which you say unto us.

18 We beseech you then to wait and tarry until our flesh shall be healed and we again become strong, and we will then go together against them, and do unto them that which is in your hearts and in ours.

19 And Dinah the daughter of Ya'akov heard all these words which Chiddekem and his brothers had spoken, and what Chamor and his son Shechem and the men of their city had answered them.

20 And she hastened and sent one of her maidens, that her father had sent to take care of her in the house of Shechem, to Ya'akov her father and to her brothers, saying:

21 Thus did Chiddekem and his brothers advise concerning you, and thus did Chamor and Shechem and the people of the city answer them.

22 And when Ya'akov heard these words he was filled with wrath, and he was indignant at them, and his anger was kindled against them.

23 And Shim'on and Levi swore and said, As YHWH lives, the Elohi of all the earth, by this time tomorrow, there shall not be a remnant left in the whole city.

24 And twenty young men had concealed themselves who were not circumcised, and these young men fought against Shim'on and Levi, and Shim'on and Levi killed eighteen of them, and two fled from them and escaped to some lime pits that were in the city, and Shim'on and Levi sought for them, but could not find them.

25 And Shim'on and Levi continued to go about in the city, and they killed all the people of the city at the edge of the sword, and they left none remaining.

26 And there was a great consternation in the midst of the city, and the cry of the people of the city ascended to heaven, and all the women and children cried aloud.

27 And Shim'on and Levi slew all the city; they left not a male remaining in the whole city.

28 And they slew Chamor and Shechem his son at the edge of the sword, and they brought away Dinah from the house of Shechem and they went from there.

29 And the sons of Ya'akov went and returned, and came upon the slain, and spoiled all their property which was in the city and the field.

30 And while they were taking the spoil, three hundred men stood up and threw dust at them and struck them with stones, when Shim'on turned to them and he slew them all with the edge of the sword, and Shim'on turned before Levi, and came into the city.

31 And they took away their sheep and their oxen and their cattle, and also the remainder of the women and little ones, and they led all these away, and they opened a gate and went out and came unto their father Ya'akov with vigor.

32 And when Ya'akov saw all that they had done to the city, and saw the spoil that they took from them, Ya'akov was very angry at them, and Ya'akov said unto them, What is this that you have done to me? behold I obtained rest among the Kanaanite inhabitants of the land, and none of them spoke with me.

33 And now you have done this thing to make me obnoxious to the inhabitants of the land, among the Kanaanites and the Perizzites, and I am but of a small number, and they will all assemble against me and slay me when they hear of your work with their brothers, and I and my house will be destroyed.

34 And Shim'on and Levi and all their brothers with them answered their father Ya'akov and said unto him, Behold we live in the land, and shall Shechem do this to our sister? why are you silent at all that Shechem has done? and shall he deal with our sister as with a harlot in the streets?

35 And the number of women whom Shim'on and Levi took captives from the city of Shechem, whom they did not slay,

was eighty-five who had not known man.

36 And among them was a young woman of beautiful appearance and well favored, whose name was Bunah, and Shim'on took her for a wife, and the number of the males which they took captives and did not slay, was forty-seven men, and the rest they slew.

37 And all the young men and women that Shim'on and Levi had taken captives from the city of Shechem, were servants to the sons of Ya'akov and to their children after them, until the day of the sons of Ya'akov going forth from the land of Egypt.

38 And when Shim'on and Levi had gone forth from the city, the two young men that were left, who had concealed themselves in the city, and did not die among the people of the city, rose up, and these young men went into the city and walked about in it, and found the city desolate without man, and only women weeping, and these young men cried out and said, Behold, this is the evil which the sons of Ya'akov the Hebrew did to this city in their having this day destroyed one of the Kanaanite cities, and were not afraid of their lives of all the land of Kanaan.

39 And these men left the city and went to the city of Tapnach, and they came there and told the inhabitants of Tapnach all that had befallen them, and all that the sons of Ya'akov had done to the city of Shechem.

40 And the information reached Yashuv king of Tapnach, and he sent men to the city of Shechem to see those young men, for the king did not believe them in this account, saying, How could two men lay waste such a large city as Shechem?

41 And the messengers of Yashuv came back and told him, saying, We came unto the city, and it is destroyed, there is not a man there; only weeping women; neither is any flock or cattle there, for all that was in the city the sons of

Ya'akov took away.

42 And Yashuv wondered at this, saying, How could two men do this thing, to destroy so large a city, and not one man able to stand against them?

43 For the like has not been from the days of Nimrod, and not even from the remotest time, has the like taken place; and Yashuv, king of Tapnach, said to his people, Be courageous and we will go and fight against these Hebrews, and do unto them as they did unto the city, and we will avenge the cause of the men of the city.

44 And Yashuv, king of Tapnach, consulted with his counselors about this matter, and his advisers said unto him, Alone you will not prevail over the Hebrews, for they must be powerful to do this work to the whole city.

45 If two of them laid waste the whole city, and no one stood against them, surely if you will go against them, they will all rise against us and destroy us likewise.

46 But if you will send to all the kings that surround us, and let them come together, then we will go with them and fight against the sons of Ya'akov; then will you prevail against them.

47 And Yashuv heard the words of his counsellors, and their words pleased him and his people, and he did so; and Yashuv king of Tapnach sent to all the kings of the Amorites that surrounded Shechem and Tapnach, saying,

48 Go up with me and assist me, and we will smite Ya'akov the Hebrew and all his sons, and destroy them from the earth, for thus did he do to the city of Shechem, and do you not know of it?

49 And all the kings of the Amorites heard the evil that the sons of Ya'akov had done to the city of Shechem, and they were greatly astonished at them.

50 And the seven kings of the Amorites assembled with all their armies, about ten thousand men with drawn swords,

and they came to fight against the sons of Ya'akov; and Ya'akov heard that the kings of the Amorites had assembled to fight against his sons, and Ya'akov was greatly afraid, and it distressed him.

51 And Ya'akov exclaimed against Shim'on and Levi, saying, What is this act that you did? why have you injured me, to bring against me all the children of Kanaan to destroy me and my house? for I was at rest, even I and my house, and you have done this thing to me, and provoked the inhabitants of the land against me by your proceedings.

52 And Y'hudah answered his father, saying, Was it for naught my brothers Shim'on and Levi killed all the inhabitants of Shechem? Surely it was because Shechem had humbled our sister, and transgressed the command of our Elohim to Noach and his children, for Shechem took our sister away by force, and committed adultery with her.

53 And Shechem did all this evil and not one of the inhabitants of his city interfered with him, to say, Why will you do this? surely for this my brothers went and smote the city, and YHWH delivered it into their hands, because its inhabitants had transgressed the commands of our Elohim. Is it then for naught that they have done all this?

54 And now why are you afraid or distressed, and why are you displeased at my brothers, and why is your anger kindled against them?

55 Surely Elohim who delivered into their hand the city of Shechem and its people, he will also deliver into our hands all the Kanaanite kings who are coming against us, and we will do unto them as my brothers did unto Shechem.

56 Now be tranquil about them and cast away your fears, but trust in YHWH our Elohim, and pray unto him to assist us and deliver us, and deliver our enemies into our hands.

57 And Y'hudah called to one of his father's servants, Go now and see where those kings, who are coming against us,

are situated with their armies.

58 And the servant went and looked far off, and went up opposite Mount Sichon⁶⁴, and saw all the camps of the kings standing in the fields, and he returned to Y'hudah and said, Behold the kings are situated in the field with all their camps, a people exceedingly numerous, like unto the sand upon the sea shore.

59 And Y'hudah said unto Shim'on and Levi, and unto all his brothers, Strengthen yourselves and be sons of valor, for YHWH our Elohim is with us, do not fear them.

60 Stand forth every man, girt with his weapons of war, his bow and his sword, and we will go and fight against these uncircumcised men; YHWH is our Elohim, He will save us.

61 And they rose up, and each girt on his weapons of war, great and small, eleven sons of Ya'akov, and all the servants of Ya'akov with them.

62 And all the servants of Yitz'chak who were with Yitz'chak in Chevron, all came to them equipped in all sorts of war instruments, and the sons of Ya'akov and their servants, being one hundred and twelve men, went towards these kings, and Ya'akov also went with them.

63 And the sons of Ya'akov sent unto their father Yitz'chak the son of Avraham to Chevron, the same is Kireat-Arva, saying,

64 Pray we beseech you for us unto YHWH our ELohim, to protect us from the hands of the Kanaanites who are coming against us, and to deliver them into our hands.

65 And Yitz'chak the son of Avraham prayed unto YHWH for his sons, and he said, O YHWH Elohim, you did promise my father, saying, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and you did also promise me, and establish you your

⁶⁴ "Sichon" Hebrew: שִׁיחֹן not to be confused with Mt. Tzion or Zion sometimes transliterated into Greek as "Sichon". This Mt. Sichon was the ancient name of Mt. Hermon (see Deut. 4:48)

word, now that the kings of Kanaan are coming together, to make war with my children because they committed no violence.

66 Now therefore, O YHWH Elohim, Elohi of all the earth, pervert, I pray you, the counsel of these kings that they may not fight against my sons.

67 And impress the hearts of all these kings and their people with the terror of my sons and bring down their pride, and that they may turn away from my sons.

68 And with your strong hand and outstretched arm deliver my sons and their servants from them, for power and might are in your hands to do all this.

69 And the sons of Ya'akov and their servants went toward these kings, and they trusted in YHWH their Elohim, and while they were going, Ya'akov their father also prayed unto YHWH and said, O YHWH Elohim, powerful and exalted Elohim, who has reigned from days of old, from thence till now and forever;

70 you are He who stirs up wars and causes them to cease, in your hand are power and might to exalt and to bring down; O may my prayer be acceptable before you that you may turn to me with your mercies, to impress the hearts of these kings and their people with the terror of my sons, and terrify them and their camps, and with your great kindness deliver all those that trust in you, for it is you who canst bring people under us and reduce nations under our power.

CHAPTER 35

1 And all the kings of the Amorites came and took their stand in the field to consult with their counselors what was to be done with the sons of Ya'akov, for they were still afraid of them, saying, Behold, two of them slew the whole

of the city of Shechem.

2 And YHWH heard the prayers of Yitz'chak and Ya'akov, and YHWH gave the hearts of all these kings' advisers great fear and terror that they unanimously exclaimed,

3 Are you silly this day, or is there no understanding in you, that you will fight with the Hebrews, and why will you take a delight in your own destruction this day?

4 Behold two of them came to the city of Shechem without fear or terror, and they killed all the inhabitants of the city, that no man stood up against them, and how will you be able to fight with them all?

5 Surely you know that their Elohim is exceedingly fond of them, and has done mighty things for them, such as have not been done from days of old, and among all the gods of nations, there is none can do like unto his mighty deeds.

6 Surely he delivered their father Avraham, the Hebrew, from the hand of Nimrod, and from the hand of all his people who had many times sought to slay him.

7 He delivered him also from the fire in which king Nimrod had cast him, and his Elohim delivered him from it.

8 And who else can do the like? surely it was Avraham who slew the five kings of Elam, when they had touched his brother's son who in those days dwelt in Sodom.

9 And took his servant that was faithful in his house and a few of his men, and they pursued the kings of Elam in one night and killed them, and restored to his brother's son all his property which they had taken from him.

10 And surely you know the Elohi of these Hebrews is much delighted with them, and they are also delighted with him, for they know that he delivered them from all their enemies.

11 And behold through his love toward his Elohim, Avraham took his only and precious son and intended to bring him up as a burnt offering to his Elohim, and had it not been for his Elohim who prevented him from doing this, he

would then have done it through his love to his Elohim.

12 And his Elohim saw all his works, and swore unto him, and promised him that he would deliver his sons and all his seed from every trouble that would befall them, because he had done this thing, and through his love to his Elohim stifled his compassion for his child.

13 And have you not heard what their Elohim did to Pharaoh king of Egypt, and to Avimelech king of Gerar, through taking Avraham's wife, who said of her, She is my sister, lest they might slay him on account of her, and think of taking her for a wife? And his Elohim did unto them and their people all that you heard of.

14 And behold, we ourselves saw with our eyes that Esau, the brother of Ya'akov, came to him with four hundred men, with the intention of slaying him, for he called to mind that he had taken away from him his father's blessing.

15 And he went to meet him when he came from Aram⁶⁵, to smite the mother with the children, and who delivered him from his hands but his Elohim in whom he trusted? he delivered him from the hand of his brother and also from the hands of his enemies, and surely he again will protect them.

16 Who does not know that it was their Elohim who inspired them with strength to do to the city of Shechem the evil which you heard of?

17 Could it then be with their own strength that two men could destroy such a large city as Shechem had it not been for their Elohim in whom they trusted? he said and did unto them all this to slay the inhabitants of the city in their city.

18 And also can you then prevail over them who have come forth together from your city to fight with the whole of them, even if a thousand times as many more should come to your assistance?

19 Surely you know and understand that you do not come to

⁶⁵ i.e. "Syria"

fight with them, but you come to war with their Elohim who made choice of them, and you have therefore all come this day to be destroyed.

20 And now therefore refrain from this evil which you are endeavoring to bring upon yourselves, and it will be better for you not to go to battle with them, although they are but few in numbers, because their Elohim is with them.

21 And when the kings of the Amorites heard all the words of their advisers, their hearts were filled with terror, and they were afraid of the sons of Ya'akov and would not fight against them.

22 And they also inclined their ears to the words of their advisers, and they listened to all their words, and the words of the counselors greatly pleased the kings, and they did so.

23 And the kings turned and refrained from the sons of Ya'akov, for they durst not approach them to make war with them, for they were greatly afraid of them, and their hearts melted within them from their fear of them.

24 For this was from YHWH to them, for he heard the prayers of his servants Yitz'chak and Ya'akov, for they trusted in him; and all these kings returned with their camps on that day, each to his own city, and they did not at that time fight with the sons of Ya'akov.

25 And the sons of Ya'akov kept their station that day till evening opposite mount Sichon, and seeing that these kings did not come to fight against them, the sons of Ya'akov returned home.

CHAPTER 36

1 At that time YHWH appeared unto Ya'akov saying, Arise, go to Beit-El and remain there, and make there an altar to El who appeared unto you, who delivered you and your sons

from affliction.

2 And Ya'akov rose up with his sons and all belonging to him, and they went and came to Beit-El according to the word of YHWH.

3 And Ya'akov was ninety-nine years old when he went up to Beit-El, and Ya'akov and his sons and all the people that were with him, remained in Beit-El in Luz, and he there built an altar to YHWH who appeared unto him, and Ya'akov and his sons remained in Beit-El six months.

4 At that time died Devorah the daughter of Utz, the nurse of Riv'kah, who had been with Ya'akov; and Ya'akov buried her beneath Beit-El at a place under an oak that was there.

5 And also Riv'kah the daughter of Betuel, the mother of Ya'akov, also died at that time in Chevron, the same is Kireat-arva, and she was buried in the cave of Makpelah which Avraham had bought from the children of Chet.

6 And the life of Riv'kah was one hundred and thirty-three years, and she died and when Ya'akov heard that his mother Riv'kah was dead he wept bitterly for his mother, and made a great mourning for her, and for Devorah her nurse beneath the oak, and he called the name of that place Allon-Bakut.

7 And Lavan the Syrian died in those days, for Elohim smote him because he transgressed the covenant that existed between him and Ya'akov.

8 And Ya'akov was a hundred years old when YHWH appeared unto him, and blessed him and called his name Israel, and Rakhel the wife of Ya'akov conceived in those days.

9 And at that time Ya'akov and all belonging to him journeyed from Beit-El to go to his father's house, to Chevron.

10 And while they were going on the way, and there was yet but a little way to come to Efrat, Rakhel bare a son and she had hard labor and she died.

11 And Ya'akov buried her in the way to Ephrath, which is Beit-Lechem, and he set a pillar upon her grave, which is there unto this day; and the days of Rakhel were forty-five years and she died.

12 And Ya'akov called the name of his son that was born to him, which Rakhel bare unto him, Benyamin, for he was born to him in the land on the right hand.

13 And it was after the death of Rakhel, that Ya'akov pitched his tent in the tent of her handmaid Bilhah.

14 And Re'uven was jealous⁶⁶ for his mother Leah on account of this, and he was filled with anger, and he rose up in his anger and went and entered the tent of Bilhah and he thence removed his father's bed.

15 At that time the portion of birthright, together with the kingly and priestly offices, was removed from the sons of Re'uven, for he had profaned his father's bed, and the birthright was given unto Yosef, the kingly office to Y'hudah, and the priesthood unto Levi, because Re'uven had defiled his father's bed.

16 And these are the generations of Ya'akov who were born to him in Padan-Aram, and the sons of Ya'akov were twelve.

17 The sons of Leah were Re'uven the firstborn, and Shim'on, Levi, Y'hudah, Yissakhar, Z'vulun, and their sister Dinah; and the sons of Rakhel were Yosef and Benyamin.

18 The sons of Zilpah, Leah's handmaid, were Gad and Asher, and the sons of Bilhah, Rakhel's handmaid, were Dan and Naftali; these are the sons of Ya'akov which were born to him in Padan-Aram.

19 And Ya'akov and his sons and all belonging to him journeyed and came to Mamre, which is Kireat-Arva, that is in Chevron, where Avraham and Yitz'chak sojourned, and Ya'akov with his sons and all belonging to him, dwelt with

⁶⁶ or "zealous"

his father in Chevron.

20 And his brother Esau and his sons, and all belonging to him went to the land of Seir and dwelt there, and had possessions in the land of Seir, and the children of Esau were fruitful and multiplied exceedingly in the land of Seir.

21 And these are the generations of Esau that were born to him in the land of Kanaan, and the sons of Esau were five.

22 And Adah bare to Esau his firstborn Elifaz, and she also bare to him Reuel, and Ah'livamah bare to him Yeush, Yaalam and Korach.

23 These are the children of Esau who were born to him in the land of Kanaan; and the sons of Elifaz the son of Esau were Teman, Omar, Tz'fo, Gatam, Kenaz and Amalek, and the sons of Reuel were Nachat, Zerach, Shamah and Mizzah.

24 And the sons of Yeush were Timna, Alvah, Yetet; and the sons of Yaalam were Elah, Pinon and Kenaz.

25 And the sons of Korach were Teman, Mivtzar, Magdiel and Iram; these are the families of the sons of Esau according to their headships in the land of Seir.

26 And these are the names of the sons of Seir the Horite, inhabitants of the land of Seir, Lotan, Shoval, Tzivon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer and Dishan, being seven sons.

27 And the children of Lotan were Chori, Hemam and their sister Timna, that is Timna who came to Ya'akov and his sons, and they would not give ear to her, and she went and became a concubine to Elifaz the son of Esau, and she bare to him Amalek.

28 And the sons of Shoval were Alvan, Manachat, Eval, Shefo, and Onam, and the sons of Tzivon were Ayah, and Anah, this was that Anah who found the Yemim in the wilderness when he fed the asses of Zibeon his father.

29 And while he was feeding his father's asses he led them to the wilderness at different times to feed them.

30 And there was a day that he brought them to one of the

deserts on the sea shore, opposite the wilderness of the people, and while he was feeding them, behold a very heavy wind⁶⁷ came from the other side of the sea and rested upon the asses that were feeding there, and they all stood still.

31 And afterward about one hundred and twenty great and terrible animals came out from the wilderness at the other side of the sea, and they all came to the place where the asses were, and they placed themselves there.

32 And those animals, from their middle downward, were in the shape of the children of men, and from their middle upward, some had the likeness of bears, and some the likeness of the apes, with tails behind them from between their shoulders reaching down to the earth, like the tails of the hoopoe⁶⁸, and these animals came and mounted and rode upon these asses, and led them away, and they went away unto this day.

33 And one of these animals approached Anah and smote him with his tail, and then fled from that place.

34 And when he saw this work he was exceedingly afraid for his life⁶⁹, and he fled and escaped to the city.

35 And he related to his fathers and brothers all that had happened to him, and many men went to seek the asses but could not find them, and Anah and his brothers went no more to that place from that day following, for they were greatly afraid of their lives⁷⁰.

36 And the children of Anah the son of Seir, were Dishon and his sister Ahlivamah, and the children of Dishon were Hemdan, Eshban, Itran and Cheran, and the children of Ezer were Bilhan, Zaavan and Akan, and the children of Dishon

⁶⁷ or “spirit”

⁶⁸ דוכיפת (Strong’s 1744) An unclean bird mentioned in Lev. 11:19 and Deut. 14:18. The LXX of Lev. 11:19 and Deut. 14:18 identifies this bird as the hoopoe, while Targum of Lev. 11:19 and Deut. 14:18 identifies it as the mountain cock.

⁶⁹ Or “soul”

⁷⁰ or “souls”

were Utz and Aran.

37 These are the families of the children of Seir the Horite, according to their headships in the land of Seir.

38 And Esau and his children dwelt in the land of Seir the Horite, the inhabitant of the land, and they had possessions in it and were fruitful and multiplied exceedingly, and Ya'akov and his children and all belonging to them, dwelt with their father Yitz'chak in the land of Kanaan, as YHWH had commanded Avraham their father.

CHAPTER 37

1 And in the one hundred and fifth year of the life of Ya'akov, that is the ninth year of Ya'akov's dwelling with his children in the land of Kanaan, he came from Padan-Aram.

2 And in those days Ya'akov journeyed with his children from Chevron, and they went and returned to the city of Shechem, they and all belonging to them, and they dwelt there, for the children of Ya'akov obtained good and fat pasture land for their cattle in the city of Shechem, the city of Shechem having then been rebuilt, and there were in it about three hundred men and women.

3 And Ya'akov and his children and all belonging to him dwelt in the part of the field which Ya'akov had bought from Chamor the father of Shechem, when he came from Padan-Aram before Shim'on and Levi had smitten the city.

4 And all those kings of the Kanaanites and Amorites that surrounded the city of Shechem, heard that the sons of Ya'akov had again come to Shechem and dwelt there.

5 And they said, Shall the sons of Ya'akov the Hebrew again come to the city and dwell therein, after that they have smitten its inhabitants and driven them out? shall they now

return and also drive out those who are dwelling in the city or slay them?

6 And all the kings of Kanaan again assembled, and they came together to make war with Ya'akov and his sons.

7 And Yashuv king of Tapnach sent also to all his neighboring kings, to Elon king of Gaash, and to Ehuri king of Shiloh, and to Piraton king of Cheser, and to Susi king of Sartan, and to Lavan king of Beit Choron, and to Shakir king of Machany'mah, saying,

8 Come up to me and assist me, and let us smite Ya'akov the Hebrew and his sons, and all belonging to him, for they are again come to Shechem to possess it and to slay its inhabitants as before.

9 And all these kings assembled together and came with all their camps, a people exceedingly plentiful like the sand upon the sea shore, and they were all opposite to Tapnach.

10 And Yashuv king of Tapnach went forth to them with all his army, and he encamped with them opposite to Tapnach without the city, and all these kings they divided into seven divisions, being seven camps against the sons of Ya'akov.

11 And they sent a declaration to Ya'akov and his son, saying, Come you all forth to us that we may have an interview together in the plain, and revenge the cause of the men of Shechem whom you slew in their city, and you will now again return to the city of Shechem and dwell therein, and slay its inhabitants as before.

12 And the sons of Ya'akov heard this and their anger was kindled exceedingly at the words of the kings of Kanaan, and ten of the sons of Ya'akov hastened and rose up, and each of them girt on his weapons of war; and there were one hundred and two of their servants with them equipped in battle array.

13 And all these men, the sons of Ya'akov with their servants, went toward these kings, and Ya'akov their father

was with them, and they all stood upon the heap of Shechem.

14 And Ya'akov prayed to YHWH for his sons, and he spread forth his hands to YHWH, and he said, O YHWH Elohim, you are El Shaddai, you are our father, you did form us and we are the works of your hands; I pray you deliver my sons through your mercy from the hand of their enemies, who are this day coming to fight with them and save them from their hand, for in your hand is power and might, to save the few from the many.

15 And give unto your servants, my sons, strength of heart and might to fight with their enemies, to subdue them, and make their enemies fall before them, and let not my sons and their servants die through the hands of the children of Kanaan.

16 But if it seems good in your eyes to take away the lives of my sons and their servants, take them in your great mercy through the hands of your messengers⁷¹, that they may not perish this day by the hands of the kings of the Amorites.

17 And when Ya'akov ceased praying to YHWH the earth shook from its place, and the sun darkened, and all these kings were terrified and a great consternation seized them.

18 And YHWH hearkened to the prayer of Ya'akov, and YHWH impressed the hearts of all the kings and their hosts with the terror and awe of the sons of Ya'akov.

19 For YHWH caused them to hear the voice of chariots, and the voice of mighty horses from the sons of Ya'akov, and the voice of a great army accompanying them.

20 And these kings were seized with great terror at the sons of Ya'akov, and while they were standing in their quarters, behold the sons of Ya'akov advanced upon them, with one hundred and twelve men, with a great and tremendous shouting.

⁷¹ or "angels"

21 And when the kings saw the sons of Ya'akov advancing toward them, they were still more panic struck, and they were inclined to retreat from before the sons of Ya'akov as at first, and not to fight with them.

22 But they did not retreat, saying, It would be a disgrace to us thus twice to retreat from before the Hebrews.

23 And the sons of Ya'akov came near and advanced against all these kings and their armies, and they saw, and behold it was a very mighty people, numerous as the sand of the sea.

24 And the sons of Ya'akov called unto YHWH and said, Help us O YHWH, help us and answer us, for we trust in you, and let us not die by the hands of these uncircumcised men, who this day have come against us.

25 And the sons of Ya'akov girt on their weapons of war, and they took in their hands each man his shield and his javelin, and they approached to battle.

26 And Y'hudah, the son of Ya'akov, ran first before his brothers, and ten of his servants with him, and he went toward these kings.

27 And Yashuv, king of Tapnach, also came forth first with his army before Y'hudah, and Y'hudah saw Yashuv and his army coming toward him, and Y'hudah's wrath was kindled, and his anger burned within him, and he approached to battle in which Y'hudah gave his soul to die.

28 And Yashuv and all his army were advancing toward Y'hudah, and he was riding upon a very strong and powerful horse, and Yashuv was a very valiant man, and covered with iron and brass from head to foot.

29 And while he was upon the horse, he shot arrows with both hands from before and behind, as was his manner in all his battles, and he never missed the place to which he aimed his arrows.

30 And when Yashuv came to fight with Y'hudah, and was darting many arrows against Y'hudah, YHWH bound the

hand of Yashuv, and all the arrows that he shot rebounded upon his own men.

31 And notwithstanding this, Yashuv kept advancing toward Y'hudah, to challenge him with the arrows, but the distance between them was about thirty cubits, and when Y'hudah saw Yashuv darting forth his arrows against him, he ran to him with his wrath-excited might.

32 And Y'hudah took up a large stone from the ground, and its weight was sixty shekels, and Y'hudah ran toward Yashuv, and with the stone struck him on his shield, that Yashuv was stunned with the blow, and fell off from his horse to the ground.

33 And the shield burst asunder out of the hand of Yashuv, and through the force of the blow sprang to the distance of about fifteen cubits, and the shield fell before the second camp.

34 And the kings that came with Yashuv saw at a distance the strength of Y'hudah, the son of Ya'akov, and what he had done to Yashuv, and they were terribly afraid of Y'hudah.

35 And they assembled near Yashuv's camp, seeing his confusion, and Y'hudah drew his sword and smote forty-two men of the camp of Yashuv, and the whole of Yashuv's camp fled before Y'hudah, and no man stood against him, and they left Yashuv and fled from him, and Yashuv was still prostrate upon the ground.

36 And Yashuv seeing that all the men of his camp had fled from him, hastened and rose up with terror against Y'hudah, and stood upon his legs opposite Y'hudah.

37 And Yashuv had a single combat with Y'hudah, placing shield toward shield, and Yashuv's men all fled, for they were greatly afraid of Y'hudah.

38 And Yashuv took his spear in his hand to strike Y'hudah upon his head, but Y'hudah had quickly placed his shield to

his head against Yashuv's spear, so that the shield of Y'hudah received the blow from Yashuv's spear, and the shield was split in too.

39 And when Y'hudah saw that his shield was split, he hastily drew his sword and smote Yashuv at his ankles, and cut off his feet that Yashuv fell upon the ground, and the spear fell from his hand.

40 And Y'hudah hastily picked up Yashuv's spear, with which he severed his head and cast it next to his feet.

41 And when all the sons of Ya'akov saw what Y'hudah had done to Yashuv, they all ran into the ranks of the other kings, and the sons of Ya'akov fought with the army of Yashuv, and the armies of all the kings that were there.

42 And the sons of Ya'akov caused fifteen thousand of their men to fall, and they smote them as if smiting at gourds, and the rest fled for their lives.

43 And Y'hudah was still standing by the body of Yashuv, and stripped Yashuv of his chain-mail.

44 And Y'hudah also took off the iron and brass that was about Yashuv, and behold nine men of the captains of Yashuv came along to fight against Y'hudah.

45 And Y'hudah hastened and took up a stone from the ground, and with it smote one of them upon the head, and his skull was fractured, and the body also fell from the horse to the ground.

46 And the eight captains that remained, seeing the strength of Y'hudah, were greatly afraid and they fled, and Y'hudah with his ten men pursued them, and they overtook them and slew them.

47 And the sons of Ya'akov were still smiting the armies of the kings, and they slew many of them, but those kings daringly kept their stand with their captains, and did not retreat from their places, and they exclaimed against those of

their armies that fled from before the sons of Ya'akov, but none would listen to them, for they were afraid of their lives lest they should die.

48 And all the sons of Ya'akov, after having smitten the armies of the kings, returned and came before Y'hudah, and Y'hudah was still slaying the eight captains of Yashuv, and stripping off their garments.

49 And Levi saw Elon, king of Gaash, advancing toward him, with his fourteen captains to smite him, but Levi did not know it for certain.

50 And Elon with his captains approached nearer, and Levi looked back and saw that battle was given him in the rear, and Levi ran with twelve of his servants, and they went and slew Elon and his captains with the edge of the sword.

CHAPTER 38

1 And Ehuri king of Shiloh came up to assist Elon, and he approached Ya'akov, when Ya'akov drew his bow that was in his hand and with an arrow struck Ehuri which caused his death.

2 And when Ehuri king of Shiloh was dead, the four remaining kings fled from their station with the rest of the captains, and they endeavored to retreat, saying, We have no more strength with the Hebrews after their having killed the three kings and their captains who were more powerful than we are.

3 And when the sons of Ya'akov saw that the remaining kings had removed from their station, they pursued them, and the sons of Ya'akov also came from the heap of Shechem from the place where he was standing, and they went after the kings and they approached them with their servants.

4 And the kings and the captains with the rest of their armies, seeing

that the sons of Ya'akov approached them, were afraid of their lives and fled till they reached the city of Khaser.

5 And the sons of Ya'akov pursued them to the gate of the city of Khaser, and they smote a great smiting among the kings and their armies, about four thousand men, and while they were smiting the army of the kings, Ya'akov was occupied with his bow confining himself to smiting the kings, and he slew them all.

6 And he slew Piraton king of Khaser at the gate of the city of Khaser, and he afterward smote Susi king of Sarton, and Lavan king of Beit-Choron, and Shakir king of Machnaymah, and he slew them all with arrows, an arrow to each of them, and they died.

7 And the sons of Ya'akov seeing that all the kings were dead and that they were broken up and retreating, continued to carry on the battle with the armies of the kings opposite the gate of Khaser, and they still smote about four hundred of their men.

8 And three men of the servants of Ya'akov fell in that battle, and when Y'hudah saw that three of his servants had died, it grieved him greatly, and his anger burned within him against the Amorites.

9 And all the men that remained of the armies of the kings were greatly afraid of their lives, and they ran and broke the gate of the walls of the city of Khaser, and they all entered the city for safety.

10 And they concealed themselves in the midst of the city of Khaser, for the city of Khaser was very large and extensive, and when all these armies had entered the city, the sons of Ya'akov ran after them to the city.

11 And four mighty men, experienced in battle, went forth from the city and stood against the entrance of the city, with

drawn swords and spears in their hands, and they placed themselves opposite the sons of Ya'akov, and would not suffer them to enter the city.

12 And Naftali ran and came between them and with his sword smote two of them, and cut off their heads at one stroke.

13 And he turned to the other two, and behold they had fled, and he pursued them, overtook them, smote them and slew them.

14 And the sons of Ya'akov came to the city and saw, and behold there was another wall to the city, and they sought for the gate of the wall and could not find it, and Y'hudah sprang upon the top of the wall, and Shim'on and Levi followed him, and they all three descended from the wall into the city.

15 And Shim'on and Levi slew all the men who ran for safety into the city, and also the inhabitants of the city with their wives and little ones, they slew with the edge of the sword, and the cries of the city ascended up to heaven.

16 And Dan and Naftali sprang upon the wall to see what caused the noise of lamentation, for the sons of Ya'akov felt anxious about their brothers, and they heard the inhabitants of the city speaking with weeping and supplications, saying, Take all that we possess in the city and go away, only do not put us to death.

17 And when Y'hudah, Shim'on, and Levi had ceased smiting the inhabitants of the city, they ascended the wall and called to Dan and Naftali, who were upon the wall, and to the rest of their brothers, and Shim'on and Levi informed them of the entrance into the city, and all the sons of Ya'akov came to fetch the spoil.

18 And the sons of Ya'akov took the spoil of the city of Khaser, the flocks and herds, and the property, and they took all that could be captured, and went away that day from the

city.

19 And on the next day the sons of Ya'akov went to Sarton, for they heard that the men of Sarton who had remained in the city were assembling to fight with them for having slain their king, and Sarton was a very high and fortified city, and it had a deep rampart surrounding the city.

20 And the pillar of the rampart was about fifty cubits and its breadth forty cubits, and there was no place for a man to enter the city on account of the rampart, and the sons of Ya'akov saw the rampart of the city, and they sought an entrance in it but could not find it.

21 For the entrance to the city was at the rear, and every man that wished to come into the city came by that road and went around the whole city, and he afterwards entered the city.

22 And the sons of Ya'akov seeing they could not find the way into the city, their anger was kindled greatly, and the inhabitants of the city seeing that the sons of Ya'akov were coming to them were greatly afraid of them, for they had heard of their strength and what they had done to Khaser.

23 And the inhabitants of the city of Sarton could not go out toward the sons of Ya'akov after having assembled in the city to fight against them, lest they might thereby get into the city, but when they saw that they were coming toward them, they were greatly afraid of them, for they had heard of their strength and what they had done to Khaser.

24 So the inhabitants of Sarton speedily took away the bridge of the road of the city, from its place, before the sons of Ya'akov came, and they brought it into the city.

25 And the sons of Ya'akov came and sought the way into the city, and could not find it and the inhabitants of the city went up to the top of the wall, and saw, and behold the sons of Ya'akov were seeking an entrance into the city.

26 And the inhabitants of the city reproached the sons of

Ya'akov from the top of the wall, and they cursed them, and the sons of Ya'akov heard the reproaches, and they were greatly incensed, and their anger burned within them.

27 And the sons of Ya'akov hearkened them, and they all rose and sprang over the rampart with the force of their strength, and through their might passed the forty cubits' breadth of the rampart.

28 And when they had passed the rampart they stood under the wall of the city, and they found all the gates of the city enclosed with iron doors.

29 And the sons of Ya'akov came near to break open the doors of the gates of the city, and the inhabitants did not let them, for from the top of the wall they were casting stones and arrows upon them.

30 And the number of the people that were upon the wall was about four hundred men, and when the sons of Ya'akov saw that the men of the city would not let them open the gates of the city, they sprang and ascended the top of the wall, and Y'udah went up first to the east part of the city.

31 And Gad and Asher went up after him to the west corner of the city, and Shim'on and Levi to the north, and Dan and Re'uven to the south.

32 And the men who were on the top of the wall, the inhabitants of the city, seeing that the sons of Ya'akov were coming up to them, they all fled from the wall, descended into the city, and concealed themselves in the midst of the city.

33 And Yissakhar and Naftali that remained under the wall approached and broke the gates of the city, and kindled a fire at the gates of the city, that the iron melted, and all the sons of Ya'akov came into the city, they and all their men, and they fought with the inhabitants of the city of Sarton, and smote them with the edge of the sword, and no man stood up before them.

34 And about two hundred men fled from the city, and they all went and hid themselves in a certain tower in the city, and Y'hudah pursued them to the tower and he broke down the tower, which fell upon the men, and they all died.

35 And the sons of Ya'akov went up the way of the roof of that tower, and they saw, and behold there was another strong and high tower at a distance in the city, and the top of it reached to heaven, and the sons of Ya'akov hastened and descended, and went with all their men to that tower, and found it filled with about three hundred men, women and little ones.

36 And the sons of Ya'akov smote a great smiting among those men in the tower and they ran away and fled from them.

37 And Shim'on and Levi pursued them, when twelve mighty and valiant men came out to them from the place where they had concealed themselves.

38 And those twelve men maintained a strong battle against Shim'on and Levi, and Shim'on and Levi could not prevail over them, and those valiant men broke the shields of Shim'on and Levi, and one of them struck at Levi's head with his sword, when Levi hastily placed his hand to his head, for he was afraid of the sword, and the sword struck Levi's hand, and it wanted but little to the hand of Levi being cut off.

39 And Levi seized the sword of the valiant man in his hand, and took it forcibly from the man, and with it he struck at the head of the powerful man, and he severed his head.

40 And eleven men approached to fight with Levi, for they saw that one of them was killed, and the sons of Ya'akov fought, but the sons of Ya'akov could not prevail over them, for those men were very powerful.

41 And the sons of Ya'akov seeing that they could not prevail over them, Shim'on gave a loud and tremendous

shriek, and the eleven powerful men were stunned at the voice of Shim'on's shrieking.

42 And Y'hudah at a distance knew the voice of Shim'on's shouting, and Naftali and Y'hudah ran with their shields to Shim'on and Levi, and found them fighting with those powerful men, unable to prevail over them as their shields were broken.

43 And Naftali saw that the shields of Shim'on and Levi were broken, and he took two shields from his servants and brought them to Shim'on and Levi.

44 And Shim'on, Levi and Y'hudah on that day fought all three against the eleven mighty men until the time of sunset, but they could not prevail over them.

45 And this was told unto Ya'akov, and he was sorely grieved, and he prayed unto YHWH, and he and Naftali his son went against these mighty men.

46 And Ya'akov approached and drew his bow, and came near unto the mighty men, and slew three of their men with the bow, and the remaining eight turned back, and behold, the war waged against them in the front and rear, and they were greatly afraid of their lives, and could not stand before the sons of Ya'akov, and they fled from before them.

47 And in their flight they met Dan and Asher coming toward them, and they suddenly fell upon them, and fought with them, and slew two of them, and Y'hudah and his brothers pursued them, and smote the remainder of them, and slew them.

48 And all the sons of Ya'akov returned and walked about the city, searching if they could find any men, and they found about twenty young men in a cave in the city, and Gad and Asher smote them all, and Dan and Naftali lighted upon the rest of the men who had fled and escaped from the second tower, and they smote them all.

49 And the sons of Ya'akov smote all the inhabitants of the

city of Sarton, but the women and little ones they left in the city and did not slay them.

50 And all the inhabitants of the city of Sarton were powerful men, one of them would pursue a thousand, and two of them would not flee from ten thousand of the rest of men.

51 And the sons of Ya'akov slew all the inhabitants of the city of Sarton with the edge of the sword, that no man stood up against them, and they left the women in the city.

52 And the sons of Ya'akov took all the spoil of the city, and captured what they desired, and they took flocks and herds and property from the city, and the sons of Ya'akov did unto Sarton and its inhabitants as they had done to Khaser and its inhabitants, and they turned and went away.

CHAPTER 39

1 And when the sons of Ya'akov went from the city of Sarton, they had gone about two hundred cubits when they met the inhabitants of Tapnach coming toward them, for they went out to fight with them, because they had smitten the king of Tapnach and all his men.

2 So all the men that remained in the city of Tapnach came out to fight with the sons of Ya'akov, and they thought to retake from them the booty and the spoil which they had captured from Khaser and Sarton.

3 And the rest of the men of Tapnach fought with the sons of Ya'akov in that place, and the sons of Ya'akov smote them, and they fled before them, and they pursued them to the city of Arbelin, and they all fell before the sons of Ya'akov.

4 And the sons of Ya'akov returned and came to Tapnach, to take away the spoil of Tapnach, and when they came to Tapnach they heard that the people of Arbelin had gone out

to meet them to save the spoil of their brothers, and the sons of Ya'akov left ten of their men in Tapnach to plunder the city, and they went out toward the people of Arbelin.

5 And the men of Arbelin went out with their wives to fight with the sons of Ya'akov, for their wives were experienced in battle, and they went out, about four hundred men and women.

6 And all the sons of Ya'akov shouted with a loud voice, and they all ran toward the inhabitants of Arbelin, and with a great and tremendous voice.

7 And the inhabitants of Arbelin heard the noise of the shouting of the sons of Ya'akov, and their roaring like the noise of lions and like the roaring of the sea and its waves.

8 And fear and terror possessed their hearts on account of the sons of Ya'akov, and they were terribly afraid of them, and they retreated and fled before them into the city, and the sons of Ya'akov pursued them to the gate of the city, and they came upon them in the city.

9 And the sons of Ya'akov fought with them in the city, and all their women were engaged in slinging against the sons of Ya'akov, and the combat was very severe among them the whole of that day till evening.

10 And the sons of Ya'akov could not prevail over them, and the sons of Ya'akov had almost perished in that battle, and the sons of Ya'akov cried unto YHWH and greatly gained strength toward evening, and the sons of Ya'akov smote all the inhabitants of Arbelin by the edge of the sword, men, women and little ones.

11 And also the remainder of the people who had fled from Sarton, the sons of Ya'akov smote them in Arbelin, and the sons of Ya'akov did unto Arbelin and Tapnach as they had done to Khaser and Sarton, and when the women saw that all the men were dead, they went upon the roofs of the city and smote the sons of Ya'akov by showering down stones

like rain.

12 And the sons of Ya'akov hastened and came into the city and seized all the women and smote them with the edge of the sword, and the sons of Ya'akov captured all the spoil and booty, flocks and herds and cattle.

13 And the sons of Ya'akov did unto Machnaymah as they had done to Tapnach, to Khaser and to Shiloh, and they turned from there and went away.

14 And on the fifth day the sons of Ya'akov heard that the people of Gaash had gathered against them to battle, because they had slain their king and their captains, for there had been fourteen captains in the city of Gaash, and the sons of Ya'akov had slain them all in the first battle.

15 And the sons of Ya'akov that day girt on their weapons of war, and they marched to battle against the inhabitants of Gaash, and in Gaash there was a strong and mighty people of the people of the Amorites, and Gaash was the strongest and best fortified city of all the cities of the Amorites, and it had three walls.

16 And the sons of Ya'akov came to Gaash and they found the gates of the city locked, and about five hundred men standing at the top of the outer-most wall, and a people numerous as the sand upon the sea shore were in ambush for the sons of Ya'akov from without the city at the rear thereof.

17 And the sons of Ya'akov approached to open the gates of the city, and while they were drawing near, behold those who were in ambush at the rear of the city came forth from their places and surrounded the sons of Ya'akov.

18 And the sons of Ya'akov were enclosed between the men of Gaash, and the battle was both to their front and rear, and all the men that were upon the wall, were casting from the wall upon them, arrows and stones.

19 And Y'hudah, seeing that the men of Gaash were getting too heavy for them, gave a most piercing and tremendous

shriek and all the men of Gaash were terrified at the voice of Y'hudah's cry, and men fell from the wall at his powerful shriek, and all those that were from without and within the city were greatly afraid of their lives.

20 And the sons of Ya'akov still approached to break the doors of the city,

when the men of Gaash threw stones and arrows upon them from the top of the wall, and made them flee from the gate.

21 And the sons of Ya'akov returned against the men of Gaash who were with them from without the city, and they smote them terribly, as striking against gourds, and they could not stand against the sons of Ya'akov, for fright and terror had seized them at the shriek of Y'hudah.

22 And the sons of Ya'akov slew all those men who were without the city, and the sons of Ya'akov still approached to effect an entrance into the city, and to fight under the city walls, but they could not for all the inhabitants of Gaash who remained in the city had surrounded the walls of Gaash in every direction, so that the sons of Ya'akov were unable to approach the city to fight with them.

23 And the sons of Ya'akov came near to one corner to fight under the wall, the inhabitants of Gaash threw arrows and stones upon them like showers of rain, and they fled from under the wall.

24 And the men of Gaash who were upon the wall, seeing that the sons of Ya'akov could not prevail over them from under the wall, reproached the sons of Ya'akov in these words, saying,

25 What is the matter with you in the battle that you cannot prevail? can you then do unto the mighty city of Gaash and its inhabitants as you did to the cities of the Amorites that were not so powerful? Surely to those weak ones among us you did those things, and slew them in the entrance of the city, for they had no strength when they were terrified at the

sound of your shouting.

26 And will you now then be able to fight in this place? Surely here you will all die, and we will avenge the cause of those cities that you have laid waste.

27 And the inhabitants of Gaash greatly reproached the sons of Ya'akov and reviled them with their gods, and continued to cast arrows and stones upon them from the wall.

28 And Y'hudah and his brothers heard the words of the inhabitants of Gaash and their anger was greatly roused, and Y'hudah was jealous of his Elohim in this matter, and he called out and said, O YHWH, help, send help to us and our brothers.

29 And he ran at a distance with all his might, with his drawn sword in his hand, and he sprang from the earth and by dint of his strength, mounted the wall, and his sword fell from his hand.

30 And Y'hudah shouted upon the wall, and all the men that were upon the wall were terrified, and some of them fell from the wall into the city and died, and those who were yet upon the wall, when they saw Y'hudah's strength, they were greatly afraid and fled for their lives into the city for safety.

31 And some were emboldened to fight with Y'hudah upon the wall, and they came near to slay him when they saw there was no sword in Y'hudah's hand, and they thought of casting him from the wall to his brothers, and twenty men of the city came up to assist them, and they surrounded Y'hudah and they all shouted over him, and approached him with drawn swords, and they terrified Y'hudah, and Y'hudah cried out to his brothers from the wall.

32 And Ya'akov and his sons drew the bow from under the wall, and smote three of the men that were upon the top of the wall, and Y'hudah continued to cry and he exclaimed, O YHWH help us, O YHWH deliver us, and he cried out with a loud voice upon the wall, and the cry was heard at a great

distance.

33 And after this cry he again repeated to shout, and all the men who surrounded Y'udah on the top of the wall were terrified, and they each threw his sword from his hand at the sound of Y'udah's shouting and his tremor, and fled.

34 And Y'udah took the swords which had fallen from their hands, and Y'udah fought with them and slew twenty of their men upon the wall.

35 And about eighty men and women still ascended the wall from the city and they all surrounded Y'udah, and YHWH impressed the fear of Y'udah in their hearts, that they were unable to approach him.

36 And Ya'akov and all who were with him drew the bow from under the wall, and they slew ten men upon the wall, and they fell below the wall, before Ya'akov and his sons.

37 And the men upon the wall seeing that twenty of their men had fallen, they still ran toward Y'udah with drawn swords, but they could not approach him for they were greatly terrified at Y'udah's strength.

38 And one of their mighty men whose name was Arod approached to strike Y'udah upon the head with his sword, when Y'udah hastily put his shield to his head, and the sword hit the shield, and it was split in two.

39 And this mighty man after he had struck Y'udah ran for his life, at the fear of Y'udah, and his feet slipped upon the wall and he fell among the sons of Ya'akov who were below the wall, and the sons of Ya'akov smote him and slew him.

40 And Y'udah's head pained him from the blow of the powerful man, and Y'udah had nearly died from it.

41 And Y'udah cried out upon the wall owing to the pain produced by the blow, when Dan heard him, and his anger burned within him, and he also rose up and went at a distance and ran and sprang from the earth and mounted the wall with his wrath-excited strength.

42 And when Dan came upon the wall near unto Y'hudah all the men upon the wall fled, who had stood against Y'hudah, and they went up to the second wall, and they threw arrows and stones upon Dan and Y'hudah from the second wall, and endeavored to drive them from the wall.

43 And the arrows and stones struck Dan and Y'hudah, and they had nearly been killed upon the wall, and wherever Dan and Y'hudah fled from the wall, they were attacked with arrows and stones from the second wall.

44 And Ya'akov and his sons were still at the entrance of the city below the first wall, and they were not able to draw their bow against the inhabitants of the city, as they could not be seen by them, being upon the second wall.

45 And Dan and Y'hudah when they could no longer bear the stones and arrows that fell upon them from the second wall, they both sprang upon the second wall near the people of the city, and when the people of the city who were upon the second wall saw that Dan and Y'hudah had come to them upon the second wall, they all cried out and descended below between the walls.

46 And Ya'akov and his sons heard the noise of the shouting from the people of the city, and they were still at the entrance of the city, and they were anxious about Dan and Y'hudah who were not seen by them, they being upon the second wall.

47 And Naftali went up with his wrath-excited might and sprang upon the first wall to see what caused the noise of shouting which they had heard in the city, and Yissakhar and Z'vulun came near to break the doors of the city, and they opened the gates of the city and came into the city.

48 And Naftali leaped from the first wall to the second, and came to assist his brothers, and the inhabitants of Gaash who were upon the wall, seeing that Naftali was the third who had come up to assist his brothers, they all fled and

descended into the city, and Ya'akov and all his sons and all their young men came into the city to them.

49 And Y'hudah and Dan and Naftali descended from the wall into the city and pursued the inhabitants of the city, and Shim'on and Levi were from without the city and knew not that the gate was opened, and they went up from there to the wall and came down to their brothers into the city.

50 And the inhabitants of the city had all descended into the city, and the sons of Ya'akov came to them in different directions, and the battle waged against them from the front and the rear, and the sons of Ya'akov smote them terribly, and slew about twenty thousand of them men and women, not one of them could stand up against the sons of Ya'akov.

51 And the blood flowed plentifully in the city, and it was like a brook of water, and the blood flowed like a brook to the outer part of the city, and reached the desert of Beit-Choron.

52 And the men of Beit-Choron saw at a distance the blood flowing from the city of Gaash, and about seventy men from among them ran to see the blood, and they came to the place where the blood was.

53 And they followed the track of the blood and came to the wall of the city of Gaash, and they saw the blood issue from the city, and they heard the voice of crying from the inhabitants of Gaash, for it ascended unto heaven, and the blood was continuing to flow abundantly like a brook of water.

54 And all the sons of Ya'akov were still smiting the inhabitants of Gaash, and were engaged in slaying them till evening, about twenty thousand men and women, and the men, the Choranim said, Surely this is the work of the Hebrews, for they are still carrying on war in all the cities of the Amorites.

55 And those men hastened and ran to Beit-Choron, and

each took his weapons of war, and they cried out to all the inhabitants of Beit-Choron, who also girt on their weapons of war to go and fight with the sons of Ya'akov.

56 And when the sons of Ya'akov had done smiting the inhabitants of Gaash, they walked about the city to strip all the slain, and coming in the innermost part of the city and farther on they met three very powerful men, and there was no sword in their hand.

57 And the sons of Ya'akov came up to the place where they were, and the powerful men ran away, and one of them had taken Z'vulun, who he saw was a young lad and of short stature, and with his might dashed him to the ground.

58 And Ya'akov ran to him with his sword and Ya'akov smote him below his loins with the sword, and cut him in two, and the body fell upon Z'vulun.

59 And the second one approached and seized Ya'akov to fell him to the ground, and Ya'akov turned to him and shouted to him, while Shim'on and Levi ran and smote him on the hips with the sword and felled him to the ground.

60 And the powerful man rose up from the ground with wrath-excited might, and Y'hudah came to him before he had gained his footing, and struck him upon the head with the sword, and his head was split and he died.

61 And the third powerful man, seeing that his companions were killed, ran from before the sons of Ya'akov, and the sons of Ya'akov pursued him in the city; and while the powerful man was fleeing he found one of the swords of the inhabitants of the city, and he picked it up and turned to the sons of Ya'akov and fought them with that sword.

62 And the powerful man ran to Y'hudah to strike him upon the head with the sword, and there was no shield in the hand of Y'hudah; and while he was aiming to strike him, Naftali hastily took his shield and put it to Y'hudah's head, and the sword of the powerful man hit the shield of Naftali and

Y'hudah escaped the sword.

63 And Shim'on and Levi ran upon the powerful man with their swords and struck at him forcibly with their swords, and the two swords entered the body of the powerful man and divided it in two, length-wise.

64 And the sons of Ya'akov smote the three mighty men at that time, together with all the inhabitants of Gaash, and the day was about to decline.

65 And the sons of Ya'akov walked about Gaash and took all the spoil of the city, even the little ones and women they did not suffer to live, and the sons of Ya'akov did unto Gaash as they had done to Sarton and Shiloh.

CHAPTER 40

1 And the sons of Ya'akov led away all the spoil of Gaash, and went out of the city by night.

2 They were going out marching toward the high-ground of Beit-Choron, and the inhabitants of Beit-Choron were going to the high-ground to meet them, and on that night the sons of Ya'akov fought with the inhabitants of Beit-Choron, on the high-ground of Beit-Choron.

3 And all the inhabitants of Beit-Choron were mighty men, one of them would not flee from before a thousand men, and they fought on that night upon the high-ground, and their shouts were heard on that night from afar, and the earth quaked at their shouting.

4 And all the sons of Ya'akov were afraid of those men, as they were not accustomed to fight in the dark, and they were greatly confounded, and the sons of Ya'akov cried unto YHWH, saying, Give help to us O YHWH, deliver us that we may not die by the hands of these uncircumcised men.

5 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of the sons of

Ya'akov, and YHWH caused great terror and confusion to seize the men of Beit-Choron, and they fought among themselves the one with the other in the darkness of night, and smote each other in great numbers.

6 And the sons of Ya'akov, knowing that YHWH had brought a spirit of perverseness among those men, and that they fought each man with his neighbor, went forth from among the bands of the men of Beit-Choron and went as far as the descent of the high-ground of Beit-Choron, and farther, and they tarried there securely with their young men on that night.

7 And all the men of Beit-Choron fought the whole night, one man with his brother, and the other with his neighbor, and they cried out in every direction upon the high-ground, and their cry was heard at a distance, and all the earth shook at their voice, for they were powerful above all the people of the earth.

8 And all the inhabitants of the cities of the Kanaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Hivites and all the kings of Kanaan, and also those who were on the other side of the Yordan, heard the noise of the shouting on that night.

9 And they said, Surely these are the battles of the Hebrews who are fighting against the seven cities, who came near unto them; and who can stand against those Hebrews?

10 And all the inhabitants of the cities of the Kanaanites, and all those who were on the other side of the Yordan, were greatly afraid of the sons of Ya'akov, for they said, Behold the same will be done to us as was done to those cities, for who can stand against their mighty strength?

11 And the cries of the Chorinites were very great on that night, and continued to increase; and they smote each other till morning, and numbers of them were killed.

12 And the morning appeared, and all the sons of Ya'akov rose up at daybreak and went up to the high-ground, and

they smote those who remained of the Chorinites in a terrible manner, and they were all killed on the high-ground.

13 And the sixth day appeared, and all the inhabitants of Kanaan saw at a distance all the people of Beit-Choron lying dead on the high-ground of Beit-Choron, and strewed about as the carcasses of lambs and goats.

14 And the sons of Ya'akov led all the spoil which they had captured from Gaash and went to Beit-Choron, and they found the city full of people like the sand of the sea, and they fought with them, and the sons of Ya'akov smote them there till evening time.

15 And the sons of Ya'akov did unto Beit-Choron as they had done to Gaash and Tapnach, and as they had done to Khaser, to Sarton and to Shiloh.

16 And the sons of Ya'akov took with them the spoil of Beit-Choron and all the spoil of the cities, and on that day they went home to Shechem.

17 And the sons of Ya'akov came home to the city of Shechem, and they remained without the city, and they then rested there from the war, and tarried there all night.

18 And all their servants together with all the spoil that they had taken from the cities, they left without the city, and they did not enter the city, for they said, Peradventure there may be yet more fighting against us, and they may come to besiege us in Shechem.

19 And Ya'akov and his sons and their servants remained on that night and the next day in the portion of the field which Ya'akov had purchased from Chamor for five shekels, and all that they had captured was with them.

20 And all the captives and all the booty which the sons of Ya'akov had captured, was in the portion of the field, immense as the sand upon the sea shore.

21 And the inhabitants of the land observed them from afar, and all the inhabitants of the land were afraid of the sons of

Ya'akov who had done this thing, for no king from the days of old had ever done the like.

22 And all the seven kings of the Kanaanites resolved to make peace with the sons of Ya'akov, for they were greatly afraid of their lives, on account of the sons of Ya'akov.

23 And on that day, being the seventh day, Yafia king of Chevron sent secretly to the king of Ai, and to the king of Givon, and to the king of Shalem, and to the king of Adulam, and to the king of Lachish, and to the king of Khaser, and to all the Kanaanitish kings who were under their subjection, saying,

24 Go up with me, and come to me that we may go to the sons of Ya'akov, and I will make peace with them, and form a treaty with them, lest all your lands be destroyed by the swords of the sons of Ya'akov, as they did to Shechem and the cities around it, as you have heard and seen.

25 And when you come to me, do not come with many men, but let every king bring his three head captains, and every captain bring three of his officers.

26 And come all of you to Chevron, and we will go together to the sons of Ya'akov, and supplicate them that they shall form a treaty of peace with us.

27 And all those kings did as the king of Chevron had sent to them, for they were all under his counsel and command, and all the kings of Kanaan assembled to go to the sons of Ya'akov, to make peace with them; and the sons of Ya'akov returned and went to the portion of the field that was in Shechem, for they did not put confidence in the kings of the land.

28 And the sons of Ya'akov returned and remained in the portion of the field ten days, and no one came to make war with them.

29 And when the sons of Ya'akov saw that there was no appearance of war, they all assembled and went to the city

of Shechem, and the sons of Ya'akov remained in Shechem.

30 And at the expiration of forty days, all the kings of the Amorites assembled from all their places and came to Chevron, to Yafia, king of Chevron.

31 And the number of kings that came to Chevron, to make peace with the sons of Ya'akov, was twenty-one kings, and the number of captains that came with them was sixty-nine, and their men were one hundred and eighty-nine, and all these kings and their men rested by Mount Chevron.

32 And the king of Chevron went out with his three captains and nine men, and these kings resolved to go to the sons of Ya'akov to make peace.

33 And they said unto the king of Chevron, Go you before us with your men, and speak for us unto the sons of Ya'akov, and we will come after you and confirm your words, and the king of Chevron did so.

34 And the sons of Ya'akov heard that all the kings of Kanaan had gathered together and rested in Chevron, and the sons of Ya'akov sent four of their servants as spies, saying, Go and spy these kings, and search and examine their men whether they are few or many, and if they are but few in number, number them all and come back.

35 And the servants of Ya'akov went secretly to these kings, and did as the sons of Ya'akov had commanded them, and on that day they came back to the sons of Ya'akov, and said unto them, We came unto those kings, and they are but few in number, and we numbered them all, and behold, they were two hundred and eighty-eight, kings and men.

36 And the sons of Ya'akov said, They are but few in number, therefore we will not all go out to them; and in the morning the sons of Ya'akov rose up and chose sixty two of their men, and ten of the sons of Ya'akov went with them; and they girt on their weapons of war, for they said, They are coming to make war with us, for they knew not that they

were coming to make peace with them.

37 And the sons of Ya'akov went with their servants to the gate of Shechem, toward those kings, and their father Ya'akov was with them.

38 And when they had come forth, behold, the king of Chevron and his three captains and nine men with him were coming along the road against the sons of Ya'akov, and the sons of Ya'akov lifted up their eyes, and saw at a distance Yafia, king of Chevron, with his captains, coming toward them, and the sons of Ya'akov took their stand at the place of the gate of Shechem, and did not proceed.

39 And the king of Chevron continued to advance, he and his captains, until he came near to the sons of Ya'akov, and he and his captains bowed down to them to the ground, and the king of Chevron sat with his captains before Ya'akov and his sons.

40 And the sons of Ya'akov said unto him, What has befallen you, O king of Chevron? why have you come to us this day? what do you require from us? and the king of Chevron said unto Ya'akov, I beseech you my lord, all the kings of the Kanaanites have this day come to make peace with you.

41 And the sons of Ya'akov heard the words of the king of Chevron, and they would not consent to his proposals, for the sons of Ya'akov had no faith in him, for they imagined that the king of Chevron had spoken deceitfully to them.

42 And the king of Chevron knew from the words of the sons of Ya'akov, that they did not believe his words, and the king of Chevron approached nearer to Ya'akov, and said unto him, I beseech you, my lord, to be assured that all these kings have come to you on peaceable terms, for they have not come with all their men, neither did they bring their weapons of war with them, for they have come to seek peace from my lord and his sons.

43 And the sons of Ya'akov answered the king of Chevron, saying, Send you to all these kings, and if you speak truth unto us, let them each come singly before us, and if they come unto us unarmed, we shall then know that they seek peace from us.

44 And Yafia, king of Chevron, sent one of his men to the kings, and they all came before the sons of Ya'akov, and bowed down to them to the ground, and these kings sat before Ya'akov and his sons, and they spoke unto them, saying,

45 We have heard all that you did unto the kings of the Amorites with your sword and exceedingly mighty arm, so that no man could stand up before you, and we were afraid of you for the sake of our lives, lest it should befall us as it did to them.

46 And we have come unto you to make a covenant of peace between us, and now therefore contract with us a covenant and a peace and truth, that you will not meddle with us, inasmuch as we have not meddled with you.

47 And the sons of Ya'akov knew that they had really come to seek peace from them, and the sons of Ya'akov listened to them, and formed a covenant of peace with them.

48 And the sons of Ya'akov swore unto them that they would not meddle with them, and all the kings of the Kanaanites swore also to them, and the sons of Ya'akov made them tributary from that day forward.

49 And after this all the captains of these kings came with their men before Ya'akov, with presents in their hands for Ya'akov and his sons, and they bowed down to him to the ground.

50 And these kings then urged the sons of Ya'akov and begged of them to return all the spoil they had captured from the seven cities of the Amorites, and the sons of Ya'akov did so, and they

returned all that they had captured, the women, the little ones, the cattle and all the spoil which they had taken, and they sent them off, and they went away each to his city.
51 And all these kings again bowed down to the sons of Ya'akov, and they sent or brought them many gifts in those days, and the sons of Ya'akov sent off these kings and their men, and they went peaceably away from them to their cities, and the sons of Ya'akov also returned to their home, to Shechem.
52 And there was peace from that day forward between the sons of Ya'akov and the kings of the Kanaanites, until the children of Israel came to inherit the land of Kanaan.

Parashat VaYeshev

CHAPTER 41

1 And at the revolution⁷² of the year the sons of Ya'akov journeyed from Shechem, and they came to Chevron, to their father Yitz'chak, and they dwelt there, but their flocks and herds they fed daily in Shechem, for there was there in those days good and fat pasture, and Ya'akov and his sons and all their house dwelt in the valley of Chevron.
2 And it was in those days, in that year, being the hundred and sixth year of the life of Ya'akov, in the tenth year of Ya'akov's coming from Padan-aram, that Leah the wife of Ya'akov died; she was fifty-one years old when she died in Chevron.
3 And Ya'akov and his sons buried her in the cave of the field of Makpelah, which is in Chevron, which Avraham had

⁷² or "equinox"

bought from the children of Chet, for the possession of a burial place.

4 And the sons of Ya'akov dwelt with their father in the valley of Chevron, and all the inhabitants of the land knew their strength and their fame went throughout the land.

5 And Yosef the son of Ya'akov, and his brother Benyamin, the sons of Rakhel, the wife of Ya'akov, were yet young in those days, and did not go out with their brothers during their battles in all the cities of the Amorites.

6 And when Yosef saw the strength of his brothers, and their greatness, he praised them and extolled them, but he ranked himself greater than them, and extolled himself above them; and Ya'akov, his father, also loved him more than any of his sons, for he was a son of his old age, and through his love toward him, he made him a coat of many colors.

7 And when Yosef saw that his father loved him more than his brothers, he continued to exalt himself above his brothers, and he brought unto his father evil reports concerning them.

8 And the sons of Ya'akov seeing the whole of Yosef's conduct toward them, and that their father loved him more than any of them, they hated him and could not speak peaceably to him all the days.

9 And Yosef was seventeen years old, and he was still magnifying himself above his brothers, and thought of raising himself above them.

10 At that time he dreamed a dream, and he came unto his brothers and told them his dream, and he said unto them, I dreamed a dream, and behold we were all binding sheaves in the field, and my sheaf rose and placed itself upon the ground and your sheaves surrounded it and bowed down to it.

11 And his brothers answered him and said unto him, What means this dream that you did dream? do you imagine in

your heart to reign or rule over us?

12 And he still came, and told the thing to his father Ya'akov, and Ya'akov kissed Yosef when he heard these words from his mouth, and Ya'akov blessed Yosef.

13 And when the sons of Ya'akov saw that their father had blessed Yosef and had kissed him, and that he loved him exceedingly, they became jealous of him and hated him the more.

14 And after this Yosef dreamed another dream and related the dream to his father in the presence of his brothers, and Yosef said unto his father and brothers, Behold I have again dreamed a dream, and behold the sun and the moon and the eleven stars bowed down to me.

15 And his father heard the words of Yosef and his dream, and seeing that his brothers hated Yosef on account of this matter, Ya'akov therefore rebuked Yosef before his brothers on account of this thing, saying, What means this dream which you have dreamed, and this magnifying thyself before your brothers who are older than you are?

16 Do you imagine in your heart that I and your mother and your eleven brothers will come and bow down to you, that you speak these things?

17 And his brothers were jealous of him on account of his words and dreams, and they continued to hate him, and Ya'akov reserved the dreams in his heart.

18 And the sons of Ya'akov went one day to feed their father's flock in Shechem, for they were still herdsmen in those days; and while the sons of Ya'akov were that day feeding in Shechem they delayed, and the time of gathering in the cattle was passed, and they had not arrived.

19 And Ya'akov saw that his sons were delayed in Shechem, and Ya'akov said in his heart, Peradventure the people of Shechem have risen up to fight against them, therefore they have delayed coming this day.

20 And Ya'akov called Yosef his son and commanded him, saying, Behold your brothers are feeding in Shechem this day, and behold they have not yet come back; go now therefore and see where they are, and bring me word back concerning the welfare of your brothers and the welfare of the flock.

21 And Ya'akov sent his son Yosef to the valley of Chevron, and Yosef came for his brothers to Shechem, and could not find them, and Yosef went about the field which was near Shechem, to see where his brothers had turned, and he missed his road in the wilderness, and knew not which way he should go.

22 And an angel of YHWH found him wandering in the road toward the field, and Yosef said unto the angel of YHWH, I seek my brothers; have you not heard where they are feeding? and the angel of YHWH said unto Yosef, I saw your brothers feeding here, and I heard them say they would go to feed in Dotan.

23 And Yosef hearkened to the voice of the angel of YHWH, and he went to his brothers in Dotan and he found them in Dotan feeding the flock.

24 And Yosef came to his brothers, and before he had come near unto them, they had resolved to slay him.

25 And Shim'on said to his brothers, Behold the man of dreams is coming unto us this day, and now therefore come and let us kill him and cast him in one of the pits that are in the wilderness, and when his father shall seek him from us, we will say an evil beast has devoured him.

26 And Re'uven heard the words of his brothers concerning Yosef, and he said unto them, You should not do this thing, for how can we look up to our father Ya'akov? Cast him into this pit to die there, but stretch not forth a hand upon him to spill his blood; and Re'uven said this in order to deliver him from their hand, to bring him back to his father.

27 And when Yosef came to his brothers he sat before them, and they rose upon him and seized him and smote him to the earth, and stripped the coat of many colors which he had on.

28 And they took him and cast him into a pit, and in the pit there was no water, but serpents and scorpions. And Yosef was afraid of the serpents and scorpions that were in the pit. And Yosef cried out with a loud voice, and YHWH hid the serpents and scorpions in the sides of the pit, and they did no harm unto Yosef.

29 And Yosef called out from the pit to his brothers, and said unto them, What have I done unto you, and in what have I sinned? why do you not fear YHWH concerning me? am I not of your bones and flesh, and is not Ya'akov your father, my father? why do you do this thing unto me this day, and how will you be able to look up to our father Ya'akov?

30 And he continued to cry out and call unto his brothers from the pit, and he said, O Y'hudah, Re'uven, Shim'on, and Levi, my brothers, lift me up from the place of darkness in which you have placed me, and look today before YHWH and before Ya'akov my father. And if I have sinned unto you, are you not the sons of Avraham, Yitz'chak, and Ya'akov? if they saw an orphan they had compassion over him, or one that was hungry, they gave him bread to eat, or one that was thirsty, they gave him water to drink, or one that was naked, they covered him with garments!

31 And how then will you withhold your pity from your brother, for I am of your flesh and bones, and if I have sinned unto you, surely you will do this on account of my father!

32 And Yosef spoke these words from the pit, and his brothers could not listen to him, nor incline their ears to the words of Yosef, and Yosef was crying and weeping in the pit.

33 And Yosef said, O that my father knew, this day, the act which my brothers have done unto me, and the words which they have this day spoken unto me.

34 And all his brothers heard his cries and weeping in the pit, and his brothers went and removed themselves from the pit, so that they might not hear the cries of Yosef and his weeping in the pit.

CHAPTER 42

1 And they went and sat on the opposite side, about the distance of a bow-shot, and they sat there to eat bread, and while they were eating, they held counsel together what was to be done with him, whether to slay him or to bring him back to his father.

2 They were holding the counsel, when they lifted up their eyes, and saw, and behold there was a company of Yishmaelites coming at a distance by the road of Gilead, going down to Egypt.

3 And Y'hudah said unto them, What gain will it be to us if we slay our brother? peradventure Elohim will require him from us; this then is the counsel proposed concerning him, which you shall do unto him: Behold this company of Yishmaelites going down to Egypt,

4 Now therefore, come let us dispose of him to them, and let not our hand be upon him, and they will lead him along with them, and he will be lost among the people of the land, and we will not put him to death with our own hands. And the proposal pleased his brothers and they did according to the word of Y'hudah.

5 And while they were discoursing about this matter, and before the company of Yishmaelites had come up to them, seven trading men of Midyan passed by them, and as they

passed they were thirsty, and they lifted up their eyes and saw the pit in which Yosef was immured, and they looked, and behold every species of bird was upon him.

6 And these Midyanite men ran to the pit to drink water, for they thought that it contained water, and on coming before the pit they heard the voice of Yosef crying and weeping in the pit, and they looked down into the pit, and they saw and behold there was a youth of comely appearance and well favored.

7 And they called unto him and said, Who are you and who brought you here, and who placed you in this pit, in the wilderness? and they all assisted to raise up Yosef and they drew him out, and brought him up from the pit, and took him and went away on their journey and passed by his brothers.

8 And these said unto them, Why do you do this, to take our servant from us and to go away? surely we placed this youth in the pit because he rebelled against us, and you come and bring him up and lead him away; now then give us back our servant.

9 And the Midyanites answered and said unto the sons of Ya'akov, Is this your servant, or does this man attend you? peradventure you are all his servants, for he is more comely and well favored than any of you, and why do you all speak falsely unto us?

10 Now therefore we will not listen to your words, nor attend to you, for we found the youth in the pit in the wilderness, and we took him; we will therefore go on.

11 And all the sons of Ya'akov approached them and rose up to them and said unto them, Give us back our servant, and why will you all die by the edge of the sword? And the Midyanites cried out against them, and they drew their swords, and approached to fight with the sons of Ya'akov.

12 And behold Shim'on rose up from his seat against them,

and sprang upon the ground and drew his sword and approached the Midyanites and he gave a terrible shout before them, so that his shouting was heard at a distance, and the earth shook at Shim'on's shouting.

13 And the Midyanites were terrified on account of Shim'on and the noise of his shouting, and they fell upon their faces, and were excessively alarmed.

14 And Shim'on said unto them, Verily I am Shim'on, the son of Ya'akov the Hebrew, who have, only with my brother, destroyed the city of Shechem and the cities of the Amorites; so shall Elohim moreover do unto me, that if all your brothers the people of Midyan, and also the kings of Kanaan, were to come with you, they could not fight against me.

15 Now therefore give us back the youth whom you have taken, lest I give your flesh to the birds of the skies and the beasts of the earth.

16 And the Midyanites were more afraid of Shim'on, and they approached the sons of Ya'akov with terror and fright, and with pathetic words, saying,

17 Surely you have said that the young man is your servant, and that he rebelled against you, and therefore you placed him in the pit; what then will you do with a servant who rebels against his lord? Now therefore sell him unto us, and we will give you all that you require for him; and YHWH was pleased to do this in order that the sons of Ya'akov should not slay their brother.

18 And the Midyanites saw that Yosef was of a comely appearance and well-favored; they desired him in their hearts and were urgent to purchase him from his brothers.

19 And the sons of Ya'akov hearkened to the Midyanites and they sold their brother Yosef to them for twenty pieces of silver, and Re'uven their brother was not with them, and the Midyanites took Yosef and continued their journey to

Gilead.

20 They were going along the road, and the Midyanites repented of what they had done, in having purchased the young man, and [one] man said to his neighbor, What is this thing that we have done, in taking this youth from the Hebrews, who is of comely appearance and well favored.

21 Perhaps this youth is stolen from the land of the Hebrews, and why then have we done this thing? and if he should be sought for and found in our hands we shall die through him.

22 Now surely hardy and powerful men have sold him to us, the strength of one of whom you saw this day; perhaps they stole him from his land with their might and with their powerful arm, and have therefore sold him to us for the small value which we gave unto them.

23 And while they were thus discoursing together, they looked, and behold the company of Yishmaelites which was coming at first, and which the sons of Ya'akov saw, was advancing toward the Midyanites, and the Midyanites said to each other, Come let us sell this youth to the company of Yishmaelites who are coming toward us, and we will take for him the little that we gave for him, and we will be delivered from his evil.

24 And they did so, and they reached the Yishmaelites, and the Midyanites sold Yosef to the Yishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver which they had given for him to his brothers.

25 And the Midyanites went on their road to Gilead, and the Yishmaelites took Yosef and they let him ride upon one of the camels, and they were leading him to Egypt.

26 And Yosef heard that the Yishmaelites were proceeding to Egypt, and Yosef lamented and wept at this thing that he was to be so far removed from the land of Kanaan, from his father, and he wept bitterly while he was riding upon the camel, and one of their men observed him, and made him go

down from the camel and walk on foot, and notwithstanding this Yosef continued to cry and weep, and he said, O my father, my father.

27 And one of the Yishmaelites rose up and smote Yosef upon the cheek, and still he continued to weep; and Yosef was fatigued in the road, and was unable to proceed on account of the bitterness of his soul, and they all smote him and afflicted him in the road, and they terrified him in order that he might cease from weeping.

28 And YHWH saw the ambition of Yosef and his trouble, and YHWH brought down upon those men darkness and confusion, and the hand of every one that smote him became withered.

29 And they said each man to his neighbor, What is this thing that Elohim has done to us in the road? and they knew not that this befell them on account of Yosef. And the men proceeded on the road, and they passed along the road of Efrat where Rakhel was buried.

30 And Yosef reached his mother's grave, and Yosef hastened and ran to his mother's grave, and fell upon the grave and wept.

31 And Yosef cried aloud upon his mother's grave, and he said, O my mother, my mother, O you who did give me birth, awake now, and rise and see your son, how he has been sold for a slave, and no one to pity him.

32 O rise and see your son, weep with me, see my tears, my eyes flowing about life.

33 Arouse my mother, arouse, awake from your sleep for me, and direct your battles against my brothers. O how have they stripped me of my coat, and sold me already twice for a slave, and separated me from my father, and there is no one to pity me.

34 Arouse and lay your cause against them before Elohim,

and see whom Elohim will justify in the judgment, and whom he will condemn.

35 Rise, O my mother, rise, awake from your sleep and see my father how his soul is with me this day, and comfort him and ease his heart.

36 And Yosef continued to speak these words, and Yosef cried aloud and wept bitterly upon his mother's grave; and he ceased speaking, and from bitterness of heart he became still as a stone upon the grave.

37 And Yosef heard a voice speaking to him from beneath the ground, which answered him with bitterness of heart, and with a voice of weeping and praying in these words:

38 My son, my son Yosef, I have heard the voice of your weeping and the voice of your lamentation; I have seen your tears; I know your troubles, my son, and it grieves me for your sake, and abundant grief is added to my grief.

39 Now therefore my son, Yosef my son, hope to YHWH, and wait for him and do not fear, for YHWH is with you, he will deliver you from all trouble.

40 Rise my son, go down unto Egypt with your lords, and do not fear, for Elohim is with you, my son. And she continued to speak like unto these words unto Yosef, and she was still.

41 And Yosef heard this, and he wondered greatly at this, and he continued to weep; and after this one of the Yishmaelites observed him crying and weeping upon the grave, and his anger was kindled against him, and he drove him from there, and he smote him and cursed him.

42 And Yosef said unto the men, May I find grace in your eyes to take me back to my father's house, and he will give you abundance of riches.

43 And they answered him, saying, Are you not a slave, and where is your father? and if you had a father you would not already twice have been sold for a slave for so little value; and their anger was still roused against him, and they

continued to smite him and to chastise him, and Yosef wept bitterly.

44 And YHWH saw Yosef's affliction, and YHWH again smote these men, and chastised them, and the YHWH caused darkness to envelope them upon the earth, and the lightning flashed and the thunder roared, and the earth shook at the voice of the thunder and of the mighty wind, and the men were terrified and knew not where they should go.

45 And the beasts and camels stood still, and they led them, but they would not go, they smote them, and they crouched upon the ground; and the men said to each other, What is this that Elohim has done to us? what are our transgressions, and what are our sins that this thing has thus befallen us?

46 And one of them answered and said unto them, Perhaps on account of the sin of afflicting this slave has this thing happened this day to us; now therefore implore him strongly to forgive us, and then we shall know on whose account this evil befalls us, and if Elohim shall have compassion over us, then we shall know that all this comes to us on account of the sin of afflicting this slave.

47 And the men did so, and they supplicated Yosef and pressed him to forgive them; and they said, We have sinned to YHWH and to you, now therefore vouchsafe to request of your Elohim that he shall put away this death from among us, for we have sinned to him.

48 And Yosef did according to their words, and YHWH hearkened to Yosef, and YHWH put away the plague which he had inflicted upon those men on account of Yosef, and the beasts rose up from the ground and they conducted them, and they went on, and the raging storm abated and the earth became tranquilized, and the men proceeded on their journey to go down to Egypt, and the men knew that this evil had befallen them on account of Yosef.

49 And they said to each other, Behold we know that it was

on account of his affliction that this evil befell us; now therefore why shall we bring this death upon our souls? Let us hold counsel what to do to this slave.

50 And one answered and said, Surely he told us to bring him back to his father; now therefore come, let us take him back and we will go to the place that he will tell us, and take from his family the price that we gave for him and we will then go away.

51 And one answered again and said, Behold this counsel is very good, but we cannot do so for the way is very far from us, and we cannot go out of our road.

52 And one more answered and said unto them, This is the counsel to be adopted, we will not swerve from it; behold we are this day going to Egypt, and when we shall have come to Egypt, we will sell him there at a high price, and we will be delivered from his evil.

53 And this thing pleased the men and they did so, and they continued their journey to Egypt with Yosef.

CHAPTER 43

1 And when the sons of Ya'akov had sold their brother Yosef to the Midyanites, their hearts were smitten on account of him, and they repented of their acts, and they sought for him to bring him back, but could not find him.

2 And Re'uven returned to the pit in which Yosef had been put, in order to lift him out, and restore him to his father, and Re'uven stood by the pit, and he heard not a word, and he called out Yosef! Yosef! and no one answered or uttered a word.

3 And Re'uven said, Yosef has died through fright, or some serpent has caused his death; and Re'uven descended into the pit, and he searched for Yosef and could not find him in

the pit, and he came out again.

4 And Re'uven rent his garments and he said, The child is not there, and how shall I reconcile my father about him if he be dead? and he went to his brothers and found them grieving on account of Yosef, and counseling together how to reconcile their father about him, and Re'uven said unto his brothers, I came to the pit and behold Yosef was not there, what then shall we say unto our father, for my father will only seek the lad from me.

5 And his brothers answered him saying, Thus and thus we did, and our hearts afterward smote us on account of this act, and we now sit to seek a pretext how we shall reconcile our father to it.

6 And Re'uven said unto them, What is this you have done to bring down the gray hairs of our father in sorrow to the grave? the thing is not good, that you have done.

7 And Re'uven sat with them, and they all rose up and swore to each other not to tell this thing unto Ya'akov, and they all said, The man who will tell this to our father or his house, or who will report this to any of the children of the land, we will all rise up against him and slay him with the sword.

8 And the sons of Ya'akov feared each other in this matter, from the youngest to the oldest, and no one spoke a word, and they concealed the thing in their hearts.

9 And they afterward sat down to determine and invent something to say unto their father Ya'akov concerning all these things.

10 And Yissakhar said unto them, Here is an advice for you if it seem good in your eyes to do this thing, take the coat which belongs to Yosef and tear it, and kill a kid of the goats and dip it in its blood.

11 And send it to our father and when he sees it he will say an evil beast has devoured him, therefore tear you his coat and behold his blood will be upon his coat, and by your

doing this we shall be free of our father's murmurings.

12 And Yissakhar's advice pleased them, and they hearkened unto him and they did according to the word of Yissakhar which he had counseled them.

13 And they hastened and took Yosef's coat and tore it, and they killed a kid of the goats and dipped the coat in the blood of the kid, and then trampled it in the dust, and they sent the coat to their father Ya'akov by the hand of Naftali, and they commanded him to say these words:

14 We had gathered in the cattle and had come as far as the road to Shechem and farther, when we found this coat upon the road in the wilderness dipped in blood and in dust; now therefore know whether it be your son's coat or not.

15 And Naftali went and he came unto his father and he gave him the coat, and he spoke unto him all the words which his brothers had commanded him.

16 And Ya'akov saw Yosef's coat and he knew it and he fell upon his face to the ground, and became as still as a stone, and he afterward rose up and cried out with a loud and weeping voice and he said, It is the coat of my son Yosef!

17 And Ya'akov hastened and sent one of his servants to his sons, who went to them and found them coming along the road with the flock.

18 And the sons of Ya'akov came to their father about evening, and behold their garments were torn and dust was upon their heads, and they found their father crying out and weeping with a loud voice.

19 And Ya'akov said unto his sons, Tell me truly what evil have you this day suddenly brought upon me? and they answered their father Ya'akov, saying, We were coming along this day after the flock had been gathered in, and we came as far as the city of Shechem by the road in the wilderness, and we found this coat filled with blood upon the ground, and we knew it and we sent unto you if you

couldst know it.

20 And Ya'akov heard the words of his sons and he cried out with a loud voice, and he said, It is the coat of my son, an evil beast has devoured him; Yosef is rent in pieces, for I sent him this day to see whether it was well with you and well with the flocks and to bring me word again from you, and he went as I commanded him, and this has happened to him this day while I thought my son was with you.

21 And the sons of Ya'akov answered and said, He did not come to us, neither have we seen him from the time of our going out from you until now.

22 And when Ya'akov heard their words he again cried out aloud, and he rose up and tore his garments, and he put sackcloth upon his loins, and he wept bitterly and he mourned and lifted up his voice in weeping and exclaimed and said these words,

23 Yosef my son, O my son Yosef, I sent you this day after the welfare of your brothers, and behold you have been torn in pieces; through my hand has this happened to my son.

24 It grieves me for you Yosef my son, it grieves me for you; how sweet were you to me during life, and now how exceedingly bitter is your death to me.

25 O that I had died today in your stead Yosef my son, for it grieves me sadly for you my son, O my son, my son. Yosef my son, where are you, and where have you been drawn? arouse, arouse from your place, and come and see my grief for you, O my son Yosef.

26 Come now and number the tears gushing from my eyes down my cheeks, and bring them up before YHWH, that his anger may turn from me.

27 O Yosef my son, how did you fall, by the hand of one by whom no one had fallen from the beginning of the world unto this day; for you have been put to death by the smiting of an enemy, inflicted with cruelty, but surely I know that

this has happened to you, on account of the multitude of my sins.

28 Arouse now and see how bitter is my trouble for you my son, although I did not rear you, nor fashion you, nor give you breath and soul, but it was Elohim who formed you and built your bones and covered them with flesh, and breathed in your nostrils the breath of life, and then he gave you unto me.

29 And surely Elohim who gave you unto me, he has taken you from me, and such then has befallen you

30 And Ya'akov continued to speak like unto these words concerning Yosef, and he wept bitterly; he fell to the ground and became still.

31 And all the sons of Ya'akov seeing their father's trouble, they repented of what they had done, and they also wept bitterly.

32 And Y'hudah rose up and lifted his father's head from the ground, and placed it upon his lap, and he wiped his father's tears from his cheeks, and Y'hudah wept an exceeding great weeping, while his father's head was reclining upon his lap, still as a stone.

33 And the sons of Ya'akov saw their father's trouble, and they lifted up their voices and continued to weep, and Ya'akov was yet lying upon the ground still as a stone.

34 And all his sons and his servants and his servant's children rose up and stood round him to comfort him, and he refused to be comforted.

35 And the whole house of Ya'akov rose up and mourned a great mourning on account of Yosef and their father's trouble, and the intelligence reached Yitz'chak, the son of Avraham, the father of Ya'akov, and he wept bitterly on account of Yosef, he and all his house, and he went from the place where he dwelt in Chevron, and his men with him, and he comforted Ya'akov his son, and he refused to be

comforted.

36 And after this, Ya'akov rose up from the ground, and his tears were running down his cheeks, and he said unto his sons, Rise up and take your swords and your bows, and go forth into the field, and seek whether you can find my son's body and bring it unto me that I may bury it.

37 Seek also, I pray you, among the beasts and hunt them, and that which shall come the first before you seize and bring it unto me, perhaps YHWH will this day pity my affliction, and prepare before you that which did tear my son in pieces, and bring it unto me, and I will avenge the cause of my son.

38 And his sons did as their father had commanded them, and they rose up early in the morning, and each took his sword and his bow in his hand, and they went forth into the field to hunt the beasts.

39 And Ya'akov was still crying aloud and weeping and walking to and fro in the house, and smiting his hands together, saying, Yosef my son, Yosef my son.

40 And the sons of Ya'akov went into the wilderness to seize the beasts, and behold a wolf came toward them, and they seized him, and brought him unto their father, and they said unto him, This is the first we have found, and we have brought him unto you as you did command us, and your son's body we could not find.

41 And Ya'akov took the beast from the hands of his sons, and he cried out with a loud and weeping voice, holding the beast in his hand, and he spoke with a bitter heart unto the beast, Why did you devour my son Yosef, and how did you have no fear of Elohi of the earth, or of my trouble for my son Yosef?

42 And you did devour my son for naught, because he committed no violence, and did thereby render me culpable on his account, therefore Elohim will require him that is

persecuted.

43 And YHWH opened the mouth of the beast in order to comfort Ya'akov with its words, and it answered Ya'akov and spoke these words unto him,

44 As Elohim lives who created us in the earth, and as your soul lives, my lord, I did not see your son, neither did I tear him to pieces, but from a distant land I also came to seek my son who went from me this day, and I know not whether he be living or dead.

45 And I came this day into the field to seek my son, and your sons found me, and seized me and increased my grief, and have this day brought me before you, and I have now spoken all my words to you.

46 And now therefore, O son of man, I am in your hands, and do unto me this day as it may seem good in your eyes, but by the life of Elohim who created me, I did not see your son, nor did I tear him to pieces, neither has the flesh of man entered my mouth all the days of my life.

47 And when Ya'akov heard the words of the beast he was greatly astonished, and sent forth the beast from his hand, and she went her way.

48 And Ya'akov was still crying aloud and weeping for Yosef day after day, and he mourned for his son many days.

CHAPTER 44

1 And the sons of Yishmael who had bought Yosef from the Midyanites, who had bought him from his brothers, went to Egypt with Yosef, and they came upon the borders of Egypt, and when they came near unto Egypt, they met four men of the sons of Medan the son of Avraham, who had gone forth from the land of Egypt on their journey.

2 And the Yishmaelites said unto them, Do you desire to

purchase this slave from us? and they said, Deliver him over to us, and they delivered Yosef over to them, and they beheld him, that he was a very comely youth and they purchased him for twenty shekels.

3 And the Yishmaelites continued their journey to Egypt and the Medanims also returned that day to Egypt, and the Medanims said to each other, Behold we have heard that Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, captain of the guard, seeks a good servant who shall stand before him to attend him, and to make him overseer over his house and all belonging to him.

4 Now therefore come let us sell him to him for what we may desire, if he be able to give unto us that which we shall require for him.

5 And these Medanims went and came to the house of Potiphar, and said unto him, We have heard that you seek a good servant to attend you, behold we have a servant that will please you, if you canst give unto us that which we may desire, and we will sell him unto you.

6 And Potiphar said, Bring him before me, and I will see him, and if he please me I will give unto you that which you may require for him.

7 And the Medanims went and brought Yosef and placed him before Potiphar, and he saw him, and he pleased him exceedingly, and Potiphar said unto them, Tell me what you require for this youth?

8 And they said, Four hundred pieces of silver we desire for him, and Potiphar said, I will give it you if you bring me the record of his sale to you, and will tell me his history, for perhaps he may be stolen, for this youth is neither a slave, nor the son of a slave, but I observe in him the appearance of a goodly and handsome person.

9 And the Medanims went and brought unto him the Yishmaelites who had sold him to them, and they told him,

saying, He is a slave and we sold him to them.

10 And Potiphar heard the words of the Yishmaelites in his giving the silver unto the Medanim, and the Medanim took the silver and went on their journey, and the Yishmaelites also returned home.

11 And Potiphar took Yosef and brought him to his house that he might serve him, and Yosef found favor in the eyes of Potiphar, and he placed confidence in him, and made him overseer over his house, and all that belonged to him he delivered over into his hand.

12 And YHWH was with Yosef and he became a prosperous man, and YHWH blessed the house of Potiphar for the sake of Yosef.

13 And Potiphar left all that he had in the hand of Yosef, and Yosef was one that caused things to come in and go out, and everything was regulated by his wish in the house of Potiphar.

14 And Yosef was eighteen years old, a youth with beautiful eyes and of comely appearance, and like unto him was not in the whole land of Egypt.

15 At that time while he was in his lord's house, going in and out of the house and attending his lord, Z'likah, his lord's wife, lifted up her eyes toward Yosef and she looked at him, and behold he was a youth comely and well favored.

16 And she coveted his beauty in her heart, and her soul was fixed upon Yosef, and she enticed him day after day, and Z'likah persuaded Yosef daily, but Yosef did not lift up his eyes to behold his lord's wife.

17 And Z'likah said unto him, How goodly are your appearance and form, truly I have looked at all the slaves, and have not seen so beautiful a slave as you are; and Yosef said unto her, Surely he who created me in my mother's womb created all mankind.

18 And she said unto him, How beautiful are your eyes, with

which you have dazzled all the inhabitants of Egypt, men and women; and he said unto her, How beautiful they are while we are alive, but should you behold them in the grave, surely you would move away from them.

19 And she said unto him, How beautiful and pleasing are all your words; take now, I pray you, the harp which is in the house, and play with your hands and let us hear your words.

20 And he said unto her, How beautiful and pleasing are all my words when I speak the praise of my Eloah and his glory; and she said unto him, How very beautiful is the hair of your head, behold the golden comb which is in the house, take it I pray you, and curl the hair of your head.

21 And he said unto her, How long will you speak these words? cease to utter these words to me, and rise and attend to your domestic affairs.

22 And she said unto him, There is no word in my house, and there is nothing to attend to but to your words and to your wish; yet notwithstanding all this, she could not bring Yosef unto her, neither did he place his eye upon her, but directed his eyes below to the ground.

23 And Z'likah desired Yosef in her heart, that he should lie with her, and at the time that Yosef was sitting in the house doing his work, Z'likah came and sat before him, and she enticed him daily with her discourse to lie with her, or ever to look at her, but Yosef would not hearken to her.

24 And she said unto him, If you will not do according to my words, I will chastise you with the punishment of death, and put an iron yoke upon you.

25 And Yosef said unto her, Surely Elohim who created man looses the fetters of prisoners, and it is he who will deliver me from your prison and from your judgment.

26 And when she could not prevail over him, to persuade him, and her soul being still fixed upon him, her desire threw her into a grievous sickness.

27 And all the women of Egypt came to visit her, and they said unto her, Why are you in this declining state? you that lack nothing; surely your husband is a great and esteemed prince in the eyes of the king, should you lack anything of what your heart desire?

28 And Z'likah answered them, saying, This day it shall be made known to you, where this disorder springs in which you see me, and she commanded her maid servants to prepare food for all the women, and she made a banquet for them, and all the women ate in the house of Z'likah.

29 And she gave them knives to peel the citrons to eat them, and she commanded that they should dress Yosef in costly garments, and that he should appear before them, and Yosef came before their eyes and all the women looked on Yosef, and could not take their eyes from off him, and they all cut their hands with the knives that they had in their hands, and all the citrons that were in their hands were filled with blood.

30 And they knew not what they had done but they continued to look at the beauty of Yosef, and did not turn their eyelids from him.

31 And Z'likah saw what they had done, and she said unto them, What is this work that you have done? behold I gave you citrons to eat and you have all cut your hands.

32 And all the women saw their hands, and behold they were full of blood, and their blood flowed down upon their garments, and they said unto her, this slave in your house has overcome us, and we could not turn our eyelids from him on account of his beauty.

33 And she said unto them, Surely this happened to you in the moment that you looked at him, and you could not contain yourselves from him; how then can I refrain when he is constantly in my house, and I see him day after day going in and out of my house? how then can I keep from

declining or even from perishing on account of this?

34 And they said unto her, the words are true, for who can see this beautiful form in the house and refrain from him, and is he not your slave and attendant in your house, and why do you not tell him that which is in your heart, and allow your soul to perish through this matter?

35 And she said unto them, I am daily endeavoring to persuade him, and he will not consent to my wishes, and I promised him everything that is good, and yet I could meet with no return from him; I am therefore in a declining state as you see.

36 And Z'likah became very ill on account of her desire toward Yosef, and she was desperately lovesick on account of him, and all the people of the house of Z'likah and her husband knew nothing of this matter, that Z'likah was ill on account of her love to Yosef.

37 And all the people of her house asked her, saying, Why are you ill and declining, and lack nothing? and she said unto them, I know not this thing which is daily increasing upon me.

38 And all the women and her friends came daily to see her, and they spoke with her, and she said unto them, This can only be through the love of Yosef; and they said unto her, Entice him and seize him secretly, perhaps he may hearken to you, and put off this death from you.

39 And Z'likah became worse from her love to Yosef, and she continued to decline, till she had scarce strength to stand.

40 And on a certain day Yosef was doing his lord's work in the house, and Z'likah came secretly and fell suddenly upon him, and Yosef rose up against her, and he was more powerful than she, and he brought her down to the ground.

41 And Z'likah wept on account of the desire of her heart toward him, and she supplicated him with weeping, and her

tears flowed down her cheeks, and she spoke unto him in a voice of supplication and in bitterness of soul, saying,

42 Have you ever heard, seen or known of so beautiful a woman as I am, or better than myself, who speak daily unto you, fall into a decline through love for you, confer all this honor upon you, and still you will not hearken to my voice?

43 And if it be through fear of your lord lest he punish you, as the king lives no harm shall come to you from your lord through this thing; now, therefore pray listen to me, and consent for the sake of the honor which I have conferred upon you, and put off this death from me, and why should I die for your sake? and she ceased to speak.

44 And Yosef answered her, saying, Refrain from me, and leave this matter to my lord; behold my lord knows not what there is with me in the house, for all that belongs to him he has delivered into my hand, and how shall I do these things in my lord's house?

45 For he has also greatly honored me in his house, and he has also made me overseer over his house, and he has exalted me, and there is no one greater in this house than I am, and my lord has refrained nothing from me, excepting you who are his wife, how then can you speak these words unto me, and how can I do this great evil and sin to Elohim and to your husband?

46 Now therefore refrain from me, and speak no more such words as these, for I will not hearken to your words. But Z'likah would not hearken to Yosef when he spoke these words unto her, but she daily enticed him to listen to her.

47 And it was after this that the brook of Egypt was filled above all its sides, and all the inhabitants of Egypt went forth, and also the king and princes went forth with timbrels and dances, for it was a great rejoicing in Egypt, and a holiday at the time of the inundation of the sea Shichor, and they went there to rejoice all the day.

48 And when the Egyptians went out to the river to rejoice, as was their custom, all the people of the house of Potiphar went with them, but Z'likah would not go with them, for she said, I am indisposed, and she remained alone in the house, and no other person was with her in the house.

49 And she rose up and ascended to her temple in the house, and dressed herself in princely garments, and she placed upon her head stones of onyx of onyx stones, inlaid with silver and gold, and she beautified her face and skin with all sorts of women's purifying liquids, and she perfumed the temple and the house with cassia and frankincense, and she spread myrrh and aloes, and she afterward sat in the entrance of the temple, in the passage of the house, through which Yosef passed to do his work, and behold Yosef came from the field, and entered the house to do his lord's work.

50 And he came to the place through which he had to pass, and he saw all the work of Z'likah, and he turned back.

51 And Z'likah saw Yosef turning back from her, and she called out to him, saying What ails you Yosef? come to your work, and behold I will make room for you until you shall have passed to your seat.

52 And Yosef returned and came to the house, and passed from thence to the place of his seat, and he sat down to do his lord's work as usual and behold Z'likah came to him and stood before him in princely garments, and the scent from her clothes was spread to a distance.

53 And she hastened and caught hold of Yosef and his garments, and she said unto him, As the king lives if you will not perform my request you shall die this day, and she hastened and stretched forth her other hand and drew a sword from beneath her garments, and she placed it upon Yosef's neck, and she said, Rise and perform my request, and if not you die this day.

54 And Yosef was afraid of her at her doing this thing, and

he rose up to flee from her, and she seized the front of his garments, and in the terror of his flight the garment which Z'likah seized was torn, and Yosef left the garment in the hand of Z'likah, and he fled and got out, for he was in fear.

55 And when Z'likah saw that Yosef's garment was torn, and that he had left it in her hand, and had fled, she was afraid of her life, lest the report should spread concerning her, and she rose up and acted with cunning, and put off the garments in which she was dressed, and she put on her other garments.

56 And she took Yosef's garment, and she laid it beside her, and she went and seated herself in the place where she had sat in her illness, before the people of her house had gone out to the river, and she called a young lad who was then in the house, and she ordered him to call the people of the house to her.

57 And when she saw them she said unto them with a loud voice and lamentation, See what a Hebrew your lord has brought to me in the house, for he came this day to lie with me.

58 For when you had gone out he came to the house, and seeing that there was no person in the house, he came unto me, and caught hold of me, with intent to lie with me.

59 And I seized his garments and tore them and called out against him with a loud voice, and when I had lifted up my voice he was afraid of his life and left his garment before me, and fled.

60 And the men of her house spoke nothing, but their wrath was very much kindled against Yosef, and they went to his lord and told him the words of his wile.

61 And Potiphar came home enraged, and his wife cried out to him, saying, What is this thing that you have done unto me in bringing a Hebrew servant into my house, for he came unto me this day to sport with me; thus did he do unto me

this day.

62 And Potiphar heard the words of his wife, and he ordered Yosef to be punished with severe stripes, and they did so to him.

63 And while they were smiting him, Yosef called out with a loud voice, and he lifted up his eyes to heaven, and he said, O YHWH Elohim, you know that I am innocent of all these things, and why shall I die this day through falsehood, by the hand of these uncircumcised wicked men, whom you know?

64 And while Potiphar's men were beating Yosef, he continued to cry out and weep, and there was a child there eleven months old, and YHWH opened the mouth of the child, and he spoke these words before Potiphar's men, who were smiting Yosef, saying,

65 What do you want of this man, and why do you do this evil unto him? my mother speak falsely and utters lies; thus was the transaction.

66 And the child told them accurately all that happened, and all the words of Z'likah to Yosef day after day did he declare unto them.

67 And all the men heard the words of the child and they wondered greatly at the child's words, and the child ceased to speak and became still.

68 And Potiphar was very much ashamed at the words of his son, and he commanded his men not to beat Yosef any more, and the men ceased beating Yosef.

69 And Potiphar took Yosef and ordered him to be brought to justice before the priests, who were judges belonging to the king, in order to judge him concerning this affair.

70 And Potiphar and Yosef came before the priests who were the king's judges, and he said unto them, Decide I pray you, what judgment is due to a servant, for thus has he done.

71 And the priests said unto Yosef, Why did you do this

thing to your lord? and Yosef answered them, saying, Not so my lords, thus was the matter; and Potiphar said unto Yosef, Surely I entrusted in your hands all that belonged to me, and I withheld nothing from you but my wife, and how could you do this evil?

72 And Yosef answered saying, Not so my lord, as YHWH lives, and as your soul lives, my lord, the word which you did hear from your wife is untrue, for thus was the affair this day.

73 A year has elapsed to me since I have been in your house; have you seen any iniquity in me, or any thing which might cause you to demand my life?

74 And the priests said unto Potiphar, Send, we pray you, and let them bring before us Yosef's torn garment, and let us see the tear in it, and if it shall be that the tear is in front of the garment, then his face must have been opposite to her and she must have caught hold of him, to come to her, and with deceit did your wife do all that she has spoken.

75 And they brought Yosef's garment before the priests who were judges, and they saw and behold the tear was in front of Yosef, and all the judging priests knew that she had pressed him, and they said, The judgment of death is not due to this slave for he has done nothing, but his judgment is, that he be placed in the prison house on account of the report, which through him has gone forth against your wife.

76 And Potiphar heard their words, and he placed him in the prison house, the place where the king's prisoners are confined, and Yosef was in the house of confinement twelve years.

77 And notwithstanding this, his lord's wife did not turn from him, and she did not cease from speaking to him day after day to hearken to her, and at the end of three months Z'likah continued going to Yosef to the house of confinement day by day, and she enticed him to hearken to

her, and

Z'likah said unto Yosef, How long will you remain in this house? but hearken now to my voice, and I will bring you out of this house.

78 And Yosef answered her, saying, It is better for me to remain in this house than to hearken to your words, to sin against Elohim; and she said unto him, If you will not perform my wish, I will pluck out your eyes, add fetters to your feet, and will deliver you into the hands of them whom you did not know before.

79 And Yosef answered her and said, Behold Elohi of all the earth is able to deliver me from all that you canst do unto me, for he opens the eyes of the blind, and looses those that are bound, and preserves all strangers who are unacquainted with the land.

80 And when Z'likah was unable to persuade Yosef to hearken to her, she left off going to entice him; and Yosef was still confined in the house of confinement. And Ya'akov the father of Yosef, and all his brothers who were in the land of Kanaan still mourned and wept in those days on account of Yosef, for Ya'akov refused to be comforted for his son Yosef, and Ya'akov cried aloud, and wept and mourned all those days.

CHAPTER 45

1 And it was at that time in that year, which is the year of Yosef's going down to Egypt after his brothers had sold him, that Re'uven the son of Ya'akov went to Timnah and took unto him for a wife Eliuram, the daughter of Avi the Kanaanite, and he came to her.

2 And Eliuram the wife of Re'uven conceived and bare him Chanoch, Palu, Chetzron and Karmi, four sons; and Shim'on

his brother took his sister Dinah for a wife, and she bare unto him Y'muel, Yamin, Ohad, Yakin and Tzochar, five sons.

3 And he afterward came to Bunah the Kanaanitish woman, the same is Bunah whom Shim'on took captive from the city of Shechem, and Bunah was before Dinah and attended upon her, and Shim'on came to her, and she bare unto him Shaul.

4 And Y'hudah went at that time to Adulam, and he came to a man of Adulami, and his name was Chirah, and Y'hudah saw there the daughter of a man from Kanaan, and her name was Alit, the daughter of Shua, and he took her, and came to her, and Alit bare unto Y'hudah, Er, Onan and Shelah; three sons.

5 And Levi and Yissakhar went to the land of the east, and they took unto themselves for wives the daughters of Yobab the son of Yoktan, the son of Ever; and Jovav the son of Yoktan had two daughters; the name of the elder was Adinah, and the name of the younger was Aridah.

6 And Levi took Adinah, and Yissakhar took Aridah, and they came to the land of Kanaan, to their father's house, and Adinah bare unto Levi, Gershon, K'hat and M'rari; three sons.

7 And Aridah bare unto Yissakhar Tola, Puvah, Yob and Shimron, four sons; and Dan went to the land of Moav and took for a wife Ef'lalat, the daughter of Chamudan the Moabite, and he brought her to the land of Kanaan.

8 And Ef'lalat was barren, she had no offspring, and Elohim afterward remembered Ef'lalat the wife of Dan, and she conceived and bare a son, and she called his name Chushim.

9 And Gad and Naftali went to Charan and took from thence the daughters of Amuram the son of Utz, the son of Nachor, for wives.

10 And these are the names of the daughters of Amuram; the

name of the elder was Merimah, and the name of the younger Utzit; and Naftali took Merimah, and Gad took Utzit; and brought them to the land of Kanaan, to their father's house.

11 And Merimah bare unto Naftali Yachzeel, Guni, Yetzer and Shillem, four sons; and Utzit bare unto Gad Zefyon, Chaggi, Shuni, Etzbon, Eri, Arodi and Areli, seven sons.

12 And Asher went forth and took Adon the daughter of Ef'lal, the son of Chadad, the son of Yishmael, for a wife, and he brought her to the land of Kanaan.

13 And Adun the wife of Asher died in those days: she had no offspring; and it was after the death of Adun that Asher went to the other side of the river and took for a wife Hadurah the daughter of Avimael, the son of Ever, the son of Shem.

14 And the girl was of a comely appearance, and a woman of sense, and she had been the wife of Malkiel the son of Elam, the son of Shem.

15 And Hadurah bare a daughter unto Malkiel, and he called her name Sarach, and Malkiel died after this, and Hadurah went and remained in her father's house.

16 And after the death of the wife at Asher he went and took Hadurah for a wife, and brought her to the land of Kanaan, and Sarach her daughter he also brought with them, and she was three years old, and the damsel was brought up in Ya'akov's house.

17 And the damsel was of a comely appearance, and she went in the sanctified ways of the children of Ya'akov; she lacked nothing, and YHWH gave her wisdom and understanding.

18 And Hadurah the wife of Asher conceived and bare unto him Yimnah, Yishvah, Yishvi and Beriah; four sons.

19 And Z'vulun went to Midyan, and took for a wife Meroshah the daughter of Molad, the son of Avida, the son

of Midyan, and brought her to the land of Kanaan.

20 And Merushah bare unto Z'vulun Sered, Elon and Yachleel; three sons.

21 And Ya'akov sent to Aram, the son of Tzova, the son of Terach, and he took for his son Benyamin Machalya the daughter of Aram, and she came to the land of Kanaan to the house of Ya'akov; and Benyamin was ten years old when he took Machalya the daughter of Aram for a wife.

22 And Machalya conceived and bare unto Benyamin Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera and Naaman, five sons; and Benyamin went afterward and took for a wife Ar'vat, the daughter of Zimran, the son of Avraham, in addition to his first wife, and he was eighteen years old; and Ar'vat bare unto Benyamin Achi, Rosh, Mupim, Chupim, and Ard; five sons.

23 And in those days Y'hudah went to the house of Shem and took Tamar the daughter of Elam, the son of Shem, for a wife for his firstborn Er.

24 And Er came to his wife Tamar, and she became his wife, and when he came to her he outwardly destroyed his seed, and his work was evil in the eyes of YHWH, and YHWH slew him.

25 And it was after the death of Er, Y'hudah's firstborn, that Y'hudah said unto Onan, go to your brother's wife and marry her as the next of kin, and raise up seed to your brother.

26 And Onan knew Tamar for a wife and he came to her, and Onan also did like unto the work of his brother, and his work was evil in the eyes of YHWH, and he slew him also.

27 And when Onan died, Y'hudah said unto Tamar, Remain in your father's house until my son Shiloh shall have grown up, and Y'hudah did no more delight in Tamar, to give her unto Shiloh, for he said, Peradventure he will also die like his brothers.

28 And Tamar rose up and went and remained in her father's

house, and Tamar was in her father's house for some time.
29 And at the revolution⁷³ of the year, Alit the wife of Y'udah died; and Y'udah was comforted for his wife, and after the death of Alit, Y'udah went up with his friend Chirah to Timnatah to shear their sheep.
30 And Tamar heard that Y'udah had gone up to Timnatah to shear the sheep, and that Shiloh was grown up, and Y'udah did not delight in her.
31 And Tamar rose up and put off the garments of her widowhood, and she put a veil upon her, and she entirely covered herself, and she went and sat in the public thoroughfare, which is upon the road to Timnatah.
32 And Y'udah passed and saw her and took her and he came to her, and she conceived by him, and at the time of being delivered, behold, there were twins in her womb, and he called the name of the first Peretz, and the name of the second Zarach.

CHAPTER 46

1 In those days Yosef was still confined in the prison house in the land of Egypt.
2 At that time the attendants of Pharaoh were standing before him, the chief of the butlers and the chief of the bakers which belonged to the king of Egypt.
3 And the butler took wine and placed it before the king to drink, and the baker placed bread before the king to eat, and the king drank of the wine and ate of the bread, he and his servants and ministers that ate at the king's table.
4 And while they were eating and drinking, the butler and the baker remained there, and Pharaoh's ministers found many flies in the wine, which the butler had brought, and

⁷³ or "equinox"

stones of lye were found in the baker's bread.

4a And Pharaoh saw the acts which they did and commanded they be cast in the prison with a guard. And they did so with them. In the tenth year Yosef came to the prison with the baker and the butler with the guard.

5 And the captain of the guard placed Yosef as an attendant on Pharaoh's officers, and Pharaoh's officers were in confinement one year.

6 And at the end of the year, they both dreamed dreams in one night, in the place of confinement where they were, and in the morning Yosef came to them to attend upon them as usual, and he saw them, and behold their countenances were dejected and sad.

7 And Yosef asked them, Why are your countenances sad and dejected this day? and they said unto him, We dreamed a dream, and there is no one to interpret it; and Yosef said unto them, Relate, I pray you, your dream unto me, and Elohim shall give you an answer of peace as you desire.

8 And the butler related his dream unto Yosef, and he said, I saw in my dream, and behold a large vine was before me, and upon that vine I saw three branches, and the vine speedily blossomed and reached a great height, and its clusters were ripened and became grapes.

9 And I took the grapes and pressed them in a cup, and placed it in Pharaoh's hand and he drank; and Yosef said unto him, The three branches that were upon the vine are three days.

10 Yet within three days, the king will order you to be brought out and he will restore you to your office, and you shall give the king his wine to drink as at first when you were his butler; but let me find favor in your eyes, that you shall remember me to Pharaoh when it will be well with you, and do kindness unto me, and get me brought forth from this prison, for I was stolen away from the land of

Kanaan and was sold for a slave in this place.

11 And also that which was told you concerning my lord's wife is false, for they placed me in this dungeon for naught; and the butler answered Yosef, saying, If the king deal well with me as at first, as you last interpreted to me, I will do all that you desire, and get you brought out of this dungeon.

12 And the baker, seeing that Yosef had accurately interpreted the butler's dream, also approached, and related the whole of his dream to Yosef.

13 And he said unto him, In my dream I saw and behold three white baskets upon my head, and I looked, and behold there were in the upper-most basket all manner of baked meats for Pharaoh, and behold the birds were eating them from off my head.

14 And Yosef said unto him, The three baskets which you did see are three days, yet within three days Pharaoh will take off your head, and hang you upon a tree, and the birds will eat your flesh from off you, as you saw in your dream.

15 In those days the queen was about to be delivered, and upon that day she bare a son unto the king of Egypt, and they proclaimed that the king had gotten his firstborn son and all Egypt together with the officers and servants of Pharaoh rejoiced greatly.

16 And upon the third day of his birth Pharaoh made a feast for his officers and servants, for the hosts of the land of Tzoar and of the land of Egypt.

17 And all Egypt and the servants of Pharaoh came to eat and drink with the king at the feast of his son, and to rejoice at the king's rejoicing.

18 And all the officers of the king and his servants were rejoicing at that time for eight days at the feast, and they made merry with all sorts of musical instruments, with timbrels and with dances in the king's house for eight days.

19 And the butler, to whom Yosef had interpreted his dream,

forgot Yosef, and he did not mention him to the king as he had promised, for this thing was from YHWH in order to punish Yosef because he had trusted in man.

20 And Yosef remained after this in the prison house two years, until he had completed twelve years.

CHAPTER 47

1 And Yitz'chak the son of Avraham was still living in those days in the land of Kanaan; he was very aged, one hundred and eighty years old, and Esau his son, the brother of Ya'akov, was in the land of Edom, and he and his sons had possessions in it among the children of Seir.

2 And Esau heard that his father's time was drawing near to die, and he and his sons and house came unto the land of Kanaan, unto his father's house, and Ya'akov and his sons went forth from the place where they dwelt in Chevron, and they all came to their father Yitz'chak, and they found Esau and his sons in the tent.

3 And Ya'akov and his sons sat before his father Yitz'chak, and Ya'akov was still mourning for his son Yosef.

4 And Yitz'chak said unto Ya'akov, Bring me here your sons and I will bless them; and Ya'akov brought his eleven children before his father Yitz'chak.

5 And Yitz'chak placed his hands upon all the sons of Ya'akov, and he took hold of them and embraced them, and kissed them one by one, and Yitz'chak blessed them on that day, and he said unto them, May YHWH Elohi of your fathers bless you and increase your seed like the stars of heaven for number.

6 And Yitz'chak also blessed the sons of Esau, saying, May Elohim cause you to be a dread and a terror to all that will behold you, and to all your enemies.

7 And Yitz'chak called Ya'akov and his sons, and they all came and sat before Yitz'chak, and Yitz'chak said unto Ya'akov, YHWH Elohi of all the earth said unto me, Unto your seed will I give this land for an inheritance if your children keep my statutes and my ways, and I will perform unto them the oath which I swore unto your father Avraham.

8 Now therefore my son, teach your children and your children's children to fear YHWH, and to go in the good way which will please YHWH your Elohim, for if you keep the ways of YHWH and his statutes YHWH will also keep unto you his covenant with Avraham, and will do well with you and your seed all the days.

9 And when Yitz'chak had finished commanding Ya'akov and his children, he expired and died, and was gathered unto his people.

10 And Ya'akov and Esau fell upon the face of their father Yitz'chak, and they wept, and Yitz'chak was one hundred and eighty years old when he died in the land of Kanaan, in Chevron, and his sons carried him to the cave of Makpelah, which Avraham had bought from the children of Chet for a possession of a burial place.

11 And all the kings of the land of Kanaan went with Ya'akov and Esau to bury Yitz'chak, and all the kings of Kanaan showed Yitz'chak great honor at his death.

12 And the sons of Ya'akov and the sons of Esau went barefooted round about, walking and lamenting until they reached Kireath-arba.

13 And Ya'akov and Esau buried their father Yitz'chak in the cave of Machpelah, which is in Kiryat-Arba in Chevron, and they buried him with very great honor, as at the funeral of kings.

14 And Ya'akov and his sons, and Esau and his sons, and all the kings of Kanaan made a great and heavy mourning, and they buried him and mourned for him many days.

15 And it came to pass after the death of Yitz'chak, he left his cattle and his possessions and all belonging to him to his sons; and Esau said unto Ya'akov, Behold I pray you, all that our father has left we will divide it in two parts, and I will have the choice, and Ya'akov said, We will do so.

16 And Ya'akov took all that Yitz'chak had left in the land of Kanaan, the cattle and the property, and he placed them in two parts before Esau and his sons, and he said unto Esau, Behold all this is before you, choose you unto thyself the half which you will take.

17 And Ya'akov said unto Esau, Hear you I pray you what I will speak unto you, saying, YHWH Elohi of heaven and earth spoke unto our fathers Avraham and Yitz'chak, saying, Unto your seed will I give this land for an inheritance forever.

18 Now therefore all that our father has left is before you, and behold all the land is before you; choose you from them what you desire.

19 If you desire the whole land take it for you and your children forever, and I will take this riches, and if you desire the riches take it unto you, and I will take this land for me and for my children to inherit it forever.

20 And N'vayot, the son of Yishmael, was then in the land with his children, and Esau went on that day and consulted with him, saying.

21 Thus has Ya'akov spoken unto me, and thus has he answered me, now give your advice and we will hear.

22 And N'vayot said, What is this that Ya'akov has spoken unto you? behold all the children of Kanaan are dwelling securely in their land, and Ya'akov says he will inherit it with his seed all the days.

23 Go now therefore and take all your father's riches and leave Ya'akov your brother in the land, as he has spoken.

24 And Esau rose up and returned to Ya'akov, and did all

that N'vayot the son of Yishmael had advised; and Esau took all the riches that Yitz'chak had left, the souls, the beasts, the cattle and the property, and all the riches; he gave nothing to his brother Ya'akov; and Ya'akov took all the land of Kanaan, from the brook of Egypt unto the river Euphrates, and he took it for an everlasting possession, and for his children and for his seed after him forever.

25 Ya'akov also took from his brother Esau the cave of Makpelah, which is in Chevron, which Avraham had bought from Efron for a possession of a burial place for him and his seed forever.

26 And Ya'akov wrote all these words in the book of purchase, and he signed it, and he testified all this with four faithful witnesses.

27 And these are the words which Ya'akov wrote in the book, saying: The land of Kanaan and all the cities of the Hittites, the Hivites, the Yevusites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, and the Gergashites, all the seven nations from the river of Egypt unto the river Euphrates.

28 And the city of Chevron Kireat-Arba, and the cave which is in it, the whole did Ya'akov buy from his brother Esau for value, for a possession and for an inheritance for his seed after him forever.

29 And Ya'akov took the book of purchase and the signature, the command and the statutes and the revealed book, and he placed them in an earthen vessel in order that they should remain for a long time⁷⁴, and he delivered them into the hands of his children.

30 Esau took all that his father had left him after his death from his brother Ya'akov, and he took all the property, from man and beast, camel and ass, ox and lamb, silver and gold, stones and bdellium, and all the riches which had belonged to Yitz'chak the son of Avraham; there was nothing left

⁷⁴ compare Jer. 32:10-14

which Esau did not take unto himself, from all that Yitz'chak had left after his death.

31 And Esau took all this, and he and his children went home to the land of Seir the Horite, away from his brother Ya'akov and his children.

32 And Esau had possessions among the children of Seir, and Esau returned not to the land of Kanaan from that day forward.

33 And the whole land of Kanaan became an inheritance to the children of Israel for an everlasting inheritance, and Esau with all his children inherited the mountain of Seir.

Parashat Miketz

CHAPTER 48

1 In those days, after the death of Yitz'chak, YHWH commanded and caused a famine upon all the earth.

2 At that time Pharaoh king of Egypt was sitting upon his throne in the land of Egypt, and lay in his bed and dreamed dreams, and Pharaoh saw in his dream that he was standing by the side of the river of Egypt.

3 And while he was standing he saw and behold seven fat fleshed and well favored kine came up out of the river.

4 And seven other kine, lean fleshed and ill favored, came up after them, and the seven ill favored ones swallowed up the well favored ones, and still their appearance was ill as at first.

5 And he awoke, and he slept again and he dreamed a second time, and he saw and behold seven ears of grain came up upon one stalk, rank and good, and seven thin ears blasted with the east wind sprang, up after them, and the thin ears swallowed up the full ones, and Pharaoh awoke out of

his dream.

6 And it came to pass in the morning the king remembered his dreams, and his spirit was sadly troubled on account of his dreams, and the king hastened and sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt, and the wise men, and they came and stood before Pharaoh.

7 And the king said unto them, I have dreamed dreams, and there is none to interpret them; and they said unto the king, relate your dreams to your servants and let us hear them.

8 And the king related his dreams to them, and they all answered and said with one voice to the king, may the king live forever; and this is the interpretation of your dreams.

9 The seven good kine which you did see denote seven daughters that will be born unto you in the latter days, and the seven kine which you saw come up after them, and swallowed them up, are for a sign that the daughters which will be born unto you will all die in the life-time of the king.

10 And that which you did see in the second dream of seven full good ears of grain coming up upon one stalk, this is their interpretation, that you will build unto thyself in the latter days seven cities throughout the land of Egypt; and that which you saw of the seven blasted ears of grain springing up after them and swallowing them up while you did behold them with your eyes, is for a sign that the cities which you will build will all be destroyed in the latter days, in the life-time of the king.

11 And when they spoke these words the king did not incline his ear to their words, neither did he fix his heart upon them, for the king knew in his wisdom that they did not give a proper interpretation of the dreams; and when they had finished speaking before the king, the king answered them, saying, What is this thing that you have spoken unto me? surely you have uttered falsehood and spoken lies; therefore now give the proper interpretation of

my dreams, that you may not die.

12 And the king commanded after this, and he sent and called again for other wise men, and they came and stood before the king, and the king related his dreams to them, and they all answered him according to the first interpretation, and the king's anger was kindled and he was very wroth, and the king said unto them, Surely you speak lies and utter falsehood in what you have said.

13 And the king commanded that a proclamation should be issued throughout the land of Egypt, saying, It is resolved by the king and his great men, that any wise man who knows and understands the interpretation of dreams, and will not come this day before the king, shall die.

14 And the man that will declare unto the king the proper interpretation of his dreams, there shall be given unto him all that he will require from the king. And all the wise men of the land of Egypt came before the king, together with all the magicians and sorcerers that were in Egypt and in Goshen, in Rameses, in Tachpanches, in Tzoan, and in all the places on the borders of Egypt, and they all stood before the king.

15 And all the nobles and the princes, and the attendants belonging to the king, came together from all the cities of Egypt, and they all sat before the king, and the king related his dreams before the wise men, and the princes, and all that sat before the king were astonished at the vision.

16 And all the wise men who were before the king were greatly divided in their interpretation of his dreams; some of them interpreted them to the king, saying, The seven good kine are seven kings, who from the king's issue will be raised over Egypt.

17 And the seven bad kine are seven princes, who will stand up against them in the latter days and destroy them; and the seven ears of grain are the seven great princes belonging to Egypt, who will fall in the hands of the seven less powerful

princes of their enemies, in the wars of our lord the king.

18 And some of them interpreted to the king in this manner, saying, The seven good kine are the strong cities of Egypt, and the seven bad kine are the seven nations of the land of Kanaan, who will come against the seven cities of Egypt in the latter days and destroy them.

19 And that which you saw in the second dream, of seven good and bad ears of grain, is a sign that the kingdom of Egypt will again return to your seed as at first.

20 And in his reign all the men of the cities of Egypt will turn against the seven cities of Kanaan who are stronger than they are, and will destroy them, and the kingdom of Egypt will return to your seed.

21 And some of them said unto the king, This is the interpretation of your dreams; the seven good kine are seven queens, whom you will take for wives in the latter days, and the seven bad kine denote that those women will all die in the lifetime of the king.

22 And the seven good and bad ears of grain which you did see in the second dream are fourteen children, and it will be in the latter days that they will stand up and fight among themselves, and seven of them will smite the seven that are more powerful.

23 And some of them said these words unto the king, saying, The seven good kine denote that seven children will be born to you, and they will slay seven of your children's children in the latter days; and the seven good ears of grain which you did see in the second dream, are those princes against whom seven other less powerful princes will fight and destroy them in the latter days, and avenge your children's cause, and the kingdom will again return to your seed.

24 And the king heard all the words of the wise men of Egypt and their interpretation of his dreams, and none of them pleased the king.

25 And the king knew in his wisdom that they did not altogether speak correctly in all these words, for this was from YHWH to frustrate the words of the wise men of Egypt, in order that Yosef might go forth from the house of confinement, and in order that he should become great in Egypt.

26 And the king saw that none among all the wise men and magicians of Egypt spoke correctly to him, and the king's wrath was kindled, and his anger burned within him.

27 And the king commanded that all the wise men and magicians should go out from before him, and they all went out from before the king with shame and disgrace.

28 And the king commanded that a proclamation be sent throughout Egypt to slay all the magicians that were in the land of Egypt, and not one of them should be allowed to live.

29 And the captains of the guards belonging to the king rose up, and each man drew his sword, and they began to smite the magicians of Egypt, and the wise men.

30 And after this Merod, chief butler to the king, came and bowed down before the king and sat before him.

31 And the butler said unto the king, May the king live forever, and his kingdom be exalted in the land.

32 you were angry with your servant in those days, now two years past, and did place me in the ward, and I was for some time in the ward, I and the chief of the bakers.

33 And there was with us a Hebrew servant belonging to the captain of the guard, his name was Yosef, for his lord had been angry with him and placed him in the house of confinement, and he attended us there.

34 And in some days after when we were in the ward, we dreamed dreams in one night, I and the chief of the bakers; we dreamed, each man according to the interpretation of his dream.

35 And we came in the morning and told them to that servant, and he interpreted to us our dreams, to each man according to his dream, did he correctly interpret.

36 And it came to pass as he interpreted to us, so was the event; there fell not to the ground any of his words.

37 And now therefore my lord and king do not slay the men of Egypt for naught; behold that slave is still confined in the house by the captain of the guard his lord, in the house of confinement.

38 If it pleases the king let him send for him that he may come before you and he will make known to you, the correct interpretation of the dream which you did dream.

39 And the king heard the words of the chief butler, and the king ordered that the wise men of Egypt should not be slain.

40 And the king ordered his servants to bring Yosef before him, and the king said unto them, Go to him and do not terrify him lest he be confused and will not know to speak properly.

41 And the servants of the king went to Yosef, and they brought him hastily out of the dungeon, and the king's servants shaved him, and he changed his prison garment and he came before the king.

42 And the king was sitting upon his royal throne in a princely dress girt around with a golden ephod, and the fine gold which was upon it sparkled, and the carbuncle and the ruby and the emerald, together with all the stones of onyx that were upon the king's head, dazzled the eye, and Yosef wondered greatly at the king.

43 And the throne upon which the king sat was covered with gold and silver, and with onyx stones, and it had seventy steps.

44 And it was their custom throughout the land of Egypt, that every man who came to speak to the king, if he was a prince or one that was estimable in the eyes of the king, he

ascended to the king's throne as far as the thirty-first step, and the king would descend to the thirty-sixth step, and speak with him.

45 If he was one of the common people, he ascended to the third step, and the king would descend to the fourth and speak to him, and their custom was, moreover, that any man who understood to speak in all the seventy languages, he ascended the seventy steps, and went up and spoke till he reached the king.

46 And any man who could not complete the seventy, he ascended as many steps as the languages which he knew to speak in.

47 And it was customary in those days in Egypt that no one should reign over them, but who understood to speak in the seventy languages.

48 And when Yosef came before the king he bowed down to the ground before the king, and he ascended to the third step, and the king sat upon the fourth step and spoke with Yosef.

49 And the king said unto Yosef, I dreamed a dream, and there is no interpreter to interpret it properly, and I commanded this day that all the magicians of Egypt and the wise men thereof, should come before me, and I related my dreams to them, and no one has properly interpreted them to me.

50 And after this I this day heard concerning you, that you are a wise man, and canst correctly interpret every dream that you hear.

51 And Yosef answered Pharaoh, saying, Let Pharaoh relate his dreams that he dreamed; surely the interpretations belong to Elohim; and Pharaoh related his dreams to Yosef, the dream of the kine, and the dream of the ears of grain, and the king left off speaking.

52 And Yosef was then clothed with the spirit of Elohim before the king, and he knew all the things that would befall

the king from that day forward, and he knew the proper interpretation of the king's dream, and he spoke before the king.

53 And Yosef found favor in the eyes of the king, and the king inclined his ears and his heart, and he heard all the words of Yosef. And Yosef said unto Pharaoh, Do not imagine that they are two dreams, for it is only one dream, for that which the Elohi of Heaven has chosen to do throughout the land he has shown to the king in his dream, and this is the proper interpretation of your dream:

54 The seven good kine and ears of grain are seven years, and the seven bad kine and ears of grain are also seven years; it is one dream.

55 Behold the seven years that are coming there will be a great plenty throughout the land, and after that the seven years of famine will follow them, a very grievous famine; and all the plenty will be forgotten from the land, and the famine will consume the inhabitants of the land.

56 The king dreamed one dream, and the dream was therefore repeated unto Pharaoh because the thing is established by Elohim, and He will shortly bring it to pass.

57 Now therefore I will give you counsel and deliver your soul and the souls of the inhabitants of the land from the evil of the famine, that you seek throughout your kingdom for a man very discreet and wise, who knows all the affairs of kingdom, and appoint him to superintend over the land of Egypt.

58 And let the man whom you place over Egypt appoint officers under him, that they gather in all the food of the good years that are coming, and let them lay up grain and deposit it in your appointed stores.

59 And let them keep that food for the seven years of famine, that it may be found for you and your people and your whole land, and that you and your land be not cut off

by the famine.

60 Let all the inhabitants of the land be also ordered that they gather in, every man the produce of his field, of all sorts of food, during the seven good years, and that they place it in their stores, that it may be found for them in the days of the famine and that they may live upon it.

61 This is the proper interpretation of your dream, and this is the counsel given to save your soul and the souls of all your subjects.

62 And the king answered and said unto Yosef, Who says and who knows that your words are correct? And he said unto the king, This shall be a sign for you respecting all my words, that they are true and that my advice is good for you.

63 Behold your wife sits this day upon the stool of delivery, and she will bear you a son and you will rejoice with him; when your child shall have gone forth from his mother's womb, your firstborn son that has been born these two years back shall die, and you will be comforted in the child that will be born unto you this day.

64 And Yosef finished speaking all these words to the king, and he bowed down to the king and he went out, and when Yosef had gone out from the king's presence, those signs which Yosef had spoken unto the king came to pass on that day.

65 And the queen bare a son on that day and the king heard the glad tidings about his son, and he rejoiced, and when the reporter had gone forth from the king's presence, the king's servants found the firstborn son of the king fallen dead upon the ground.

66 And there was great lamentation and noise in the king's house, and the king heard it, and he said, What is the noise and lamentation that I have heard in the house? and they told the king that his firstborn son had died; then the king knew that all Yosef's words that he had spoken were correct, and

the king was consoled for his son by the child that was born to him on that day as Yosef had spoken.

CHAPTER 49

1 After these things the king sent and assembled all his officers and servants, and all the princes and nobles belonging to the king, and they all came before the king.

2 And the king said unto them, Behold you have seen and heard all the words of this Hebrew man, and all the signs which he declared would come to pass, and not any of his words have fallen to the ground.

3 You know that he has given a proper interpretation of the dream, and it will surely come to pass, now therefore take counsel, and know what you will do and how the land will be delivered from the famine.

4 Seek now and see whether the like can be found, in whose heart there is wisdom and knowledge, and I will appoint him over the land.

5 For you have heard what the Hebrew man has advised concerning this to save the land therewith from the famine, and I know that the land will not be delivered from the famine but with the advice of the Hebrew man, him that advised me.

6 And they all answered the king and said, The counsel which the Hebrew has given concerning this is good; now therefore, our lord and king, behold the whole land is in your hand, do that which seems good in your eyes.

7 Him whom you choose, and whom you in your wisdom know to be wise and capable of delivering the land with his wisdom, him shall the king appoint to be under him over the land.

8 And the king said to all the officers: I have thought that

since Elohim has made known to the Hebrew man all that he has spoken, there is none so discreet and wise in the whole land as he is; if it seem good in your eyes I will place him over the land, for he will save the land with his wisdom.

9 And all the officers answered the king and said, But surely it is written in the laws of Egypt, and it should not be violated, that no man shall reign over Egypt, nor be the second to the king, but one who has knowledge in all the languages of the sons of men.

10 Now therefore our lord and king, behold this Hebrew man can only speak the Hebrew language, and how then can he be over us the second under kingdom, a man who not even knows our language?

11 Now we pray you send for him, and let him come before you, and prove him in all things, and do as you see fit.

12 And the king said, It shall be done tomorrow, and the thing that you have spoken is good; and all the officers came on that day before the king.

13 And on that night YHWH sent one of his ministering angels, and he came into the land of Egypt unto Yosef, and the angel of YHWH stood over Yosef, and behold Yosef was lying in the bed at night in his lord's house in the dungeon, for his lord had put him back into the dungeon on account of his wife.

14 And the angel roused him from his sleep, and Yosef rose up and stood upon his legs, and behold the angel of YHWH was standing opposite to him; and the angel of YHWH spoke with Yosef, and he taught him all the languages of man in that night, and he called his name Yahoseph.

15 And the angel of YHWH went from him, and Yosef returned and lay upon his bed, and Yosef was astonished at the vision which he saw.

16 And it came to pass in the morning that the king sent for all his officers and servants, and they all came and sat before

the king, and the king ordered Yosef to be brought, and the king's servants went and brought Yosef before Pharaoh.

17 And the king came forth and ascended the steps of the throne, and Yosef spoke unto the king in all languages, and Yosef went up to him and spoke unto the king until he arrived before the king in the seventieth step, and he sat before the king.

18 And the king greatly rejoiced on account of Yosef, and all the king's officers rejoiced greatly with the king when they heard all the words of Yosef.

19 And the thing seemed good in the eyes of the king and the officers, to appoint Yosef to be second to the king over the whole land of Egypt, and the king spoke to Yosef, saying,

20 Now you did give me counsel to appoint a wise man over the land of Egypt, in order with his wisdom to save the land from the famine; now therefore, since Elohim has made all this known to you, and all the words which you have spoken, there is not throughout the land a discreet and wise man like unto you.

21 And your name no more shall be called Yosef, but Tzafnat Paaneach shall be your name; you shall be second to me, and according to your word shall be all the words of my kingdom, and at your word shall my people go out and come in.

22 Also from under your hand shall my servants and officers receive their salary which is given to them monthly, and to you shall all the people of the land bow down; only in my throne will I be greater than you.

23 And the king took off his ring from his hand and put it upon the hand of Yosef, and the king dressed Yosef in a princely garment, and he put a golden crown upon his head, and he put a golden chain upon his neck.

24 And the king commanded his servants, and they made

him ride in the second chariot belonging to the king, that went opposite to the king's chariot, and he caused him to ride upon a great and strong horse from the king's horses, and to be conducted through the streets of the land of Egypt.

25 And the king commanded that all those that played upon timbrels, harps and other musical instruments should go forth with Yosef; one thousand timbrels, one thousand dancers, and one thousand harpists went after him.

26 And five thousand men, with drawn swords glittering in their hands, and they went marching and playing before Yosef, and twenty thousand of the great men of the king girt with girdles of skin covered with gold, marched at the right hand of Yosef, and twenty thousand at his left, and all the women and damsels went upon the roofs or stood in the streets playing and rejoicing at Yosef, and gazed at the appearance of Yosef and at his beauty.

27 And the king's men went before him and behind him, perfuming the road with frankincense and with cassia, and with all sorts of fine perfume, and scattered myrrh and aloes along the road, and twenty men proclaimed these words before him throughout the land in a loud voice:

28 Do you see this man whom the king has chosen to be his second? all the affairs of kingdom shall be regulated by him, and he that transgresses his orders, or that does not bow down before him to the ground, shall die, for he rebels against the king and his second.

29 And when the heralds had ceased proclaiming, all the people of Egypt bowed down to the ground before Yosef and said, May the king live, also may his second live; and all the inhabitants of Egypt bowed down along the road, and when the heralds approached them, they bowed down, and they rejoiced with all sorts of timbrels, dance and harp before Yosef.

30 And Yosef upon his horse lifted up his eyes to heaven,

and called out and said, He raises the poor man from the dust, He lifts up the needy from the dunghill. O YHWH Tz'vaot, happy is the man who trusts in you.

31 And Yosef passed throughout the land of Egypt with Pharaoh's servants and officers, and they showed him the whole land of Egypt and all the king's treasures.

32 And Yosef returned and came on that day before Pharaoh, and the king gave unto Yosef a possession in the land of Egypt, a possession of fields and vineyards, and the king gave unto Yosef three thousand talents of silver and one thousand talents of gold, and onyx stones and bdellium and many gifts.

33 And on the morrow the king commanded all the people of Egypt to bring unto Yosef offerings and gifts, and that he that violated the command of the king should die; and they made a high place in the street of the city, and they spread out garments there, and whoever brought anything to Yosef put it into the high place.

34 And all Egypt cast something into the high place, one man a golden ear-ring, and the other rings and ear-rings, and different vessels of gold and silver work, and onyx stones and bdellium did he cast upon the high place; every one gave something of what he possessed.

35 And Yosef took all these and placed them in his treasuries, and all the officers and nobles belonging to the king exalted Yosef, and they gave him many gifts, seeing that the king had chosen him to be his second.

36 And the king sent to Potifera, the son of Achiram priest of On, and he took his young daughter Asnat and gave her unto Yosef for a wife.

37 And the damsel was very comely, a virgin, one whom man had not known, and Yosef took her for a wife; and the king said unto Yosef, I am Pharaoh, and beside you none shall dare to lift up his hand or his foot to regulate my

people throughout the land of Egypt.

38 And Yosef was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh, and Yosef went out from before the king, and he became the king's second in Egypt.

39 And the king gave Yosef a hundred servants to attend him in his house, and Yosef also sent and purchased many servants and they remained in the house of Yosef.

40 Yosef then built for himself a very magnificent house like unto the houses of kings, before the court of the king's palace, and he made in the house a large temple, very elegant in appearance and convenient for his residence; three years was Yosef in erecting his house.

41 And Yosef made unto himself a very elegant throne of abundance of gold and silver, and he covered it with onyx stones and bdellium, and he made upon it the likeness of the whole land of Egypt, and the likeness of the river of Egypt that waters the whole land of Egypt; and Yosef sat securely upon his throne in his house and YHWH increased Yosef's wisdom.

42 And all the inhabitants of Egypt and Pharaoh's servants and his princes loved Yosef exceedingly, for this thing was from YHWH to Yosef.

43 And Yosef had an army that made war, going out in hosts and troops to the number of forty thousand six hundred men, capable of bearing arms to assist the king and Yosef against the enemy, besides the king's officers and his servants and inhabitants of Egypt without number.

44 And Yosef gave unto his mighty men, and to all his host, shields and spears, and helmets and coats of mail and stones for slinging.

CHAPTER 50

1 At that time the children of Tarshish came against the sons of Yishmael, and made war with them, and the children of Tarshish spoiled the Yishmaelites for a long time.

2 And the children of Yishmael were small in number in those days, and they could not prevail over the children of Tarshish, and they were sorely oppressed.

3 And the old men of the Yishmaelites sent a complete record to the king of Egypt, saying, Send I pray you unto your servants officers and hosts to help us to fight against the children of Tarshish, for we have been consuming away for a long time.

4 And Pharaoh sent Yosef with the mighty men and host which were with him, and also his mighty men from the king's house.

5 And they went to the land of Chavilah to the children of Yishmael, to assist them against the children of Tarshish, and the children of Yishmael fought with the children of Tarshish, and Yosef smote the Tarshishites and he subdued all their land, and the children of Yishmael dwell therein unto this day.

6 And when the land of Tarshish was subdued, all the Tarshishites ran away, and came on the border of their brothers the children of Yavan, and Yosef with all his mighty men and host returned to Egypt, not one man of them missing.

7 And at the revolution⁷⁵ of the year, in the second year of Yosef's reigning over Egypt, YHWH gave great plenty throughout the land for seven years as Yosef had spoken, for YHWH blessed all the produce of the earth in those days for seven years, and they ate and were greatly satisfied.

⁷⁵ or "equinox"

8 And Yosef at that time had officers under him, and they collected all the food of the good years, and heaped grain year by year, and they placed it in the treasuries of Yosef.

9 And at any time when they gathered the food Yosef commanded that they should bring the grain in the ears, and also bring with it some of the soil of the field, that it should not spoil.

10 And Yosef did according to this year by year, and he heaped up grain like the sand of the sea for abundance, for his stores were immense and could not be numbered for abundance.

11 And also all the inhabitants of Egypt gathered all sorts of food in their stores in great abundance during the seven good years, but they did not do unto it as Yosef did.

12 And it came to pass all the food which Yosef and the Egyptians had gathered during the seven years of plenty, was secured for the land in stores for the seven years of famine, for the support of all the land.

13 And the inhabitants of Egypt filled each man his store and his concealed place with grain, to be for support during the famine.

14 And Yosef placed all the food that he had gathered in all the cities of Egypt, and he closed all the stores and placed sentinels over them.

15 And Yosef's wife Asnat the daughter of Potifera bare him two sons, M'nasheh and Efrayim, and Yosef was thirty-four years old when he begat them.

16 And the lads grew up and they went in his ways and in his instructions, they did not deviate from the way which their father taught them, either to the right or left.

17 And YHWH was with the lads, and they grew up and had understanding and skill in all wisdom and in all the things of the kingdom, and all the king's officers and his great men of the inhabitants of Egypt exalted the lads, and they were

brought up among the king's children.

18 And the seven years of plenty that were throughout the land were at an end, and the seven years of famine came after them as Yosef had spoken, and the famine was throughout the land.

19 And all the people of Egypt saw that the famine had commenced in the land of Egypt, and all the people of Egypt opened their stores of grain for the famine prevailed over them.

20 And they found all the food that was in their stores, full of vermin and not fit to eat, and the famine prevailed throughout the land, and all the inhabitants of Egypt came and cried before Pharaoh, for the famine was heavy upon them.

21 And they said unto Pharaoh, Give food unto your servants, and wherefore shall we die through hunger before your eyes, even we and our little ones?

22 And Pharaoh answered them, saying, And wherefore do you cry unto me? did not Yosef command that the grain should be laid up during the seven years of plenty for the years of famine? and wherefore did you not hearken to his voice?

23 And the Egyptians answered the king, saying, As your soul lives, our lord, your servants have done all that Yosef ordered, for your servants also gathered in all the produce of their fields during the seven years of plenty and laid it in the stores unto this day.

24 And when the famine prevailed over your servants we opened our stores, and behold all our produce was filled with vermin and was not fit for food.

25 And when the king heard all that had befallen the inhabitants of Egypt, the king was greatly afraid on account of the famine, and he was much terrified; and the king answered the men of Egypt, saying, Since all this has

happened unto you, go unto Yosef, do whatever he shall say unto you, transgress not his commands.

26 And all the Egyptians went forth and came unto Yosef, and said unto him, Give unto us food, and wherefore shall we die before you through hunger? for we gathered in our produce during the seven years as you did command, and we put it in store, and thus has it befallen us.

27 And when Yosef heard all the words of the people of Egypt and what had befallen them, Yosef opened all his stores of the produce and he sold it unto the Egyptians.

28 And the famine prevailed throughout the land, and the famine was in all countries, but in the land of Egypt there was produce for sale.

29 And all the inhabitants of Egypt came unto Yosef to buy grain, for the famine prevailed over them, and all their grain was spoiled, and Yosef daily sold it to all the Egyptians.

30 And all the inhabitants of the land of Kanaan and the Philistines, and those beyond the Yordan, and the children of the east and all the cities of the lands far and near heard that there was grain in Egypt, and they all came to Egypt to buy grain, for the famine prevailed over them.

31 And Yosef opened the stores of grain and placed officers over them, and they daily stood and sold to all that came.

32 And Yosef knew that his brothers also would come to Egypt to buy grain, for the famine prevailed throughout the earth. And Yosef commanded all his people that they should cause it to be proclaimed throughout the land of Egypt, saying,

33 It is the pleasure of the king, of his second and of their great men, that any person who wishes to buy grain in Egypt shall not send his servants to Egypt to purchase, but his sons, and also any Egyptian or Kanaanite man, who shall come from any of the stores from buying grain in Egypt, and shall go and sell it throughout the land, he shall die, for no one

shall buy but for the support of his house.

34 And also any man leading two or three beasts shall die, for a man shall only lead his own beast.

35 And Yosef placed sentinels at the gates of Egypt, and commanded them, saying, Any person who may come to buy grain, suffer him not to enter until his name, and the name of his father, and the name of his father's father be written down, and whatever is written by day, send their names unto me in the evening that I may know their names.

36 And Yosef placed officers throughout the land of Egypt, and he commanded them to do all these things.

37 And Yosef did all these things, and made these statutes, in order that he might know when his brothers should come to Egypt to buy grain; and Yosef's people caused it day by day to be proclaimed in Egypt according to these words and statutes which Yosef had commanded.

38 And all the inhabitants of the east and west country, and of all the earth, heard of the statutes and regulations which Yosef had enacted in Egypt, and the inhabitants of the extreme parts of the earth came and they bought grain in Egypt day after day, and then went away.

39 And all the officers of Egypt did as Yosef had commanded, and all that came to Egypt to buy grain, the gate keepers would write their names, and their fathers' names, and daily bring them in the evening before Yosef.

CHAPTER 51

1 And Ya'akov afterward heard that there was grain in Egypt, and he called unto his sons to go to Egypt to buy grain, for upon them also did the famine prevail, and he called unto his sons, saying,

2 Behold I hear that there is grain in Egypt, and all the

people of the land go there to purchase, now therefore why will you show yourselves satisfied before all the earth? go you also down to Egypt and buy us a little grain among those that come there, that we may not die.

3 And the sons of Ya'akov hearkened to the voice of their father, and they rose up to go down to Egypt in order to buy grain among the rest that came there.

4 And Ya'akov their father commanded them, saying, When you come into the city do not enter together in one gate, on account of the inhabitants of the land.

5 And the sons of Ya'akov went forth and they went to Egypt, and the sons of Ya'akov did all as their father had commanded them, and Ya'akov did not send Benjamin, for he said, Lest an accident might befall him on the road like his brother; and ten of Ya'akov's sons went forth.

6 And while the sons of Ya'akov were going on the road, they repented of what they had done to Yosef, and they spoke to each other, saying, We know that our brother Yosef went down to Egypt, and now we will seek him where we go, and if we find him we will take him from his lord for a ransom, and if not, by force, and we will die for him.

7 And the sons of Ya'akov hearkened to this thing and strengthened themselves on account of Yosef, to deliver him from the hand of his lord, and the sons of Ya'akov went to Egypt; and when they came near to Egypt they separated from each other, and they came through ten gates of Egypt, and the gate keepers wrote their names on that day, and brought them to Yosef in the evening.

8 And Yosef read the names from the hand of the gate-keepers of the city, and he found that his brothers had entered at the ten gates of the city, and Yosef at that time commanded that it should be proclaimed throughout the land of Egypt, saying,

9 Go forth all you store guards, close all the grain stores and

let only one remain open, that those who come may purchase from it.

10 And all the officers of Yosef did so at that time, and they closed all the stores and left only one open.

11 And Yosef gave the written names of his brothers to him that was set over the open store, and he said unto him, Whosoever shall come to you to buy grain, ask his name, and when men of these names shall come before you, seize them and send them, and they did so.

12 And when the sons of Ya'akov came into the city, they joined together in the city to seek Yosef before they bought themselves grain.

13 And they went to the walls of the harlots, and they sought Yosef in the walls of the harlots for three days, for they thought that Yosef would come in the walls of the harlots, for Yosef was very comely and well favored, and the sons of Ya'akov sought Yosef for three days, and they could not find him.

14 And the man who was set over the open store sought for those names which Yosef had given him, and he did not find them.

15 And he sent to Yosef, saying, These three days have passed, and those men whose names you did give unto me have not come; and Yosef sent servants to seek the men in all Egypt, and to bring them before Yosef.

16 And Yosef's servants went and came into Egypt and could not find them, and went to Goshen and they were not there, and then went to the city of Rameses and could not find them.

17 And Yosef continued to send sixteen servants to seek his brothers, and they went and spread themselves in the four corners of the city, and four of the servants went into the house of the harlots, and they found the ten men there seeking their brother.

18 And those four men took them and brought them before him, and they bowed down to him to the ground, and Yosef was sitting upon his throne in his temple, clothed with princely garments, and upon his head was a large crown of gold, and all the mighty men were sitting around him.

19 And the sons of Ya'akov saw Yosef, and his figure and comeliness and dignity of countenance seemed wonderful in their eyes, and they again bowed down to him to the ground.

20 And Yosef saw his brothers, and he knew them, but they knew him not, for Yosef was very great in their eyes, therefore they knew him not.

21 And Yosef spoke to them, saying, From where come you? and they all answered and said, Your servants have come from the land of Kanaan to buy grain, for the famine prevails throughout the earth, and your servants heard that there was grain in Egypt, so they have come among the other comers to buy grain for their support.

22 And Yosef answered them, saying, If you have come to purchase as you say, why do you come through ten gates of the city? it can only be that you have come to spy through the land.

23 And they all together answered Yosef, and said, Not so my lord, we are right, your servants are not spies, but we have come to buy grain, for your servants are all brothers, the sons of one man in the land of Kanaan, and our father commanded us, saying, When you come to the city do not enter together at one gate on account of the inhabitants of the land.

24 And Yosef again answered them and said, That is the thing which I spoke unto you, you have come to spy through the land, therefore you all came through ten gates of the city; you have come to see the nakedness of the land.

25 Surely every one that comes to buy grain goeth his way,

and you are already three days in the land, and what do you do in the walls of harlots in which you have been for these three days? surely spies do like unto these things.

26 And they said unto Yosef, Far be it from our lord to speak thus, for we are twelve brothers, the sons of our father Ya'akov, in the land of Kanaan, the son of Yitz'chak, the son of Avraham, the Hebrew, and behold the youngest is with our father this day in the land of Kanaan, and one is not, for he was lost from us, and we thought perhaps he might be in this land, so we are seeking him throughout the land, and have come even to the houses of harlots to seek him there.

27 And Yosef said unto them, And have you then sought him throughout the earth, that there only remained Egypt for you to seek him in? And what also should your brother do in the houses of harlots, although he were in Egypt? have you not said, That you are from the sons of Yitz'chak, the son of Avraham, and what shall the sons of Ya'akov do then in the houses of harlots?

28 And they said unto him, Because we heard that Yishmaelites stole him from us, and it was told unto us that they sold him in Egypt, and your servant, our brother, is very comely and well favored, so we thought he would surely be in the houses of harlots, therefore your servants went there to seek him and give ransom for him.

29 And Yosef still answered them, saying, Surely you speak falsely and utter lies, to say of yourselves that you are the sons of Avraham; as Pharaoh lives you are spies, therefore have you come to the houses of harlots that you should not be known.

29b And they said to him again, No my lord, for as we were going all your servants there sought us, and we separated like that which he spoke to my master.

30 And Yosef said unto them, Behold if you find him, and

his lord requires of you a great price, will you give it for him? and they said, It shall be given.

31 And he said unto them, And if his lord will not consent to part with him for a great price, what will you do unto him on his account? and they answered him, saying, If he will not give him unto us we will slay him, and take our brother and go away.

32 And Yosef said unto them, That is the thing which I have spoken to you; you are spies, for you are come to slay the inhabitants of the land, for we heard that two of your brothers smote all the inhabitants of Shechem, in the land of Kanaan, on account of your sister, and you now come to do the like in Egypt on account of your brother.

33 Only hereby shall I know that you are true men; if you will send home one from among you to fetch your youngest brother from your father, and to bring him here unto me, and by doing this thing I will know that you are right.

34 And Yosef called to seventy of his mighty men, and he said unto them, Take these men and bring them into the ward.

35 And the mighty men took the ten men, they laid hold of them and put them into the ward, and they were in the ward three days.

36 And on the third day Yosef had them brought out of the ward, and he said unto them, Do this for yourselves if you be true men, so that you may live, one of your brothers shall be confined in the ward while you go and take home the grain for your house to the land of Kanaan, and fetch your youngest brother, and bring him here unto me, that I may know that you are true men when you do this thing.

37 And Yosef went out from them and came into the chamber, and wept a great weeping, for his pity was excited for them, and he washed his face, and returned to them again, and he took Shim'on from them and ordered him to

be bound, but Shim'on was not willing to be done so, for he was a very powerful man and they could not bind him.

38 And Yosef called unto his mighty men and seventy valiant men came before him with drawn swords in their hands, and the sons of Ya'akov were terrified at them.

39 And Yosef said unto them, Seize this man and confine him in prison until his brothers come to him, and Yosef's valiant men hastened and they all laid hold of Shim'on to bind him, and Shim'on gave a loud and terrible shriek and the cry was heard at a distance.

40 And all the valiant men of Yosef were terrified at the sound of the shriek, that they fell upon their faces, and they were greatly afraid and fled.

41 And also all the men that were with Yosef fled, for they were greatly afraid of their lives, and only Yosef and M'nasheh his son remained there, and M'nasheh the son of Yosef saw the strength of Shim'on, and he was exceedingly wroth.

42 And M'nasheh the son of Yosef rose up to Shim'on, and M'nasheh smote Shim'on a heavy blow with his fist against the back of his neck, and Shim'on was stilled of his rage.

43 And M'nasheh laid hold of Shim'on and he seized him violently and he bound him and brought him into the house of confinement, and all the sons of Ya'akov were astonished at the act of the youth.

44 And Shim'on said unto his brothers, None of you must say that this is the smiting of an Egyptian, but it is the smiting of the house of my father.

45 And after this Yosef ordered him to be called who was set over the storehouse, to fill their sacks with grain as much as they could carry, and to restore every man's money into his sack, and to give them provision for the road, and thus did he unto them.

46 And Yosef commanded them, saying, Take heed lest you transgress my orders to bring your brother as I have told you, and it shall be when you bring your brother here unto me, then will I know that you are true men, and you shall traffic in the land, and I will restore unto you your brother, and you shall return in peace to your father.

47 And they all answered and said, According as our lord speaks so will we do, and they bowed down to him to the ground.

48 And every man lifted his grain upon his ass, and they went out to go to the land of Kanaan to their father; and they came to the inn and Levi spread his sack to give provender to his ass, when he saw and behold his money in full weight was still in his sack.

49 And the man was greatly afraid, and he said unto his brothers, My money is restored, and lo, it is even in my sack, and the men were greatly afraid, and they said, What is this that Elohim has done unto us?

50 And they all said, And where is YHWH's kindness with our fathers, with Avraham, Yitz'chak, and Ya'akov, that YHWH has this day delivered us into the hands of the king of Egypt to contrive against us?

51 And Y'hudah said unto them, Surely we are guilty sinners before YHWH our Elohim in having sold our brother, our own flesh, and wherefore do you say, Where is YHWH's kindness with our fathers?

52 And Re'uven said unto them, Said I not unto you, do not sin against the lad, and you would not listen to me? now Elohim requires him from us, and how dare you say, Where is YHWH's kindness with our fathers, while you have sinned unto YHWH?

53 And they tarried over night in that place, and they rose up early in the morning and laded their asses with their grain, and they led them and went on and came to their father's

house in the land of Kanaan.

54 And Ya'akov and his house went out to meet his sons, and Ya'akov saw and behold their brother Shim'on was not with them, and Ya'akov said unto his sons, Where is your brother Shim'on, whom I do not see? and his sons told him all that had befallen them in Egypt.

CHAPTER 52

1 And they entered their house, and every man opened his sack and they saw and behold every man's bundle of money was there, at which they and their father were greatly terrified.

2 And Ya'akov said unto them, What is this that you have done to me? I sent your brother Yosef to inquire after your welfare and you said unto me. A wild beast did devour him.

3 And Shim'on went with you to buy food and you say the king of Egypt has confined him in prison, and you wish to take Benyamin to cause his death also, and bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave on account of Benyamin and his brother Yosef.

4 Now therefore my son shall not go down with you, for his brother is dead and he is left alone, and mischief may befall him by the way in which you go, as it befell his brother.

5 And Re'uven said unto his father, you shall slay my two sons if I do not bring your son and place him before you; and Ya'akov said unto his sons, Abide you here and do not go down to Egypt, for my son shall not go down with you to Egypt, nor die like his brother.

6 And Y'hudah said unto them, refrain you from him until the grain is finished, and he will then say, Take down your brother, when he will find his own life and the life of his house in danger from the famine.

7 And in those days the famine was sore throughout the land, and all the people of the earth went and came to Egypt to buy food, for the famine prevailed greatly among them, and the sons of Ya'akov remained in Kanaan a year and two months until their grain was finished.

8 And it came to pass after their grain was finished, the whole house of Ya'akov was pinched with hunger, and all the infants of the sons of Ya'akov came together and they approached Ya'akov, and they all surrounded him, and they said unto him, Give unto us bread, and wherefore shall we all perish through hunger in your presence?

9 Ya'akov heard the words of his son's children, and he wept a great weeping, and his pity was roused for them, and Ya'akov called unto his sons and they all came and sat before him.

10 And Ya'akov said unto them, And have you not seen how your children have been weeping over me this day, saying, Give unto us bread, and there is none? now therefore return and buy for us a little food.

11 And Y'hudah answered and said unto his father, If you will send our brother with us we will go down and buy grain for you, and if you will not send him then we will not go down, for surely the king of Egypt particularly enjoined us, saying, You shall not see my face unless your brother be with you, for the king of Egypt is a strong and mighty king, and behold if we shall go to him without our brother we shall all be put to death.

12 Do you not know and have you not heard that this king is very powerful and wise, and there is not like unto him in all the earth? behold we have seen all the kings of the earth and we have not seen one like that king, the king of Egypt; surely among all the kings of the earth there is none greater than Avimelech king of the Philistines, yet the king of Egypt is greater and mightier than he, and Avimelech can only be

compared to one of his officers.

13 My father, you have not seen his palace and his throne, and all his servants standing before him; you have not seen that king upon his throne in his pomp and royal appearance, dressed in his kingly robes with a large golden crown upon his head; you have not seen the honor and glory which Elohim has given unto him, for there is not like unto him in all the earth.

14 My father, you have not seen the wisdom, the understanding and the knowledge which Elohim has given in his heart, nor heard his sweet voice when he spoke unto us.

15 We know not, my father, who made him acquainted with our names and all that befell us, yet he asked also after you, saying, Is your father still living, and is it well with him?

16 you have not seen the affairs of the kingdom of Egypt regulated by him, without inquiring of Pharaoh his lord; you have not seen the awe and fear which he impressed upon all the land of Egyp.

17 And also when we went from him, we threatened to do unto Egypt like unto the rest of the cities of the Amorites, and we were exceedingly wroth against all his words which he spoke concerning us as spies, and now when we shall again come before him his terror will fall upon us all, and not one of us will be able to speak to him either a little or a great thing.

18 Now therefore our father, send we pray you the lad with us, and we will go down and buy you food for our support, and not die through hunger. And Ya'akov said, Why have you dealt so ill with me to tell the king you had a brother? what is this thing that you have done unto me?

19 And Y'hudah said unto Ya'akov his father, Give the lad into my care and we will rise up and go down to Egypt and buy grain, and then return, and it shall be when we return if

the lad be not with us, then let me bear your blame forever.
20 Have you seen all our infants weeping over you through hunger and there is no power in your hand to satisfy them? now let your pity be roused for them and send our brother with us and we will go.

21 And how will YHWH's kindness to our ancestors be manifested to you when you say that the king of Egypt will take away your son? as YHWH lives I will not leave him until I bring him and place him before you; but pray for us unto YHWH our Elohim, that he may do kindly with us, to cause us to be received favorably and kindly before the king of Egypt and his men, for had we not delayed surely now we had returned a second time with your son.

22 And Ya'akov said unto his sons, I trust in YHWH Elohi that he may deliver you and give you favor in the eyes of the king of Egypt, and in the eyes of all his men.

23 Now therefore rise up and go to the man, and take for him in your hands a present from what can be obtained in the land and bring it before him, and may El Shaddai give you mercy before him that he may send Benyamin and Shim'on your brothers with you.

24 And all the men rose up, and they took their brother Benyamin, and they took in their hands a large present of the best of the land, and they also took a double portion of silver.

25 And Ya'akov strictly commanded his sons concerning Benyamin, Saying, Take heed of him in the way in which you are going, and do not separate yourselves from him in the road, neither in Egypt.

26 And Ya'akov rose up from his sons and spread forth his hands and he prayed unto YHWH on account of his sons, saying, YHWH Elohi of heaven and Elohi of earth, remember your covenant with our father Avraham, remember it with my father Yitz'chak and deal kindly with

my sons and deliver them not into the hands of the king of Egypt; do it I pray you Elohi for the sake of your mercies and redeem all my children and rescue them from Egyptian power, and send them their two brothers.

27 And all the wives of the sons of Ya'akov and their children lifted up their eyes to heaven and they all wept unto YHWH, and cried unto him to deliver their fathers from the hand of the king of Egypt.

28 And Ya'akov wrote a record to the king of Egypt and gave it into the hand of Y'hudah and into the hands of his sons for the king of Egypt, saying,

29 From your servant Ya'akov, son of Yitz'chak, son of Avraham the Hebrew, the prince of Elohim, to the powerful and wise king, the revealer of secrets, king of Egypt, Shalom.

30 Be it known to my lord the king of Egypt, the famine was sore upon us in the land of Kanaan, and I sent my sons to you to buy us a little food from you for our support.

31 For my sons surrounded me and I being very old cannot see with my eyes, for my eyes have become very heavy through age, as well as with daily weeping for my son, for Yosef who was lost from before me, and I commanded my sons that they should not enter the gates of the city when they came to Egypt, on account of the inhabitants of the land.

32 And I also commanded them to go about Egypt to seek for my son Yosef, perhaps they might find him there, and they did so, and you did consider them as spies of the land.

33 Have we not heard concerning you that you did interpret Pharaoh's dream and did speak truly unto him? how then do you not know in your wisdom whether my sons are spies or not?

34 Now therefore, my lord and king, behold I have sent my son before you, as you did speak unto my sons; I beseech

you to put your eyes upon him until he is returned to me in peace with his brothers.

35 For do you not know, or have you not heard that which our Elohim did unto Pharaoh when he took my mother Sarah, and what he did unto Avimelech king of the Philistines on account of her, and also what our father Avraham did unto the nine kings of Elam, how he smote them all with a few men that were with him?

36 And also what my two sons Shim'on and Levi did unto the eight cities of the Amorites, how they destroyed them on account of their sister Dinah?

37 And also on account of their brother Benyamin they consoled themselves for the loss of his brother Yosef; what will they then do for him when they see the hand of any people prevailing over them, for his sake?

38 Do you not know, O king of Egypt, that the power of our Elohim is with us, and that also our Elohim ever hears our prayers and forsakes us not all the days as YHWH lives?

39 And when my sons told me of your dealings with them, I called not unto YHWH on account of you, for then you would have perished with your men before my son Benyamin came before you, but I thought that as Shim'on my son was in your house, perhaps you might deal kindly with him, therefore I did not this thing unto you.

40 And now therefore behold Benyamin my son comes unto you with my sons, take heed of him and put your eyes upon him, and then will Elohim place his eyes over you and throughout your kingdom.

41 Now I have told you all that is in my heart, and behold my sons are coming to you with their brother, examine the face of all the earth for their sake and send them back in peace with their brothers.

42 And Ya'akov gave the record to his sons into the care of Y'hudah to give it unto the king of Egypt.

CHAPTER 53

1 And the sons of Ya'akov rose up and took Benjamin and the whole of the presents, and they went and came to Egypt and they stood before Yosef.

2 And Yosef beheld his brother Benjamin with them and he saluted them, and these men came to Yosef's house.

3 And Yosef commanded the superintendent of his house to give to his brothers to eat, and he did so unto them.

4 And at noon time Yosef sent for the men to come before him with Benjamin, and the men told the superintendent of Yosef's house concerning the silver that was returned in their sacks, and he said unto them, It will be well with you, fear not, and he brought their brother Shim'on unto them.

5 And Shim'on said unto his brothers, The lord of the Egyptians has acted very kindly unto me, he did not keep me bound, as you saw with your eyes, for when you went out from the city he let me free and dealt kindly with me in his house.

6 And Y'hudah took Benjamin by the hand, and they came before Yosef, and they bowed down to him to the ground.

7 And the men gave the present unto Yosef and they all sat before him, and Yosef said unto them, Is it well with you, is it well with your children, is it well with your aged father? and they said, It is well, and Y'hudah took the record which Ya'akov had sent and gave it into the hand of Yosef.

8 And Yosef read the record and knew his father's writing, and he wished to weep and he went into an inner room and he wept a great weeping; and he went out.

9 And he lifted up his eyes and beheld his brother Benjamin, and he said, Is this your brother of whom you spoke unto me? And Benjamin approached Yosef, and

Yosef placed his hand upon his head and he said unto him, May Elohim be gracious unto you my son.

10 And when Yosef saw his brother, the son of his mother, he again wished to weep, and he entered the chamber, and he wept there, and he washed his face, and went out and refrained from weeping, and he said, Prepare food.

11 And Yosef had a cup from which he drank, and it was of silver beautifully inlaid with onyx stones and bdellium, and Yosef struck the cup in the eyes of his brothers while they were sitting to eat with him.

12 And Yosef said unto the men, I know by this cup that Re'uben the firstborn, Shim'on and Levi and Y'hudah, Yissakhar and Z'vulun are children from one mother, seat yourselves to eat according to your births.

13 And he also placed the others according to their births, and he said, I know that this your youngest brother has no brother, and I, like him, have no brother, he shall therefore sit down to eat with me.

14 And Benjamin went up before Yosef and sat upon the throne, and the men beheld the acts of Yosef, and they were astonished at them; and the men ate and drank at that time with Yosef, and he then gave presents unto them, and Yosef gave one gift unto Benjamin, and M'nasheh and Efrayim saw the acts of their father, and they also gave presents unto him, and Asnat gave him one present, and they were five presents in the hand of Benjamin.

15 And Yosef brought them out wine to drink, and they would not drink, and they said, From the day on which Yosef was lost we have not drunk wine, nor eaten any delicacies.

16 And Yosef swore unto them, and he pressed them hard, and they drank plentifully with him on that day, and Yosef afterward turned to his brother Benjamin to speak with him, and Benjamin was still sitting upon the throne before Yosef.

17 And Yosef said unto him, Have you begotten any children? and he said, Your servant has ten sons, and these are their names, Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Achi, and Rosh, Mupim, Chupim, and Ard, and I called their names after my brother whom I have not seen.

18 And Yosef ordered them to bring before him his map of the stars, whereby Yosef knew all the times, and Yosef said unto Benyamin, I have heard that the Hebrews are acquainted with all wisdom, do you know anything of this?

19 And Benyamin said, Your servant is knowing also in all the wisdom which my father taught me, and Yosef said unto Benyamin, Look now at this instrument and understand where your brother Yosef is in Egypt, who you said went down to Egypt.

20 And Benyamin took that instrument with the map of the stars of heaven, and he was wise and looked therein to know where his brother was, and Benyamin divided the whole land of Egypt into four divisions, and he found that he who was sitting upon the throne before him was his brother Yosef, and Benyamin wondered greatly, and when Yosef saw that his brother Benyamin was so much astonished, he said unto Benyamin, What have you seen, and why are you astonished?

21 And Benyamin said unto Yosef, I can see by this that Yosef my brother sits here with me upon the throne, and Yosef said unto him, I am Yosef your brother, but reveal not this thing unto your brothers; behold I will send you with them when they go away, and I will command them to be brought back again into the city, and I will take you away from them.

22 And if they dare their lives and fight for you, then shall I know that they have repented of what they did unto me, and I will make myself known to them, and if they forsake you when I take you, then shall you remain with me, and I will

wrangle with them, and they shall go away, and I will not become known to them.

23 At that time Yosef commanded his officer to fill their sacks with food, and to put each man's money into his sack, and to put the cup in the sack of Benjamin, and to give them provision for the road, and they did so unto them.

24 And on the morrow the men rose up early in the morning, and they loaded their asses with their grain, and they went forth with Benjamin, and they went to the land of Kanaan with their brother Benjamin.

25 They had not gone far from Egypt when Yosef commanded him that was set over his house, saying, Rise, pursue these men before they get too far from Egypt, and say unto them, Why have you stolen my lord's cup?

26 And Yosef's officer rose up and he reached them, and he spoke unto them all the words of Yosef; and when they heard this thing they became exceedingly wroth, and they said, He with whom your lord's cup shall be found shall die, and we will also become slaves.

27 And they hastened and each man brought down his sack from his ass, and they looked in their bags and the cup was found in Benjamin's bag, and they all tore their garments and they returned to the city, and they smote Benjamin in the road, continually smiting him until he came into the city, and they stood before Yosef.

28 And Y'hudah's anger was kindled, and he said, As YHWH lives, This man has only brought me back to destroy Egypt this day.

29 And the men came to Yosef's house, and they found Yosef sitting upon his throne, and all the mighty men standing at his right and left.

30 And Yosef said unto them, What is this act that you have done, that you took away my silver cup and went away? but I know that you took my cup in order to know thereby in

what part of the land your brother was.

31 And Y'hudah said, What shall we say to our lord, what shall we speak and how shall we justify ourselves, Elohim has this day found the iniquity of all your servants, therefore has he done this thing to us this day.

32 And Yosef rose up and caught hold of Benyamin and took him from his brothers with violence, and he came to the house and locked the door at them, and Yosef commanded him that was set over his house that he should say unto them, Thus says the king, Go in peace to your father, behold I have taken the man in whose hand my cup was found.

Parashat VaYigash

CHAPTER 54

1 And when Y'hudah saw the dealings of Yosef with them, Y'hudah approached him and broke open the door, and came with his brothers before Yosef.

2 And Y'hudah said unto Yosef, Let it not seem grievous in the eyes of my lord, may your servant I pray you speak a word before you? and Yosef said unto him, Speak.

3 And Y'hudah spoke before Yosef, and his brothers were there standing before them; and Y'hudah said unto Yosef, Surely when we first came to our lord to buy food, you did consider us as spies of the land, and we brought Benyamin before you, and you still makest sport of us this day.

4 And now therefore let the king hear my words, and send I pray you our brother that he may go along with us to our father, lest your soul perish this day with all the souls of the inhabitants of Egypt.

5 Do you not know what two of my brothers, Shim'on and Levi, did unto the city of Shechem, and unto seven cities of

the Amorites, on account of our sister Dinah, and also what they would do for the sake of their brother Benyamin?

6 And I with my strength, who am greater and mightier than both of them, come this day upon you and your land if you are unwilling to send our brother.

7 Have you not heard what our Eohim who made choice of us did unto Pharaoh on account of Sarah our mother, whom he took away from our father, that he smote him and his house with heavy plagues, that even unto this day the Egyptians relate this wonder to each other? so will our Elohim do unto you on account of Benyamin whom you have this day taken from his father, and on account of the evils which you this day heap over us in your land; for our Elohim will remember his covenant with our father Avraham and bring evil upon you, because you have grieved the soul of our father this day.

8 Now therefore hear my words that I have this day spoken unto you, and send our brother that he may go away lest you and the people of your land die by the sword, for you cannot all prevail over me.

9 And Yosef answered Y'hudah, saying, Why have you opened wide your mouth and why do you boast over us, saying, Strength is with you? as Pharaoh lives, if I command all my valiant men to fight with you, surely you and these your brothers would sink in the mire.

10 And Y'hudah said unto Yosef, Surely it becomes you and your people to fear me; as YHWH lives if I once draw my sword I shall not sheathe it again until I shall this day have slain all Egypt, and I will commence with you and finish with Pharaoh your lord.

11 And Yosef answered and said unto him, Surely strength belongs not alone to you; I am stronger and mightier than you, surely if you draw your sword I will put it to your neck

and the necks of all your brothers.

12 And Y'udah said unto him, Surely if I this day open my mouth against you I would swallow you up that you be destroyed from off the earth and perish this day from your kingdom. And Yosef said, Surely if you open your mouth I have power and might to close your mouth with a stone until you shall not be able to utter a word; see how many stones are before us, truly I can take a stone, and force it into your mouth and break your jaws.

13 And Y'udah said, Elohim is witness between us, that we have not hitherto desired to battle with you, only give us our brother and we will go from you; and Yosef answered and said, As Pharaoh lives, if all the kings of Kanaan came together with you, you should not take him from my hand.

14 Now therefore go your way to your father, and your brother shall be unto me for a slave, for he has robbed the king's house. And Y'udah said, What is it to you or to the character of the king, surely the king sends forth from his house, throughout the land, silver and gold either in gifts or expenses, and you still talk about your cup which you did place in our brother's bag and say that he has stolen it from you?

15 May it never be that our brother Benyamin or any of the seed of Avraham should do this thing to steal from you, or from any one else, whether king, prince, or any man.

16 And now therefore cease this accusation lest all the earth hear your words, saying, For a little silver the king of Egypt wrangled with the men, and he accused them and took their brother for a slave.

17 And Yosef answered and said, Take unto you this cup and go from me and leave your brother for a slave, for it is the judgment of a thief to be a slave.

18 And Y'udah said, Why are you not ashamed of your words, to leave our brother and to take your cup? Surely if

you givest us your cup, or a thousand times as much, we will not leave our brother for the silver which is found in the hand of any man, that we will not die over him.

19 And Yosef answered, And why did you forsake your brother and sell him for twenty pieces of silver unto this day, and why then will you not do the same to this your brother?

20 And Y'hudah said, YHWH is witness between me and you that we desire not your battles; now therefore give us our brother and we will go from you without quarreling.

21 And Yosef answered and said, If all the kings of the land should assemble they will not be able to take your brother from my hand; and Y'hudah said, What shall we say unto our father, when he sees that our brother comes not with us, and will grieve over him?

22 And Yosef answered and said, This is the thing which you shall tell unto your father, saying, The rope has gone after the bucket.

23 And Y'hudah said, Surely you are a king, and why speak you these things, giving a false judgment? woe unto the king who is like unto you.

24 And Yosef answered and said, There is no false judgment in the word that I spoke on account of your brother Yosef, for all of you sold him to the Midyanites for twenty pieces of silver, and you all denied it to your father and said unto him, An evil beast has devoured him, Yosef has been torn to pieces.

25 And Y'hudah said, Behold the fire of Shem burns in my heart, now I will burn all your land with fire; and Yosef answered and said, Surely your sister-in-law Tamar, who killed your sons, extinguished the fire of Shechem.

26 And Y'hudah said, As YHWH lives, if I pluck out a single hair from my flesh, I will fill all Egypt with its blood.

27 And Yosef answered and said, Such is your custom to do as you did to your brother whom you sold, and you dipped

his coat in blood and brought it to your father in order that he might say an evil beast devoured him and here is his blood.

28 And when Y'udah heard this thing he was exceedingly wroth and his anger burned within him, and there was before him in that place a stone, the weight of which was about four hundred shekels, and Y'udah's anger was kindled and he took the stone in one hand and cast it to the heavens and caught it with his left hand.

29 And he placed it afterward under his legs, and he sat upon it with all his strength and the stone was turned into dust from the force of Y'udah.

30 And Yosef saw the act of Y'udah and he was very much afraid, but he commanded M'nasheh his son and he also did with another stone like unto the act of Y'udah, and Y'udah said unto his brothers, Let not any of you say, this man is an Egyptian, but by his doing this thing he is of our father's family.

31 And Yosef said, Not to you only is strength given, for we are also powerful men, and why will you boast over us all? and Y'udah said unto Yosef, Send I pray you our brother and ruin not your country this day.

32 And Yosef answered and said unto them, Go and tell your father, an evil beast has devoured him as you said concerning your brother Yosef.

33 And Y'udah spoke to his brother Naftali, and he said unto him, Make haste, go now and number all the streets of Egypt and come and tell me; and Shim'on said unto him, Let not this thing be a trouble to you; now I will go to the mount and take up one large stone from the mount and level it at every one in Egypt, and kill all that are in it.

34 And Yosef heard all these words that his brothers spoke before him, and they did not know that Yosef understood them, for they imagined that he knew not to speak Hebrew.

35 And Yosef was greatly afraid at the words of his brothers lest they should destroy Egypt, and he commanded his son M'nasheh, saying, Go now make haste and gather unto me all the inhabitants of Egypt, and all the valiant men together, and let them come to me now upon horseback and on foot and with all sorts of musical instruments, and M'nasheh went and did so.

36 And Naftali went as Y'hudah had commanded him, for Naftali was light-footed as one of the swift stags, and he would go upon the ears of grain and they would not break under him.

37 And he went and numbered all the streets of Egypt, and found them to be twelve, and he came hastily and told Y'hudah, and Y'hudah said unto his brothers, Hasten you and put on every man his sword upon his loins and we will come over Egypt, and smite them all, and let not a remnant remain.

38 And Y'hudah said, Behold, I will destroy three of the streets with my strength, and you shall each destroy one street; and when Y'hudah was speaking this thing, behold the inhabitants of Egypt and all the mighty men came toward them with all sorts of musical instruments and with loud shouting.

39 And it came to pass that all their number was five hundred cavalry and ten thousand infantry, and four hundred men who could fight without sword or spear, only with their hands and strength.

40 And all the mighty men came with great storming and shouting, and they all surrounded the sons of Ya'akov and terrified them, and the ground quaked at the sound of their shouting.

41 And when the sons of Ya'akov saw these troops they were greatly afraid of their lives, and Yosef did so in order to terrify the sons of Ya'akov to become tranquilized.

42 And Y'udah, seeing some of his brothers terrified, said unto them, Why are you afraid while the grace of our Elohim is with us? and when Y'udah saw all the people of Egypt surrounding them at the command of Yosef to terrify them, only Yosef commanded them, saying, Do not touch any of them.

43 Then Y'udah hastened and drew his sword, and uttered a loud and bitter scream, and he smote with his sword, and he sprang upon the ground and he still continued to shout against all the men.

44 And when he did this thing YHWH caused the terror of Y'udah and his brothers to fall upon the valiant men and all the men that surrounded them.

45 And they all fled at the sound of the shouting, and they were terrified and fell one upon the other, and many of them died as they fell, and they all fled from before Y'udah and his brothers and from before Yosef.

46 And while they were fleeing, Y'udah and his brothers pursued them unto the house of Pharaoh, and they all escaped, and Y'udah again sat before Yosef and roared at him like a lion, and gave a great and tremendous shriek at him.

47 And the shriek was heard at a distance, and all the inhabitants of Sukkot heard it, and all Egypt quaked at the sound of the shriek, and also the walls of Egypt and of the land of Goshen fell in from the shaking of the earth, and Pharaoh also fell from his throne upon the ground, and also all the pregnant women of Egypt and Goshen miscarried when they heard the noise of the shaking, for they were terribly afraid.

48 And Pharaoh sent word, saying, What is this thing that has this day happened in the land of Egypt? and they came and told him all the things from beginning to end, and Pharaoh was alarmed and he wondered and was greatly

afraid.

49 And his fright increased when he heard all these things, and he sent unto Yosef, saying, you have brought unto me the Hebrews to destroy all Egypt; what will you do with that thievish slave? send him away and let him go with his brothers, and let us not perish through their evil, even we, you and all Egypt.

50 And if you desire not to do this thing, cast off from you all my valuable things, and go with them to their land, if you delight in it, for they will this day destroy my whole country and slay all my people; even all the women of Egypt have miscarried through their screams; see what they have done merely by their shouting and speaking, moreover if they fight with the sword, they will destroy the land; now therefore choose that which you desire, whether me or the Hebrews, whether Egypt or the land of the Hebrews.

51 And they came and told Yosef all the words of Pharaoh that he had said concerning him, and Yosef was greatly afraid at the words of Pharaoh and Y'udah and his brothers were still standing before Yosef indignant and enraged, and all the sons of Ya'akov roared at Yosef, like the roaring of the sea and its waves.

52 And Yosef was greatly afraid of his brothers and on account of Pharaoh, and Yosef sought a pretext to make himself known unto his brothers, lest they should destroy all Egypt.

53 And Yosef commanded his son M'nasheh, and M'nasheh went and approached Y'udah, and placed his hand upon his shoulder, and the anger of Y'udah was stilled.

54 And Y'udah said unto his brothers, Let no one of you say that this is the act of an Egyptian youth for this is the work of my father's house.

55 And Yosef seeing and knowing that Y'udah's anger was stilled, he approached to speak unto Y'udah in the

language of mildness.

56 And Yosef said unto Y'hudah, Surely you speak truth and have this day verified your assertions concerning your strength, and may your Elohim who delights in you, increase your welfare; but tell me truly why from among all your brothers do you wrangle with me on account of the lad, as none of them have spoken one word to me concerning him.

57 And Y'hudah answered Yosef, saying, Surely you must know that I was security for the lad to his father, saying, If I brought him not unto him I should bear his blame forever.

58 Therefore have I approached you from among all my brothers, for I saw that you were unwilling to suffer him to go from you; now therefore may I find grace in your eyes that you shall send him to go with us, and behold I will remain as a substitute for him, to serve you in whatever you desire, for wherever you shall send me I will go to serve you with great energy.

59 Send me now to a mighty king who has rebelled against you, and you shall know what I will do unto him and unto his land; although he may have cavalry and infantry or an exceeding mighty people, I will slay them all and bring the king's head before you.

60 Do you not know or have you not heard that our father Avraham with his servant Eliezer smote all the kings of Elam with their hosts in one night, they left not one remaining? and ever since that day our father's strength was given unto us for an inheritance, for us and our seed forever.

61 And Yosef answered and said, You speak truth, and falsehood is not in your mouth, for it was also told unto us that the Hebrews have power and that YHWH their Elohim delights much in them, and who then can stand before them?

62 However, on this condition will I send your brother, if you will bring before me his brother the son of his mother, of whom you said that he had gone from you down to Egypt;

and it shall come to pass when you bring unto me his brother I will take him in his stead, because not one of you was security for him to your father, and when he shall come unto me, I will then send with you his brother for whom you have been security.

63 And Y'hudah's anger was kindled against Yosef when he spoke this thing, and his eyes dropped blood with anger, and he said unto his brothers, How does this man this day seek his own destruction and that of all Egypt!

64 And Shim'on answered Yosef, saying, Did we not tell you at first that we knew not the particular spot to which he went, and whether he be dead or alive, and wherefore speaketh my lord like unto these things?

65 And Yosef seeing the countenance of Y'hudah discerned that his anger began to kindle when he spoke unto him, saying, Bring unto me your other brother instead of this brother.

66 And Yosef said unto his brothers, Surely you said that your brother was either dead or lost, now if I should call him this day and he should come before you, would you give him unto me instead of his brother?

67 And Yosef began to speak and call out, Yosef, Yosef, come this day before me, and appear to your brothers and sit before them.

68 And when Yosef spoke this thing before them, they looked each a different way to see from where Yosef would come before them.

69 And Yosef saw all their acts, and said unto them, Why do you look here and there? I am Yosef whom you sold to Egypt, and now therefore let it not grieve you in your eyes that you sold me, for as a support during the famine did Elohim send me before you.

70 And his brothers were terrified at him when they heard the words of Yosef, and Y'hudah was exceedingly terrified

at him.

71 And when Benjamin heard the words of Yosef he was before them in the inner part of the house, and Benjamin ran unto Yosef his brother, and embraced him and fell upon his neck, and they wept.

72 And when Yosef's brothers saw that Benjamin had fallen upon his brother's neck and wept with him, they also fell upon Yosef and embraced him, and they wept a great weeping with Yosef.

73 And the voice was heard in the house of Yosef that they were Yosef's brothers, and it pleased Pharaoh exceedingly, for he was afraid of them lest they should destroy Egypt.

74 And Pharaoh sent his servants unto Yosef to congratulate him concerning his brothers who had come to him, and all the captains of the armies and troops that were in Egypt came to rejoice with Yosef, and all Egypt rejoiced greatly about Yosef's brothers.

75 And Pharaoh sent his servants to Yosef, saying, Tell your brothers to fetch all belonging to them and let them come unto me, and I will place them in the best part of the land of Egypt, and they did so.

76 And Yosef commanded him that was set over his house to bring out to his brothers gifts and garments, and he brought out to them many garments being robes of royalty and many gifts, and Yosef divided them among his brothers.

77 And he gave unto each of his brothers a change of garments of gold and silver, and three hundred pieces of silver, and Yosef commanded them all to be dressed in these garments, and to be brought before Pharaoh.

78 And Pharaoh seeing that all Yosef's brothers were valiant men, and of beautiful appearance, he greatly rejoiced.

79 And they afterward went out from the presence of Pharaoh to go to the land of Kanaan, to their father, and their brother Benjamin was with them.

80 And Yosef rose up and gave unto them eleven chariots from Pharaoh, and Yosef gave unto them his chariot, upon which he rode on the day of his being crowned in Egypt, to fetch his father to Egypt; and Yosef sent to all his brothers' children, garments according to their numbers, and a hundred pieces of silver to each of them, and he also sent garments to the wives of his brothers from the garments of the king's wives, and he sent them.

81 And he gave unto each of his brothers ten men to go with them to the land of Kanaan to serve them, to serve their children and all belonging to them in coming to Egypt.

82 And Yosef sent by the hand of his brother Benyamin ten suits of garments for his ten sons, a portion above the rest of the children of the sons of Ya'akov.

83 And he sent to each fifty pieces of silver, and ten chariots on the account of Pharaoh, and he sent to his father ten asses laden with all the luxuries of Egypt, and ten she asses laden with grain and bread and nourishment for his father, and to all that were with him as provisions for the road.

84 And he sent to his sister Dinah garments of silver and gold, and frankincense and myrrh, and aloes and women's ornaments in great plenty, and he sent the same from the wives of Pharaoh to the wives of Benyamin.

85 And he gave unto all his brothers, also to their wives, all sorts of onyx stones and bdellium, and from all the valuable things among the great people of Egypt, nothing of all the costly things was left but what Yosef sent of to his father's house.

86 And he sent his brothers away, and they went, and he sent his brother Benyamin with them.

87 And Yosef went out with them to accompany them on the road unto the borders of Egypt, and he commanded them concerning his father and his house, to come to Egypt.

88 And he said unto them, Do not quarrel on the road, for

this thing was from YHWH to keep a great people from starvation, for there will be yet five years of famine in the land.

89 And he commanded them, saying, When you come unto the land of Kanaan, do not come suddenly before my father in this affair, but act in your wisdom.

90 And Yosef ceased to command them, and he turned and went back to Egypt, and the sons of Ya'akov went to the land of Kanaan with joy and cheerfulness to their father Ya'akov.

91 And they came unto the borders of the land, and they said to each other, What shall we do in this matter before our father, for if we come suddenly to him and tell him the matter, he will be greatly alarmed at our words and will not believe us.

92 And they went along until they came near unto their houses, and they found Serach, the daughter of Asher, going forth to meet them, and the damsel was very good and subtle, and knew how to play upon the harp.

93 And they called unto her and she came before them, and she kissed them, and they took her and gave unto her a harp, saying, Go now before our father, and sit before him, and strike upon the harp, and speak these words.

94 And they commanded her to go to their house, and she took the harp and hastened before them, and she came and sat near Ya'akov.

95 And she played well and sang, and uttered in the sweetness of her words, Yosef my uncle is living, and he rules throughout the land of Egypt, and is not dead.

96 And she continued to repeat and utter these words, and Ya'akov heard her words and they were agreeable to him.

97 He listened while she repeated them twice and thrice, and joy entered the heart of Ya'akov at the sweetness of her words, and the Spirit of Elohim was upon him, and he knew

all her words to be true.

98 And Ya'akov blessed Serach when she spoke these words before him, and he said unto her, My daughter, may death never prevail over you, for you have revived my spirit; only speak yet before me as you have spoken, for you have gladdened me with all your words.

99 And she continued to sing these words, and Ya'akov listened and it pleased him, and he rejoiced, and the Spirit of Elohim was upon him.

100 While he was yet speaking with her, behold his sons came to him with horses and chariots and royal garments and servants running before them.

101 And Ya'akov rose up to meet them, and saw his sons dressed in royal garments and he saw all the treasures that Yosef had sent to them.

102 And they said unto him, Be informed that our brother Yosef is living, and it is he who rules throughout the land of Egypt, and it is he who spoke unto us as we told you.

103 And Ya'akov heard all the words of his sons, and his heart palpitated at their words, for he could not believe them until he saw all that Yosef had given them and what he had sent him, and all the signs which Yosef had spoken unto them.

104 And they opened out before him, and showed him all that Yosef had sent, they gave unto each what Yosef had sent him, and he knew that they had spoken the truth, and he rejoiced exceedingly an account of his son.

105 And Ya'akov said, It is enough for me that my son Yosef is still living, I will go and see him before I die.

106 And his sons told him all that had befallen them, and Ya'akov said, I will go down to Egypt to see my son and his offspring.

107 And Ya'akov rose up and put on the garments which Yosef had sent him, and after he had washed, and shaved his

hair, he put upon his head the turban which Yosef had sent him.

108 And all the men of Ya'akov's house and their wives put on the garments which Yosef had sent to them, and they greatly rejoiced at Yosef that he was still living and that he was ruling in Egypt,

109 And all the inhabitants of Kanaan heard of this thing, and they came and rejoiced much with Ya'akov that he was still living.

110 And Ya'akov made a feast for them for three days, and all the kings of Kanaan and nobles of the land ate and drank and rejoiced in the house of Ya'akov.

CHAPTER 55

1 And it came to pass after this that Ya'akov said, I will go and see my son in Egypt and will then come back to the land of Kanaan of which Elohim had spoken unto Avraham, for I cannot leave the land of my birth-place.

2 And behold the word of YHWH came unto him, saying, Arise, go down to Egypt with all your house and remain there, fear not to go down to Egypt for I will there make you a great nation.

3 And Ya'akov said in his heart, I will go and see my son whether the fear of his Elohim is yet in his heart amidst all the inhabitants of Egypt.

4 And YHWH said unto Ya'akov, Fear not about Yosef, for he still retains his integrity to serve me, as will seem good in your eyes, and Ya'akov rejoiced exceedingly concerning his son.

5 At that time Ya'akov commanded his sons and house to go to Egypt according to the word of YHWH unto him, and Ya'akov rose up with his sons and all his house, and he went

out from the land of Kanaan from B'er-Sheva, with joy and gladness of heart, and they went to the land of Egypt.

6 And it came to pass when they came near Egypt, Ya'akov sent Y'hudah before him to Yosef that he might show him a situation in Egypt, and Y'hudah did according to the word of his father, and he hastened and ran and came to Yosef, and they assigned for them a place in the land of Goshen for all his house, and Y'hudah returned and came along the road to his father.

7 And Yosef harnessed the chariot, and he assembled all his mighty men and his servants and all the officers of Egypt in order to go and meet his father Ya'akov, and Yosef's mandate was proclaimed in Egypt, saying, All that do not go to meet Ya'akov shall die.

8 And on the morrow Yosef went forth with all Egypt a great and mighty host, all dressed in garments of fine linen and purple and with instruments of silver and gold and with their instruments of war with them.

9 And they all went to meet Ya'akov with all sorts of musical instruments, with drums and timbrels, strewing myrrh and aloes all along the road, and they all went after this fashion, and the earth shook at their shouting.

10 And also all the women of Egypt went upon the roofs of Egypt and upon the walls to meet Ya'akov, and upon the head of Yosef was Pharaoh's regal crown, for Pharaoh had sent it unto him to put on at the time of his going to meet his father.

11 And when Yosef came within fifty cubits of his father, he alighted from the chariot and he walked toward his father, and when all the officers of Egypt and her nobles saw that Yosef had gone on foot toward his father, they also alighted and walked on foot toward Ya'akov.

12 And when Ya'akov approached the camp of Yosef, Ya'akov observed the camp that was coming toward him

with Yosef, and it gratified him and Ya'akov was astonished at it.

13 And Ya'akov said unto Y'hudah, Who is that man whom I see in the camp of Egypt dressed in kingly robes with a very red garment upon him and a royal crown upon his head, who has alighted from his chariot and is coming toward us? and Y'hudah answered his father, saying, He is your son Yosef the king; and Ya'akov rejoiced in seeing the glory of his son.

14 And Yosef came near unto his father and he bowed to his father, and all the men of the camp bowed to the ground with him before Ya'akov.

15 And behold Ya'akov ran and hastened to his son Yosef and fell upon his neck and kissed him, and they wept, and Yosef also embraced his father and kissed him, and they wept and all the men of Egypt wept with them.

16 And Ya'akov said unto Yosef, Now I will die cheerfully after I have seen your face, that you are still living and with glory.

17 And all the sons of Ya'akov and their wives and their children and their servants, and all the house of Ya'akov wept exceedingly with Yosef, and they kissed him and wept greatly with him.

18 And Yosef and all his people returned afterward home to Egypt, and Ya'akov and his sons and all the children of his house came with Yosef to Egypt, and Yosef placed them in the best part of Egypt, in the land of Goshen.

19 And Yosef said unto his father and unto his brothers, I will go up and tell Pharaoh, saying, My brothers and my father's house and all belonging to them have come unto me, and behold they are in the land of Goshen.

20 And Yosef did so and took from his brothers Re'uven, Yissakhar Z'vulun and his brother Benyamin and he placed them before Pharaoh.

21 And Yosef spoke unto Pharaoh, saying, My brothers and my father's house and all belonging to them, together with their flocks and cattle have come unto me from the land of Kanaan, to sojourn in Egypt; for the famine was sore upon them.

22 And Pharaoh said unto Yosef, Place your father and brothers in the best part of the land, withhold not from them all that is good, and cause them to eat of the fat of the land.

23 And Yosef answered, saying, Behold I have stationed them in the land of Goshen, for they are shepherds, therefore let them remain in Goshen to feed their flocks apart from the Egyptians.

24 And Pharaoh said unto Yosef, Do with your brothers all that they shall say unto you; and the sons of Ya'akov bowed down to Pharaoh, and they went forth from him in peace, and Yosef afterward brought his father before Pharaoh.

25 And Ya'akov came and bowed down to Pharaoh, and Ya'akov blessed Pharaoh, and he then went out; and Ya'akov and all his sons, and all his house dwelt in the land of Goshen.

26 In the second year, that is in the hundred and thirtieth year of the life of Ya'akov, Yosef maintained his father and his brothers, and all his father's house, with bread according to their little ones, all the days of the famine; they lacked nothing.

27 And Yosef gave unto them the best part of the whole land; the best of Egypt had they all the days of Yosef; and Yosef also gave unto them and unto the whole of his father's house, clothes and garments year by year; and the sons of Ya'akov remained securely in Egypt all the days of their brother.

28 And Ya'akov always ate at Yosef's table, Ya'akov and his sons did not leave Yosef's table day or night, besides what Ya'akov's children consumed in their houses.

29 And all Egypt ate bread during the days of the famine from the house of Yosef, for all the Egyptians sold all belonging to them on account of the famine.

30 And Yosef purchased all the lands and fields of Egypt for bread on the account of Pharaoh, and Yosef supplied all Egypt with bread all the days of the famine, and Yosef collected all the silver and gold that came unto him for the grain which they bought throughout the land, and he accumulated much gold and silver, besides an immense quantity of onyx stones, bdellium and valuable garments which they brought unto Yosef from every part of the land when their money was spent.

31 And Yosef took all the silver and gold that came into his hand, about seventy two talents of gold and silver, and also onyx stones and bdellium in great abundance, and Yosef went and concealed them in four parts, and he concealed one part in the wilderness near the Red Sea, and one part by the river Perat, and the third and fourth part he concealed in the desert opposite to the wilderness of Persia and Media.

32 And he took part of the gold and silver that was left, and gave it unto all his brothers and unto all his father's house, and unto all the women of his father's house, and the rest he brought to the house of Pharaoh, about twenty talents of gold and silver.

33 And Yosef gave all the gold and silver that was left unto Pharaoh, and Pharaoh placed it in the treasury, and the days of the famine ceased after that in the land, and they sowed and reaped in all the land, and they obtained their usual quantity year by year; they lacked nothing.

34 And Yosef dwelt securely in Egypt, and all the land was under his advice, and his father and all his brothers dwelt in the land of Goshen and took possession of it.

35 And Yosef was very aged, advanced in days, and his two sons, Efrayim and M'nasheh, remained constantly in the

house of Ya'akov, together with the children of the sons of Ya'akov their brothers, to learn the ways of YHWH and his Torah.

36 And Ya'akov and his sons dwelt in the land of Egypt in the land of Goshen, and they took possession in it, and they were fruitful and multiplied in it.

Parashat VaY'chi

CHAPTER 56

1 And Ya'akov lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, and the days of Ya'akov, and the years of his life were a hundred and forty seven years.

2 At that time Ya'akov was attacked with that illness of which he died and he sent and called for his son Yosef from Egypt, and Yosef his son came from Egypt and Yosef came unto his father.

3 And Ya'akov said unto Yosef and unto his sons, Behold I die, and the Elohi of your ancestors will visit you, and bring you back to the land, which YHWH swore to give unto you and unto your children after you, now therefore when I am dead, bury me in the cave which is in Machpelah in Chevron in the land of Kanaan, near my ancestors.

4 And Ya'akov made his sons swear to bury him in Machpelah, in Chevron, and his sons swore unto him concerning this thing.

5 And he commanded them, saying, Serve YHWH your Elohim, for he who delivered your fathers will also deliver you from all trouble.

6 And Ya'akov said, Call all your children unto me, and all the children of Ya'akov's sons came and sat before him, and Ya'akov blessed them, and he said unto them, YHWH Elohi

of your fathers shall grant you a thousand times as much and bless you, and may he give you the blessing of your father Avraham; and all the children of Ya'akov's sons went forth on that day after he had blessed the.

7 And on the morrow Ya'akov again called for his sons, and they all assembled and came to him and sat before him, and Ya'akov on that day blessed his sons before his death, each man did he bless according to his blessing; behold it is written in the Book of the Torah of YHWH for Israel.

8 And Ya'akov said unto Y'hudah, I know my son that you are a mighty man for your brothers; reign over them, and your sons shall reign over their sons forever.

9 Only teach your sons the bow⁷⁶ and all the weapons of war, in order that they may fight the battles of their brother who will rule over his enemies.

10 And Ya'akov again commanded his sons on that day, saying, Behold I shall be this day gathered unto my people; carry me up from Egypt, and bury me in the cave of Makpelah as I have commanded you.

11 Howbeit take heed I pray you that none of your sons carry me, only yourselves, and this is the manner you shall do unto me, when you carry my body to go with it to the land of Kanaan to bury me,

12 Y'hudah, Yissakhar and Z'vulun shall carry my bier at the eastern side; Re'uben, Shim'on and Gad at the south, Efrayim, M'nasheh and Benyamin at the west, Dan, Asher and Naftali at the north.

13 Let not Levi carry with you, for he and his sons will carry the ark of the covenant of YHWH with the Israelites in the camp, neither let Yosef my son carry, for as a king so let his glory be; howbeit, Efrayim and M'nasheh shall be in their stead.

14 Thus shall you do unto me when you carry me away; do

⁷⁶ This is the passage cited in 2Sam. 1:18

not neglect any thing of all that I command you; and it shall come to pass when you do this unto me, that YHWH will remember you favorably and your children after you forever.
15 And you my sons, honor each his brother and his relative, and command your children and your children's children after you to serve YHWH Elohi of your ancestors all the days.

16 In order that you may prolong your days in the land, you and your children and your children's children for ever, when you do what is good and upright in the eyes of YHWH your Elohim, to go in all his ways.

17 And you, Yosef my son, forgive I pray you the prongs of your brothers and all their misdeeds in the injury that they heaped upon you, for behold Elohim intended it for you and your children's benefit.

18 And O my son leave not your brothers to the inhabitants of Egypt, neither hurt their feelings, for behold I consign them to the hand of Elohim and in your hand to guard them from the Egyptians; and the sons of Ya'akov answered their father saying, O, our father, all that you have commanded us, so will we do; may Elohim only be with us.

19 And Ya'akov said unto his sons, So may Elohim be with you when you keep all his ways; turn not from his ways either to the right or the left in performing what is good and upright in his eyes.

20 For I know that many and grievous troubles will befall you in the latter days in the land, yea your children and children's children, only serve YHWH and he will save you from all trouble.

21 And it shall come to pass when you shall go after Elohim to serve him and will teach your children after you, and your children's children, to know YHWH, then will YHWH raise up unto you and your children a servant from among your children, and YHWH will deliver you through his hand from

all affliction, and bring you out of Egypt and bring you back to the land of your fathers to inherit it securely.

22 And Ya'akov ceased commanding his sons, and he drew his feet into the bed, he died and was gathered to his people.

23 And Yosef fell upon his father and he cried out and wept over him and he kissed him, and he called out in a bitter voice, and he said, O my father, my father.

24 And his son's wives and all his house came and fell upon Ya'akov, and they wept over him, and cried in a very loud voice concerning Ya'akov.

25 And all the sons of Ya'akov rose up together, and they tore their garments, and they all put sackcloth upon their loins, and they fell upon their faces, and they cast dust upon their heads toward the heavens.

26 And the thing was told unto Asnat, Yosef's wife, and she rose up and put on a sack and she with all the Egyptian women with her came and mourned and wept for Ya'akov.

27 And also all the people of Egypt who knew Ya'akov came all on that day when they heard this thing, and all Egypt wept for many days.

28 And also from the land of Kanaan did the women come unto Egypt when they heard that Ya'akov was dead, and they wept for him in Egypt for seventy days.

29 And it came to pass after this that Yosef commanded his servants the doctors to embalm his father with myrrh and frankincense and all manner of incense and perfume, and the doctors embalmed Ya'akov as Yosef had commanded them.

30 And all the Egyptians and the elders and all the inhabitants of the land of Goshen wept and mourned over Ya'akov, and all his sons and the children of his house lamented and mourned over their father Ya'akov many days.

31 And after the days of his weeping had passed away, at the end of seventy days, Yosef said unto Pharaoh, I will go up and bury my father in the land of Kanaan as he made me

swear, and then I will return.

32 And Pharaoh sent Yosef, saying, Go up and bury your father as he said, and as he made you swear; and Yosef rose up with all his brothers to go to the land of Kanaan to bury their father Ya'akov as he had commanded them.

33 And Pharaoh commanded that it should be proclaimed throughout Egypt, saying, Whoever goeth not up with Yosef and his brothers to the land of Kanaan to bury Ya'akov, shall die.

34 And all Egypt heard of Pharaoh's proclamation, and they all rose up together, and all the servants of Pharaoh, and the elders of his house, and all the elders of the land of Egypt went up with Yosef, and all the officers and nobles of Pharaoh went up as the servants of Yosef, and they went to bury Ya'akov in the land of Kanaan.

35 And the sons of Ya'akov carried the bier upon which he lay; according to all that their father commanded them, so did his sons unto him.

36 And the bier was of pure gold, and it was inlaid round about with onyx stones and bdellium; and the covering of the bier was gold woven work, joined with threads, and over them were hooks of onyx stones and bdellium.

37 And Yosef placed upon the head of his father Ya'akov a large golden crown, and he put a golden scepter in his hand, and they surrounded the bier as was the custom of kings during their lives.

38 And all the troops of Egypt went before him in this array, at first all the mighty men of Pharaoh, and the mighty men of Yosef, and after them the rest of the inhabitants of Egypt, and they were all girded with swords and equipped with coats of mail, and the trappings of war were upon them.

39 And all the weepers and mourners went at a distance opposite to the bier, going and weeping and lamenting, and the rest of the people went after the bier.

40 And Yosef and his house went together near the bier barefooted and weeping, and the rest of Yosef's servants went around him; each man had his ornaments upon him, and they were all armed with their weapons of war.

41 And fifty of Ya'akov's servants went in front of the bier, and they strewed along the road myrrh and aloes, and all manner of perfume, and all the sons of Ya'akov that carried the bier walked upon the perfumery, and the servants of Ya'akov went before them strewing the perfume along the road.

42 And Yosef went up with a heavy camp, and they did after this manner every day until they reached the land of Kanaan, and they came to the threshing floor of Atad, which was on the other side of Yordan, and they mourned an exceeding great and heavy mourning in that place.

43 And all the kings of Kanaan heard of this thing and they all went forth, each man from his house, thirty-one kings of Kanaan, and they all came with their men to mourn and weep over Ya'akov.

44 And all these kings saw Ya'akov's bier, and behold Yosef's crown was upon it, and they also put their crowns upon the bier, and encircled it with crowns.

45 And all these kings made in that place a great and heavy mourning with the sons of Ya'akov and Egypt over Ya'akov, for all the kings of Kanaan knew the valor of Ya'akov and his sons.

46 And the report reached Esau, saying, Ya'akov died in Egypt, and his sons and all Egypt are conveying him to the land of Kanaan to bury him.

47 And Esau heard this thing, and he was dwelling in mount Seir, and he rose up with his sons and all his people and all his house, a people exceedingly great, and they came to mourn and weep over Ya'akov.

48 And it came to pass, when Esau came he mourned for his

brother Ya'akov, and all Egypt and all Kanaan again rose up and mourned a great mourning with Esau over Ya'akov in that place

49 And Yosef and his brothers brought their father Ya'akov from that place, and they went to Chevron to bury Ya'akov in the cave by his fathers.

50 And they came unto Kireat-Arba, to the cave, and as they came Esau stood with his sons against Yosef and his brothers as a hindrance in the cave, saying, Ya'akov shall not be buried therein, for it belongs to us and to our father.

51 And Yosef and his brothers heard the words of Esau's sons, and they were exceedingly wroth, and Yosef approached unto Esau, saying, What is this thing which they have spoken? surely my father Ya'akov bought it from you for great riches after the death of Yitz'chak, now five and twenty years ago, and also all the land of Kanaan he bought from you and from your sons, and your seed after you.

52 And Ya'akov bought it for his sons and his seed after him for an inheritance for ever, and why speak you these things this day?

53 And Esau answered, saying, you speak falsely and utter lies, for I sold not anything belonging to me in all this land, as you say, neither did my brother Ya'akov buy aught belonging to me in this land.

54 And Esau spoke these things in order to deceive Yosef with his words, for Esau knew that Yosef was not present in those days when Esau sold all belonging to him in the land of Kanaan to Ya'akov.

55 And Yosef said unto Esau, Surely my father inserted these things with you in the record of purchase, and testified the record with witnesses, and behold it is with us in Egypt.

56 And Esau answered, saying unto him, Bring the record, all that you will find in the record, so will we do.

57 And Yosef called unto Naftali his brother, and he said,

Hasten quickly, stay not, and run I pray you to Egypt and bring all the records; the record of the purchase, the sealed record and the open record⁷⁷, and also all the first records in which all the transactions of the birth-right are written, fetch you.

58 And you shall bring them unto us here, that we may know from them all the words of Esau and his sons which they spoke this day.

59 And Naftali hearkened to the voice of Yosef and he hastened and ran to go down to Egypt, and Naftali was lighter on foot than any of the stags that were upon the wilderness, for he would go upon ears of grain without crushing them.

60 And when Esau saw that Naftali had gone to fetch the records, he and his sons increased their resistance against the cave, and Esau and all his people rose up against Yosef and his brothers to battle.

61 And all the sons of Ya'akov and the people of Egypt fought with Esau and his men, and the sons of Esau and his people were smitten before the sons of Ya'akov, and the sons of Ya'akov slew of Esau's people forty men.

62 And Chushim the son of Dan, the son of Ya'akov, was at that time with

Ya'akov's sons, but he was about a hundred cubits distant from the place of battle, for he remained with the children of Ya'akov's sons by Ya'akov's bier to guard it.

63 And Chushim was dumb and deaf, still he understood the voice of consternation among men.

64 And he asked, saying, Why do you not bury the dead, and what is this great consternation? and they answered him the words of Esau and his sons; and he ran to Esau in the midst of the battle, and he slew Esau with a sword, and he cut off his head, and it sprang to a distance, and Esau fell among the

⁷⁷ compare Jer. 32:14

men of the battle.

65 And when Chushim did this thing the sons of Ya'akov prevailed over the sons of Esau, and the sons of Ya'akov buried their father Ya'akov by force in the cave, and the sons of Esau beheld it.

66 And Ya'akov was buried in Chevron, in the cave of Machpelah which Avraham had bought from the sons of Chet for the possession of a burial place, and he was buried in very costly garments.

67 And no king had such honor paid him as Yosef paid unto his father at his death, for he buried him with great honor like unto the burial of kings.

68 And Yosef and his brothers made a mourning of seven days for their father.

CHAPTER 57

1 And it was after this that the sons of Esau waged war with the sons of Ya'akov, and the sons of Esau fought with the sons of Ya'akov in Chevron, and Esau was still lying dead, and not buried.

2 And the battle was heavy between them, and the sons of Esau were smitten before the sons of Ya'akov, and the sons of Ya'akov slew of the sons of Esau eighty men, and not one died of the people of the sons of Ya'akov; and the hand of Yosef prevailed over all the people of the sons of Esau, and he took Tz'fo, the son of Elifaz, the son of Esau, and fifty of his men captive, and he bound them with chains of iron, and gave them into the hand of his servants to bring them to Egypt.

3 And it came to pass when the sons of Ya'akov had taken Tz'fo and his people captive, all those that remained were greatly afraid of their lives from the house of Esau, lest they

should also be taken captive, and they all fled with Elifaz the son of Esau and his people, with Esau's body, and they went on their road to Mount Seir.

4 And they came unto Mount Seir and they buried Esau in Seir, but they had not brought his head with them to Seir, for it was buried in that place where the battle had been in Chevron.

5 And it came to pass when the sons of Esau had fled from before the sons of Ya'akov, the sons of Ya'akov pursued them unto the borders of Seir, but they did not slay a single man from among them when they pursued them, for Esau's body which they carried with them excited their confusion, so they fled and the sons of Ya'akov turned back from them and came up to the place where their brothers were in Chevron, and they remained there on that day, and on the morrow until they rested from the battle.

6 And it came to pass on the third day they assembled all the sons of Seir the Horite, and they assembled all the children of the east, a multitude of people like the sand of the sea, and they went and came down to Egypt to fight with Yosef and his brothers, in order to deliver their brothers.

7 And Yosef and all the sons of Ya'akov heard that the sons of Esau and the children of the east had come upon them to battle in order to deliver their brothers.

8 And Yosef and his brothers and the strong men of Egypt went forth and fought in the city of Rameses, and Yosef and his brothers dealt out a tremendous blow among the sons of Esau and the children of the east.

9 And they slew of them six hundred thousand men, and they slew among them all the mighty men of the children of Seir the Horite; there were only a few of them left, and they slew also a great many of the children of the east, and of the children of Esau; and Elifaz the son of Esau, and the children of the east all fled before Yosef and his brothers.

10 And Yosef and his brothers pursued them until they came unto Sukkot, and they yet slew of them in Sukkot thirty men, and the rest escaped and they fled each to his city.

11 And Yosef and his brothers and the mighty men of Egypt turned back from them with joy and cheerfulness of heart, for they had smitten all their enemies.

12 And Tz'fo the son of Elifaz and his men were still slaves in Egypt to the sons of Ya'akov, and their pains increased.

13 And when the sons of Esau and the sons of Seir returned to their land, the sons of Seir saw that they had all fallen into the hands of the sons of Ya'akov, and the people of Egypt, on account of the battle of the sons of Esau.

14 And the sons of Seir said unto the sons of Esau, You have seen and

therefore you know that this camp was on your account, and not one mighty man or an adept in war remains.

15 Now therefore go forth from our land, go from us to the land of Kanaan to the land of the dwelling of your fathers; wherefore shall your children inherit the effects of our children in latter days?

16 And the children of Esau would not listen to the children of Seir, and the children of Seir considered to make war with them.

17 And the children of Esau sent secretly to Angias king of Africa⁷⁸, the same is Dinhavah, saying,

18 Send unto us some of your men and let them come unto us, and we will fight together with the children of Seir the Horite, for they have resolved to fight with us to drive us away from the land.

19 And Angias king of Dinhavah did so, for he was in those days friendly to the children of Esau, and Angias sent five hundred valiant infantry to the children of Esau, and eight hundred cavalry.

⁷⁸ אַפְרִיקָה

20 And the children of Seir sent unto the children of the east and unto the children of Midyan, saying, You have seen what the children of Esau have done unto us, upon whose account we are almost all destroyed, in their battle with the sons of Ya'akov.

21 And now therefore come unto us and assist us, and we will fight them together, and we will drive them from the land and be avenged of the cause of our brothers who died for their sakes in their battle with their brothers the sons of Ya'akov.

22 And all the children of the east listened to the children of Seir, and they came unto them about eight hundred men with drawn swords, and the children of Esau fought with the children of Seir at that time in the wilderness of Paran.

23 And the children of Seir prevailed then over the sons of Esau, and the children of Seir slew on that day of the children of Esau in that battle about two hundred men of the people of Angias king of Dinhavah.

24 And on the second day the children of Esau came again to fight a second time with the children of Seir, and the battle was sore upon the children of Esau this second time, and it troubled them greatly on account of the children of Seir.

25 And when the children of Esau saw that the children of Seir were more powerful than they were, some men of the children of Esau turned and assisted the children of Seir their enemies.

26 And there fell yet of the people of the children of Esau in the second battle fifty-eight men of the people at Angias king of Dinhavah.

27 And on the third day the children of Esau heard that some of their brothers had turned from them to fight against them in the second battle; and the children of Esau mourned when

they heard this thing.

28 And they said, What shall we do unto our brothers who turned from us to assist the children of Seir our enemies? and the children of Esau again sent to Angias king of Dinhavah, saying,

29 Send unto us again other men that with them we may fight with the children of Seir, for they have already twice been heavier than we were.

30 And Angias again sent to the children of Esau about six hundred valiant men, and they came to assist the children of Esau.

31 And in ten days' time the children of Esau again waged war with the children of Seir in the wilderness of Paran, and the battle was very severe upon the children of Seir, and the children of Esau prevailed at this time over the children of Seir, and the children of Seir were smitten before the children of Esau, and the children of Esau slew from them about two thousand men.

32 And all the mighty men of the children of Seir died in this battle, and there only remained their young children that were left in their cities.

33 And all Midyan and the children of the east betook themselves to flight from the battle, and they left the children of Seir and fled when they saw that the battle was severe upon them, and the children of Esau pursued all the children of the east until they reached their land.

34 And the children of Esau slew yet of them about two hundred and fifty men and from the people of the children of Esau there fell in that battle about thirty men, but this evil came upon them through their brothers turning from them to assist the children of Seir the Horite, and the children of Esau again heard of the evil doings of their brothers, and they again mourned on account of this thing.

35 And it came to pass after the battle, the children of Esau

turned back and came home unto Seir, and the children of Esau slew those who had remained in the land of the children of Seir; they slew also their wives and little ones, they left not a soul alive except fifty young lads and damsels whom they suffered to live, and the children of Esau did not put them to death, and the lads became their slaves, and the damsels they took for wives.

36 And the children of Esau dwelt in Seir in the place of the children of Seir, and they inherited their land and took possession of it.

37 And the children of Esau took all belonging in the land to the children of Seir, also their flocks, their bullocks and their goods, and all belonging to the children of Seir, did the children of Esau take, and the children of Esau dwelt in Seir in the place of the children of Seir unto this day, and the children of Esau divided the land into divisions to the five sons of Esau, according to their families.

38 And it came to pass in those days, that the children of Esau resolved to crown a king over them in the land of which they became possessed. And they said to each other, Not so, for he shall reign over us in our land, and we shall be under his counsel and he shall fight our battles, against our enemies, and they did so.

39 And all the children of Esau swore, saying, That none of their brothers should ever reign over them, but a strange man who is not of their brothers, for the souls of all the children of Esau were embittered every man against his son, brother and friend, on account of the evil they sustained from their brothers when they fought with the children of Seir.

40 Therefore the sons of Esau swore, saying, From that day forward they would not choose a king from their brothers, but one from a strange land unto this day.

41 And there was a man there from the people of Angias king of Dinhavah; his name was Bela the son of B'or, who

was a very valiant man, beautiful and comely and wise in all wisdom, and a man of sense and counsel; and there was none of the people of Angias like unto him.

42 And all the children of Esau took him and anointed him and they crowned him for a king, and they bowed down to him, and they said unto him, May the king live, may the king live.

43 And they spread out the sheet, and they brought him each man earrings of gold and silver or rings or bracelets, and they made him very rich in silver and in gold, in onyx stones and bdellium, and they made him a royal throne, and they placed a regal crown upon his head, and they built a palace for him and he dwelt therein, and he became king over all the children of Esau.

44 And the men of Angias took their hire for their battle from the children of Esau, and they went and returned at that time to their lord in Dinhavah.

45 And Bela reigned over the children of Esau thirty years, and the children of Esau dwelt in the land instead of the children of Seir, and they dwelt securely in their stead unto this day.

CHAPTER 58

1 And it came to pass in the thirty-second year of the Israelites going down to Egypt, that is in the seventy-first year of the life of Yosef, in that year died Pharaoh king of Egypt, and Magron his son reigned in his stead.

2 And Pharaoh commanded Yosef before his death to be a father to his son, Magron, and that Magron should be under the care of Yosef and under his counsel.

3 And all Egypt consented to this thing that Yosef should be king over them, for all the Egyptians loved Yosef as of

heretofore, only Magron the son of Pharaoh sat upon, his father's throne, and he became king in those days in his father's stead.

4 Magron was forty-one years old when he began to reign, and forty years he reigned in Egypt, and all Egypt called his name Pharaoh after the name of his father, as it was their custom to do in Egypt to every king that reigned over them.

5 And it came to pass when Pharaoh reigned in his father's stead, he placed the laws of Egypt and all the affairs of kingdom in the hand of Yosef, as his father had commanded him.

6 And Yosef became king over Egypt, for he superintended over all Egypt, and all Egypt was under his care and under his counsel, for all Egypt inclined to Yosef after the death of Pharaoh, and they loved him exceedingly to reign over them.

7 But there were some men among them, who did not like him, saying, No stranger shall reign over us; still the whole kingdom of Egypt devolved in those days upon Yosef, after the death of Pharaoh, he being the regulator, doing as he liked throughout the land without any one interfering.

8 And all Egypt was under the power of Yosef, and Yosef made war with all his surrounding enemies, and he subdued them; also all the land and all the Philistines, unto the borders of Kanaan, did Yosef subdue, and they were all under his power and they gave a yearly tax unto Yosef.

9 And Pharaoh king of Egypt sat upon his throne in his father's stead, but he was under the control and counsel of Yosef, as he was at first under the control of his father.

10 Neither did he reign but in the land of Egypt only, under the counsel of Yosef, but Yosef reigned over the whole country at that time, from Egypt unto the great river Perat.

11 And Yosef was successful in all his ways, and YHWH was with him, and YHWH gave Yosef additional wisdom, and honor, and glory, and love toward him in the hearts of

the Egyptians and throughout the land, and Yosef reigned over the whole country forty years.

12 And all the countries of the Philistines and Kanaan and Tzidon, and on the other side of Yordan, brought presents unto Yosef all his days, and the whole country was in the hand of Yosef, and they brought unto him a yearly tribute as it was regulated, for Yosef had fought against all his surrounding enemies and subdued them, and the whole country was in the hand of Yosef, and Yosef sat securely upon his throne in Egypt.

13 And also all his brothers the sons of Ya'akov dwelt securely in the land, all the days of Yosef, and they were fruitful and multiplied exceedingly in the land, and they served YHWH all their days, as their father Ya'akov had commanded them.

14 And it came to pass at the end of many days and years, when the children of Esau were dwelling quietly in their land with B'la their king, that the children of Esau were fruitful and multiplied in the land, and they resolved to go and fight with the sons of Ya'akov and all Egypt, and to deliver their brother Tz'fo, the son of Elifaz, and his men, for they were yet in those days slaves to Yosef.

15 And the children of Esau sent unto all the children of the east, and they made peace with them, and all the children of the east came unto them to go with the children of Esau to Egypt to battle.

16 And there came also unto them of the men of Angias, king of Dinhavah, and they also sent unto the children of Yishmael and they also came unto them.

17 And all this people assembled and came unto Seir to assist the children of Esau in their battle, and this camp was very large and heavy with people, numerous as the sand of the sea, about eight hundred thousand men, infantry and cavalry, and all these troops went down to Egypt to fight

with the sons of Ya'akov, and they encamped by Rameses.
18 And Yosef went forth with his brothers with the mighty men of Egypt, about six hundred men, and they fought with them in the land of Rameses; and the sons of Ya'akov at that time again fought with the children of Esau, in the fiftieth year of the sons of Ya'akov going down to Egypt, that is the thirtieth year of the reign of B'la over the children of Esau in Seir.
19 And YHWH gave all the mighty men of Esau and the children of the east into the hand of Yosef and his brothers, and the men of the children of Esau and the children of the east were smitten before Yosef.
20 And of the men of Esau and the children of the east that were slain, there fell before the sons of Ya'akov about two hundred thousand men, and their king B'la the son of B'or fell with them in the battle, and when the children of Esau saw that their king had fallen in battle and was dead, their hands became weak in the combat.
21 And Yosef and his brothers and all Egypt were still smiting the people of the house of Esau, and all Esau's people were afraid of the sons of Ya'akov and fled from before them.
22 And Yosef and his brothers and all Egypt pursued them a day's journey, and they slew yet from them about three hundred men, continuing to smite them in the road; and they afterward turned back from them.
23 And Yosef and all his brothers returned to Egypt, not one man was missing from them, but of the Egyptians there fell twelve men.
24 And when Yosef returned to Egypt he ordered Tz'fo and his men to be additionally bound, and they bound them in irons and they increased their grief.
25 And all the men of the children of Esau, and the children of the east, returned in shame each unto his city, for all the

mighty men that were with them had fallen in battle.

26 And when the children of Esau saw that their king had died in battle they hastened and took a man from the people of the children of the east; his name was Yovav the son of Tzerach, from the land of Batzrah, and they caused him to reign over them instead of B'la their king.

27 And Yovav sat upon the throne of B'la as king in his stead, and Yovav reigned in Edom over all the children of Esau ten years, and the children of Esau went no more to fight with the sons of Ya'akov from that day forward, for the sons of Esau knew the valor of the sons of Ya'akov, and they were greatly afraid of them.

28 But from that day forward the children of Esau hated the sons of Ya'akov, and the hatred and enmity were very strong between them all the days, unto this day.

29 And it came to pass after this, at the end of ten years, Yovav, the son of Tzerach king of Edom⁷⁹ died, and the children of Esau took a man whose name was Chusham, from the land of Teman, and they made him king over them instead of Yovav, and Chusham reigned in Edom over all the children of Esau for twenty years.

30 And Yosef, king of Egypt, and his brothers, and all the children of Israel dwelt securely in Egypt in those days, together with all the children of Yosef and his brothers, having no hindrance or evil accident and the land of Egypt was at that time at rest from war in the days of Yosef and his brothers.

⁷⁹ "king of Edom" Moses Samuel has "from Botzrah"

Sefer Sh'mot

CHAPTER 59

1 And these are the names of the sons of Israel who dwelt in Egypt, who had come with Ya'akov, all the sons of Ya'akov came unto Egypt, every man with his house.

2 The children of Leah were Re'uven, Shim'on, Levi, Y'hudah, Yissakhar and Z'vulun, and their sister Dinah.

3 And the sons of Rakhel were Yosef and Benyamin.

4 And the sons of Zilpah, the handmaid of Leah, were Gad and Asher.

5 And the sons of Bilhah, the handmaid of Rakhel, were Dan and Naftali.

6 And these were their offspring that were born unto them in the land of Kanaan, before they came unto Egypt with their father Ya'akov.

7 The sons of Re'uven were Chanoch, Pallu, Chetzron and Karmi.

8 And the sons of Shim'on were Y'muel, Yamin, Ohad, Yakin, Tzochar and Shaul, the son of the Kanaanitess.

9 And the children of Levi were Gershon, K'hat and M'rari, and their sister Yokeved, who was born unto them in their going down to Egypt.

10 And the sons of Y'hudah were Er, Onan, Shelah, Peretz and Zarach.

11 And Er and Onan died in the land of Kanaan; and the sons of Perez were Chezron and Chamul.

12 And the sons of Yissakhar were Tola, Puvah, Jov and Shomron.

13 And the sons of Z'vulun were Sered, Elon and Yachleel, and the son of Dan was Chushim.

14 And the sons of Naftali were Yachtzeel, Guni, Yetzer and

Shilam.

15 And the sons of Gad were Tziphion, Chaggi, Shuni, Etzbon, Eri, Arodi and Areli.

16 And the children of Asher were Yimnah, Yishvah, Yishvi, Beriah and their sister Serach; and the sons of Beriah were Cheber and Malchiel.

17 And the sons of Benjamin were B'la, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Achi, Rosh, Mupim, Chupim and Ard.

18 And the sons of Yosef, that were born unto him in Egypt, were M'nasheh and Efrayim.

19 And all the souls that went forth from the loins of Ya'akov, were seventy souls; these are they who came with Ya'akov their father unto Egypt to dwell there: and Yosef and all his brothers dwelt securely in Egypt, and they ate of the best of Egypt all the days of the life of Yosef.

20 And Yosef lived in the land of Egypt ninety-three years, and Yosef reigned over all Egypt eighty years.

21 And when the days of Yosef came near that he should die, he sent and called for his brothers and all his father's house, and they all came together and sat before him.

22 And Yosef said unto his brothers and unto the whole of his father's house, Behold I die, and Elohim will surely visit you and bring you up from this land to the land which he swore to your fathers to give unto them.

23 And it shall be when Elohim shall visit you to bring you up from here to the land of your fathers, then bring up my bones with you from here.

24 And Yosef made the sons of Israel to swear for their seed after them, saying, Elohim will surely visit you and you shall bring up my bones with you from here.

25 And it came to pass after this that Yosef died in that year, the seventy-first year of the Israelites going down to Egypt.

26 And Yosef was one hundred and ten years old when he died in the land of Egypt, and all his brothers and all his

servants rose up and they embalmed Yosef, as was their custom, and his brothers and all Egypt mourned over him for seventy days.

27 And they put Yosef in a coffin filled with spices and all sorts of perfume, and they buried him by the side of the river, that is Sihor, and his sons and all his brothers, and the whole of his father's house made a seven day's mourning for him.

28 And it came to pass after the death of Yosef, all the Egyptians began in those days to rule over the children of Israel, and Pharaoh, king of Egypt, who reigned in his father's stead, took all the laws of Egypt and conducted the whole kingdom of Egypt under his counsel, and he reigned securely over his people.

CHAPTER 60

1 And at the revolution⁸⁰ of the year, being the seventy-second year from the Israelites going down to Egypt, after the death of Yosef, Tz'fo, the son of Elifaz, the son of Esau, fled from Egypt, he and his men, and they went away.

2 And he came to Africa, which is Dinhavah, to Angias king of Africa, and Angias received them with great honor, and he made Tz'fo the captain of his host.

3 And Tz'fo found favor in the eyes of Angias and in the eyes of his people, and Tz'fo was captain of the host to Angias king of Africa for many days.

4 And Tz'fo enticed Angias king of Africa to collect all his army to go and fight with the Egyptians, and with the sons of Ya'akov, and to avenge of them the cause of his brothers.

5 But Angias would not listen to Tz'fo to do this thing, for Angias knew the strength of the sons of Ya'akov, and what

⁸⁰ or "equinox"

they had done to his army in their warfare with the children of Esau.

6 And Tz'fo was in those days very great in the eyes of Angias and in the eyes of all his people, and he continually enticed them to make war against Egypt, but they would not.

7 And it came to pass in those days there was in the land of Chittim a man in the city of Putzay'mana, whose name was Utzu, and he became degenerately deified by the children of Chittim, and the man died and had no son, only one daughter whose name was Yanyiah.

8 And the damsel was exceedingly beautiful, comely and intelligent, there was none seen like unto her for beauty and wisdom in all the land.

9 And the men of Angias king of Africa saw her and they came and praised her unto him, and Angias sent to the children of Chittim, and he requested to take her unto himself for a wife, and the people of Chittim consented to give her unto him for a wife.

10 And when the messengers of Angias were going forth from the land of Chittim to take their journey, behold the messengers of Turgos king of Bevintu came unto Chittim, for Turgos king of Bevintu also sent his messengers to request Yanyiah for him, to take unto himself for a wife, for all his men had also praised her to him, therefore he sent all his servants unto her.

11 And the servants of Turgos came to Chittim, and they asked for Yanyiah, to be taken unto Turgos their king for a wife.

12 And the men of Chittim said unto them, We cannot give her, because Angias king of Africa desired her to take her unto him for a wife before you came, and that we should give her unto him, and now therefore we cannot do this thing to deprive Angias of the damsel in order to give her unto Turgos.

13 For we are greatly afraid of Angias lest he come in battle against us and destroy us, and Turgos your lord will not be able to deliver us from his hand.

14 And when the messengers of Turgos heard all the words of the children of Chittim, they turned back to their lord and told him all the words of the children of Chittim.

15 And the children of Chittim sent a memorial to Angias, saying, Behold Turgos has sent for Yanyiah to take her unto him for a wife, and thus have we answered him; and we heard that he has collected his whole army to go to war against you, and he intends to pass by the road of Sardun'ya to fight against your brother Lukush, and after that he will come to fight against you.

16 And Angias heard the words of the children of Chittim which they sent to him in the record, and his anger was kindled and he rose up and assembled his whole army and came through the islands of the sea, the road to Sardun'ya, unto his brother Lukush king of Sardun'ya.

17 And Giv'losh, the son of Lukush, heard that his uncle Angias was coming, and he went out to meet him with a heavy army, and he kissed him and embraced him, and Giv'losh said unto Angias, When you askest my father after his welfare, when I shall go with you to fight with Turgos, ask of him to make me captain of his host, and Angias did so, and he came unto his brother and his brother came to meet him, and he asked him after his welfare.

18 And Angias asked his brother Lukush after his welfare, and to make his son Giv'losh captain of his host, and Lukush did so, and Angias and his brother Lukush rose up and they went toward Turgos to battle, and there was with them a great army and a heavy people.

19 And he came in ships, and they came into the province of Eshtores, and behold Turgos came toward them, for he went forth to Sardunia, and intended to destroy it and

afterward to pass on from there to Angias to fight with him.

20 And Angias and Lukush his brother met Turgos in the valley of Kanaf'ya, and the battle was strong and mighty between them in that place.

21 And the battle was severe upon Lukush king of Sardun'ya, and all his army fell, and Giv'losh his son fell also in that battle.

22 And his uncle Angias commanded his servants and they made a golden coffin for Giv'losh and they put him into it, and Angias again waged battle toward Turgos, and Angias was stronger than he, and he slew him, and he smote all his people with the edge of the sword, and Angias avenged the cause of Giv'losh his brother's son and the cause of the army of his brother Lukush.

23 And when Turgos died, the hands of those that survived the battle became weak, and they fled from before Angias and Lukush his brother.

24 And Angias and his brother Lukush pursued them unto the highroad, which is between El'panu and Romah, and they slew the whole army of Turgos with the edge of the sword.

25 And Lukush king of Sardun'ya commanded his servants that they should make a coffin of brass, and that they should place therein the body of his son Giv'losh, and they buried him in that place.

26 And they built upon it a high tower there upon the highroad, and they called its name after the name of Giv'losh unto this day, and they also buried Turgos king of Bevintu there in that place with Giv'losh.

27 And behold upon the highroad between El'panu and Romah the grave of Giv'losh is on one side and the grave of Turgos on the other, and a pavement between them unto this day.

28 And when Giv'losh was buried, Lukush his father

returned with his army to his land Sardun'ya, and Angias his brother king of Africa went with his people unto the city of Bevintu, that is the city of Turgos.

29 And the inhabitants of Bevintu heard of his fame and they were greatly afraid of him, and they went forth to meet him with weeping and supplication, and the inhabitants of Bevintu entreated of Angias not to slay them nor destroy their city; and he did so, for Bevintu was in those days reckoned as one of the cities of the children of Chittim; therefore he did not destroy the city.

30 But from that day forward the troops of the king of Africa would go to Chittim to spoil and plunder it, and whenever they went, Tz'fo the captain of the host of Angias would go with them.

31 And it was after this that Angias turned with his army and they came to the city of Putzay'mana, and Angias took thence Yanyiah the daughter of Utzu for a wife and brought her unto his city unto Africa.

CHAPTER 61

1 And it came to pass at that time Pharaoh king of Egypt commanded all his people to make for him a strong palace in Egypt.

2 And he also commanded the sons of Ya'akov to assist the Egyptians in the building, and the Egyptians made a beautiful and elegant palace for a royal habitation, and he dwelt therein and he renewed his kingdom and he reigned securely.

3 And Z'vulun the son of Ya'akov died in that year, that is the seventy-second year of the going down of the Israelites to Egypt, and Z'vulun died a hundred and fourteen years old, and was put into a coffin and given into the hands of his

children.

4 And in the seventy-fifth year died his brother Shim'on, he was a hundred and twenty years old at his death, and he was also put into a coffin and given into the hands of his children.

5 And Tz'fo the son of Elifaz the son of Esau, captain of the host to Angias king of Dinhavah, was still daily enticing Angias to prepare for battle to fight with the sons of Ya'akov in Egypt, and Angias was unwilling to do this thing, for his servants had related to him all the might of the sons of Ya'akov, what they had done unto them in their battle with the children of Esau.

6 And Tz'fo was in those days daily enticing Angias to fight with the sons of Ya'akov in those days.

7 And after some days Angias hearkened to the words of Tz'fo and consented to him to fight with the sons of Ya'akov in Egypt, and Angias got all his people in order, a people numerous as the sand which is upon the sea shore, and he formed his resolution to go to Egypt to battle.

8 And among the servants of Angias was a youth fifteen years old, Balaam the son of B'or was his name and the youth was very wise and understood the art of conjuring⁸¹.

9 And Angias said unto Balaam, Conjure for us, I pray you, by conjuring, that we may know who will prevail in this battle to which we are now proceeding.

10 And Balaam ordered that they should bring him wax, and he made thereof the likeness of chariots and horsemen representing the army of Angias and the army of Egypt, and he put them in the cunningly prepared waters that he had for that purpose, and he took in his hand the boughs of myrtle trees, and he exercised his cunning, and he joined them over the water, and there appeared unto him in the water the resembling images of the hosts of Angias falling before the

⁸¹ קסס

resembling images of the Egyptians and the sons of Ya'akov.

11 And Balaam told this thing to Angias, and Angias despaired and did not arm himself to go down to Egypt to battle, and he remained in his city.

12 And when Tz'fo the son of Elifaz saw that Angias despaired of going forth to battle with the Egyptians, Tz'fo fled from Angias from Africa, and he went and came unto Chittim.

13 And all the men of Chittim received him with great honor, and they hired him to fight their battles all the days, and Tz'fo became exceedingly rich in those days, and the troops of the king of Africa still spread themselves in those days, and the children of Chittim assembled and went to Mount Kapatitzia on account of the troops of Angias king of Africa, who were advancing upon them.

14 And it was one day that Tz'fo lost a young heifer, and he went to seek it, and he heard it lowing round about the mountain.

15 And Tz'fo went and he saw and behold there was a large cave at the bottom of the mountain, and there was a great stone there at the entrance of the cave, and Tz'fo split the stone and he came into the cave and he looked and behold, a large animal was devouring the ox; from the middle upward it resembled a man, and from the middle downward it resembled an animal, and Tz'fo rose up against the animal and slew it with his swords.

16 And the inhabitants of Chittim heard of this thing, and they rejoiced exceedingly, and they said, What shall we do unto this man who has slain this animal that devoured our cattle?

17 And they all assembled to consecrate one day in the year to him, and they called the name thereof Tz'fo after his name, and they brought unto him drink offerings year after

year on that day, and they brought unto him gifts.

18 At that time Yanyiah the daughter of Utzu wife of king Angias became ill, and her illness was heavily felt by Angias and his officers, and Angias said unto his wise men, What shall I do to Yanyiah and how shall I heal her from her illness? And his wise men said unto him, Because the air of our country is not like the air of the land of Chittim, and our water is not like their water, therefore from this has the queen become ill.

19 For through the change of air and water she became ill, and also because in her country she drank only the water which came from Poremah, which her ancestors had brought up with bridges.

20 And Angias commanded his servants, and they brought unto him in vessels of the waters of Poremah belonging to Chittim, and they weighed those waters with all the waters of the land of Africa, and they found those waters lighter than the waters of Africa.

21 And Angias saw this thing, and he commanded all his officers to assemble the hewers of stone in thousands and tens of thousands, and they hewed stone without number, and the builders came and they built an exceedingly strong bridge, and they conveyed the spring of water from the land of Chittim unto Africa, and those waters were for Yanyiah the queen and for all her concerns, to drink from and to bake, wash and bathe therewith, and also to water therewith all seed from which food can be obtained, and all fruit of the ground.

22 And the king commanded that they should bring of the soil of Chittim in large ships, and they also brought stones to build therewith, and the builders built palaces for Yanyiah the queen, and the queen became healed of her illness.

23 And at the revolution⁸² of the year the troops of Africa

⁸² or “equinox”

continued coming to the land of Chittim to plunder as usual, and Tz'fo son of Elifaz heard their report, and he gave orders concerning them and he fought with them, and they fled before him, and he delivered the land of Chittim from them.

24 And the children of Chittim saw the valor of Tz'fo, and the children of Chittim resolved and they made Tz'fo king over them, and he became king over them, and while he reigned they went to subdue the children of Tuval, and all the surrounding islands.

25 And their king Tz'fo went at their head and they made war with Tuval and the islands, and they subdued them, and when they returned from the battle they renewed his kingdom for him, and they built for him a very large palace for his royal habitation and seat, and they made a large throne for him, and Tz'fo reigned over the whole land of Chittim and over the land of Italia⁸³ fifty years.

CHAPTER 62

1 In that year, being the seventy-ninth year of the Israelites going down to Egypt, died Re'uven the son of Ya'akov, in the land of Egypt; Re'uven was a hundred and twenty-five years old when he died, and they put him into a coffin, and he was given into the hands of his children.

2 And in the eightieth year died his brother Dan; he was a hundred and twenty years at his death, and he was also put into a coffin and given into the hands of his children.

3 And in that year died Chusham king of Edom, and after him reigned Hadad the son of Bedad, for thirty-five years; and in the eighty-first year died Yissakhar the son of Ya'akov, in Egypt, and Yissakhar was a hundred and

⁸³ אִיטַלְיָא (Italy)

twenty-two years old at his death, and he was put into a coffin in Egypt, and given into the hands of his children.

4 And in the eighty-second year died Asher his brother, he was a hundred and twenty-three years old at his death, and he was placed in a coffin in Egypt, and given into the hands of his children.

5 And in the eighty-third year died Gad, he was a hundred and twenty-five years old at his death, and he was put into a coffin in Egypt, and given into the hands of his children.

6 And it came to pass in the eighty-fourth year, that is the fiftieth year of the reign of Hadad, son of Bedad, king of Edom, that Hadad assembled all the children of Esau, and he got his whole army in readiness, about four hundred thousand men, and he directed his way to the land of Moav, and he went to fight with Moav and to make them tributary to him.

7 And the children of Moav heard this thing, and they were very much afraid, and they sent to the children of Midyan to assist them in fighting with Hadad, son of Bedad, king of Edom.

8 And Hadad came unto the land of Moav, and Moav and the children of Midyan went out to meet him, and they placed themselves in battle array against him in the field of Moav.

9 And Hadad fought with Moav, and there fell of the children of Moav and the children of Midyan many slain ones, about two hundred thousand men.

10 And the battle was very severe upon Moav, and when the children of Moav saw that the battle was sore upon them, they weakened their hands and turned their backs, and left the children of Midyan to carry on the battle.

11 And the children of Midyan knew not the intentions of Moav, but they strengthened themselves in battle and fought with Hadad and all his host, and all Midyan fell before him.

12 And Hadad smote all Midyan with a heavy smiting, and he slew them with the edge of the sword, he left none remaining of those who came to assist Moav.

13 And when all the children of Midyan had perished in battle, and the children at Moav had escaped, Hadad made all Moav at that time tributary to him, and they became under his hand, and they gave a yearly tax as it was ordered, and Hadad turned and went back to his land.

14 And at the revolution⁸⁴ of the year, when the rest of the people of Midyan that were in the land heard that all their brothers had fallen in battle with Hadad for the sake of Moav, because the children of Moav had turned their backs in battle and left Midyan to fight, then five of the princes of Midyan resolved with the rest of their brothers who remained in their land, to fight with Moav to avenge the cause of their brothers.

15 And the children of Midyan sent to all their brothers the children of the east, and all their brothers, all the children of Keturah came to assist Midyan to fight with Moav.

16 And the children of Moav heard this thing, and they were greatly afraid that all the children of the east had assembled together against them for battle, and they the children of Moav sent a memorial to the land of Edom to Hadad the son of Bedad, saying,

17 Come now unto us and assist us and we will smite Midyan, for they all assembled together and have come against us with all their brothers the children of the east to battle, to avenge the cause of Midyan that fell in battle.

18 And Hadad, son of Bedad, king of Edom, went forth with his whole army and went to the land of Moav to fight with Midyan, and Midyan and the children of the east fought with Moav in the field of Moav, and the battle was very fierce between them.

⁸⁴ or “equinox”

19 And Hadad smote all the children of Midyan and the children of the east with the edge of the sword, and Hadad at that time delivered Moav from the hand of Midyan, and those that remained of Midyan and of the children of the east fled before Hadad and his army, and Hadad pursued them to their land, and smote them with a very heavy slaughter, and the slain fell in the road.

20 And Hadad delivered Moav from the hand of Midyan, for all the children of Midyan had fallen by the edge of the sword, and Hadad turned and went back to his land.

21 And from that day forth, the children of Midyan hated the children of Moav, because they had fallen in battle for their sake, and there was a great and mighty enmity between them all the days.

22 And all that were found of Midyan in the road of the land of Moav perished by the sword of Moav, and all that were found of Moav in the road of the land of Midyan, perished by the sword of Midyan; thus did Midyan unto Moav and Moav unto Midyan for many days.

23 And it came to pass at that time that Y'hudah the son of Ya'akov died in Egypt, in the eighty-sixth year of Ya'akov's going down to Egypt, and Y'hudah was a hundred and twenty-nine years old at his death, and they embalmed him and put him into a coffin, and he was given into the hands of his children.

24 And in the eighty-ninth year died Naftali, he was a hundred and thirty-two years old, and he was put into a coffin and given into the hands of his children.

25 And it came to pass in the ninety-first year of the Israelites going down to Egypt, that is in the thirtieth year of the reign of Tz'fo the son of Elifaz, the son of Esau, over the children of Chittim, the children of Africa came upon the children of Chittim to plunder them as usual, but they had not come upon them for these thirteen years.

26 And they came to them in that year, and Tz'fo the son of Elifaz went out to them with some of his men and smote them desperately, and the troops of Africa fled from before Tz'fo and the slain fell before him, and Tz'fo and his men pursued them, going on and smiting them until they were near unto Africa.

27 And Angias king of Africa heard the thing which Tz'fo had done, and it vexed him exceedingly, and Angias was afraid of Tz'fo all the days.

CHAPTER 63

1 And in the ninety-third year died Levi, the son of Ya'akov, in Egypt, and Levi was a hundred and thirty-seven years old when he died, and they put him into a coffin and he was given into the hands of his children.

2 And it came to pass after the death of Levi, when all Egypt saw that the sons of Ya'akov the brothers of Yosef were dead, all the Egyptians began to afflict the children of Ya'akov, and to embitter their lives from that day unto the day of their going forth from Egypt, and they took from their hands all the vineyards and fields which Yosef had given unto them, and all the elegant houses in which the people of Israel lived, and all the fat of Egypt, the Egyptians took all from the sons of Ya'akov in those days.

3 And the hand of all Egypt became more grievous in those days against the children of Israel, and the Egyptians injured the Israelites until the children of Israel were wearied of their lives on account of the Egyptians.

4 And it came to pass in many days, in the hundred and second year of Israel's going down to Egypt, that Pharaoh king of Egypt died, and Malol his son reigned in his stead, and all the mighty men of Egypt and all that generation

which knew Yosef and his brothers died in those days.

5 And another generation rose up in their stead, which had not known the sons of Ya'akov and all the good which they had done to them, and all their might in Egypt.

6 Therefore all Egypt began from that day forth to embitter the lives of the sons of Ya'akov, and to afflict them with all manner of hard labor, because they had not known their ancestors who had delivered them in the days of the famine.

7 And this was also from YHWH, for the children of Israel, to benefit them in their latter days, in order that all the children of Israel might know YHWH Elohim.

8 And in order to know the signs and mighty wonders which YHWH would do in Egypt on account of his people Israel, in order that the children of Israel might fear YHWH Elohi of their ancestors, and walk in all his ways, they and their seed after them all the days.

9 Malol was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned ninety-four years, and all Egypt called his name Pharaoh after the name of his father, as it was their custom to do to every king who reigned over them in Egypt.

10 At that time all the troops of Angias king of Africa went forth to spread along the land of Chittim as usual for plunder.

11 And Tz'fo the son of Elifaz the son of Esau heard their report, and he went forth to meet them with his army, and he fought them there in the road.

12 And Tz'fo smote the troops of the king of Africa with the edge of the sword, and left none remaining of them, and not even one returned to his lord in Africa.

13 And Angias heard of this which Tz'fo the son of Elifaz had done to all his troops, that he had destroyed them, and Angias assembled all his troops, all the men of the land of Africa, a people numerous like the sand by the sea shore.

14 And Angias sent to Lukush his brother, saying, Come to

me with all your men and help me to smite Tz'fo and all the children of Chittim who have destroyed my men, and Lukush came with his whole army, a very great force, to assist Angias his brother to fight with Tz'fo and the children of Chittim.

15 And Tz'fo and the children of Chittim heard this thing, and they were greatly afraid and a great terror fell upon their hearts.

16 And Tz'fo also sent a letter to the land of Edom to Hadad the son of Bedad king of Edom and to all the children of Esau, saying,

17 I have heard that Angias king of Africa is coming to us with his brother for battle against us, and we are greatly afraid of him, for his army is very great, particularly as he comes against us with his brother and his army likewise.

18 Now therefore come you also up with me and help me, and we will fight together against Angias and his brother Lukush, and you will save us out of their hands, but if not, know you that we shall all die.

19 And the children of Esau sent a letter to the children of Chittim and to Tz'fo their king, saying, We cannot fight against Angias and his people for a covenant of peace has been between us these many years, from the days of Bela the first king, and from the days of Yosef the son of Ya'akov king of Egypt, with whom we fought on the other side of Yardan when he buried his father.

20 And when Tz'fo heard the words of his brothers the children of Esau he refrained from them, and Tz'fo was greatly afraid of Angias.

21 And Angias and Lukush his brother arrayed all their forces, about eight hundred thousand men, against the children of Chittim.

22 And all the children of Chittim said unto Tz'fo, Pray for us to Elohi of your ancestors, peradventure he may deliver

us from the hand of Angias and his army, for we have heard that he is a great Elohim and that he delivers all who trust in him.

23 And Tz'fo heard their words, and Tz'fo sought YHWH and he said,

24 YHWH Elohi of Avraham and Yitz'chak my ancestors, this day I know that you are a true Elohim, and all the gods of the nations are vain and useless.

25 Remember now this day unto me your covenant with Avraham our father, which our ancestors related unto us, and do graciously with me this day for the sake of Avraham and Yitz'chak our fathers, and save me and the children of Chittim from the hand of the king of Africa who comes against us for battle.

26 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Tz'fo, and he had regard for him on account of Avraham and Yitz'chak, and YHWH delivered Tz'fo and the children of Chittim from the hand of Angias and his people.

27 And Tz'fo fought Angias king of Africa and all his people on that day, and YHWH gave all the people of Angias into the hands of the children of Chittim.

28 And the battle was severe upon Angias, and Tz'fo smote all the men of Angias and Lukush his brother, with the edge of the sword, and there fell from them unto the evening of that day about four hundred thousand men.

29 And when Angias saw that all his men perished, he sent a letter to all the inhabitants of Africa to come to him, to assist him in the battle, and he wrote in the letter, saying, All who are found in Africa let them come unto me from ten years old and upward; let them all come unto me, and behold if he comes not he shall die, and all that he has, with his whole house, the king will take.

30 And all the rest of the inhabitants of Africa were terrified at the words of Angias, and there went out of the city about

three hundred thousand men and boys, from ten years upward, and they came to Angias.

31 And at the end of ten days Angias renewed the battle against Tz'fo and the children of Chittim, and the battle was very great and strong between them.

32 And from the army of Angias and Lukush, Tz'fo sent many of the wounded unto his hand, about two thousand men, and Susifeter the captain of the host of Angias fell in that battle.

33 And when Susifeter had fallen, the African troops turned their backs to flee, and they fled, and Angias and Lukush his brother were with them.

34 And Tz'fo and the children of Chittim pursued them, and they smote them still heavily on the road, about two hundred men, and they pursued Ezdrubal the son of Angias who had fled with his father, and they smote twenty of his men in the road, and Ezdrubal escaped from the children of Chittim, and they did not slay him.

35 And Angias and Lukush his brother fled with the rest of their men, and they escaped and came into Africa with terror and consternation, and Angias feared all the days lest Tz'fo the son of Elifaz should go to war with him.

CHAPTER 64

1 And Balaam the son of B'or was at that time with Angias in the battle, and when he saw that Tz'fo prevailed over Angias, he fled from there and came to Chittim.

2 And Tz'fo and the children of Chittim received him with great honor, for Tz'fo knew Balaam's wisdom, and Tz'fo gave unto Balaam many gifts and he remained with him.

3 And when Tz'fo had returned from the war, he commanded all the children of Chittim to be numbered who

had gone into battle with him, and behold not one was missed.

4 And Tz'fo rejoiced at this thing, and he renewed his kingdom, and he made a feast to all his subjects.

5 But Tz'fo remembered not YHWH and considered not that YHWH had helped him in battle, and that he had delivered him and his people from the hand of the king of Africa, but still walked in the ways of the children of Chittim and the wicked children of Esau, to serve other gods which his brothers the children of Esau had taught him; it is therefore said, From the wicked goes forth wickedness.

6 And Tz'fo reigned over all the children of Chittim securely, but knew not YHWH who had delivered him and all his people from the hand of the king of Africa; and the troops of Africa came no more to Chittim to plunder as usual, for they knew of the power of Tz'fo who had smitten them all at the edge of the sword, so Angias was afraid of Tz'fo the son of Elifaz, and of the children of Chittim all the days.

7 At that time when Tz'fo had returned from the war, and when Tz'fo had seen how he prevailed over all the people of Africa and had smitten them in battle at the edge of the sword, then Tz'fo advised with the children of Chittim, to go to Egypt to fight with the sons of Ya'akov and with Pharaoh king of Egypt.

8 For Tz'fo heard that the mighty men of Egypt were dead and that Yosef and his brothers the sons at Ya'akov were dead, and that all their children the children of Israel remained in Egypt.

9 And Tz'fo considered to go to fight against them and all Egypt, to avenge the cause of his brothers the children of Esau, whom Yosef with his brothers and all Egypt had smitten in the land of Kanaan, when they went up to bury Ya'akov in Chevron.

10 And Tz'fo sent messengers to Hadad, son of Bedad, king of Edom, and to all his brothers the children of Esau, saying,
11 Did you not say that you would not fight against the king of Africa for he is a member of your covenant? behold I fought with him and smote him and all his people.

12 Now therefore I have resolved to fight against Egypt and the children of Ya'akov who are there, and I will be revenged of them for what Yosef, his brothers and ancestors did to us in the land of Kanaan when they went up to bury their father in Chevron.

13 And now then if you are willing to come to me to assist me in fighting against them and Egypt, then shall we avenge the cause of our brothers.

14 And the children of Esau hearkened to the words of Tz'fo, and the children of Esau gathered themselves together, a very great people, and they went to assist Tz'fo and the children of Chittim in battle.

15 And Tz'fo sent to all the children of the east and to all the children of Yishmael with words like unto these, and they gathered themselves and came to the assistance of Tz'fo and the children of Chittim in the war upon Egypt.

16 And all these kings, the king of Edom and the children of the east, and all the children of Yishmael, and Tz'fo the king of Chittim went forth and arrayed all their hosts in Chevron.

17 And the camp was very heavy, extending in length a distance of three days' journey, a people numerous as the sand upon the sea shore which can not be counted.

18 And all these kings and their hosts went down and came against all Egypt in battle, and encamped together in the valley of Patros.

19 And all Egypt heard their report, and they also gathered themselves together, all the men of the land of Egypt, and of all the cities belonging to Egypt, about three hundred thousand men.

20 And the men of Egypt sent also to the children of Israel who were in those days in the land of Goshen, to come to them in order to go and fight with all the kings.

21 And all the men of Israel assembled and were about one hundred and fifty men, and they went into battle to assist the Egyptians.

22 And the men of Israel and of Egypt went forth, about three hundred thousand men and one hundred and fifty men, and they went toward these kings to battle, and they placed themselves from without the land of Goshen opposite Patros.

23 And the Egyptians believed not in Israel to go with them in their camps together for battle, for all the Egyptians said, Perhaps the children of Israel will deliver us into the hand of the children of Esau and Yishmael, for they are their brothers.

24 And all the Egyptians said unto the children of Israel, Remain you here together in your stand and we will go and fight against the children of Esau and Yishmael, and if these kings should prevail over us, then come you altogether upon them and assist us, and the children of Israel did so.

25 And Tz'fo the son of Elifaz the son of Esau king of Chittim, and Hadad the son of Bedad king of Edom, and all their camps, and all the children of the east, and children of Yishmael, a people numerous as sand, encamped together in the valley of Patros opposite Tachpanches.

26 And Balaam the son of B'or the Syrian was there in the camp of Tz'fo, for he came with the children of Chittim to the battle, and Balaam was a man highly honored in the eyes of Tz'fo and his men.

27 And Tz'fo said unto Balaam, Try by divination for us that we may know who will prevail in the battle, we or the Egyptians.

28 And Balaam rose up and tried the art of divination, and he was skillful in the knowledge of it, but he was confused

and the work was destroyed in his hand.

29 And he tried it again but it did not succeed, and Balaam despaired of it and left it and did not complete it, for this was from YHWH, in order to cause Tz'fo and his people to fall into the hand of the children of Israel, who had trusted in YHWH Elohi of their ancestors, in their war.

30 And Tz'fo and Hadad put their forces in battle array, and all the Egyptians went alone against them, about three hundred thousand men, and not one man of Israel was with them.

31 And all the Egyptians fought with these kings opposite Patros and Tachpanches, and the battle was severe against the Egyptians.

32 And the kings were stronger than the Egyptians in that battle, and about one hundred and eighty men of Egypt fell on that day, and about thirty men of the forces of the kings, and all the men of Egypt fled from before the kings, so the children of Esau and Yishmael pursued the Egyptians, continuing to smite them unto the place where was the camp of the children of Israel.

33 And all the Egyptians cried unto the children of Israel, saying, Hasten to us and assist us and save us from the hand of Esau, Yishmael and the children of Chittim.

34 And the hundred and fifty men of the children of Israel ran from their station to the camps of these kings, and the children of Israel cried unto YHWH their Elohim to deliver them.

35 And YHWH hearkened to Israel, and YHWH gave all the men of the kings into their hand, and the children of Israel fought against these kings, and the children of Israel smote about four thousand of the kings' men.

36 And YHWH threw a great consternation in the camp of the kings, so that the fear of the children of Israel fell upon them.

37 And all the hosts of the kings fled from before the children of Israel and the children of Israel pursued them continuing to smite them unto the borders of the land of Kush.

38 And the children of Israel slew of them in the road yet two thousand men, and of the children of Israel not one fell.

39 And when the Egyptians saw that the children of Israel had fought with such few men with the kings, and that the battle was so very severe against them,

40 All the Egyptians were greatly afraid of their lives on account of the strong battle, and all Egypt fled, every man hiding himself from the arrayed forces, and they hid themselves in the road, and they left the Israelites to fight.

41 And the children of Israel inflicted a terrible blow upon the kings' men, and they returned from them after they had driven them to the border of the land of Kush.

42 And all Israel knew the thing which the men of Egypt had done to them, that they had fled from them in battle, and had left them to fight alone.

43 So the children of Israel also acted with cunning, and as the children of Israel returned from battle, they found some of the Egyptians in the road and smote them there.

44 And while they slew them, they said unto them these words:

45 Wherefore did you go from us and leave us, being a few people, to fight against these kings who had a great people to smite us, that you might thereby deliver your own souls?

46 And of some which the Israelites met on the road, they the children of Israel spoke to each other, saying, Smite, smite, for he is an Ishmaelite, or an Edomite, or from the children of Chittim, and they stood over him and slew him, and they knew that he was an Egyptian.

47 And the children of Israel did these things cunningly against the Egyptians, because they had deserted them in

battle and had fled from them.

48 And the children of Israel slew of the men of Egypt in the road in this manner, about two hundred men.

49 And all the men of Egypt saw the evil which the children of Israel had done to them, so all Egypt feared greatly the children of Israel, for they had seen their great power, and that not one man of them had fallen.

50 So all the children of Israel returned with joy on their road to Goshen, and the rest of Egypt returned each man to his place.

CHAPTER 65

1 And it came to pass after these things, that all the counselors of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and all the elders of Egypt assembled and came before the king and bowed down to the ground, and they sat before him.

2 And the counselors and all the elders of Egypt spoke unto the king, saying,

3 Behold the people of the children of Israel is greater and mightier than we are, and you know all the evil which they did to us in the road when we returned from battle.

4 And you have also seen their strong power, for this power is unto them from their fathers, for but a few men stood up against a people numerous as the sand, and smote them at the edge of the sword, and of themselves not one has fallen, so that if they had been numerous they would then have utterly destroyed them.

5 And now therefore give us counsel what to do with them, until we gradually destroy them from among us, lest they become too numerous for us in the land.

6 For if the children of Israel should increase in the land, they will become an obstacle to us, and if any war should

happen to take place, they with their great strength will join our enemy against us, and fight against us, destroy us from the land and go away from it.

7 So the king answered the elders of Egypt and said unto them, This is the plan advised against Israel, from which we will not depart,

8 Behold in the land are Pitom and Rameses, cities unfortified against battle, it behooves you and us to build them, and to fortify them.

9 And now therefore go you also and act cunningly toward them, and proclaim a voice in Egypt and in Goshen at the command of the king, saying to them,

10 All you men of Egypt, Goshen, Patros and all their inhabitants! the king has commanded us to build Pitom and Rameses, and to fortify them for battle; who among you of all Egypt, of the children of Israel and of all the inhabitants of the cities, are willing to build with us, shall each have his wages given to him daily at the king's order; so go you first and do cunningly, and gather yourselves and come to Pitom and Rameses to build.

11 And while you are building, cause a proclamation of this kind to be made throughout Egypt every day at the command of the king.

12 And when some of the children of Israel shall come to build with you, you shall give them their wages daily for a few days.

13 And after they shall have built with you for their daily hire, drag yourselves away from them daily one by one in secret, and then you shall rise up and become their task-masters and officers, and you shall leave them afterward to build without wages, and should they refuse, then force them with all your might to build.

14 And it shall come to pass if you do this it will be well with us to strengthen our land against the children of Israel,

for on account of the fatigue of the building and the work, the children of Israel will decrease, because you will deprive them from their wives day by day.

15 And all the elders of Egypt heard the counsel of the king, and the counsel seemed good in their eyes and in the eyes of the servants of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of all Egypt, and they did according to the word of the king.

16 And all the servants went away from the king, and they caused a proclamation to be made in all Egypt, in Tachpanches and in Goshen, and in all the cities which surrounded Egypt, saying,

17 You have seen what the children of Esau and Yishmael did to us, who came to war against us and wished to destroy us.

18 And now therefore the king commanded us to fortify the land, to build the cities Pitom and Rameses, and to fortify them for battle, if they should again come against us.

19 Whosoever of you from all Egypt and from the children of Israel will come to build with us, he shall have his daily wages given by the king, as his command is unto us.

20 And when Egypt and all the children of Israel heard all that the servants of Pharaoh had spoken, there came from the Egyptians, and the children of Israel to build with the servants of Pharaoh, Pitom and Rameses, but none of the children of Levi came with their brothers to build.

21 And all the servants of Pharaoh and his princes came at first with deceit to build with all Israel as daily hired laborers, and they gave to Israel their daily hire at the beginning.

22 And the servants of Pharaoh built with all Israel, and were employed in that work with Israel for a month.

23 And at the end of the month, all the servants of Pharaoh began to withdraw secretly from the people of Israel daily.

24 And Israel went on with the work at that time, but they

then received their daily hire, because some of the men of Egypt were yet carrying on the work with Israel at that time; therefore the Egyptians gave Israel their hire in those days, in order that they, the Egyptians their fellow-workmen, might also take the pay for their labor.

25 And at the end of [some] days and four months all the Egyptians had withdrawn from the children of Israel, so that the children of Israel were left alone engaged in the work.

26 And after all the Egyptians had withdrawn from the children of Israel they returned and became oppressors and officers over them, and some of them stood over the children of Israel as task lords, to receive from them all that they gave them for the pay of their labor.

27 And the Egyptians did in this manner to the children of Israel day by day, in order to afflict in their work.

28 And all the children of Israel were alone engaged in the labor, and the Egyptians refrained from giving any pay to the children of Israel from that time forward.

29 And when some of the men of Israel refused to work on account of the wages not being given to them, then the exactors and the servants of Pharaoh oppressed them and smote them with heavy blows, and made them return by force, to labor with their brothers; thus did all the Egyptians unto the children of Israel all the days.

30 And all the children of Israel were greatly afraid of the Egyptians in this matter, and all the children of Israel returned and worked alone without pay.

31 And the children of Israel built Pitom and Rameses, and all the children of Israel did the work, some making bricks, and some building, and the children of Israel built and fortified all the land of Egypt and its walls, and the children of Israel were engaged in work for many years, until the time came when YHWH remembered them and brought them out of Egypt.

32 But all the children of Levi were not employed in the work with their brothers of Israel, from the beginning unto the day of their going forth from Egypt.

33 For all the children of Levi knew that the Egyptians had spoken all these words with deceit to the Israelites, therefore the children of Levi refrained from approaching to the work with their brothers.

34 And also all the Egyptians did not direct their attention to make the children of Levi work afterward, since they had not been with their brothers at the beginning, therefore the Egyptians left them alone.

35 And the hands of the men of Egypt were directed with continued severity against the children of Israel in that work, and the Egyptians made the children of Israel work with rigor.

36 And the Egyptians embittered the lives of the children of Israel with hard work, in mortar and bricks, and also in all manner of work in the field.

37 And the children of Israel called Malol the king of Egypt "Maror, king of Egypt"⁸⁵, because in his days the Egyptians had embittered their lives with all manner of work.

38 And in all the work wherein the Egyptians made the children of Israel labor, they exacted with rigor, in order to afflict the children of Israel, but the more they afflicted them, the more they increased and grew, and the Egyptians were grieved because of the children of Israel.

CHAPTER 66

1 At that time died Hadad the son of Bedad king of Edom,

⁸⁵ In Ancient Egyptian Hieroglyphics there is no "l" symbol, so that proper nouns with the "l" sound are generally transliterated in Egyptian Hieroglyphics as if they had the "r" sound instead, thus lending to a wordplay for this name which sounds like the Hebrew word for "bitter".

and Samlah from Mesrekah, from the country of the children of the east, reigned in his place.

2 In the thirteenth year of the reign of Pharaoh king of Egypt, which was the hundred and twenty-fifth year of the Israelites going down into Egypt, Samlah had reigned over Edom eighteen years.

3 And when he reigned, he drew forth his hosts to go and fight against Tz'fo the son of Elifaz and the children of Chittim, because they had made war against Angias king of Africa, and they destroyed his whole army.

4 But he did not engage with him, for the children of Esau prevented him, saying, He was their brother, so Samlah listened to the voice of the children of Esau, and turned back with all his forces to the land of Edom, and did not proceed to fight against Tz'fo the son of Elifaz.

5 And Pharaoh king of Egypt heard this thing, saying, Samlah king of Edom has resolved to fight the children of Chittim, and afterward he will come to fight against Egypt.

6 And when the Egyptians heard this matter, they increased the labor upon the children of Israel, lest the Israelites should do unto them as they did unto them in their war with the children of Esau in the days of Hadad.

7 So the Egyptians said unto the children of Israel, Hasten and do your work, and finish your task, and strengthen the land, lest the children of Esau your brothers should come to fight against us, for on your account will they come against us.

8 And the children of Israel did the work of the men of Egypt day by day, and the Egyptians afflicted the children of Israel in order to lessen them in the land.

9 But as the Egyptians increased the labor upon the children of Israel, so did the children of Israel increase and multiply, and all Egypt was filled with the children of Israel.

10 And in the hundred and twenty-fifth year of Israel's going

down into Egypt, all the Egyptians saw that their counsel did not succeed against Israel, but that they increased and grew, and the land of Egypt and the land of Goshen were filled with the children of Israel.

11 So all the elders of Egypt and its wise men came before the king and bowed down to him and sat before him.

12 And all the elders of Egypt and the wise men thereof said unto the king, May the king live forever; you did counsel us the counsel against the children of Israel, and we did unto them according to the word of the king.

13 But in proportion to the increase of the labor so do they increase and grow in the land, and behold the whole country is filled with them.

14 And now therefore our lord and king, the eyes of all Egypt are upon you to give them advice with your wisdom, by which they may prevail over Israel to destroy them, or to diminish them from the land; and the king answered them saying, Give you counsel in this matter that we may know what to do unto them.

15 And an officer, one of the king's counselors, whose name was Yov, from Mesopotamia, in the land of Utz, answered the king, saying,

16 If it please the king, let him hear the counsel of his servant; and the king said unto him, Speak.

17 And Yov spoke before the king, the princes, and before all the elders of Egypt, saying,

18 Behold the counsel of the king which he advised formerly respecting the labor of the children of Israel is very good, and you must not remove from them that labor forever.

19 But this is the advice counseled by which you may lessen them, if it seems good to the king to afflict them.

20 Behold we have feared war for a long time, and we said, When Israel becomes fruitful in the land, they will drive us

from the land if a war should take place.

21 If it please the king, let a royal decree go forth, and let it be written

in the laws of Egypt which shall not be revoked, that every male child born to the Israelites, his blood shall be spilled upon the ground.

22 And by your doing this thing, when all the male children of Israel shall have died, the evil of their wars will cease; let the king do so and send for all the Hebrew midwives and order them in this matter to execute it; so the thing pleased the king and the princes, and the king did according to the word of Yov.

23 And Pharaoh sent for the Hebrew midwives to be called, of which the name of one was Shefrah, and the name of the other Puah.

24 And the midwives came before the king, and stood in his presence.

25 And the king said unto them, When you do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women, and see them upon the stools, if it be a son, then you shall kill him, but if it be a daughter, then she shall live.

26 But if you will not do this thing, then will I burn you up and all your houses with fire.

27 But the midwives feared Elohim and did not hearken to the king of Egypt nor to his words, and when the Hebrew women brought forth to the midwife son or daughter, then did the midwife do all that was necessary to the child and let it live; thus did the midwives all the days.

28 And this thing was told to the king, and he sent and called for the midwives and he said to them, Why have you done this thing and have saved the children alive?

29 And the midwives answered and spoke together before the king, saying,

30 Let not the king think that the Hebrew women are as the

Egyptian women, for all the children of Israel are hale, ⁸⁶and before the midwife comes to them they are delivered, and as for us your handmaids, for many days no Hebrew woman has brought forth upon us, for all the Hebrew women are their own midwives, because they are hale.

31 And Pharaoh heard their words and believed them in this matter, and the midwives went away from the king, and Elohim dealt well with them, and the people multiplied and waxed exceedingly.

CHAPTER 67

1 There was a man in the land of Egypt of the seed of Levi, whose name was Amram, the son of Kehat, the son of Levi, the son of Israel.

2 And this man went and took a wife, namely Yokeved the daughter of Levi his father's sister, and she was one hundred and twenty-six years old, and he came unto her.

3 And the woman conceived and bare a daughter, and she called her name Miriam, because in those days the Egyptians had embittered the lives of the children of Israel.

4 And she conceived again and bare a son and she called his name Aaron, for in the days of her conception, Pharaoh began to spill the blood of the male children of Israel.

5 In those days died Tz'fo the son of Elifaz, son of Esau, king of Chittim, and Yoniosh reigned in his stead.

6 And the days that Tz'fo reigned over the children of Chittim was fifty years, and he died and was buried in the city of Nivne in the land of Chittim.

7 And Yoniosh, one of the mighty men of the children of Chittim, reigned after him and he reigned fifty years.

8 And it was after the death of the king of Chittim that

⁸⁶ Exodus 1:19

Balaam the son of B'or fled from the land of Chittim, and he went and came to Egypt to Pharaoh king of Egypt.

9 And Pharaoh received him with great honor, for he had heard of his wisdom, and he gave him presents and made him for a counselor, and aggrandized him.

10 And Balaam dwelt in Egypt, in honor with all the nobles of the king, and the nobles exalted him, because they all coveted to learn his wisdom.

11 And in the hundred and thirtieth year of Israel's going down to Egypt, Pharaoh dreamed that he was sitting upon his kingly throne, and lifted up his eyes and saw an old man standing before him, and there were scales in the hands of the old man, such scales as are used by merchants.

12 And the old man took the scales and hung them before Pharaoh.

13 And the old man took all the elders of Egypt and all its nobles and great men, and he tied them together and put them in one scale.

14 And he took a milk kid and put it into the other scale, and the kid preponderated over all.

15 And Pharaoh was astonished at this dreadful vision, why the kid should preponderate over all, and Pharaoh awoke and behold it was a dream.

16 And Pharaoh rose up early in the morning and called all his servants and related to them the dream, and the men were greatly afraid.

17 And the king said to all his wise men, Interpret I pray you the dream which I dreamed, that I may know it.

18 And Balaam the son of B'or answered the king and said unto him, This means nothing else but a great evil that will spring up against Egypt in the latter days.

19 For a son will be born to Israel who will destroy all Egypt and its inhabitants, and bring forth the Israelites from Egypt with a mighty hand.

20 And now therefore, O king, take counsel upon this matter, that you may destroy the hope of the children of Israel and their expectation, before this evil arise against all Egypt.

21 And the king said unto Balaam, And what shall we do unto Israel? surely after a certain manner did we at first counsel against them and could not prevail over them.

22 And now therefore give you also advice against them by which we may prevail over them.

23 And Balaam answered the king, saying, Send now and call your two counselors, and we will see what their advice is upon this matter and afterward your servant will speak.

24 And the king sent and called his two counselors Reuel the Midianite and Yov the Utzite, and they came and sat before the king.

25 And the king said to them, Behold you have both heard the dream which I have dreamed, and the interpretation thereof; now therefore give counsel and know and see what is to be done to the children of Israel, whereby we may prevail over them, before their evil shall spring up against us.

26 And Reuel the Midianite answered the king and said, May the king live, may the king live forever.

27 If it seems good to the king, let him desist from the Hebrews and leave them, and let him not stretch forth his hand against them.

28 For these are they whom their Elohim chose in days of old, and took as the lot of his inheritance from among all the nations of the earth and the kings of the earth; and who is there that stretched his hand against them with impunity, of whom their Elohim was not avenged?

29 Surely you know that when Avraham went down to Egypt, Pharaoh, the former king of Egypt, saw Sarah his wife, and took her for a wife, because Avraham said, She is

my sister, for he was afraid, lest the men of Egypt should slay him on account of his wife.

30 And when the king of Egypt had taken Sarah then Elohim smote him and his house with heavy plagues, until he restored unto Avraham his wife Sarah, then was he healed.

31 And Avimelech the Gerarite, king of the Philistines, Elohim punished on account of Sarah wife of Avraham, in stopping up every womb from man to beast.

32 When their Elohim came to Avimelech in the dream of night and terrified him in order that he might restore to Avraham Sarah whom he had taken, and afterward all the people of Gerar were punished on account of Sarah, and Avraham prayed to his Elohim for them, and he was entreated of him, and he healed them.

33 And Avimelech feared all this evil that came upon him and his people, and he returned to Avraham his wife Sarah, and gave him with her many gifts.

34 He did so also to Yitz'chak when he had driven him from Gerar, and his Elohim had done wonderful things to him, that all the water courses of Gerar were dried up, and their productive trees did not bring forth.

35 Until Avimelech of Gerar, and Achuzat one of his friends, and Pikol the captain of his host, went to him and they bent and bowed down before him to the ground.

36 And they requested of him to supplicate for them, and he prayed to YHWH for them, and YHWH was entreated of him and he healed them.

37 Ya'akov also, the plain man, was delivered through his integrity from the hand of his brother Esau, and the hand of Lavan the Syrian his mother's brother, who had sought his life; likewise from the hand of all the kings of Kanaan who had come together against him and his children to destroy them, and YHWH delivered them out of their hands, that they turned upon them and smote them, for who had ever

stretched forth his hand against them with impunity?

38 Surely Pharaoh the former, your father's father, raised Yosef the son of Ya'akov above all the princes of the land of Egypt, when he saw his wisdom, for through his wisdom he rescued all the inhabitants of the land from the famine.

39 After which he ordered Ya'akov and his children to come down to Egypt, in order that through their virtue, the land of Egypt and the land of Goshen might be delivered from the famine.

40 Now therefore if it seem good in your eyes, cease from destroying the children of Israel, but if it be not your will that they shall dwell in Egypt, send them forth from here, that they may go to the land of Kanaan, the land where their ancestors dwelt.

41 And when Pharaoh heard the words of Yitro he was very angry with him, so that he rose with shame from the king's presence, and went to Midyan, his land, and took Yosef's stick with him.

42 And the king said to Yov the Utzite, What say you Yov, and what is your advice respecting the Hebrews?

43 So Yov said to the king, Behold all the inhabitants of the land are in your power, let the king do as it seems good in his eyes.

44 And the king said unto Balaam, What do you say, Balaam, speak your word that we may hear it.

45 And Balaam said to the king, Of all that the king has counseled against the Hebrews will they be delivered, and the king will not be able to prevail over them with any counsel.

46 For if you think to lessen them by the flaming fire, you canst not prevail over them, for surely their Elohim delivered Avraham their father from Ur of the Chaldeans; and if you think to destroy them with a sword, surely Yitz'chak their father was delivered from it, and a ram was

placed in his stead.

47 And if with hard and rigorous labor you think to lessen them, you will not prevail even in this, for their father Ya'akov served Lavan in all manner of hard work, and prospered.

48 Now therefore, O King, hear my words, for this is the counsel which is counseled against them, by which you will prevail over them, and from which you should not depart.

49 If it please the king let him order all their children which shall be born from this day forward, to be thrown into the water, for by this canst you wipe away their name, for none of them, nor of their fathers, were tried in this manner.

50 And the king heard the words of Balaam, and the thing pleased the king and the princes, and the king did according to the word of Balaam.

51 And the king ordered a proclamation to be issued and a law to be made throughout the land of Egypt, saying, Every male child born to the Hebrews from this day forward shall be thrown into the water.

52 And Pharaoh called unto all his servants, saying, Go now and seek throughout the land of Goshen where the children of Israel are, and see that every son born to the Hebrews shall be cast into the river, but every daughter you shall let live.

53 And when the children of Israel heard this thing which Pharaoh had commanded, to cast their male children into the river, some of the people separated from their wives and others adhered to them.

54 And from that day forward, when the time of delivery arrived to those women of Israel who had remained with their husbands, they went to the field to bring forth there, and they brought forth in the field, and left their children upon the field and returned home.

55 And he who had sworn to their ancestors to multiply

them, sent one of his ministering angels which are in heaven to wash each child in water, to anoint and swathe it and to put into its hands two smooth stones from one of which it sucked milk and from the other honey, and he caused its hair to grow to its knees, by which it might cover itself; to comfort it and to cleave to it, through his compassion for it.

56 And when Elohim had compassion over them and had desired to multiply them upon the face of the land, he ordered his earth to receive them to be preserved therein till the time of their growing up, after which the earth opened its mouth and vomited them forth and they sprouted forth from the city like the herb of the earth, and the grass of the forest, and they returned each to his family and to his father's house, and they remained with them.

57 And the babes of the children of Israel were upon the earth like the herb of the field, through YHWH's grace to them.

58 And when all the Egyptians saw this thing, they went forth, each to his field with his yoke of oxen and his ploughshare, and they ploughed it up as one ploughs the earth at seed time.

59 And when they ploughed they were unable to hurt the infants of the children of Israel, so the people increased and waxed exceedingly.

60 And Pharaoh ordered his officers daily to go to Goshen to seek for the babes of the children of Israel.

61 And when they had sought and found one, they took it from its mother's bosom by force, and threw it into the river, but the female child they left with its mother; thus did the Egyptians do to the Israelites all the days.

CHAPTER 68

1 And it was at that time the spirit of Elohim was upon Miriam the daughter of Amram the sister of Aaron, and she went forth and prophesied about the house, saying, Behold a son will be born unto us from my father and mother this time, and he will save Israel from the hands of Egypt.

2 And when Amram heard the words of his daughter, he went and took his wife back to the house, after he had driven her away at the time when Pharaoh ordered every male child of the house of Ya'akov to be thrown into the water.

3 So Amram took Jokeved his wife, three years after he had driven her away, and he came to her and she conceived.

4 And at the end of seven months from her conception she brought forth a son, and the whole house was filled with great light as of the light of the sun and moon at the time of their shining.

5 And when the woman saw the child that it was good and pleasing to the sight, she hid it for three months in an inner room.

6 In those days the Egyptians conspired to destroy all the Hebrews there.

7 And the Egyptian women went to Goshen where the children of Israel were, and they carried their young ones upon their shoulders, their babes who could not yet speak.

8 And in those days, when the women of the children of Israel brought forth, each woman had hidden her son from before the Egyptians, that the Egyptians might not know of their bringing forth, and might not destroy them from the land.

9 And the Egyptian women came to Goshen and their children who could not speak were upon their shoulders, and when an Egyptian woman came into the house of a Hebrew

woman her babe began to cry.

10 And when it cried the child that was in the inner room answered it, so the Egyptian women went and told it at the house of Pharaoh.

11 And Pharaoh sent his officers to take the children and slay them; thus did the Egyptians to the Hebrew women all the days.

12 And it was at that time, about three months from Yokeved's concealment of her son, that the thing was known in Pharaoh's house.

13 And the woman hastened to take away her son before the officers came, and she took for him an ark of bulrushes, and daubed it with slime and with pitch, and put the child therein, and she laid it in the flags by the river's brink.

14 And his sister Miriam stood afar off to know what would be done to him, and what would become of her words.

15 And Elohim sent forth at that time a terrible heat in the land of Egypt, which burned up the flesh of man like the sun in his circuit, and it greatly oppressed the Egyptians.

16 And all the Egyptians went down to bathe in the river, on account of the consuming heat which burned up their flesh.

17 And Bityah, the daughter of Pharaoh, went also to bathe in the river, owing to the consuming heat, and her maidens walked at the river side, and all the women of Egypt as well.

18 And Bityah lifted up her eyes to the river, and she saw the ark upon the water, and sent her maid to fetch it.

19 And she opened it and saw the child, and behold the babe wept, and she had compassion on him, and she said, This is one of the Hebrew children.

20 And all the women of Egypt walking on the river side desired to give him suck, but he would not suck, for this thing was from YHWH, in order to restore him to his mother's breast.

21 And Miriam his sister was at that time among the

Egyptian women at the river side, and she saw this thing and she said to Pharaoh's daughter, Shall I go and fetch a nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may nurse the child for you?

22 And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, Go, and the girl went and called the child's mother.

23 And Pharaoh's daughter said to Yokeved, Take this child away and suckle it for me, and I will pay you your wages, two bits of silver daily; and the woman took the child and nursed it.

24 And at the end of two years, when the child grew up, she brought him to the daughter of Pharaoh, and he was unto her as a son, and she called his name Mosheh, for she said, Because I drew him out of the water.

25 And Amram his father called his name Chabar, for he said, It was for him that he associated with his wife whom he had turned away.

26 And Yokeved his mother called his name Yekutiel, Because, she said, I have hoped for him to the Almighty, and Elohim restored him unto me.

27 And Miriam his sister called him Yered, for she descended after him to the river to know what his end would be.

28 And Aaron his brother called his name Avi Zanach, saying, Zanach, my father left my mother and returned to her on his account.

29 And Kehat the father of Amram called his name Abigdor, because on his account did Elohim repair the breach of the house of Ya'akov, that they could no longer throw their male children into the water.

30 And their nurse called him Avi Socho, saying, In his tabernacle was he hidden for three months, on account of the children of Ham.

31 And all Israel called his name Shemaiah, son of Nethanel, for they said, In his days has Elohim heard their

cries and rescued them from their oppressors.

32 And Mosheh was in Pharaoh's house, and was unto Bityah, Pharaoh's daughter, as a son, and Mosheh grew up among the king's children.

CHAPTER 69

1 And the king of Edom died in those days, in the eighteenth year of his reign, and was buried in his temple which he had built for himself as his royal residence in the land of Edom.

2 And the children of Esau sent to Petorah, which is upon the river, and they fetched from there a young man of beautiful eyes and comely aspect, whose name was Shaul, and they made him king over them in the place of Samlah.

3 And Shaul reigned over all the children of Esau in the land of Edom for forty years.

4 And when Pharaoh king of Egypt saw that the counsel which Balaam had advised respecting the children of Israel did not succeed, but that still they were fruitful, multiplied and increased throughout the land of Egypt,

5 Then Pharaoh commanded in those days that a proclamation should be issued throughout Egypt to the children of Israel, saying, No man shall diminish any thing of his daily labor.

6 And the man who shall be found deficient in his labor which he performs daily, whether in mortar or in bricks, then his youngest son shall be put in their place.

7 And the labor of Egypt strengthened upon the children of Israel in those days, and behold if one brick was deficient in any man's daily labor, the Egyptians took his youngest boy by force from his mother, and put him into the building in the place of the brick which his father had left wanting.

8 And the men of Egypt did so to all the children of Israel

day by day, all the days for a long period.

9 But all the tribe of Levi did not at that time work with the Israelites their brothers, from the beginning, for the children of Levi knew the cunning of the Egyptians which they exercised at first toward the Israelites.

CHAPTER 70

1 And in the third year from the birth of Mosheh, Pharaoh was sitting at a banquet, when Alparanith the queen was sitting at his right and Bityah at his left, and the lad Mosheh was lying upon her bosom, and Balaam the son of B'or with his two sons, and all the princes of the kingdom were sitting at table in the king's presence.

2 And the lad stretched forth his hand upon the king's head, and took the crown from the king's head and placed it on his own head.

3 And when the king and princes saw the work which the boy had done, the king and princes were terrified, and one man to his neighbor expressed astonishment.

4 And the king said unto the princes who were before him at table, What speak you and what say you, O you princes, in this matter, and what is to be the judgment against the boy on account of this act?

5 And Balaam the son of B'or the magician answered before the king and princes, and he said, Remember now, O my lord and king, the dream which you did dream many days since, and that which your servant interpreted unto you.

6 Now therefore this is a child from the Hebrew children, in whom is the spirit of Elohim, and let not my lord the king imagine that this youngster did this thing without knowledge.

7 For he is a Hebrew boy, and wisdom and understanding

are with him, although he is yet a child, and with wisdom has he done this and chosen unto himself the kingdom of Egypt.

8 For this is the manner of all the Hebrews to deceive kings and their nobles, to do all these things cunningly, in order to make the kings of the earth and their men tremble.

9 Surely you know that Avraham their father acted thus, who deceived the army of Nimrod king of Bavel, and Avimelech king of Gerar, and that he possessed himself of the land of the children of Chet and all the kingdoms of Kanaan.

10 And that he descended into Egypt and said of Sarah his wife, she is my sister, in order to mislead Egypt and her king.

11 His son Yitz'chak also did so when he went to Gerar and dwelt there, and his strength prevailed over the army of Avimelech king of the Philistines.

12 He also thought of making the kingdom of the Philistines stumble, in saying that Riv'kah his wife was his sister.

13 Ya'akov also dealt treacherously with his brother, and took from his hand his birthright and his blessing.

14 He went then to Padan-aram to the house of Lavan his mother's brother, and cunningly obtained from him his daughter, his cattle, and all belonging to him, and fled away and returned to the land of Kanaan to his father.

15 His sons sold their brother Yosef, who went down into Egypt and became a slave, and was placed in the prison house for twelve years.

16 Until the former Pharaoh dreamed dreams, and withdrew him from the prison house, and magnified him above all the princes in Egypt on account of his interpreting his dreams to him.

17 And when Elohim caused a famine throughout the land he sent for and brought his father and all his brothers, and

the whole of his father's house, and supported them without price or reward, and bought the Egyptians for slaves.

18 And now therefore my lord king behold this child has risen up in their stead in Egypt, to do according to their deeds and to trifle with every king, prince and judge.

19 If it please the king, let us now spill his blood upon the ground, lest he grow up and take away the kingdom from your hand, and the hope of Egypt perish after he shall have reigned.

20 And Balaam said to the king, Let us moreover call for all the judges of Egypt and the wise men thereof, and let us know if the judgment of death is due to this boy as you did say, and then we will slay him.

21 And Pharaoh sent and called for all the wise men of Egypt and they came before the king, and an angel of YHWH came among them, and he was like one of the wise men of Egypt.

22 And the king said to the wise men, Surely you have heard what this Hebrew boy who is in the house has done, and thus has Balaam judged in the matter.

23 Now judge you also and see what is due to the boy for the act he has committed.

24 And the angel, who seemed like one of the wise men of Pharaoh, answered and said as follows, before all the wise men of Egypt and before the king and the princes:

25 If it please the king let the king send for men who shall bring before him an onyx stone and a coal of fire, and place them before the child, and if the child shall stretch forth his hand and take the onyx stone, then shall we know that with wisdom has the youth done all that he has done, and we must slay him.

26 But if he stretches forth his hand upon the coal, then shall we know that it was not with knowledge that he did this thing, and he shall live.

27 And the thing seemed good in the eyes of the king and the princes, so the king did according to the word of the angel of YHWH.

28 And the king ordered the onyx stone and coal to be brought and placed before Mosheh.

29 And they placed the boy before them, and the lad endeavored to stretch forth his hand to the onyx stone, but the angel of YHWH took his hand and placed it upon the coal, and the coal became extinguished in his hand, and he lifted it up and put it into his mouth, and burned part of his lips and part of his tongue, and he became heavy in mouth and tongue.

30 And when the king and princes saw this, they knew that Mosheh had not acted with wisdom in taking off the crown from the king's head.

31 So the king and princes refrained from slaying the child, so Mosheh remained in Pharaoh's house, growing up, and YHWH was with him.

32 And while the boy was in the king's house, he was robed in purple and he grew among the children of the king.

33 And when Mosheh grew up in the king's house, Bityah the daughter of Pharaoh considered him as a son, and all the house of Pharaoh honored him, and all the men of Egypt were afraid of him.

34 And he day by day went forth and came into the land of Goshen, where his brothers the children of Israel were, and Mosheh saw them daily in shortness of breath and hard labor.

35 And Mosheh asked them, saying, Wherefore is this labor meted out unto you day by day?

36 And they told him all that had befallen them, and all the injunctions which Pharaoh had put upon them before his birth.

37 And they told him all the counsels which Balaam the son

of B'or had counseled against them, and what he had also counseled against him in order to slay him when he had taken the king's crown from off his head.

38 And when Mosheh heard these things his anger was kindled against Balaam, and he sought to kill him, and he was in ambush for him day by day.

39 And Balaam was afraid of Mosheh, and he and his two sons rose up and went forth from Egypt, and they fled and delivered their souls and betook themselves to the land of Kush to Kikanos, king of Kush.

40 And Mosheh was in the king's house going out and coming in, YHWH gave him favor in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of all his servants, and in the eyes of all the people of Egypt, and they loved Mosheh exceedingly.

41 And the day arrived when Mosheh went to Goshen to see his brothers, that he saw the children of Israel in their burdens and hard labor, and Mosheh was grieved on their account.

42 And Mosheh returned to Egypt and came to the house of Pharaoh, and came before the king, and Mosheh bowed down before the king.

43 And Mosheh said unto Pharaoh, I pray you my lord, I have come to seek a small request from you, turn not away my face empty; and Pharaoh said unto him, Speak.

44 And Mosheh said unto Pharaoh, Let there be given unto your servants the children of Israel who are in Goshen, one day to rest therein from their labor.

45 And the king answered Mosheh and said, Behold I have lifted up your face in this thing to grant your request.

46 And Pharaoh ordered a proclamation to be issued throughout Egypt and Goshen, saying,

47 To you, all the children of Israel, thus says the king, for six days you shall do your work and labor, but on the seventh day you shall rest, and shall not perform any work,

thus shall you do all the days, as the king and Mosheh the son of Bityah have commanded.

48 And Mosheh rejoiced at this thing which the king had granted to him, and all the children of Israel did as Mosheh ordered them.

49 For this thing was from YHWH to the children of Israel, for YHWH had begun to remember the children of Israel to save them for the sake of their fathers.

50 And YHWH was with Mosheh and his fame went throughout Egypt.

51 And Mosheh became great in the eyes of all the Egyptians, and in the eyes of all the children of Israel, seeking good for his people Israel and speaking words of peace regarding them to the king.

CHAPTER 71

1 And when Mosheh was eighteen years old, he desired to see his father and mother and he went to them to Goshen, and when Mosheh had come near Goshen, he came to the place where the children of Israel were engaged in work, and he observed their burdens, and he saw an Egyptian smiting one of his Hebrew brothers.

2 And when the man who was beaten saw Mosheh he ran to him for help, for the man Mosheh was greatly respected in the house of Pharaoh, and he said to him, My lord attend to me, this Egyptian came to my house in the night, bound me, and came to my wife in my presence, and now he seeks to take my life away.

3 And when Mosheh heard this wicked thing, his anger was kindled against the Egyptian, and he turned this way and the other, and when he saw there was no man there he smote the Egyptian and hid him in the sand, and delivered the Hebrew

from the hand of him that smote him.

4 And the Hebrew went to his house, and Mosheh returned to his home, and went forth and came back to the king's house.

5 And when the man had returned home, he thought of repudiating his wife, for it was not right in the house of Ya'akov, for any man to come to his wife after she had been defiled.

6 And the woman went and told her brothers, and the woman's brothers sought to slay him, and he fled to his house and escaped.

7 And on the second day Mosheh went forth to his brothers, and saw, and behold two men were quarreling, and he said to the wicked one, Why do you smite your neighbor?

8 And he answered him and said to him, Who has set you for a prince and judge over us? do you think to slay me as you did slay the Egyptian? and Mosheh was afraid and he said, Surely the thing is known?

9 And Pharaoh heard of this affair, and he ordered Mosheh to be slain, so Elohim sent his angel, and he appeared unto Pharaoh in the likeness of a captain of the guard.

10 And the angel of YHWH took the sword from the hand of the captain of the guard, and took his head off with it, for the likeness of the captain of the guard was turned into the likeness of Mosheh.

11 And the angel of YHWH took hold of the right hand of Mosheh, and brought him forth from Egypt, and placed him from without the borders of Egypt, a distance of forty days' journey.

12 And Aaron his brother alone remained in the land of Egypt, and he prophesied to the children of Israel, saying,

13 Thus says YHWH Elohi of your ancestors, Throw away, each man, the abominations of his eyes, and do not defile yourselves with the idols of Egypt.

14 And the House of Israel rebelled and would not hearken to Aaron at that time.

15 And YHWH thought to destroy them, were it not that YHWH remembered the covenant which he had made with Avraham, Yitz'chak and Ya'akov.

16 In those days the hand of Pharaoh continued to be severe against the children of Israel, and he crushed and oppressed them until the time when YHWH sent forth his word and took notice of them.

CHAPTER 72

1 And it was in those days that there was a great war between the children of Kush and the children of the east and Aram, and they rebelled against the king of Kush in whose hands they were.

2 So Kikanos king of Kush went forth with all the children of Kush, a people numerous as the sand, and he went to fight against Aram and the children of the east, to bring them under subjection.

3 And when Kikanos went out, he left Balaam the magician, with his two sons, to guard the city, and the lowest sort of the people of the land.

4 So Kikanos went forth to Aram and the children of the east, and he fought against them and smote them, and they all fell down wounded before Kikanos and his people.

5 And he took many of them captives and he brought them under subjection as at first, and he encamped upon their land to take tribute from them as usual.

6 And Balaam the son of B'or, when the king of Kush had left him to guard the city and the poor of the city, he rose up and advised with the people of the land to rebel against king Kikanos, not to let him enter the city when he should come

home.

7 And the people of the land hearkened to him, and they swore to him and made him king over them, and his two sons for captains of the army.

8 And they rose up and raised the walls of the city at the two corners, and they built an exceeding strong building.

9 And at the third corner they dug ditches without number, between the city and the river which surrounded the whole land of Kush, and they made the waters of the river burst forth there.

10 And at the fourth corner they collected numerous serpents by their incantations and enchantments, and they fortified the city and dwelt therein, and no one went out or in before them.

11 And Kikanos fought against Aram and the children of the east and he subdued them as before, and they gave him their usual tribute, and he went and returned to his land.

12 And when Kikanos the king of Kush approached his city and all the captains of the forces with him, they lifted up their eyes and saw that the walls of the city were built up and greatly elevated, so the men were astonished at this.

13 And they said each man to his neighbor, It is because they saw that we were delayed, in battle, and were greatly afraid of us, therefore have they done this thing and raised the city walls and fortified them so that the kings of Kanaan might not come in battle against them.

14 And the king and the troops approached the city door and they looked up and behold, all the gates of the city were closed, and they called out to the sentinels, saying, Open unto us, that we may enter the city.

15 And the sentinels refused to open to them by the order of Balaam the magician, their king, they suffered them not to enter their city.

16 And they raised a battle with them opposite the city gate,

and one hundred and thirty men of the army at Kikanos fell on that day.

17 And on the second day they continued to fight and they fought at the side of the river; they endeavored to pass but were not able, so some of them sank in the pits and died.

18 And the king ordered them to cut down trees to make rafts, upon which they might pass to them, and they did so.

19 And when they came to the place of the ditches, the waters revolved by mills, and two hundred men upon ten rafts were drowned.

20 And on the third day they came to fight at the side where the serpents were, but they could not approach there, for the serpents slew of them one hundred and seventy men, and they ceased fighting against Kush, and they besieged Kush for nine years, no person came out or in.

21 At that time that the war and the siege were against Kush, Mosheh fled from Egypt from Pharaoh who sought to kill him for having slain the Egyptian.

22 And Mosheh was eighteen years old when he fled from Egypt from the presence of Pharaoh, and he fled and escaped to the camp of Kikanos, which at that time was besieging Kush.

23 And Mosheh was nine years in the camp of Kikanos king of Kush, all the time that they were besieging Kush, and Mosheh went out and came in with them.

24 And the king and princes and all the fighting men loved Mosheh, for he was great and worthy, his stature was like a noble lion, his face was like the sun, and his strength was like that of a lion, and he was counsellor to the king.

25 And it came to pass, at the end of nine years, Kikanos was seized with a mortal disease, and his illness prevailed over him, and he died on the seventh day.

26 And his servants embalmed him and carried him and buried him opposite the city gate to the north of the land of

Egypt.

27 And they built over him an elegant strong and high building, and they placed great stones below.

28 And the king's scribes engraved upon those stones all the might of their king Kikanos, and all his battles which he had fought, behold they are written there at this day.

29 And it came to pass after the death of Kikanos king of Kush it grieved his men and troops greatly on account of the war.

30 and they said each man to his neighbor, Give us counsel what we are to do at this time, as we have resided in the wilderness nine years away from our homes.

31 If we say we will fight against the city many of us will fall wounded or killed, and if we remain here in the siege we shall also die.

32 For now all the kings of Aram and of the children of the east will hear that our king is dead, and they will attack us suddenly in a hostile manner, and they will fight against us and leave no remnant of us.

33 And now therefore let us go and make a king over us, and let us remain in the siege until the city is delivered up to us.

34 And they wished to choose on that day a man for king from the army of Kikanos, and they found no object of their choice like Mosheh to reign over them.

35 And they hastened and stripped off each man his garments and cast them upon the ground, and they made a great heap and placed Mosheh thereon.

36 And they rose up and blew with trumpets and called out before him, and said, May the king live, may the king live!

37 And all the people and nobles swore unto him to give him for a wife Adoniah the queen, the Kushite, wife of Kikanos, and they made Mosheh king over them on that day.

38 And all the men of Kush issued a proclamation on that day, saying, Every man must give something to Mosheh of

what is in his possession.

39 And they spread out a sheet upon the heap, and every man cast into it something of what he had, one a gold earring and the other a coin.

40 Also of onyx stones, bdellium, pearls and marble did the children of Kush cast unto Mosheh upon the heap, also silver and gold in great abundance.

41 And Mosheh took all the silver and gold, all the vessels, and the bdellium and onyx stones, which all the children of Kush had given to him, and he placed them among his treasures.

42 And Mosheh reigned over the children of Kush on that day, in the place of Kikanos king of Kush.

CHAPTER 73

1 In the fifty-fifth year of the reign of Pharaoh king of Egypt, that is in the hundred and fifty-seventh year of the Israelites going down into Egypt, reigned Mosheh in Kush.

2 Mosheh was twenty-seven years old when he began to reign over Kush, and forty years did he reign.

3 And YHWH granted Mosheh favor and grace in the eyes of all the children of Kush, and the children of Kush loved him exceedingly, so Mosheh was favored by YHWH and by men.

4 And in the seventh day of his reign, all the children of Kush assembled and came before Mosheh and bowed down to him to the ground.

5 And all the children spoke together in the presence of the king, saying, Give us counsel that we may see what is to be done to this city.

6 For it is now nine years that we have been besieging round about the city, and have not seen our children and our wives.

7 And the king answered them, saying, If you will hearken to my voice in all that I shall command you, then will YHWH give the city into our hands and we shall subdue it.

8 For if we fight with them as in the former battle which we had with them before the death of Kikanos, many of us will fall down wounded as before.

9 And now therefore behold here is counsel for you in this matter; if you will hearken to my voice, then will the city be delivered into our hands.

10 And all the forces answered the king, saying, All that our lord shall command that will we do.

11 And Mosheh said unto them, Pass through and proclaim a voice in the whole camp unto all the people, saying,

12 Thus says the king, Go into the forest and bring with you of the young ones of the stork, each man a young one in his hand.

13 And any person transgressing the word of the king, who shall not bring his young one, he shall die, and the king will take all belonging to him.

14 And when you shall bring them they shall be in your keeping, you shall rear them until they grow up, and you shall teach them to dart upon, as is the way of the young ones of the hawk.

15 And all the children of Kush heard the words of Mosheh, and they rose up and caused a proclamation to be issued throughout the camp, saying,

16 Unto you, all the children of Kush, the king's order is, that you go all together to the forest, and catch there the young storks each man his young one in his hand, and you shall bring them home.

17 And any man violating the order of the king shall die, and the king will take all that belongs to him.

18 And all the people did so, and they went out to the wood and they climbed the fir trees and caught, each man a young

one in his hand, all the young of the storks, and they brought them into the desert and reared them by order of the king, and they taught them to dart upon, similar to the young hawks.

19 And after the young storks were reared, the king ordered them to be hungered for three days, and all the people did so.

20 And on the third day, the king said unto them, strengthen yourselves and become valiant men, and put on each man his armor and gird on his sword upon him, and ride each man his horse and take each his young stork in his hand.

21 And we will rise up and fight against the city at the place where the serpents are; and all the people did as the king had ordered.

22 And they took each man his young one in his hand, and they went away, and when they came to the place of the serpents the king said to them, Send forth each man his young stork upon the serpents.

23 And they sent forth each man his young stork at the king's order, and the young storks ran upon the serpents and they devoured them all and destroyed them out of that place.

24 And when the king and people had seen that all the serpents were destroyed in that place, all the people set up a great shout.

25 And they approached and fought against the city and took it and subdued it, and they entered the city.

26 And there died on that day one thousand and one hundred men of the people of the city, all that inhabited the city, but of the people besieging not one died.

27 So all the children of Kush went each to his home, to his wife and children and to all belonging to him.

28 And Balaam the magician, when he saw that the city was taken, he opened the gate and he and his two sons and eight brothers fled and returned to Egypt to Pharaoh king of

Egypt.

29 They are the sorcerers and magicians who are mentioned in the Book of the Torah, standing against Mosheh when YHWH brought the plagues upon Egypt.

30 So Mosheh took the city by his wisdom, and the children of Kush placed him on the throne instead of Kikanos king of Kush.

31 And they placed the royal crown upon his head, and they gave him for a wife Adoniah the Kushite queen, wife of Kikanos.

32 And Mosheh feared YHWH Elohi of his fathers, so that he came not to her, nor did he turn his eyes to her.

33 For Mosheh remembered how Avraham had made his servant Eliezer swear, saying unto him, you shall not take a woman from the daughters of Kanaan for my son Yitz'chak.

34 Also what Yitz'chak did when Ya'akov had fled from his brother, when he commanded him, saying, you shall not take a wife from the daughters of Kanaan, nor make alliance with any of the children of Ham.

35 For YHWH our Elohim gave Ham the son of Noach, and his children and all his seed, as slaves to the children of Shem and to the children of Yafet, and unto their seed after them for slaves, forever.

36 Therefore Mosheh turned not his heart nor his eyes to the wife of Kikanos all the days that he reigned over Kush.

37 And Mosheh feared before YHWH his Elohim all his life, and Mosheh walked before YHWH in truth, with all his heart and soul, he turned not from the right way all the days of his life; he declined not from the way either to the right or to the left, in which Avraham, Yitz'chak and Ya'akov had walked.

38 And Mosheh strengthened himself in the kingdom of the children of Kush, and he guided the children of Kush with his usual wisdom, and Mosheh prospered in his kingdom.

39 And at that time Aram and the children of the east heard that Kikanos king of Kush had died, so Aram and the children of the east rebelled against Kush in those days.

40 And Mosheh gathered all the children of Kush, a people very mighty, about thirty thousand men, and he went forth to fight with Aram and the children of the east.

41 And they went at first to the children of the east, and when the children of the east heard their report, they went to meet them, and engaged in battle with them.

42 And the war was severe against the children of the east, and YHWH gave all the children of the east into the hand of Mosheh, and about three hundred men fell down slain.

43 And all the children of the east turned back and retreated, so Mosheh and the children of Kush followed them and subdued them, and put a tax upon them, as was their custom.

44 So Mosheh and all the people with him passed from there to the land of Aram for battle.

45 And the men of Aram also went to meet them, and they fought against them, and YHWH delivered them into the hand of Mosheh, and many of the men of Aram fell down wounded.

46 And Aram also were subdued by Mosheh and the people of Kush, and also gave their usual tax.

47 And Mosheh brought Aram and the children of the east under subjection to the children of Kush, and Mosheh and all the people who were with him, turned to the land of Kush.

48 And Mosheh strengthened himself in the kingdom of the children of Kush, and YHWH was with him, and all the children of Kush were afraid of him.

CHAPTER 74

1 In the end of years died Shaul king of Edom, and Baal Chanan the son of Akbor reigned in his place.

2 In the sixteenth year of the reign of Mosheh over Kush, Baal Chanan the son of Akbor reigned in the land of Edom over all the children of Edom for thirty-eight years.

3 In his days Moav rebelled against the power of Edom, having been under Edom since the days of Hadad the son of Bedad, who smote them and Midyan, and brought Moav under subjection to Edom.

4 And when Baal Chanan the son of Akbor reigned over Edom, all the children of Moav withdrew their allegiance from Edom.

5 And Angias king of Africa died in those days, and Ezdrubal his son reigned in his stead.

6 And in those days died Yoniosh king of the children of Chittim, and they buried him in his temple which he had built for himself in the plain of Kanafya for a residence, and Latyanus reigned in his stead.

7 In the twenty-second year of the reign of Mosheh over the children of Kush, Latyanus reigned over the children of Chittim forty-five years.

8 And he also built for himself a great and mighty tower, and he built therein an elegant temple for his residence, to conduct his kingdom, as was the custom.

9 In the third year of his reign he caused a proclamation to be made to all his skilful men, who made many ships for him.

10 And Latyanus assembled all his forces, and they came in ships, and went therein to fight with Ezdrubal son of Angias king of Africa, and they came to Africa and engaged in battle with Ezdrubal and his army.

11 And Latyanus prevailed over Ezdrubal, and Latyanus took from Ezdrubal the aqueduct which his father had brought from the children of Chittim, when he took Yoniyah the daughter of Uztu for a wife, so Latyanus overthrew the bridge of the aqueduct, and smote the whole army of Ezdrubal a severe blow.

12 And the remaining strong men of Ezdrubal strengthened themselves, and their hearts were filled with envy, and they courted death, and again engaged in battle with Latyanus king of Chittim.

13 And the battle was severe upon all the men of Africa, and they all fell wounded before Latyanus and his people, and Ezdrubal the king also fell in that battle.

14 And the king Ezdrubal had a very beautiful daughter, whose name was Ushpezena, and all the men of Africa embroidered her likeness on their garments, on account of her great beauty and comely appearance.

15 And the men of Latyanus saw Ushpezena, the daughter of Ezdrubal, and praised her unto Latyanus their king.

16 And Latyanus ordered her to be brought to him, and Latyanus took Ushpezena for a wife, and he turned back on his way to Chittim.

17 And it was after the death of Ezdrubal son of Angias, when Latyanus had turned back to his land from the battle, that all the inhabitants of Africa rose up and took Anivel the son of Angias, the younger brother of Ezdrubal, and made him king instead at his brother over the whole land at Africa.

18 And when he reigned, he resolved to go to Chittim to fight with the children of Chittim, to avenge the cause of Ezdrubal his brother, and the cause of the inhabitants of Africa, and he did so.

19 And he made many ships, and he came therein with his whole army, and he went to Chittim.

20 So Anivel fought with the children of Chittim, and the

children of Chittim fell wounded before Anivel and his army, and Anivel avenged his brother's cause.

21 And Anivel continued the war for eighteen years with the children of Chittim, and Anivel dwelt in the land of Chittim and encamped there for a long time.

22 And Anivel smote the children of Chittim very severely, and he slew their great men and princes, and of the rest of the people he smote about eighty thousand men.

23 And at the end of days and years, Anivel returned to his land of Africa, and he reigned securely in the place of Ezdrubal his brother.

CHAPTER 75

1 At that time, in the hundred and eightieth year of the Israelites going down into Egypt, there went forth from Egypt valiant men, thirty thousand on foot, from the children of Israel, who were all of the tribe of Yosef, of the children of Efrayim the son of Yosef.

2 For they said the period was completed which YHWH had appointed to the children of Israel in the times of old, which he had spoken to Avraham.

3 And these men girded themselves, and they put each man his sword at his side, and every man his armor upon him, and they trusted to their strength, and they went out together from Egypt with a mighty hand.

4 And they brought no provision for the road, only silver and gold, not even bread for that day did they bring in their hands, for they thought of getting their provision for pay from the Philistines, and if not they would take it by force.

5 And these men were very mighty and valiant men, one man could pursue a thousand and two could rout ten thousand, so they trusted to their strength and went together

as they were.

6 And they directed their course toward the land of Gat, and they went down and found the shepherds of Gat feeding the cattle of the children of Gat.

7 And they said to the shepherds, Give us some of the sheep for pay, that we may eat, for we are hungry, for we have eaten no bread this day.

8 And the shepherds said, Are they our sheep or cattle that we should give them to you even for pay? so the children of Efrayim approached to take them by force.

9 And the shepherds of Gat shouted over them that their cry was heard at a distance, so all the children of Gat went out to them.

10 And when the children of Gat saw the evil doings of the children of Efrayim, they returned and assembled the men of Gat, and they put on each man his armor, and came forth to the children of Efrayim for battle.

11 And they engaged with them in the valley of Gat, and the battle was severe, and they smote from each other a great many on that day.

12 And on the second day the children of Gat sent to all the cities of the Philistines that they should come to their help, saying,

13 Come up unto us and help us, that we may smite the children of Efrayim who have come forth from Egypt to take our cattle, and to fight against us without cause.

14 Now the souls of the children of Efrayim were exhausted with hunger and thirst, for they had eaten no bread for three days. And forty thousand men went forth from the cities of the Philistines to the assistance of the men of Gat.

15 And these men were engaged in battle with the children of Efrayim, and YHWH delivered the children of Efrayim into the hands of the Philistines.

16 And they smote all the children of Efrayim, all who had gone forth from Egypt, none were remaining but ten men who had run away from the engagement.

17 For this evil was from YHWH against the children of Efrayim, for they transgressed the word⁸⁷ of YHWH in going forth from Egypt, before the period had arrived which YHWH in the days of old had appointed to Israel.

18 And of the Philistines also there fell a great many, about twenty thousand men, and their brothers carried them and buried them in their cities.

19 And the slain of the children of Efrayim remained forsaken in the valley of Gat for many days and years, and were not brought to burial, and the valley was filled with men's bones.

20 And the men who had escaped from the battle came to Egypt, and told all the children of Israel all that had befallen them.

21 And their father Efrayim mourned over them for many days, and his brothers came to console him.

22 And he came unto his wife and she bare a son, and he called his name Beriah, for she was unfortunate in his house.

CHAPTER 76

1 And Mosheh the son of Amram was still king in the land of Kush in those days, and he prospered in his kingdom, and he conducted the kingdom of the children of Kush in justice, in righteousness, and integrity.

2 And all the children of Kush loved Mosheh all the days that he reigned over them, and all the inhabitants of the land of Kush were greatly afraid of him.

3 And in the fortieth year of the reign of Mosheh over Kush,

⁸⁷ Literally "mouth"

Mosheh was sitting on the royal throne while Adoniah the queen was before him, and all the nobles were sitting around him.

4 And Adoniah the queen said before the king and the princes, What is this thing which you, the children of Kush, have done for these many days?

5 Surely you know that for forty years that this man has reigned over

Kush he has not approached me, nor has he served the gods of the children of Kush.

6 And now therefore hear, O you children of Kush, and let this man no more reign over you as he is not of our flesh.

7 Behold Menacrus my son is grown up, let him reign over you, for it is better for you to serve the son of your lord, than to serve a stranger, slave of the king of Egypt.

8 And all the people and nobles of the children of Kush heard the words which Adoniah the queen had spoken in their ears.

9 And all the people were preparing until the evening, and in the morning they rose up early and made Menacrus, son of Kikanos, king over them.

10 And all the children of Kush were afraid to stretch forth their hand against Mosheh, for YHWH was with Mosheh, and the children of Kush remembered the oath which they swore unto Mosheh, therefore they did no harm to him.

11 But the children of Kush gave many presents to Mosheh, and sent him from them with great honor.

12 So Mosheh went forth from the land of Kush, and went home and ceased to reign over Kush, and Mosheh was sixty-six years old when he went out of the land of Kush, for the thing was from YHWH, for the period had arrived which he had appointed in the days of old, to bring forth Israel from the affliction of the children of Ham.

13 So Mosheh went to Midyan, for he was afraid to return to

Egypt on account of Pharaoh, and he went and sat at a well of water in Midyan.

14 And the seven daughters of Reuel the Midianite went out to feed their father's flock.

15 And they came to the well and drew water to water their father's flock.

16 So the shepherds of Midyan came and drove them away, and Mosheh rose up and helped them and watered the flock.

17 And they came to their father Reuel, and told him what Mosheh did for them.

18 And they said, An Egyptian man has delivered us from the hands of the shepherds, he drew up water for us and watered the flock.

19 And Reuel said to his daughters, And where is he? wherefore have you left the man?

20 And Reuel sent for him and fetched him and brought him home, and he ate bread with him.

21 And Mosheh related to Reuel that he had fled from Egypt and that he reigned forty years over Kush, and that they afterward had taken the kingdom from him, and had sent him away in peace with honor and with presents.

22 And when Reuel had heard the words of Mosheh, Reuel said in his heart, I will put this man into the prison house, whereby I shall conciliate the children of Kush, for he has fled from them.

23 And they took and put him into the prison house, and Mosheh was in prison ten years, and while Mosheh was in the prison house, Tzipporah the daughter of Reuel took pity over him, and supported him with bread and water all the time.

24 And all the children of Israel were yet in the land of Egypt serving the Egyptians in all manner of hard work, and the hand of Egypt continued in severity over the children of Israel in those days.

25 At that time YHWH smote Pharaoh king of Egypt, and YHWH afflicted him with the plague of leprosy from the sole of his foot to the crown of his head; owing to the cruel treatment of the children of Israel was this plague at that time from YHWH upon Pharaoh king of Egypt.

26 For YHWH had hearkened to the prayer of his people the children of Israel, and their cry reached him on account of their hard work.

27 Still his anger did not turn from them, and the hand of Pharaoh was still stretched out against the children of Israel, and Pharaoh hardened his neck before YHWH, and he increased his yoke over the children of Israel, and embittered their lives with all manner of hard work.

28 And when YHWH had inflicted the plague upon Pharaoh king of Egypt, he asked his wise men and sorcerers to cure him.

29 And his wise men and sorcerers said unto him, That if the blood of little children were put into the wounds he would be healed.

30 And Pharaoh hearkened to them, and sent his ministers to Goshen to the children of Israel to take their little children.

31 And Pharaoh's ministers went and took the infants of the children of Israel from the bosoms of their mothers by force, and they brought them to Pharaoh daily, a child each day, and the physicians killed them and applied them to the plague; thus did they all the days.

32 And the number of the children which Pharaoh slew was three hundred and seventy-five.

33 And YHWH hearkened not to the physicians of the king of Egypt, and the plague went on increasing mightily.

34 And Pharaoh was ten years afflicted with that plague, still the heart of Pharaoh was more hardened against the children of Israel.

35 And at the end of ten years YHWH continued to afflict

Pharaoh with destructive plagues.

36 And YHWH smote him with a bad tumor and sickness at the stomach, and that plague turned to a severe boil.

37 At that time the two ministers of Pharaoh came from the land of Goshen where all the children of Israel were, and went to the house of Pharaoh and said to him, We have seen the children of Israel slacken in their work and negligent in their labor.

38 And when Pharaoh heard the words of his ministers, his anger was kindled against the children of Israel exceedingly, for he was greatly grieved at his bodily pain.

39 And he answered and said, Now that the children of Israel know that I am ill, they turn and scoff at us, now therefore harness my chariot for me, and I will betake myself to Goshen and will see the scoff of the children of Israel with which they are deriding me; so his servants harnessed the chariot for him.

40 And they took and made him ride upon a horse, for he was not able to ride of himself;

41 And he took with him ten horsemen and ten footmen, and went to the children of Israel to Goshen.

42 And when they had come to the border of Egypt, the king's horse passed into a narrow place, elevated in the hollow part of the vineyard, fenced on both sides, the low, plain country being on the other side.

43 And the horses ran rapidly in that place and pressed each other, and the other horses pressed the king's horse.

44 And the king's horse fell into the low plain while the king was riding upon it, and when he fell the chariot turned over the king's face and the horse lay upon the king, and the king cried out, for his flesh was very sore.

45 And the flesh of the king was torn from him, and his bones were broken and he could not ride, for this thing was from YHWH to him, for YHWH had heard the cries of his

people the children of Israel and their affliction.

46 And his servants carried him upon their shoulders, a little at a time, and they brought him back to Egypt, and the horsemen who were with him came also back to Egypt.

47 And they placed the king in his bed, and the king knew that his end was come to die, so Elparanit the queen his wife came and cried before the king, and the king wept a great weeping with her.

48 And all his nobles and servants came on that day and saw the king in that affliction, and wept a great weeping with him.

49 And the princes of the king and all his counselors advised the king to cause one to reign in his stead in the land, whomsoever he should choose from his sons.

50 And the king had three sons and two daughters which Elparanit the queen his wife had borne to him, besides the king's children of concubines.

51 And these were their names, the firstborn Ataray, the second Adikam, and the third Moryon, and their sisters, the name of the elder Bityah and of the other Akuzit.

52 And Ataray the firstborn of the king was an idiot, precipitate and hurried in his words.

53 And Adikam was a cunning and wise man and knowing in all the wisdom of Egypt, but of unseemly aspect, thick in flesh, and very short in stature; his height was one cubit.

54 And when the king saw Adikam his son intelligent and wise in all things, the king resolved that he should be king in his stead after his death.

55 And he took for him a wife Gedudah daughter of Avilat, and he was ten years old, and she bore unto him four sons.

56 And he afterward went and took three wives and begat eight sons and three daughters.

57 And the disorder greatly prevailed over the king, and his flesh stank like the flesh of a carcass cast upon the field in

summer time, during the heat of the sun.

58 And when the king saw that his sickness had greatly strengthened itself over him, he ordered his son Adikam to be brought to him, and they made him king over the land in his place.

59 And at the end of three years, the king died, in shame, disgrace, and disgust, and his servants carried him and buried him in the sepulcher of the kings of Egypt in Zoan Mizraim.

60 But they embalmed him not as was usual with kings, for his flesh was putrid, and they could not approach to embalm him on account of the stench, so they buried him in haste.

61 For this evil was from YHWH to him, for YHWH had requited him evil for the evil which in his days he had done to Israel.

62 And he died with terror and with shame, and his son Adikam reigned in his place.

CHAPTER 77

1 Adikam was twenty years old when he reigned over Egypt, he reigned four years.

2 In the two hundred and sixth year of Israel's going down to Egypt did Adikam reign over Egypt, but he continued not so long in his reign over Egypt as his fathers had continued their reigns.

3 For Malol his father reigned ninety-four years in Egypt, but he was ten years sick and died, for he had been wicked before YHWH.

4 And all the Egyptians called the name of Adikam Pharaoh like the name of his fathers, as was their custom to do in Egypt.

5 And all the wise men of Pharaoh called the name of

Adikam Abuz, for short is called Abuz in the Egyptian language.

6 And Adikam was exceedingly ugly, and he was a cubit and a span and he had a great beard which reached to the soles of his feet.

7 And Pharaoh sat upon his father's throne to reign over Egypt, and he conducted the kingdom of Egypt in his wisdom.

8 And while he reigned he exceeded his father and all the preceding kings in wickedness, and he increased his yoke over the children of Israel.

9 And he went with his servants to Goshen to the children of Israel, and he strengthened the labor over them and he said unto them, Complete your work, each day's task, and let not your hands slacken from our work from this day forward as you did in the days of my father.

10 And he placed officers over them from among the children of Israel, and over these officers he placed task-masters from among his servants.

11 And he placed over them a measure of bricks for them to do according to that number, day by day, and he turned back and went to Egypt.

12 At that time the task-masters of Pharaoh ordered the officers of the children of Israel according to the command of Pharaoh, saying,

13 Thus says Pharaoh, Do your work each day, and finish your task, and observe the daily measure of bricks; diminish not anything.

14 And it shall come to pass that if you are deficient in your daily bricks, I will put your young children in their stead.

15 And the task-masters of Egypt did so in those days as Pharaoh had ordered them.

16 And it came to pass whenever any deficiency was found in the children of Israel's measure of their daily bricks, the

task-masters of Pharaoh would go to the wives of the children of Israel and take infants of the children of Israel to the number of bricks deficient, they would take them by force from their mother's laps, and put them in the building instead of the bricks;

17 While their fathers and mothers were crying over them and weeping when they heard the weeping voices of their infants in the wall of the building.

18 And the task-masters prevailed over Israel, that the Israelites should place their children in the building, so that a man placed his son in the wall and put mortar over him, while his eyes wept over him, and his tears ran down upon his child.

19 And the task-masters of Egypt did so to the babes of Israel for many days, and no one pitied or had compassion over the babes of the children of Israel.

20 And the number of all the children killed in the building was two hundred and seventy, some whom they had built upon instead of the bricks which had been left deficient by their fathers, and some whom they had drawn out dead from the building.

21 And the labor imposed upon the children of Israel in the days of Adikam exceeded in hardship that which they performed in the days of his father.

22 And the children of Israel sighed every day on account of their heavy work, for they had said to themselves, Behold when Pharaoh shall die, his son will rise up and lighten our work!

23 But they increased the latter work more than the former, and the children of Israel sighed at this and their cry ascended to Elohim on account of their labor.

24 And Elohim heard the voice of the children of Israel and their cry, in those days, and Elohim remembered to them his covenant which he had made with Avraham, Yitz'chak and

Ya'akov.

25 And Elohim saw the burden of the children of Israel, and their heavy work in those days, and he determined to deliver them.

26 And Mosheh the son of Amram was still confined in the dungeon in those days, in the house of Reuel the Midianite, and Tzipporah the daughter of Reuel did support him with food secretly day by day.

27 And Mosheh was confined in the dungeon in the house of Reuel for ten years.

28 And at the end of ten years which was the first year of the reign of Pharaoh over Egypt, in the place of his father,

29 Tzipporah said to her father Reuel, No person inquires or seeks after the Hebrew man, whom you did bind in prison now ten years.

30 And now therefore, if it seem good in your eyes, let us send and see whether he is living or dead, but her father knew not that she had supported him.

31 And Reuel her father answered and said to her, Has ever such a thing happened that a man should be shut up in a prison without food for ten years, and that he should live?

32 And Tzipporah answered her father, saying, Surely you have heard that Elohi of the Hebrews is great and awful, and does wonders for them at all times.

33 He it was who delivered Avraham from Ur of the Chaldeans, and Yitz'chak from the sword of his father, and Ya'akov from the angel of YHWH who wrestled with him at the ford of Yabbuk.

34 Also with this man has he done many things, he delivered him from the river in Egypt and from the sword of Pharaoh, and from the children of Kush, so also can he deliver him from famine and make him live.

35 And the thing seemed good in the eyes of Reuel, and he did according to the word of his daughter, and sent to the

dungeon to ascertain what became of Mosheh.

36 And he saw, and behold the man Mosheh was living in the dungeon, standing upon his feet, praising and praying to Elohi of his ancestors.

37 And Reuel commanded Mosheh to be brought out of the dungeon, so they shaved him and he changed his prison garments and ate bread.

38 And afterward Mosheh went into the garden of Reuel which was behind the house, and he there prayed to YHWH his Elohi, who had done mighty wonders for him.

39 And it was that while he prayed he looked opposite to him, and behold

a sapphire stick was placed in the ground, which was planted in the midst of the garden.

40 And he approached the stick and he looked, and behold the name of YHWH Elohim Tz'vaot was engraved thereon, written and developed upon the stick.

41 And he read it and stretched forth his hand and he plucked it like a forest tree from the thicket, and the stick was in his hand.

42 And this is the stick with which all the works of our Elohim were performed, after he had created heaven and earth, and all the host of them, seas, rivers and all their fishes.

43 And when Elohim had driven Adam from the garden of Eden, he took the stick in his hand and went and tilled the ground from which he was taken.

44 And the stick came down to Noach and was given to Shem and his descendants, until it came into the hand of Avraham the Hebrew.

45 And when Avraham had given all he had to his son Yitz'chak, he also gave to him this stick.

46 And when Ya'akov had fled to Padan-aram, he took it into his hand, and when he returned to his father he had not

left it behind him.

47 And also when he went down to Egypt he took it into his hand and gave it to Yosef, one portion above his brothers, for Ya'akov had taken it by force from his brother Esau.

48 And after the death of Yosef, the nobles of Egypt came into the house of Yosef, and the stick came into the hand of Reuel the Midianite, and when he went out of Egypt, he took it in his hand and planted it in his garden.

49 And all the mighty men of the Kinites tried to pluck it when they endeavored to get Tzipporah his daughter, but they were unsuccessful.

50 So that stick remained planted in the garden of Reuel, until he came who had a right to it and took it.

51 And when Reuel saw the stick in the hand of Mosheh, he wondered at it, and he gave him his daughter Tzipporah for a wife.

CHAPTER 78

1 At that time died Baal Channan son of Achbor, king of Edom, and was buried in his house in the land of Edom.

2 And after his death the children of Esau sent to the land of Edom, and took from there a man who was in Edom, whose name was Hadad, and they made him king over them in the place of Baal Channan, their king.

3 And Hadad reigned over the children of Edom forty-eight years.

4 And when he reigned he resolved to fight against the children of Moav, to bring them under the power of the children of Esau as they were before, but he was not able, because the children of Moav heard this thing, and they rose up and hastened to elect a king over them from among their brothers.

5 And they afterward gathered together a great people, and sent to the children of Ammon their brothers for help to fight against Hadad king of Edom.

6 And Hadad heard the thing which the children of Moav had done, and was greatly afraid of them, and refrained from fighting against them.

7 In those days Mosheh, the son of Amram, in Midyan, took Tzipporah, the daughter of Reuel the Midianite, for a wife.

8 And Tzipporah walked in the ways of the daughters of Ya'akov, she was nothing short of the righteousness of Sarah, Riv'kah, Rakhel and Leah.

9 And Tzipporah conceived and bare a son and he called his name Gershom, for he said, I was a stranger in a foreign land; but he circumcised not his foreskin, at the command of Reuel his father-in-law.

10 And she conceived again and bare a son, but circumcised his foreskin, and called his name Eliezer, for Mosheh said, Because Elohi of my fathers was my help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh.

11 And Pharaoh king of Egypt greatly increased the labor of the children of Israel in those days, and continued to make his yoke heavier upon the children of Israel.

12 And he ordered a proclamation to be made in Egypt, saying, Give no more straw to the people to make bricks with, let them go and gather themselves straw as they can find it.

13 And also the tale of bricks which they shall make let them give each day, and diminish nothing from them, for they are idle in their work.

14 And the children of Israel heard this, and they mourned and sighed, and they cried unto YHWH on account of the bitterness of their souls.

15 And YHWH heard the cries of the children of Israel, and saw the oppression with which the Egyptians oppressed

them.

16 And YHWH was jealous of his people and his inheritance, and heard their voice, and he resolved to take them out of the affliction of Egypt, to give them the land of Kanaan for a possession.

CHAPTER 79

1 And in those days Mosheh was feeding the flock of Reuel the Midianite his father-in-law, beyond the wilderness of Sin, and the stick which he took from his father-in-law was in his hand.

2 And it came to pass one day that a kid of goats strayed from the flock, and Mosheh pursued it and it came to the mountain of Elohim to Chorav.

3 And when he came to Chorav, YHWH appeared there unto him in the bush, and he found the bush burning with fire, but the fire had no power over the bush to consume it.

4 And Mosheh was greatly astonished at this sight, wherefore the bush was not consumed, and he approached to see this mighty thing, and YHWH called unto Mosheh out of the fire and commanded him to go down to Egypt, to Pharaoh king of Egypt, to send the children of Israel from his service.

5 And YHWH said unto Mosheh, Go, return to Egypt, for all those men who sought your life are dead, and you shall speak unto Pharaoh to send forth the children of Israel from his land.

6 And YHWH showed him to do signs and wonders in Egypt before the eyes of Pharaoh and the eyes of his subjects, in order that they might believe that YHWH had sent him.

7 And Mosheh hearkened to all that YHWH had

commanded him, and he returned to his father-in-law and told him the thing, and Reuel said to him, Go in peace.

8 And Mosheh rose up to go to Egypt, and he took his wife and sons with him, and he was at an inn in the road, and an angel of Elohim came down, and sought an occasion against him.

9 And he wished to kill him on account of his firstborn son, because he had not circumcised him, and had transgressed the covenant which YHWH had made with Avraham.

10 For Mosheh had hearkened to the words of his father-in-law which he had spoken to him, not to circumcise his firstborn son, therefore he circumcised him not.

11 And Tzipporah saw the angel of YHWH seeking an occasion against Mosheh, and she knew that this thing was owing to his not having circumcised her son Gershom.

12 And Tzipporah hastened and took of the sharp rock stones that were there, and she circumcised her son, and delivered her husband and her son from the hand of the angel of Elohim.

13 And Aaron the son of Amram, the brother of Mosheh, was in Egypt walking at the river side on that day.

14 And YHWH appeared to him in that place, and he said to him, Go now toward Mosheh in the wilderness, and he went and met him in the mountain of Elohim, and he kissed him.

15 And Aaron lifted up his eyes, and saw Tzipporah the wife of Mosheh and her children, and he said unto Mosheh, Who are these unto you?

16 And Mosheh said unto him, They are my wife and sons, which Elohim gave to me in Midyan; and the thing grieved Aaron on account of the woman and her children.

17 And Aaron said to Mosheh, Send away the woman and her children that they may go to her father's house, and Mosheh hearkened to the words of Aaron, and did so.

18 And Tzipporah returned with her children, and they went

to the house of Reuel, and remained there until the time arrived when YHWH had visited his people, and brought them forth from Egypt from the hand at Pharaoh.

19 And Mosheh and Aaron came to Egypt to the community of the children of Israel, and they spoke to them all the words of YHWH, and the people rejoiced an exceeding great rejoicing.

20 And Mosheh and Aaron rose up early on the next day, and they went to the house of Pharaoh, and they took in their hands the stick of Elohim.

21 And when they came to the king's gate, two young lions were confined there with iron instruments, and no person went out or came in from before them, unless those whom the king ordered to come, when the conjurors came and withdrew the lions by their incantations, and this brought them to the king.

22 And Mosheh hastened and lifted up the stick upon the lions, and he loosed them, and Mosheh and Aaron came into the king's house.

23 The lions also came with them in joy, and they followed them and rejoiced as a dog rejoices over his lord when he comes from the field.

24 And when Pharaoh saw this thing he was astonished at it, and he was greatly terrified at the report, for their appearance was like the appearance of the sons of Elohim.

25 And Pharaoh said to Mosheh, What do you require? and they answered him, saying, YHWH Elohi of the Hebrews has sent us to you, to say, Send forth my people that they may serve me.

26 And when Pharaoh heard their words he was greatly terrified before them, and he said to them, Go today and come back to me tomorrow, and they did according to the word of the king.

27 And when they had gone Pharaoh sent for Balaam the magician and to Yanus and Yambrus⁸⁸ his sons, and to all the magicians and conjurors and counselors which belonged to the king, and they all came and sat before the king.

28 And the king recounted to them all the words which Mosheh and his brother Aaron had spoken to him, and the magicians said to the king, But how came the men to you, on account of the lions which were confined at the gate?

29 And the king said, Because they lifted up their rod against the lions and loosed them, and came to me, and the lions also rejoiced at them as a dog rejoices to meet his lord.

30 And Balaam the son of B'or the magician answered the king, saying, These are none else than magicians like ourselves.

31 And now therefore send for them, and let them come and we will try them, and the king did so.

32 And it came to pass in the morning Pharaoh sent for Mosheh and Aaron to come before the king, and they took the rod of Elohim, and came to the king and spoke to him, saying,

33 Thus said YHWH Elohi of the Hebrews, Send my people that they may serve me.

34 And the king said to them, But who will believe you that you are the emissaries of Elohim and that you come to me by his order?

35 Now therefore give a wonder or sign in this matter, and then the words which you speak will be believed.

36 And Aaron hastened and threw the rod out of his hand before Pharaoh and before his servants, and the rod turned into a serpent.

37 And the sorcerers saw this and they cast each man his rod upon the ground and they became serpents.

38 And the serpent of Aaron's rod lifted up its head and

⁸⁸ 2Tim. 3:8- these names are referred to by Paul, but never given in Exodus.

opened its mouth to swallow the rods of the magicians.

39 And Balaam the magician answered and said, This thing has been from the days of old, that a serpent should swallow its fellow, and that living things devour each other.

40 Now therefore restore it to a rod as it was at first, and we will also restore our rods as they were at first, and if your rod shall swallow our rods, then shall we know that the spirit of Elohim is in you, and if not, you are only an artificer like unto ourselves.

41 And Aaron hastened and stretched forth his hand and caught hold of the serpent's tail and it became a rod in his hand, and the sorcerers did the like with their rods, and they got hold, each man of the tail of his serpent, and they became rods as at first.

42 And when they were restored to rods, the rod of Aaron swallowed up their rods.

43 And when the king saw this thing, he ordered the Book of Records that related to the kings of Egypt, to be brought, and they brought the Book of Records, the Chronicles of the Kings of Egypt, in which all the idols of Egypt were inscribed, for they thought of finding therein the name of YHWH, but they found it not.

44 And Pharaoh said to Mosheh and Aaron, Behold I have not found the name of your Elohim written in this book, and his name I know not.

45 And the counselors and wise men answered the king, We have heard that the Elohi of the Hebrews is a son of the wise, the son of ancient kings.

46 And Pharaoh turned to Mosheh and Aaron and said to them, I know not YHWH whom you have declared, neither will I send his people.

47 And they answered and said to the king, YHWH, Elohi of Elohim is his name, and he proclaimed his name over us from the days of our ancestors, and sent us, saying, Go to

Pharaoh and say unto him, Send my people that they may serve me.

48 Now therefore send us, that we may take a journey for three days in the wilderness, and there may sacrifice to him, for from the days of our going down to Egypt, he has not taken from our hands either burnt offering, oblation or sacrifice, and if you will not send us, his anger will be kindled against you, and he will smite Egypt either with the plague or with the sword.

49 And Pharaoh said to them, Tell me now his power and his might; and they said to him, He created the heaven and the earth, the seas and all their fishes, he formed the light, created the darkness, caused rain upon the earth and watered it, and made the herbage and grass to sprout, he created man and beast and the animals of the forest, the birds of the air and the fish of the sea, and by his mouth they live and die.

50 Surely he created you in your mother's womb, and put into you the breath of life, and reared you and placed you upon the royal throne of Egypt, and he will take your breath and soul from you, and return you to the ground where you were taken.

51 And the anger of the king was kindled at their words, and he said to them, But who among all the Elohi of nations can do this? my river is mine own, and I have made it for myself.

52 And he drove them from him, and he ordered the labor upon Israel to be more severe than it was yesterday and before.

53 And Mosheh and Aaron went out from the king's presence, and they saw the children of Israel in an evil condition for the task-masters had made their labor exceedingly heavy.

54 And Mosheh returned to YHWH and said, Why have you ill treated your people? for since I came to speak to Pharaoh

what you did send me for, he has exceedingly ill used the children of Israel.

55 And YHWH said to Mosheh, Behold you will see that with an outstretched hand and heavy plagues, Pharaoh will send the children of Israel from his land.

56 And Mosheh and Aaron dwelt among their brothers the children of Israel in Egypt.

57 And as for the children of Israel the Egyptians embittered their lives, with the heavy work which they imposed upon them.

CHAPTER 80

1 And at the end of two years, YHWH again sent Mosheh to Pharaoh to bring forth the children of Israel, and to send them out of the land of Egypt.

2 And Mosheh went and came to the house of Pharaoh, and he spoke to him the words of YHWH who had sent him, but Pharaoh would not hearken to the voice of YHWH, and Elohim roused his might in Egypt upon Pharaoh and his subjects, and Elohim smote Pharaoh and his people with very great and sore plagues.

3 And YHWH sent by the hand of Aaron and turned all the waters of Egypt into blood, with all their streams and rivers.

4 And when an Egyptian came to drink and draw water, he looked into his pitcher, and behold all the water was turned into blood; and when he came to drink from his cup the water in the cup became blood.

5 And when a woman kneaded her dough and cooked her victuals, their appearance was turned to that of blood.

6 And YHWH sent again and caused all their waters to bring forth frogs, and all the frogs came into the houses of the Egyptians.

7 And when the Egyptians drank, their bellies were filled with frogs and they danced in their bellies as they dance when in the river.

8 And all their drinking water and cooking water turned to frogs, also when they lay in their beds their perspiration bred frogs.

9 Notwithstanding all this the anger of YHWH did not turn from them, and his hand was stretched out against all the Egyptians to smite them with every heavy plague.

10 And YHWH sent and smote their dust to lice, and the lice became in Egypt to the height of two cubits upon the earth.

11 The lice were also very numerous, in the flesh of man and beast, in all the inhabitants of Egypt, also upon the king and queen YHWH sent the lice, and it grieved Egypt exceedingly on account of the lice.

12 Notwithstanding this, the anger of YHWH did not turn away, and his hand was still stretched out over Egypt.

13 And YHWH sent all kinds of beasts of the field into Egypt, and they came and destroyed all Egypt, man and beast, and trees, and all things that were in Egypt.

14 And YHWH sent fiery serpents, scorpions, mice, weasels, toads, together with others creeping in dust.

15 Flies, hornets, fleas, bugs and gnats, each swarm according to its kind.

16 And all reptiles and winged animals according to their kind came to Egypt and grieved the Egyptians exceedingly.

17 And the fleas and flies came into the eyes and ears of the Egyptians.

18 And the hornet came upon them and drove them away, and they removed from it into their inner rooms, and it pursued them.

19 And when the Egyptians hid themselves on account of the swarm of animals, they locked their doors after them, and Elohim ordered the Silonit which was in the sea, to

come up and go into Egypt.

20 And she had long arms, ten cubits in length of the cubit of a man.

21 And she went upon the roofs and uncovered the rafters and flooring and cut them, and stretched forth her arm into the house and removed the lock and the bolt, and opened the houses of Egypt.

22 Afterward came the swarm of animals into the houses of Egypt, and the swarm of animals destroyed the Egyptians, and it grieved them exceedingly.

23 Notwithstanding this the anger of YHWH did not turn away from the Egyptians, and his hand was yet stretched forth against them.

24 And Elohim sent the pestilence, and the pestilence pervaded Egypt, in the horses and asses, and in the camels, in herds of oxen and sheep and in man.

25 And when the Egyptians rose up early in the morning to take their cattle to pasture they found all their cattle dead.

26 And there remained of the cattle of the Egyptians only one in ten, and of the cattle belonging to Israel in Goshen not one died.

27 And Elohim sent a burning inflammation in the flesh of the Egyptians, which burst their skins, and it became a severe itch in all the Egyptians from the soles of their feet to the crowns of their heads.

28 And many boils were in their flesh, that their flesh wasted away until they became rotten and putrid.

29 Notwithstanding this the anger of YHWH did not turn away, and his hand was still stretched out over all Egypt.

30 And YHWH sent a very heavy hail, which smote their vines and broke their fruit trees and dried them up that they fell upon them.

31 Also every green herb became dry and perished, for a mingling fire descended amidst the hail, therefore the hail

and the fire consumed all things.

32 Also men and beasts that were found abroad perished of the flames of fire and of the hail, and all the young lions were exhausted.

33 And YHWH sent and brought numerous locusts into Egypt, the Chasel, Salom, Chargol, and Chagole, locusts each of its kind, which devoured all that the hail had left remaining.

34 Then all the Egyptians rejoiced at the locusts, although they consumed the produce of the field, and they caught them in abundance and salted them for food.

35 And YHWH turned a mighty wind of the sea which took away all the locusts, even those that were salted, and thrust them into the Red Sea; not one locust remained within the boundaries of Egypt.

36 And Elohim sent darkness upon Egypt, that the whole land of Egypt and Patros became dark for three days, so that a man could not see his hand when he lifted it to his mouth.

37 At that time died many of the people of Israel who had rebelled against YHWH and who would not hearken to Mosheh and Aaron, and believed not in them that Elohim had sent them.

38 And who had said, We will not go forth from Egypt lest we perish with hunger in a desolate wilderness, and who would not hearken to the voice of Mosheh.

39 And YHWH plagued them in the three days of darkness, and the Israelites buried them in those days, without the Egyptians knowing of them or rejoicing over them.

40 And the darkness was very great in Egypt for three days, and any person who was standing when the darkness came, remained standing in his place, and he that was sitting remained sitting, and he that was lying continued lying in the same state, and he that was walking remained sitting upon the ground in the same spot; and this thing happened to

all the Egyptians, until the darkness had passed away.

41 And the days of darkness passed away, and YHWH sent Mosheh and Aaron to the children of Israel, saying, Celebrate your feast and make your Passover, for behold I come in the midst of the night among all the Egyptians, and I will smite all their firstborn, from the firstborn of a man to the firstborn of a beast, and when I see your Passover, I will pass over you.

42 And the children of Israel did according to all that YHWH had commanded Mosheh and Aaron, thus did they in that night.

43 And it came to pass in the middle of the night, that YHWH went forth in the midst of Egypt, and smote all the firstborn of the Egyptians, from the firstborn of man to the firstborn of beast.

44 And Pharaoh rose up in the night, he and all his servants and all the Egyptians, and there was a great cry throughout Egypt in that night, for there was not a house in which there was not a corpse.

45 Also the likenesses of the firstborn of Egypt, which were carved in the walls at their houses, were destroyed and fell to the ground.

46 Even the bones of their firstborn who had died before this and whom they had buried in their houses, were raked up by the dogs of Egypt on that night and dragged before the Egyptians and cast before them.

47 And all the Egyptians saw this evil which had suddenly come upon them, and all the Egyptians cried out with a loud voice.

48 And all the families of Egypt wept upon that night, each man for his son and each man for his daughter, being the firstborn, and the tumult of Egypt was heard at a distance on that night.

49 And Bityah the daughter of Pharaoh went forth with the

king on that night to seek Mosheh and Aaron in their houses, and they found them in their houses, eating and drinking and rejoicing with all Israel.

50 And Bityah said to Mosheh, Is this the reward for the good which I have done to you, who have reared you and stretched you out, and you have brought this evil upon me and my father's house?

51 And Mosheh said to her, Surely ten plagues did YHWH bring upon Egypt; did any evil accrue to you from any of them? did one of them affect you? and she said, No.

52 And Mosheh said to her, Although you are the firstborn to your mother, you shall not die, and no evil shall reach you in the midst of Egypt.

53 And she said, What advantage is it to me, when I see the king, my brother, and all his house and subjects in this evil, whose firstborn perish with all the firstborn of Egypt?

54 And Mosheh said to her, Surely your brother and his house, and subjects, the families of Egypt, would not hearken to the word of YHWH, therefore did this evil come upon them.

55 And Pharaoh king of Egypt approached Mosheh and Aaron, and some of the children of Israel who were with them in that place, and he prayed to them, saying,

56 Rise up and take your brothers, all the children of Israel who are in the land, with their sheep and oxen, and all belonging to them, they shall leave nothing remaining, only pray for me to YHWH your Elohim.

57 And Mosheh said to Pharaoh, Behold though you are your mother's firstborn, yet fear not, for you will not die, for YHWH has commanded that you shall live, in order to show you his great might and strong stretched out arm.

58 And Pharaoh ordered the children of Israel to be sent away, and all the Egyptians strengthened themselves to send them, for they said, We are all perishing.

59 And all the Egyptians sent the Israelites forth, with great riches, sheep and oxen and precious things, according to the oath of YHWH between him and our Father Avraham.

60 And the children of Israel delayed going forth at night, and when the Egyptians came to them to bring them out, they said to them, Are we thieves, that we should go forth at night?

61 And the children of Israel asked of the Egyptians, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and garments, and the children of Israel stripped the Egyptians.

62 And Mosheh hastened and rose up and went to the river of Egypt, and brought up from thence the coffin of Yosef and took it with him.

63 The children of Israel also brought up, each man his father's coffin with him, and each man the coffins of his tribe.

CHAPTER 81

1 And the children of Israel journeyed from Rameses to Sukkot, about six hundred thousand men on foot, besides the little ones and their wives.

2 Also a mixed multitude went up with them, and flocks and herds, even much cattle.

3 And the sojourning of the children of Israel, who dwelt in the land of Egypt in hard labor, was two hundred and ten years.

4 And at the end of two hundred and ten years, YHWH brought forth the children of Israel from Egypt with a strong hand.

5 And the children of Israel traveled from Egypt and from Goshen and from Rameses, and encamped in Sukkot on the fifteenth day of the first month.

6 And the Egyptians buried all their firstborn whom YHWH had smitten, and all the Egyptians buried their slain for three days.

7 And the children of Israel traveled from Sukkot and encamped in Etam, at the end of the wilderness.

8 And on the third day after the Egyptians had buried their firstborn, many men rose up from Egypt and went after Israel to make them return to Egypt, for they repented that they had sent the Israelites away from their servitude.

9 And one man said to his neighbor, Surely Mosheh and Aaron spoke to Pharaoh, saying, We will go a three days' journey in the wilderness and sacrifice to YHWH our Elohim.

10 And now therefore let us rise up early in the morning and cause them to return, and it shall be that if they return with us to Egypt to their lords, then shall we know that there is faith in them, but if they will not return, then will we fight with them, and make them come back with great power and a strong hand.

11 And all the nobles of Pharaoh rose up in the morning, and with them about seven hundred thousand men, and they went forth from Egypt on that day, and came to the place where the children of Israel were.

12 And all the Egyptians saw and behold Mosheh and Aaron and all the children of Israel were sitting before Pi-Hachiroth, eating and drinking and celebrating the feast of YHWH.

13 And all the Egyptians said to the children of Israel, Surely you said, We will go a journey for three days in the wilderness and sacrifice to our Elohim and return.

14 Now therefore this day makes five days since you went, why do you not return to your lords?

15 And Mosheh and Aaron answered them, saying, Because YHWH our Elohim has testified in us, saying, You shall no more return to Egypt, but we will betake ourselves to a land

flowing with milk and honey, as YHWH our Elohim had sworn to our ancestors to give to us.

16 And when all the nobles of Egypt saw that the children of Israel did not hearken to them, to return to Egypt, they girded themselves to fight with Israel.

17 And YHWH strengthened the hearts of the children of Israel over the Egyptians, that they gave them a severe beating, and the battle was sore upon the Egyptians, and all the Egyptians fled from before the children of Israel, for many of them perished by the hand of the sons of Israel.

18 And the nobles of Pharaoh went to Egypt and told Pharaoh, saying, The children of Israel have fled, and will no more return to Egypt, and in this manner did Mosheh and Aaron speak to us.

19 And Pharaoh heard this thing, and his heart and the hearts of all his subjects were turned against Israel, and they repented that they had sent Israel; and all the Egyptians advised Pharaoh to pursue the children of Israel to make them come back to their burdens.

20 And they said each man to his brother, What is this which we have done, that we have sent Israel from our servitude?

21 And YHWH strengthened the hearts of all the Egyptians to pursue the Israelites, for YHWH desired to overthrow the Egyptians in the Red Sea.

22 And Pharaoh rose up and harnessed his chariot, and he ordered all the Egyptians to assemble, not one man was left excepting the little ones and the women.

23 And all the Egyptians went forth with Pharaoh to pursue the children of Israel, and the camp of Egypt was an exceedingly large and heavy camp, about ten hundred thousand men.

24 And the whole of this camp went and pursued the children of Israel to bring them back to Egypt, and they reached them encamping by the Red Sea.

25 And the children of Israel lifted up their eyes, and beheld all the Egyptians pursuing them, and the children of Israel were greatly terrified at them, and the children of Israel cried to YHWH.

26 And on account of the Egyptians, the children of Israel divided themselves into four divisions, and they were divided in their opinions, for they were afraid of the Egyptians, and Mosheh spoke to each of them.

27 The first division was of the children of Re'uben, Shim'on, and Yissakhar, and they resolved to cast themselves into the sea, for they were exceedingly afraid of the Egyptians.

28 And Mosheh said to them, Fear not, stand still and see the salvation of YHWH which He will effect this day for you.

29 The second division was of the children of Z'vulun, Benyamin and Naftali, and they resolved to go back to Egypt with the Egyptians.

30 And Mosheh said to them, Fear not, for as you have seen the Egyptians this day, so shall you see them no more for ever.

31 The third division was of the children of Y'udah and Yosef, and they resolved to go to meet the Egyptians to fight with them.

32 And Mosheh said to them, Stand in your places, for YHWH will fight for you, and you shall remain silent.

33 And the fourth division was of the children of Levi, Gad, and Asher, and they resolved to go into the midst of the Egyptians to confound them, and Mosheh said to them, Remain in your stations and fear not, only call unto YHWH that he may save you out of their hands.

34 After this Mosheh rose up from amidst the people, and he prayed to YHWH and said,

35 YHWH Elohi of all the earth, save now your people

whom you did bring forth from Egypt, and let not the Egyptians boast that power and might are theirs.

36 So YHWH said to Mosheh, Why do you cry unto me? speak to the children of Israel that they shall proceed, and do you stretch out your rod upon the sea and divide it, and the children of Israel shall pass through it.

37 And Mosheh did so, and he lifted up his rod upon the sea and divided it.

38 And the waters of the sea were divided into twelve parts, and the children of Israel passed through on foot, with shoes, as a man would pass through a prepared road.

39 And YHWH manifested to the children of Israel his wonders in Egypt and in the sea by the hand of Mosheh and Aaron.

40 And when the children of Israel had entered the sea, the Egyptians came after them, and the waters of the sea resumed upon them, and they all sank in the water, and not one man was left excepting Pharaoh, who gave thanks to YHWH and believed in him, therefore YHWH did not cause him to perish at that time with the Egyptians.

41 And YHWH ordered an angel to take him from among the Egyptians, who cast him upon the land of Ninevah and he reigned over it for many days.

42 And on that day YHWH saved Israel from the hand of Egypt, and all the children of Israel saw that the Egyptians had perished, and they beheld the great hand of YHWH, in what he had performed in Egypt and in the sea.

43 Then sang Mosheh and the children of Israel this song unto YHWH, on the day when YHWH caused the Egyptians to fall before them.

44 And all Israel sang in concert, saying, I will sing to YHWH for He is greatly exalted, the horse and his rider has he cast into the sea; behold it is written in the book of the Torah of Elohim.

45 After this the children of Israel proceeded on their journey, and encamped in Marah, and YHWH gave to the children of Israel statutes and judgments in that place in Marah, and YHWH commanded the children of Israel to walk in all his ways and to serve him.

46 And they journeyed from Marah and came to Elim, and in Elim were twelve springs of water and seventy date trees, and the children encamped there by the waters.

47 And they journeyed from Elim and came to the wilderness of Sin, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departure from Egypt.

48 At that time YHWH gave the manna to the children of Israel to eat, and YHWH caused food to rain from heaven for the children of Israel day by day.

49 And the children of Israel ate the manna for forty years, all the days that they were in the wilderness, until they came to the land of Kanaan to possess it.

50 And they proceeded from the wilderness of Sin and encamped in Alush.

51 And they proceeded from Alush and encamped in Refidim.

52 And when the children of Israel were in Refidim, Amalek the son of Elifaz, the son of Esau, the brother of Tz'fo, came to fight with Israel.

53 And he brought with him eight hundred and one thousand men, magicians and conjurers, and he prepared for battle with Israel in Rephidim.

54 And they carried on a great and severe battle against Israel, and YHWH delivered Amalek and his people into the hands of Mosheh and the children of Israel, and into the hand of Yahushua, the son of Nun, the Ephrathite, the servant of Mosheh.

55 And the children of Israel smote Amalek and his people at the edge of the sword, but the battle was very sore upon

the children of Israel.

56 And YHWH said to Mosheh, Write this thing as a memorial for you in a book, and place it in the hand of Yahushua, the son of Nun, your servant, and you shall command the children of Israel, saying, When you shall come to the land of Kanaan, you shall utterly efface the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.

57 And Mosheh did so, and he took the book and wrote upon it these words, saying,

58 Remember what Amalek has done to you in the road when you went forth from Egypt.

59 Who met you in the road and smote your rear, even those that were feeble behind you when you were faint and weary.

60 Therefore it shall be when YHWH your Elohim shall have given you rest from all your enemies round about in the land which YHWH your Elohim gives you for an inheritance, to possess it, that you shall blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven, you shall not forget it.

61 And the king who shall have pity on Amalek, or upon his memory or upon his seed, behold I will require it of him, and I will cut him off from among his people.

62 And Mosheh wrote all these things in a book, and he enjoined the children of Israel respecting all these matters.

CHAPTER 82

1 And the children of Israel proceeded from Refidim and they encamped in the wilderness of Sinai, in the third month from their going forth from Egypt.

2 At that time came Reuel the Midianite, the father-in-law of Mosheh, with Tzipporah his daughter and her two sons, for he had heard of the wonders of YHWH which he had done

to Israel, that he had delivered them from the hand of Egypt.

3 And Reuel came to Mosheh to the wilderness where he was encamped, where was the mountain of Elohim.

4 And Mosheh went forth to meet his father-in-law with great honor, and all Israel was with him.

5 And Reuel and his children remained among the Israelites for many days, and Reuel knew YHWH from that day forward.

6 And in the third month from the children of Israel's departure from Egypt, on the sixth day thereof, YHWH gave to Israel the ten commandments on Mount Sinai.

7 And all Israel heard all these commandments, and all Israel rejoiced exceedingly in YHWH on that day.

8 And the glory of YHWH rested upon Mount Sinai, and he called to

Mosheh, and Mosheh came in the midst of a cloud and ascended the mountain.

9 And Mosheh was upon the mount forty days and forty nights; he ate no bread and drank no water, and YHWH instructed him in the statutes and judgments in order to teach the children of Israel.

10 And YHWH wrote the ten commandments which he had commanded the children of Israel upon two tablets of stone, which he gave to Mosheh to command the children of Israel.

11 And at the end of forty days and forty nights, when YHWH had finished speaking to Mosheh on Mount Sinai, and gave to Mosheh the tablets of stone, written with the finger of Elohim.

12 And when the children of Israel saw that Mosheh tarried to come down from the mount, they gathered round Aaron, and said, As for this man Mosheh we know not what has become of him.

13 Now therefore rise up, make unto us a god who shall go before us, so that you shall not die.

14 And Aaron was greatly afraid of the people, and he ordered them to bring him gold and he made it into a molten calf for the people.

15 And YHWH said to Mosheh, before he had come down from the mount, Get you down, for your people whom you did bring forth from Egypt have corrupted themselves.

16 They have made to themselves a molten calf, and have bowed down to it, now therefore leave me, that I may consume them from off the earth, for they are a stiff-necked people.

17 And Mosheh besought the countenance of YHWH, and he prayed to YHWH for the people on account of the calf which they had made, and he afterward descended from the mount and in his hands were the two tablets of stone, which Elohim had given him to command the Israelites.

18 And when Mosheh approached the camp and saw the calf which the people had made, the anger of Mosheh was kindled and he broke the tablets under the mount.

19 And Mosheh came to the camp and he took the calf and burned it with fire, and ground it till it became fine dust, and strewed it upon the water and gave it to the Israelites to drink.

20 And there died of the people by the swords of each other about three thousand men who had made the calf.

21 And on the morrow Mosheh said to the people, I will go up to YHWH, that I may make atonement for your sins which you have sinned to YHWH.

22 And Mosheh again went up to YHWH and he remained with YHWH forty days and forty nights.

23 And during the forty days did Mosheh entreat YHWH in behalf of the children of Israel, and YHWH hearkened to the prayer of Mosheh, and YHWH was entreated of him in behalf of Israel.

24 Then spoke YHWH to Mosheh to hew two stone tablets and to bring them up to YHWH, who would write upon them the ten commandments.

25 Now Mosheh did so, and he came down and hewed the two tablets and went up to Mount Sinai to YHWH, and YHWH wrote the ten commandments upon the tablets.

26 And Mosheh remained yet with YHWH forty days and forty nights, and YHWH instructed him in statutes and judgments to impart to Israel.

27 And YHWH commanded him respecting the children of Israel that they should make a sanctuary for YHWH, that his name might rest therein, and YHWH showed him the likeness of the sanctuary and the likeness of all its vessels.

28 And at the end of the forty days, Mosheh came down from the mount and the two tablets were in his hand.

29 And Mosheh came to the children of Israel and spoke to them all the words of YHWH, and he taught them laws, statutes and judgments which YHWH had taught him.

30 And Mosheh told the children of Israel the word of YHWH, that a sanctuary should be made for him, to dwell among the children of Israel.

31 And the people rejoiced greatly at all the good which YHWH had spoken to them, through Mosheh, and they said, We will do all that YHWH has spoken to you.

32 And all the people rose up like one man and they made generous offerings to the sanctuary of YHWH, and each man brought the offering of YHWH for the work of the sanctuary, and for all its service.

33 And all the children of Israel brought each man of all that was found in his possession for the work of the sanctuary of YHWH, gold, silver and brass, and every thing that was serviceable for the sanctuary.

34 And all the wise men who were practiced in work came and made the sanctuary of YHWH, according to all that

YHWH had commanded, every man in the work in which he had been practiced; and all the wise men in heart made the sanctuary, and its furniture and all the vessels for the holy service, as YHWH had commanded Mosheh.

35 And the work of the sanctuary of the tabernacle was completed at the end of five months, and the children of Israel did all that YHWH had commanded Mosheh.

36 And they brought the sanctuary and all its furniture to Mosheh; like unto the representation which YHWH had shown to Mosheh, so did the children of Israel.

37 And Mosheh saw the work, and behold they did it as YHWH had commanded him, so Mosheh blessed them.

Sefer VaYikra

CHAPTER 83

1 And in the twelfth month, in the twenty-third day of the month, Mosheh took Aaron and his sons, and he dressed them in their garments, and anointed them and did unto them as YHWH had commanded him, and Mosheh brought up all the offerings which YHWH had on that day commanded him.

2 Mosheh afterward took Aaron and his sons and said to them, For seven days shall you remain at the door of the tabernacle, for thus am I commanded.

3 And Aaron and his sons did all that YHWH had commanded them through Mosheh, and they remained for seven days at the door of the tabernacle.

4 And it came to pass on the eighth day, being the first day of the first month, in the second year from the Israelites' departure from Egypt, Mosheh erected the sanctuary, and Mosheh put up all the furniture of the tabernacle and all the

furniture of the sanctuary, and he did all that YHWH had commanded him.

5 And Mosheh called to Aaron and his sons, and they brought the burnt offering and the sin offering for themselves and the children of Israel, as YHWH had commanded Mosheh.

6 On that day the two sons of Aaron, Nadav and Avihu, took strange fire and brought it before YHWH who had not commanded them, and a fire went forth from before YHWH, and consumed them, and they died before YHWH on that day.

Sefer B'Midbar

7 Then on the day when Mosheh had completed to erect the sanctuary, the princes of the children of Israel began to bring their offerings before YHWH for the dedication of the altar.

8 And they brought up their offerings each prince for one day, a prince each day for twelve days.

9 And all the offerings which they brought, each man in his day, one silver charger weighing one hundred and thirty shekels, one silver bowl of seventy shekels after the shekel of the sanctuary, both of them full of fine flour, mingled with oil for a meat offering.

10 One spoon, weighing ten shekels of gold, full of incense.

11 One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering.

12 And one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

13 And for a sacrifice of peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five lambs of a year old.

14 Thus did the twelve princes of Israel day by day, each man in his day.

15 And it was after this, in the thirteenth day of the month, that Mosheh commanded the children of Israel to observe

the Passover.

16 And the children of Israel kept the Passover in its season in the fourteenth day of the month, as YHWH had commanded Mosheh, so did the children of Israel.

17 And in the second month, on the first day thereof, YHWH spoke unto Mosheh, saying,

18 Number the heads of all the males of the children of Israel from twenty years old and upward, you and your brother Aaron and the twelve princes of Israel.

19 And Mosheh did so, and Aaron came with the twelve princes of Israel, and they numbered the children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai.

20 And the numbers of the children of Israel by the houses of their fathers, from twenty years old and upward, were six hundred and three thousand, five hundred and fifty.

21 But the children of Levi were not numbered among their brothers the children of Israel.

22 And the number of all the males of the children of Israel from one month old and upward, was twenty-two thousand, two hundred and seventy-three.

23 And the number of the children of Levi from one month old and above, was twenty-two thousand.

24 And Mosheh placed the priests and the Levites each man to his service and to his burden to serve the sanctuary of the tabernacle, as YHWH had commanded Mosheh.

25 And on the twentieth day of the month, the cloud was taken away from the tabernacle of testimony.

26 At that time the children of Israel continued their journey from the wilderness of Sinai, and they took a journey of three days, and the cloud rested upon the wilderness of Paran; there the anger of YHWH was kindled against Israel, for they had provoked YHWH in asking him for meat, that they might eat.

27 And YHWH hearkened to their voice, and gave them

meat which they ate for one month.

28 But after this the anger of YHWH was kindled against them, and he smote them with a great slaughter, and they were buried there in that place.

29 And the children of Israel called that place Kebrot HaTaavah, because there they buried the people that lusted flesh.

30 And they departed from Kebrot HaTaavah and pitched in Chatzerot, which is in the wilderness of Paran.

31 And while the children of Israel were in Chatzerot, the anger of YHWH was kindled against Miriam on account of Mosheh, and she became leprous, white as snow.

32 And she was confined without the camp for seven days, until she had been received again after her leprosy.

33 The children of Israel afterward departed from Chatzerot, and pitched in the end of the wilderness of Paran.

34 At that time, YHWH spoke to Mosheh to send twelve men from the children of Israel, one man to a tribe, to go and explore the land of Kanaan.

35 And Mosheh sent the twelve men, and they came to the land of Kanaan to search and examine it, and they explored the whole land from the wilderness of Sin to R'chov as you come to Chamat.

36 And at the end of forty days they came to Mosheh and Aaron, and they brought him word as it was in their hearts, and ten of the men brought up an evil report to the children of Israel, of the land which they had explored, saying, It is better for us to return to Egypt than to go to this land, a land that consumes its inhabitants.

37 And Yahushua the son of Nun, and Kalev the son of Y'funeh, who were of those that explored the land, said, The land is exceedingly good.

38 If YHWH delights in us, then he will bring us to this land and give it to us, for it is a land flowing with milk and

honey.

39 And the children of Israel would not hearken to them, and they hearkened to the words of the ten men who had brought up an evil report of the land.

40 And YHWH heard the murmurings of the children of Israel and he was angry and swore, saying,

41 Surely not one man of this wicked generation shall see the land from twenty years old and upward excepting Kalev the son of Y'funeh and Yahushua the son of Nun.

42 But surely this wicked generation shall perish in this wilderness, and their children shall come to the land and they shall possess it; so the anger of YHWH was kindled against Israel, and he made them wander in the wilderness for forty years until the end of that wicked generation, because they did not follow YHWH.

43 And the people dwelt in the wilderness of Paran a long time, and they afterward proceeded to the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea.

CHAPTER 84

1 At that time Korach the son of Yetzer the son of K'hat the son of Levi, took many men of the children of Israel, and they rose up and quarreled with Mosheh and Aaron and the whole congregation.

2 And YHWH was angry with them, and the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up, with their houses and all belonging to them, and all the men belonging to Korach.

3 And after this Elohim made the people go round by the way of Mount Seir for a long time.

4 At that time YHWH said unto Mosheh, Provoke not a war against the children of Esau, for I will not give to you of any thing belonging to them, as much as the sole of the foot

could tread upon, for I have given Mount Seir for an inheritance to Esau.

5 Therefore did the children of Esau fight against the children of Seir in former times, and YHWH had delivered the children of Seir into the hands of the children of Esau, and destroyed them from before them, and the children of Esau dwelt in their stead unto this day.

6 Therefore YHWH said to the children of Israel, Fight not against the children of Esau your brothers, for nothing in their land belongs to you, but you may buy food of them for money and eat it, and you may buy water of them for money and drink it.

7 And the children of Israel did according to the word of YHWH.

8 And the children of Israel went about the wilderness, going round by the way of Mount Sinai for a long time, and touched not the children of Esau, and they continued in that district for nineteen years.

9 At that time died Latyanus king of the children of Chittim, in the forty-fifth year of his reign, which is the fourteenth year of the children of Israel's departure from Egypt.

10 And they buried him in his place which he had built for himself in the land of Chittim, and Avimanos reigned in his place for thirty-eight years.

11 And the children of Israel passed the boundary of the children of Esau in those days, at the end of nineteen years, and they came and passed the road of the wilderness of Moav.

12 And YHWH said to Mosheh, besiege not Moav, and do not fight against them, for I will give you nothing of their land.

13 And the children of Israel passed the road of the wilderness of Moav for nineteen years, and they did not fight against them.

14 And in the thirty-sixth year of the children of Israel's departing from Egypt YHWH smote the heart of Sichon, king of the Amorites, and he waged war, and went forth to fight against the children of Moav.

15 And Sichon sent messengers to B'or the son of Janeas, the son of Balaam, counsellor to the king of Egypt, and to Balaam his son, to curse Moav, in order that it might be delivered into the hand of Sichon.

16 And the messengers went and brought B'or the son of Yanus, and Balaam his son, from Pethor in Mesopotamia, so B'or and Balaam his son came to the city of Sichon and they cursed Moav and their king in the presence of Sichon king of the Amorites.

17 So Sichon went out with his whole army, and he went to Moav and fought against them, and he subdued them, and YHWH delivered them into his hands, and Sichon slew the king of Moav.

18 And Sichon took all the cities of Moav in the battle; he also took Heshbon from them, for Heshbon was one of the cities of Moav, and Sichon placed his princes and his nobles in Heshbon, and Heshbon belonged to Sichon in those days.

19 Therefore the parable speakers B'or and Balaam his son uttered these words, saying, Come unto Heshbon, the city of Sichon will be built and established.

20 Woe unto you Moav! you are lost, O people of Kemosh! behold it is written upon the Book of the Torah of Elohim.

21 And when Sichon had conquered Moav, he placed guards in the cities which he had taken from Moav, and a considerable number of the children of Moav fell in battle into the hand of Sichon, and he made a great capture of them, sons and daughters, and he slew their king; so Sichon turned back to his own land.

22 And Sichon gave numerous presents of silver and gold to B'or and Balaam his son, and he dismissed them, and they

went to Mesopotamia to their home and country.

23 At that time all the children of Israel passed from the road of the wilderness of Moav, and returned and surrounded the wilderness of Edom.

24 So the whole congregation came to the wilderness of Sin in the first month of the fortieth year from their departure from Egypt, and the children of Israel dwelt there in Kadesh, of the wilderness of Sin, and Miriam died there and she was buried there.

25 At that time Mosheh sent messengers to Hadad king of Edom, saying, Thus says your brother Israel, Let me pass I pray you through your land, we will not pass through field or vineyard, we will not drink the water of the well; we will walk in the king's road.

26 And Edom said to him, you shall not pass through my country, and Edom went forth to meet the children of Israel with a mighty people.

27 And the children of Esau refused to let the children of Israel pass through their land, so the Israelites removed from them and fought not against them.

28 For before this YHWH had commanded the children of Israel, saying, You shall not fight against the children of Esau, therefore the Israelites removed from them and did not fight against them.

29 So the children of Israel departed from Kadesh, and all the people came to Mount Hor.

30 At that time YHWH spoke to Mosheh, Tell your brother Aaron that he shall die there, for he shall not come to the land which I have given to the children of Israel.

31 And Aaron went up, at the word of YHWH, to Mount Hor, in the fortieth year, in the fifth month, in the first day of the month.

32 And Aaron was one hundred and twenty-three years old when he died in Mount Hor.

CHAPTER 85

1 And king Arad the Kanaanite, who dwelt in the south, heard that the Israelites had come by the way of the spies, and he arranged his forces to fight against the Israelites.

2 And the children of Israel were greatly afraid of him, for he had a great and heavy army, so the children of Israel resolved to return to Egypt.

3 And the children of Israel turned back about the distance of three days' journey unto Maserath Beni Jaakon, for they were greatly afraid on account of the king Arad.

4 And the children of Israel would not get back to their places, so they remained in Beni Yaakon for thirty days.

5 And when the children of Levi saw that the children of Israel would not turn back, they were jealous for the sake of YHWH, they rose up and fought against the Israelites their brothers, and slew of them a great body, and forced them to turn back to their place, Mount Hor.

6 And when they returned, king Arad was still arranging his host for battle against the Israelites.

7 And Israel vowed a vow, saying, If you will deliver this people into my hand, then I will utterly destroy their cities.

8 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Israel, and he delivered the Kanaanites into their hand, and he utterly destroyed them and their cities, and he called the name of the place Charmah.

9 And the children of Israel journeyed from Mount Hor and pitched in Ovot, and they journeyed from Ovot and they pitched at Iyi-abarim, in the border of Moav.

10 And the children of Israel sent to Moav, saying, Let us pass now through your land into our place, but the children of Moav would not suffer the children of Israel to pass

through their land, for the children of Moav were greatly afraid lest the children of Israel should do unto them as Sichon king of the Amorites had done to them, who had taken their land and had slain many of them.

11 Therefore Moav would not suffer the Israelites to pass through his land, and YHWH commanded the children of Israel, saying, That they should not fight against Moav, so the Israelites removed from Moav.

12 And the children of Israel journeyed from the border of Moav, and they came to the other side of Arnon, the border of Moav, between Moav and the Amorites, and they pitched in the border of Sichon, king of the Amorites, in the wilderness of K'demot.

13 And the children of Israel sent messengers to Sichon, king of the Amorites, saying,

14 Let us pass through your land, we will not turn into the fields or into the vineyards, we will go along by the king's highway until we shall have passed your border, but Sichon would not suffer the Israelites to pass.

15 So Sichon collected all the people of the Amorites and went forth into the wilderness to meet the children of Israel, and he fought against Israel in Yah'tzah.

16 And YHWH delivered Sichon king of the Amorites into the hand of the children of Israel, and Israel smote all the people of Sichon with the edge of the sword and avenged the cause of Moav.

17 And the children of Israel took possession of the land of Sichon from Aram unto Yabuk, unto the children of Ammon, and they took all the spoil of the cities.

18 And Israel took all these cities, and Israel dwelt in all the cities of the Amorites.

19 And all the children of Israel resolved to fight against the children of Ammon, to take their land also.

20 So YHWH said to the children of Israel, Do not besiege

the children of Ammon, neither stir up battle against them, for I will give nothing to you of their land, and the children of Israel hearkened to the word of YHWH, and did not fight against the children of Ammon.

21 And the children of Israel turned and went up by the way of Bashan to the land of Og, king of Bashan, and Og the king of Bashan went out to meet the Israelites in battle, and he had with him many valiant men, and a very strong force from the people of the Amorites.

22 And Og king of Bashan was a very powerful man, but Naaron his son was exceedingly powerful, even stronger than he was.

23 And Og said in his heart, Behold now the whole camp of Israel takes up a space of three parsa⁸⁹, now will I smite them at once without sword or spear.

24 And Og went up Mount Yah'zah, and took from there one large stone, the length of which was three parsa, and he placed it on his head, and resolved to throw it upon the camp of the children of Israel, to smite all the Israelites with that stone.

25 And the angel of YHWH came and pierced the stone upon the head of Og, and the stone fell upon the neck of Og that Og fell to the earth on account of the weight of the stone upon his neck.

26 At that time YHWH said to the children of Israel, Be not afraid of him, for I have given him and all his people and all his land into your hand, and you shall do to him as you did to Sichon.

27 And Mosheh went down to him with a small number of the children of Israel, and Mosheh smote Og with a stick at the ankles of his feet and slew him.

28 The children of Israel afterward pursued the children of Og and all his people, and they beat and destroyed them till

⁸⁹ One "parsa" = about four miles.

there was no remnant left of them.

29 Mosheh afterward sent some of the children of Israel to spy out Ya'zer, for Ya'zer was a very famous city.

30 And the spies went to Ya'zer and explored it, and the spies trusted in YHWH, and they fought against the men of Ya'zer.

31 And these men took Ya'zer and its villages, and YHWH delivered them into their hand, and they drove out the Amorites who had been there.

32 And the children of Israel took the land of the two kings of the Amorites, sixty cities which were on the other side of Yordan, from the brook of Arnon unto Mount Herman.

33 And the children of Israel journeyed and came into the plain of Moav which is on this side of Yordan, by Yericho.

34 And the children of Moav heard all the evil which the children of Israel had done to the two kings of the Amorites, to Sichon and Og, so all the men of Moav were greatly afraid of the Israelites.

35 And the elders of Moav said, Behold the two kings of the Amorites, Sichon and Og, who were more powerful than all the kings of the earth, could not stand against the children of Israel, how then can we stand before them?

36 Surely they sent us a message before now to pass through our land on their way, and we would not suffer them, now they will turn upon us with their heavy swords and destroy us; and Moav was distressed on account of the children of Israel, and they were greatly afraid of them, and they counseled together what was to be done to the children of Israel.

37 And the elders of Moav resolved and took one of their men, Balak the son of Tzippor the Moabite, and made him king over them at that time, and Balak was a very wise man.

38 And the elders of Moav rose up and sent to the children of Midyan to make peace with them, for a great battle and

enmity had been in those days between Moav and Midyan, from the days of Hadad the son of Bedad king of Edom, who smote Midyan in the field of Moav, unto these days.

39 And the children of Moav sent to the children of Midyan, and they made peace with them, and the elders of Midyan came to the land of Moav to make peace in behalf of the children of Midyan.

40 And the elders of Moav counseled with the elders of Midyan what to do in order to save their lives from Israel.

41 And all the children of Moav said to the elders of Midyan, Now therefore the children of Israel lick up all that are round about us, as the ox licks up the grass of the field, for thus did they do to the two kings of the Amorites who are stronger than we are.

42 And the elders of Midyan said to Moav, We have heard that at the time when Sichon king of the Amorites fought against you, when he prevailed over you and took your land, he had sent to B'or the son of Yanus and to Balaam his son from Mesopotamia, and they came and cursed you; therefore did the hand of Sichon prevail over you, that he took your land.

43 Now therefore send you also to Balaam his son, for he still remains in his land, and give him his hire, that he may come and curse all the people of whom you are afraid; so the elders of Moav heard this thing, and it pleased them to send to Balaam the son of B'or.

44 So Balak the son of Tzippor king of Moav sent messengers to Balaam, saying,

45 Behold there is a people come out from Egypt, behold they cover the face of the earth, and they abide over against me.

46 Now therefore come and curse this people for me, for they are too mighty for me, peradventure I shall prevail to fight against them, and drive them out, for I heard that he

whom you bless is blessed, and whom you curse is cursed.
47 So the messengers of Balak went to Balaam and brought Balaam to curse the people to fight against Moav.
48 And Balaam came to Balak to curse Israel, and YHWH said to Balaam, Curse not this people for it is blessed.
49 And Balak urged Balaam day by day to curse Israel, but Balaam hearkened not to Balak on account of the word of YHWH which he had spoken to Balaam.
50 And when Balak saw that Balaam would not accede to his wish, he rose up and went home, and Balaam also returned to his land and he went from there to Midyan.
51 And the children of Israel journeyed from the plain of Moav, and pitched by Yordan from Beth-HaY'shimot even unto Avel-HaShittim, at the end of the plains of Moav.
52 And when the children of Israel abode in the plain of Shittim, they began to commit whoredom with the daughters of Moav.
53 And the children of Israel approached Moav, and the children of Moav pitched their tents opposite to the camp of the children of Israel.
54 And the children of Moav were afraid of the children of Israel, and the children of Moav took all their daughters and their wives of beautiful aspect and comely appearance, and dressed them in gold and silver and costly garments.
55 And the children of Moav seated those women at the door of their tents, in order that the children of Israel might see them and turn to them, and not fight against Moav.
56 And all the children of Moav did this thing to the children of Israel, and every man placed his wife and daughter at the door of his tent, and all the children of Israel saw the act of the children of Moav, and the children of Israel turned to the daughters of Moav and coveted them, and they went to them.
57 And it came to pass that when a Hebrew came to the door

of the tent of Moav, and saw a daughter of Moav and desired her in his heart, and spoke with her at the door of the tent that which he desired, while they were speaking together the men of the tent would come out and speak to the Hebrew like unto these words:

58 Surely you know that we are brothers, we are all the descendants of Lot and the descendants of Avraham his brother, wherefore then will you not remain with us, and wherefore will you not eat our bread and our sacrifice?

59 And when the children of Moav had thus overwhelmed him with their speeches, and enticed him by their flattering words, they seated him in the tent and cooked and sacrificed for him, and he ate of their sacrifice and of their bread.

60 They then gave him wine and he drank and became intoxicated, and they placed before him a beautiful damsel, and he did with her as he liked, for he knew not what he was doing, as he had drunk plentifully of wine.

61 Thus did the children of Moav to Israel in that place, in the plain of Shittim, and the anger of YHWH was kindled against Israel on account of this matter, and he sent a pestilence among them, and there died of the Israelites twenty-four thousand men.

62 Now there was a man of the children of Shim'on whose name was Zimri, the son of Salu, who connected himself with the Midianite Kazbi, the daughter of Tzur, king of Midyan, in the eyes of all the children of Israel.

63 And Pinchas the son of Elazer, the son of Aaron the priest, saw this wicked thing which Zimri had done, and he took a spear and rose up and went after them, and pierced them both and slew them, and the pestilence ceased from the children of Israel.

CHAPTER 86

1 At that time after the pestilence, YHWH said to Mosheh, and to Elazer the son of Aaron the priest, saying,

2 Number the heads of the whole community of the children of Israel, from twenty years old and upward, all that went forth in the army.

3 And Mosheh and Elazer numbered the children of Israel after their families, and the number of all Israel was seven hundred thousand, seven hundred and thirty.

4 And the number of the children of Levi, from one month old and upward, was twenty-three thousand, and among these there was not a man of those numbered by Mosheh and Aaron in the wilderness of Sinai.

5 For YHWH had told them that they would die in the wilderness, so they all died, and not one had been left of them excepting Kalev the son of Y'funneh, and Yahushua the son of Nun.

6 And it was after this that YHWH said to Mosheh, Say unto the children of Israel to avenge upon Midyan the cause of their brothers the children of Israel.

7 And Mosheh did so, and the children of Israel chose from among them twelve thousand men, being one thousand to a tribe, and they went to Midyan.

8 And the children of Israel warred against Midyan, and they slew every male, also the five princes of Midyan, and Balaam the son of B'or did they slay with the sword.

9 And the children of Israel took the wives of Midyan captive, with their little ones and their cattle, and all belonging to them.

10 And they took all the spoil and all the prey, and they brought it to Mosheh and to Elazer to the plains of Moav.

11 And Mosheh and Elazer and all the princes of the

congregation went forth to meet them with joy.
12 And they divided all the spoil of Midyan, and the children of Israel had been revenged upon Midyan for the cause of their brothers the children of Israel.

Sefer D'Varim

CHAPTER 87

1 At that time YHWH said to Mosheh, Behold your days are approaching to an end, take now Yahushua the son of Nun your servant and place him in the tabernacle, and I will command him, and Mosheh did so.

2 And YHWH appeared in the tabernacle in a pillar of cloud, and the pillar of cloud stood at the entrance of the tabernacle.

3 And YHWH commanded Yahushua the son of Nun and said unto him, Be strong and courageous, for you shall bring the children of Israel to the land which I swore to give them, and I will be with you.

4 And Mosheh said to Yahushua, Be strong and courageous, for you will make the children of Israel inherit the land, and YHWH will be with you, he will not leave you nor forsake you, be not afraid nor disheartened.

5 And Mosheh called to all the children of Israel and said to them, You have seen all the good which YHWH your Elohim has done for you in the wilderness.

6 And now therefore observe all the words of this Torah, and walk in the way of YHWH your Elohim, turn not from the way which YHWH has commanded you, either to the right or to the left.

7 And Mosheh taught the children of Israel statutes and judgments and laws to do in the land as YHWH had

commanded him.

8 And he taught them the way of YHWH and his laws; behold they are written upon the Book of the Torah of Elohim which he gave to the children of Israel by the hand of Mosheh.

9 And Mosheh finished commanding the children of Israel, and YHWH said to him, saying, Go up to the Mount Abarim and die there, and be gathered unto your people as Aaron your brother was gathered.

10 And Mosheh went up as YHWH had commanded him, and he died there in the land of Moav by the order of YHWH, in the fortieth year from the Israelites going forth from the land of Egypt.

11 And the children of Israel wept for Mosheh in the plains of Moav for thirty days, and the days of weeping and mourning for Mosheh were completed.

Sefer Yahushua

CHAPTER 88

1 And it was after the death of Mosheh that YHWH said to Yahushua the son of Nun, saying,

2 Rise up and pass the Yordan to the land which I have given to the children of Israel, and you shall make the children of Israel inherit the land.

3 Every place upon which the sole of your feet shall tread shall belong to you, from the wilderness of Lebanon unto the great river the river of P'rat shall be your boundary.

4 No man shall stand up against you all the days of your life; as I was with Mosheh, so will I be with you, only be strong and of good courage to observe all the law which Mosheh commanded you, turn not from the way either to the right or

to the left, in order that you may prosper in all that you do.

5 And Yahushua commanded the officers of Israel, saying, Pass through the camp and command the people, saying, Prepare for yourselves provisions, for in three days more you will pass the Yordan to possess the land.

6 And the officers of the children of Israel did so, and they commanded the people and they did all that Yahushua had commanded.

7 And Yahushua sent two men to spy out the land of Yericho, and the men went and spied out Yericho.

8 And at the end of seven days they came to Yahushua in the camp and said to him, YHWH has delivered all the land into our hand, and the inhabitants thereof are melted with fear because of us.

9 And it came to pass after that, that Yahushua rose up in the morning and all Israel with him, and they journeyed from Shittim, and Yahushua and all Israel with him passed the Yordan; and Yahushua was eighty-two years old when he passed the Yordan with Israel.

10 And the people went up from Yordan on the tenth day of the first month, and they encamped in Gilgal at the eastern corner of Yericho.

11 And the children of Israel kept the Passover in Gilgal, in the plains of Yericho, on the fourteenth day at the month, as it is written in the Torah of Mosheh.

12 And the manna ceased at that time on the morrow of the Passover, and there was no more manna for the children of Israel, and they ate of the produce of the land of Kanaan.

13 And Yericho was entirely closed against the children of Israel, no one came out or went in.

14 And it was in the second month, on the first day of the month, that YHWH said to Yahushua, Rise up, behold I have given Yericho into your hand with all the people thereof; and all your fighting men shall go round the city,

once each day, thus shall you do for six days.

15 And the priests shall blow upon shofarot⁹⁰, and when you shall hear the sound of the shofar, all the people shall give a great shouting, that the walls of the city shall fall down; all the people shall go up every man against his opponent.

16 And Yahushua did so according to all that YHWH had commanded him.

17 And on the seventh day they went round the city seven times, and the priests blew upon shofarot.

18 And at the seventh round, Yahushua said to the people, Shout, for YHWH has delivered the whole city into our hands.

19 Only the city and all that it contains shall be accursed to YHWH, and keep yourselves from the accursed thing, lest you make the camp of Israel accursed and trouble it.

20 But all the silver and gold and brass and iron shall be consecrated to YHWH, they shall come into the treasury of YHWH.

21 And the people blew upon trumpets and made a great shouting, and the walls of Yericho fell down, and all the people went up, every man straight before him, and they took the city and utterly destroyed all that was in it, both man and woman, young and old, ox and sheep and ass, with the edge of the sword.

22 And they burned the whole city with fire; only the vessels of silver and gold, and brass and iron, they put into the treasury of YHWH.

23 And Yahushua swore at that time, saying, Cursed be the man who builds Yericho; he shall lay the foundation thereof in his first-born, and in his youngest son shall he set up the gates thereof.

24 And Akan the son of Carmi, the son of Zavdi, the son of

⁹⁰ Plural for “trumpets” particularly those made from a ram’s horn. The singular form is “*shofar*”.

Zerach, son of Y'hudah, dealt treacherously in the accursed thing, and he took of the accursed thing and hid it in the tent, and the anger of YHWH was kindled against Israel.

25 And it was after this when the children of Israel had returned from burning Yericho, Yahushua sent men to spy out also Ai, and to fight against it.

26 And the men went up and spied out Ai, and they returned and said, Let not all the people go up with you to Ai, only let about three thousand men go up and smite the city, for the men thereof are but few.

27 And Yahushua did so, and there went up with him of the children of Israel about three thousand men, and they fought against the men of Ai.

28 And the battle was severe against Israel, and the men of Ai smote thirty-six men of Israel, and the children of Israel fled from before the men of Ai.

29 And when Yahushua saw this thing, he tore his garments and fell upon his face to the ground before YHWH, he, with the elders of Israel, and they put dust upon their heads.

30 And Yahushua said, Why YHWH did you bring this people over the Yarden? what shall I say after the Israelites have turned their backs against their enemies?

31 Now therefore all the Kanaanites, inhabitants of the land, will hear this thing, and surround us and cut off our name.

32 And YHWH said to Yahushua, Why do you fall upon your face? rise, get you off, for the Israelites have sinned, and taken of the accursed thing; I will no more be with them unless they destroy the accursed thing from among them.

33 And Yahushua rose up and assembled the people, and brought the Urim by the order of YHWH, and the tribe of Y'hudah was taken, and Akan the son of Karmi was taken.

34 And Yahushua said to Akan, Tell me my son, what have you done, and Akan said, I saw among the spoil a goodly garment of Shinar and two hundred shekels of silver, and a

wedge of gold of fifty shekels weight; I coveted them and took them, and behold they are all hid in the earth in the midst of the tent.

35 And Yahushua sent men who went and took them from the tent of Akan, and they brought them to Yahushua.

36 And Yahushua took Akan and these utensils, and his sons and daughters and all belonging to him, and they brought them into the valley of Achor.

37 And Yahushua burned them there with fire, and all the Israelites stoned Akan with stones, and they raised over him a heap of stones, therefore did he call that place the valley of Akor, so YHWH's anger was appeased, and Yahushua afterward came to the city and fought against it.

38 And YHWH said to Yahushua, Fear not, neither be you dismayed, behold I have given into your hand Ai, her king and her people, and you shall do unto them as you did to Yericho and her king, only the spoil thereof and the cattle thereof shall you take for a prey for yourselves; lay an ambush for the city behind it.

39 So Yahushua did according to the word of YHWH, and he chose from among the sons of war thirty thousand valiant men, and he sent them, and they lay in ambush for the city.

40 And he commanded them, saying, When you shall see us we will flee before them with cunning, and they will pursue us, you shall then rise out of the ambush and take the city, and they did so.

41 And Yahushua fought, and the men of the city went out toward Israel, not knowing that they were lying in ambush for them behind the city.

42 And Yahushua and all the Israelites feigned themselves wearied out before them, and they fled by the way of the wilderness with cunning.

43 And the men of Ai gathered all the people who were in the city to pursue the Israelites, and they went out and were

drawn away from the city, not one remained, and they left the city open and pursued the Israelites.

44 And those who were lying in ambush rose up out of their places, and hastened to come to the city and took it and set it on fire, and the men of Ai turned back, and behold the smoke of the city ascended to the skies, and they had no means of retreating either one way or the other.

45 And all the men of Ai were in the midst of Israel, some on this side and some on that side, and they smote them so that not one of them remained.

46 And the children of Israel took Melosh king of Ai alive, and they brought him to Yahushua, and Yahushua hanged him on a tree and he died.

47 And the children of Israel returned to the city after having burned it, and they smote all those that were in it with the edge of the sword.

48 And the number of those that had fallen of the men of Ai, both man and woman, was twelve thousand; only the cattle and the spoil of the city they took to themselves, according to the word of YHWH to Yahushua.

49 And all the kings on this side Yordan, all the kings of Kanaan, heard of the evil which the children of Israel had done to Yericho and to Ai, and they gathered themselves together to fight against Israel.

50 Only the inhabitants of Givon were greatly afraid of fighting against the Israelites lest they should perish, so they acted cunningly, and they came to Yahushua and to all Israel, and said unto them, We have come from a distant land, now therefore make a covenant with us.

51 And the inhabitants of Givon over-reached the children of Israel, and the children of Israel made a covenant with them, and they made peace with them, and the princes of the congregation swore unto them, but afterward the children of Israel knew that they were neighbors to them and were

dwelling among them.

52 But the children of Israel slew them not; for they had sworn to them by YHWH, and they became hewers of wood and drawers of water.

53 And Yahushua said to them, Why did you deceive me, to do this thing to us? and they answered him, saying, Because it was told to your servants all that you had done to all the kings of the Amorites, and we were greatly afraid of our lives, and we did this thing.

54 And Yahushua appointed them on that day to hew wood and to draw water, and he divided them for slaves to all the tribes of Israel.

55 And when Adoni-Tzedek king of Jerusalem heard all that the children of Israel had done to Yericho and to Ai, he sent to Hoham king of Chevron and to Piram king at Yarmut, and to Yafia king of Lachish and to D'ver king of Eglon, saying,

56 Come up to me and help me, that we may smite the children of Israel and the inhabitants of Givon who have made peace with the children of Israel.

57 And they gathered themselves together and the five kings of the Amorites went up with all their camps, a mighty people numerous as the sand of the sea shore.

58 And all these kings came and encamped before Givon, and they began to fight against the inhabitants of Givon, and all the men of Givon sent to Yahushua, saying, Come up quickly to us and help us, for all the kings of the Amorites have gathered together to fight against us.

59 And Yahushua and all the fighting people went up from Gilgal, and Yahushua came suddenly to them, and smote these five kings with a great slaughter.

60 And YHWH confounded them before the children at Israel, who smote them with a terrible slaughter in Givon, and pursued them along the way that goes up to Beit Choron unto Makkedah, and they fled from before the children of

Israel.

61 And while they were fleeing, YHWH sent upon them hailstones from heaven, and more of them died by the hailstones, than by the slaughter of the children of Israel.

62 And the children of Israel pursued them, and they still smote them in the road, going on and smiting them.

63 And when they were smiting, the day was declining toward evening, and Yahushua said in the eyes of all the people, Sun, stand you still upon Givon, and you moon in the valley of Ayalon, until the nation shall have revenged itself upon its enemies.

64 And YHWH hearkened to the voice of Yahushua, and the sun stood still in the midst of the heavens, and it stood still six and thirty times, and the moon also stood still and hastened not to go down a whole day⁹¹.

65 And there was no day like that, before it or after it, that YHWH hearkened to the voice of a man, for YHWH fought for Israel.

CHAPTER 89

1 Then spoke Yahushua this song, on the day that YHWH had given the Amorites into the hand of Yahushua and the children of Israel, and he said in the eyes of all Israel,

2 you have done mighty things, YHWH, you have performed great deeds; who is like unto you? my lips shall sing to your name.

3 My goodness and my fortress, my high tower, I will sing a new song unto you, with thanksgiving will I sing to you, you are the strength of my salvation.

4 All the kings of the earth shall praise you, the princes of the world shall sing to you, the children of Israel shall

⁹¹ This is the passage cited in Joshua 10:13

rejoice in your salvation, they shall sing and praise your power.

5 To you, YHWH, did we confide; we said you are our Elohim, for you were our shelter and strong tower against our enemies.

6 To you we cried and were not ashamed, in you we trusted and were delivered; when we cried unto you, you did hear our voice, you did deliver our souls from the sword, you did show unto us your grace, you did give unto us your salvation, you did rejoice our hearts with your strength.

7 you did go forth for our salvation, with your arm you did redeem your people; you did answer us from the heavens of your holiness, you did save us from ten thousands of people.

8 The sun and moon stood still in heaven, and you did stand in your wrath against our oppressors and did command your judgments over them.

9 All the princes of the earth stood up, the kings of the nations had gathered themselves together, they were not moved at your presence, they desired your battles.

10 you did rise against them in your anger, and did bring down your wrath upon them; you did destroy them in your anger, and cut them off in your heart.

11 Nations have been consumed with your fury, kingdoms have declined because of your wrath, you did wound kings in the day of your anger.

12 you did pour out your fury upon them, your wrathful anger took hold of them; you did turn their iniquity upon them, and did cut them off in their wickedness.

13 They did spread a trap, they fell therein, in the net they hid, their foot was caught.

14 Your hand was ready for all your enemies who said, Through their sword they possessed the land, through their arm they dwelt in the city; you did fill their faces with shame, you did bring their horns down to the ground, you

did terrify them in your wrath, and did destroy them in your anger.

15 The earth trembled and shook at the sound of your storm over them, you did not withhold their souls from death, and did bring down their lives to the grave.

16 you did pursue them in your storm, you did consume them in your whirlwind, you did turn their rain into hail, they fell in deep pits so that they could not rise.

17 Their carcasses were like rubbish cast out in the middle of the streets.

18 They were consumed and destroyed in your anger, you did save your people with your might.

19 Therefore our hearts rejoice in you, our souls exalt in your salvation.

20 Our tongues shall relate your might, we will sing and praise your wondrous works.

21 For you did save us from our enemies, you did deliver us from those who rose up against us, you did destroy them from before us and depress them beneath our feet.

22 Thus shall all your enemies perish O YHWH, and the wicked shall be like chaff driven by the wind, and your beloved shall be like trees planted by the waters.

23 So Yahushua and all Israel with him returned to the camp in Gilgal, after having smitten all the kings, so that not a remnant was left of them.

24 And the five kings fled alone on foot from battle, and hid themselves in a cave, and Yahushua sought for them in the field of battle, and did not find them.

25 And it was told to Yahushua, saying, The kings are found and behold they are hidden in a cave.

26 And Yahushua said, Appoint men to be at the mouth of the cave, to guard them, lest they take themselves away; and the children of Israel did so.

27 And Yahushua called to all Israel and said to the officers

of battle, Place your feet upon the necks of these kings, and Yahushua said, So shall YHWH do to all your enemies.

28 And Yahushua commanded afterward that they should slay the kings and cast them into the cave, and to put great stones at the mouth of the cave.

29 And Yahushua went afterward with all the people that were with him on that day to Makkedah, and he smote it with the edge of the sword.

30 And he utterly destroyed the souls and all belonging to the city, and he did to the king and people thereof as he had done to Yericho.

31 And he passed from there to Livnah and he fought against it, and YHWH delivered it into his hand, and Yahushua smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls thereof, and he did to it and to the king thereof as he had done to Yericho.

32 And from there he passed on to Lachish to fight against it, and Horam king of Gaza went up to assist the men of Lachish, and Yahushua smote him and his people until there was none left to him.

33 And Yahushua took Lachish and all the people thereof, and he did to it as he had done to Livnah.

34 And Yahushua passed from there to Eglon, and he took that also, and he smote it and all the people thereof with the edge of the sword.

35 And from there he passed to Chevron and fought against it and took it and utterly destroyed it, and he returned from there with all Israel to Debir and fought against it and smote it with the edge of the sword.

36 And he destroyed every soul in it, he left none remaining, and he did to it and the king thereof as he had done to Yericho.

37 And Yahushua smote all the kings of the Amorites from Kadesh-Barnea to Azah, and he took their country at once,

for YHWH had fought for Israel.

38 And Yahushua with all Israel came to the camp to Gilgal.

39 When at that time Yabin king of Chazor heard all that Yahushua had done to the kings of the Amorites, Yabin sent to Yovav king of Midyan, and to Lavan king of Shimron, to Yefol king of Akshaf, and to all the kings of the Amorites, saying,

40 Come quickly to us and help us, that we may smite the children of Israel, before they come upon us and do unto us as they have done to the other kings of the Amorites.

41 And all these kings hearkened to the words of Yabin, king of Chazor, and they went forth with all their camps, seventeen kings, and their people were as numerous as the sand on the sea shore, together with horses and chariots innumerable, and they came and pitched together at the waters of Merom, and they were met together to fight against Israel.

42 And YHWH said to Yahushua, Fear them not, for tomorrow about this time I will deliver them up all slain before you, you shall hough their horses and burn their chariots with fire.

43 And Yahushua with all the men of war came suddenly upon them and smote them, and they fell into their hands, for YHWH had delivered them into the hands of the children of Israel.

44 So the children of Israel pursued all these kings with their camps, and smote them until there was none left of them, and Yahushua did to them as YHWH had spoken to him.

45 And Yahushua returned at that time to Chazor and smote it with the sword and destroyed every soul in it and burned it with fire, and from Chazor, Yahushua passed to Shimron and smote it and utterly destroyed it.

46 From there he passed to Akshaf and he did to it as he had done to Shimron.

47 From there he passed to Adulam and he smote all the people in it, and he did to Adulam as he had done to Akshaf and to Shimron.

48 And he passed from them to all the cities of the kings which he had smitten, and he smote all the people that were left of them and he utterly destroyed them.

49 Only their booty and cattle the Israelites took to themselves as a prey, but every human being they smote, they suffered not a soul to live.

50 As YHWH had commanded Mosheh so did Yahushua and all Israel, they failed not in anything.

51 So Yahushua and all the children of Israel smote the whole land of Kanaan as YHWH had commanded them, and smote all their kings, being thirty and one kings, and the children of Israel took their whole country.

52 Besides the kingdoms of Sichon and Og which are on the other side Yordan, of which Mosheh had smitten many cities, and Mosheh gave them to the Reuvenites and the Gadites and to half the tribe of M'nasheh.

53 And Yahushua smote all the kings that were on this side Yordan to the west, and gave them for an inheritance to the nine tribes and to the half tribe of Israel.

54 For five years did Yahushua carry on the war with these kings, and he gave their cities to the Israelites, and the land became tranquil from battle throughout the cities of the Amorites and the Kanaanites.

CHAPTER 90

1 At that time in the fifth year after the children of Israel had passed over Yordan, after the children of Israel had rested from their war with the Kanaanites, at that time great and severe battles arose between Edom and the children of

Chittim, and the children of Chittim fought against Edom.
2 And Avianus king of Chittim went forth in that year, that is in the thirty-first year of his reign, and a great force with him of the mighty men of the children of Chittim, and he went to Seir to fight against the children of Esau.
3 And Hadad the king of Edom heard of his report, and he went forth to meet him with a heavy people and strong force, and engaged in battle with him in the field of Edom.
4 And the hand of Chittim prevailed over the children of Esau, and the children of Chittim slew of the children of Esau, two and twenty thousand men, and all the children of Esau fled from before them.
5 And the children of Chittim pursued them and they reached Hadad king of Edom, who was running before them and they caught him alive, and brought him to Avianus king of Chittim.
6 And Avianus ordered him to be slain, and Hadad king of Edom died in the forty-eighth year of his reign.
7 And the children of Chittim continued their pursuit of Edom, and they smote them with a great slaughter and Edom became subject to the children of Chittim.
8 And the children of Chittim ruled over Edom, and Edom became under the hand of the children of Chittim and became one kingdom from that day.
9 And from that time they could no more lift up their heads, and their kingdom became one with the children of Chittim.
10 And Avianus placed officers in Edom and all the children of Edom became subject and tributary to Avianus, and Avianus turned back to his own land, Chittim.
11 And when he returned he renewed his kingdom and built for himself a spacious and fortified palace for a royal residence, and reigned securely over the children of Chittim and over Edom.
12 In those days, after the children of Israel had driven away

all the Kanaanites and the Amorites, Yahushua was old and advanced in years.

13 And YHWH said to Yahushua, you are old, advanced in life, and a great part of the land remains to be possessed.

14 Now therefore divide this land for an inheritance to the nine tribes and to the half tribe of M'nasheh, and Yahushua rose up and did as YHWH had spoken to him.

15 And he divided the whole land to the tribes of Israel as an inheritance according to their divisions.

16 But to the tribe at Levi he gave no inheritance, the offerings of YHWH are their inheritance as YHWH had spoken of them by the hand of Mosheh.

17 And Yahushua gave Mount Chevron to Kalev the son of Jephuneh, one portion above his brothers, as YHWH had spoken through Mosheh.

18 Therefore Chevron became an inheritance to Kalev and his children unto this day.

19 And Yahushua divided the whole land by lots to all Israel for an inheritance, as YHWH had commanded him.

20 And the children of Israel gave cities to the Levites from their own inheritance, and suburbs for their cattle, and property, as YHWH had commanded Mosheh so did the children of Israel, and they divided the land by lot whether great or small.

21 And they went to inherit the land according to their boundaries, and the children of Israel gave to Yahushua the son of Nun an inheritance among them.

22 By the word of YHWH did they give to him the city which he required, Timnath-Serach in Mount Efrayim, and he built the city and dwelt therein.

23 These are the inheritances which Elazer the priest and Yahushua the son of Nun and the heads of the fathers of the tribes portioned out to the children of Israel by lot in Shiloh, before YHWH, at the door of the tabernacle, and they left

off dividing the land.

24 And YHWH gave the land to the Israelites, and they possessed it as YHWH had spoken to them, and as YHWH had sworn to their ancestors.

25 And YHWH gave to the Israelites rest from all their enemies around them, and no man stood up against them, and YHWH delivered all their enemies into their hands, and not one thing failed of all the good which YHWH had spoken to the children of Israel, yea YHWH performed every thing.

26 And Yahushua called to all the children of Israel and he blessed them, and commanded them to serve YHWH, and he afterward sent them away, and they went each man to his city, and each man to his inheritance.

27 And the children of Israel served YHWH all the days of Yahushua, and YHWH gave them rest from all around them, and they dwelt securely in their cities.

28 And it came to pass in those days, that Avianus king of Chittim died, in the thirty-eighth year of his reign, that is the seventh year of his reign over Edom, and they buried him in his place which he had built for himself, and Latyanus reigned in his stead fifty years.

29 And during his reign he brought forth an army, and he went and fought against the inhabitants of Britannia and Kernania, the children of Elishah son of Yavan, and he prevailed over them and made them tributary.

30 He then heard that Edom had revolted from under the hand of Chittim, and Latyanus went to them and smote them and subdued them, and placed them under the hand of the children of Chittim, and Edom became one kingdom with the children of Chittim all the days.

31 And for many years there was no king in Edom, and their kingdom was with the children of Chittim and their king.

32 And it was in the twenty-sixth year after the children of

Israel had passed the Yarden, that is the sixty-sixth year after the children of Israel had departed from Egypt, that Yahushua was old, advanced in years, being one hundred and eight years old in those days.

33 And Yahushua called to all Israel, to their elders, their judges and officers, after YHWH had given to all the Israelites rest from all their enemies round about, and Yahushua said to the elders of Israel, and to their judges, Behold I am old, advanced in years, and you have seen what YHWH has done to all the nations whom he has driven away from before you, for it is YHWH who has fought for you.

34 Now therefore strengthen yourselves to keep and to do all the words of the law of Mosheh, not to deviate from it to the right or to the left, and not to come among those nations who are left in the land; neither shall you make mention of the name of their gods, but you shall cleave to YHWH your Elohim, as you have done to this day.

35 And Yahushua greatly exhorted the children of Israel to serve YHWH all their days.

36 And all the Israelites said, We will serve YHWH our Elohim all our days, we and our children, and our children's children, and our seed for ever.

37 And Yahushua made a covenant with the people on that day, and he sent away the children of Israel, and they went each man to his inheritance and to his city.

38 And it was in those days, when the children of Israel were dwelling securely in their cities, that they buried the coffins of the tribes of their ancestors, which they had brought up from Egypt, each man in the inheritance of his children, the twelve sons of Ya'akov did the children of Israel bury, each man in the possession of his children.

39 And these are the names of the cities wherein they buried the twelve sons of Ya'akov, whom the children of Israel had

brought up from Egypt.

40 And they buried Re'uvén and Gad on this side Yárdán, in Romíá, which Mosheh had given to their children.

41 And Shim'on and Levi they buried in the city Maudá, which he had given to the children of Shim'on, and the suburb of the city was for the children of Levi.

42 And Y'hudah they buried in the city of Benyámin opposite Beit-Lechem.

43 And the bones of Yissakhar and Z'vulun they buried in Zidon, in the portion which fell to their children.

44 And Dan was buried in the city of his children in Eshtael, and Naftali and Asher they buried in Kadesh-Naftali, each man in his place which he had given to his children.

45 And the bones of Yosef they buried in Shechem, in the part of the field which Ya'akov had purchased from Chamor, and which became to Yosef for an inheritance.

46 And they buried Benyámin in Jerusalem opposite the Jebusite, which was given to the children of Benyámin; the children of Israel buried their fathers each man in the city of his children.

47 And at the end of two years, Yahushua the son of Nun died, one hundred and ten years old, and the time which Yahushua judged Israel was twenty-eight years, and Israel served YHWH all the days of his life.

48 And the other affairs of Yahushua and his battles and his reproofs with which he reproved Israel, and all which he had commanded them, and the names of the cities which the children of Israel possessed in his days, behold they are written in the Book of the Words of Yahushua to the children of Israel, and in the Book of the Wars of YHWH, which Mosheh and Yahushua and the children of Israel had written.

49 And the children of Israel buried Yahushua in the border of his inheritance, in Timnath-Serach, which was given to

him in Mount Efrayim.

50 And Elazer the son of Aaron died in those days, and they buried him in a hill belonging to Pinchas his son, which was given him in Mount Efrayim.

Sefer Shoftim

CHAPTER 91

1 At that time, after the death of Yahushua, the children of the Kanaanites were still in the land, and the Israelites resolved to drive them out.

2 And the children of Israel asked of YHWH, saying, Who shall first go up for us to the Kanaanites to fight against them? and YHWH said, Y'hudah shall go up.

3 And the children of Y'hudah said to Shim'on, Go up with us into our lot, and we will fight against the Kanaanites and we likewise will go up with you, in your lot, so the children of Shim'on went with the children of Y'hudah.

4 And the children of Y'hudah went up and fought against the Kanaanites, so YHWH delivered the Kanaanites into the hands of the children of Y'hudah, and they smote them in Bezek, ten thousand men.

5 And they fought with Adonibezek in Bezek, and he fled from before them, and they pursued him and caught him, and they took hold of him and cut off his thumbs and big toes.

6 And Adonibezek said, Three score and ten kings having their thumbs and great toes cut off, gathered their meat under my table, as I have done, so Elohim has requited me, and they brought him to Jerusalem and he died there.

7 And the children of Shim'on went with the children of Y'hudah, and they smote the Kanaanites with the edge of the

sword.

8 And YHWH was with the children of Y'udah, and they possessed the mountain, and the children of Yosef went up to Beit-El, the same is Luz, and YHWH was with them.

9 And the children of Yosef spied out Beit-El, and the watchmen saw a man going forth from the city, and they caught him and said unto him, Show us now the entrance of the city and we will show kindness to you.

10 And that man showed them the entrance of the city, and the children of Yosef came and smote the City with the edge of the sword.

11 And the man with his family they sent away, and he went to the Hittites and he built a city, and he called the name thereof Luz, so all the Israelites dwelt in their cities, and the children at Israel dwelt in their cities, and the children of Israel served YHWH all the days of Yahushua, and all the days of the elders, who had lengthened their days after Yahushua, and saw the great work of YHWH, which he had performed for Israel.

12 And the elders judged Israel after the death of Yahushua for seventeen years.

13 And all the elders also fought the battles of Israel against the Kanaanites and YHWH drove the Kanaanites from before the children of Israel, in order to place the Israelites in their land.

14 And he accomplished all the words which he had spoken to Avraham, Yitz'chak, and Ya'akov, and the oath which he had sworn, to give to them and to their children, the land of the Kanaanites.

15 And YHWH gave to the children of Israel the whole land of Kanaan, as he had sworn to their ancestors, and YHWH gave them rest from those around them, and the children of Israel dwelt securely in their cities.

16 Blessed be YHWH for ever, amen, and amen.

17 Strengthen yourselves, and let the hearts of all you that trust in YHWH be of good courage⁹².

⁹² Verse 17 is lacking in the Hebrew text I have worked from, however Moses Samuel included this verse in his English translation.

Appendix I
1840 Edition's
Translator's Preface
(Mosheh Samuel)

The age in which we live has been, and continues to be, particularly distinguished by a laudable desire in the minds of men, to inquire into the various states of knowledge, and of the arts, as they existed in times anterior to the Christian era; animated with these noble and elevated views, a considerable number of individuals, greatly distinguished for their genius and learning, have in succession turned their attention to the East—to those celebrated countries, in which the arts of civilization and the lights of science first dawned upon, enlightened, and embellished human society. The magnificent and unequalled remains of the arts in Egypt, Babylonia, Assyria, Palestine, and Persia, have, from time to time, been visited and explored; and it has been amidst these fallen monuments of human grandeur, that the adventurous and enlightened traveler has found himself amply rewarded for his laborious and hazardous undertakings; for amidst these wrecks of human greatness, he has succeeded in gathering ample evidence, in confirmation of many of the most important truths recorded in sacred history.

Profane histories have, indeed, conveyed down to us some account of these kingdoms, and of the mighty monarchs who, during a long succession of ages, ruled over them; but the events which they relate are evidently so mixed up with exaggeration, and so adulterated with fable, that, however celebrated their authors might have been, and however fascinating may be the style of their composition, the religious and philosophic student turns from them with dissatisfaction, to the divinely authenticated annals of the

Hebrews; because, it is from these alone that he can derive true information concerning the rise, the splendor, the decline, and the real causes of the ruin of those celebrated empires.

In the sacred history we are presented with the only authentic, and, of course, the only valuable information concerning the origin of the universe,-of men and all other animated creatures-of the gradual increase of the human race-of the flood in the year A. M. 1656, of which mighty event there are existing evidences to the present day; evidences, so universal and so ponderous, that all the ingenuity of the skeptical geologists will never be able to remove them in order to make room for their plausible hypotheses.

The ever memorable events and transactions recorded in Scripture are with many others of the most interesting nature, comprehended in the Book of Jasher; and they are all arrayed in that style of simple, unadorned majesty and precision, which so particularly distinguishes the genius of the Hebrew language; and this, together with other numerous internal evidences, it is presumed will go far to convince the Hebrew scholar that the book is, with the exception of some doubtful parts, a venerable monument of antiquity; and that, notwithstanding some few additions may have been made to it in comparatively modern times, it still retains sufficient to prove it a copy of the book referred to in Joshua x., and 2v Samuel, ch.i. There are not more than seven or eight words in the whole book that by construction can be derived from the Chaldean language.

The printed Hebrew copy, in the hands of the translator, is without points.

During his first perusal of it, some perplexities and doubts rose up in his mind respecting its authenticity; but the more closely he studied it, the more its irresistible evidence satisfied him, that it contained a treasure of information concerning those early times, upon which the histories of other nations are either silent, or cast not a single ray of real light; and he was more especially delighted to find that the evidence of the whole of its contents went to illustrate and confirm the great and inestimable truths which are recorded in divine history, down to a few years later than the death of Joshua, at which period the book closes.

In this extraordinary book the reader will meet with models of the most sublime virtue, devotion and magnanimity, that cannot fail to raise his admiration, and, at the same time, to excite a generous feeling of emulation to follow the glorious examples set before him.

With these preliminary observations, the translator now respectfully proceeds to lay before the readers a few remarks upon the contents of the book. The title ספר הישר is literally, "the upright or correct record," but because the book was not known, it was therefore termed the "Book of Jasher;" this has caused some persons, who are ignorant of the Hebrew language, to suppose that Jasher was the name of a prophet, or of one of the Judges of Israel; an instance of which appears in a publication which came from the press about the middle of the last century, and which purported to have been a translation into English of the Hebrew manuscript of Jasher, found at Gazna in Persia; which translation only was said to have been thence brought by Alcuin. When the translator wrote to the Editor of the London Courier, in November last, he was not aware that the copy of Jasher, announced in the Bristol Gazette as an

important discovery, had reference to that fictitious book, which, through the kindness of a friend, he had previously obtained a sight of, and was soon convinced that the whole book was the work of some skeptic in England, in imitation of the language of Scripture, as it was sent forth from the press without the name of printer, bookseller, editor, or publisher; and it is evident that those who were concerned in getting it up, in making Jasher the name of a Judge of Israel were ignorant of the very rudiments of the language from which they pretended to have translated it, as it is well known, even to a tyro in the Hebrew language, that the definite article, הַ is never prefixed to proper names.

The important transactions which are narrated with so remarkable a brevity in the Bible, are, in Jasher, more circumstantially detailed as in the instance of the murder of Abel by his brother Cain, a particular account is given of the disagreement which preceded it, and of the pretext which Cain sought for the commission of the crime. It appears, also, that when the divine judgment condemned him to wander upon the earth, his wife accompanied him, not to the land of Nod, for no such place is mentioned; but, from this book it appears that the word Nod, in the Scripture, has been given for the participle of the verb נָדַד "to move or wander about." Jasher has it thus:

א קין בעת ההיא מלפני יהוה מן המקום אשר היה שם
וַיֵּצֵא
וַיֵּלֶךְ נֹעַ וַיִּנְוֹדֵד בְּאֶרֶץ קְדֵמַת עֵדֵן הוּא וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לוֹ

"And at that time Cain went forth from the presence of the Lord, from the place where he was; and he went moving and wandering in the land at the east of Eden, he and all

belonging to him."

In the passage respecting the birth of Cain and Abel, three daughters are also mentioned. According to Jasher, the art of writing appears to have been known and practiced from the earliest periods; it is stated that Cainan was informed beforehand by God of the intended destruction of mankind by the flood, which he engraved upon tablets of stone, and preserved among his treasures.

This book contains a more detailed account of the awful circumstances attending the commencement of the flood, and of the conduct of Noah toward the terrified multitude who had assembled about the ark, when the fatal moment had arrived, and their doom was irrevocably fixed.

A particular delineation of the life and character of Enoch is given, showing, that by his wisdom he reigned over the sons of men, continually instructing them in truth, righteousness, and a knowledge of the Most High.

Jasher informs us, that in the days of Peleg, not only the families of the human race were separated and spread abroad, but that the earth itself was divided; and of both these facts, it may be presumed, there are sufficient existing evidences, even at this day. This book gives, also, a more detailed account of the genealogies of the descendants of Japheth, Shem, and Ham, and of the various parts of the earth which were colonized by them.

Connected with this period of the history is given an account of Nimrod; in which is strikingly depicted the arbitrary and violent character of his conduct and kingdom. The contested point, as to whether Nimrod was the founder of the Assyrian

Empire, is here decided. The cause of the dispute among commentators proceeded from the word אַשׁוּר in Gen. chapter x. ver. II, signifying either the name of a man, or the name of the land of Assyria. Jasher has it thus:

&c. יבנו שם ערים ארבעה
ויצא אשור בן שם הוא ובניו ובני ביתו

"And Asher, the son of Shem, went forth, he, and his sons, and the children of his house, &c., and they there built four cities."

Jasher clearly elucidates a number of genealogical and chronological difficulties which occur in the Bible; an instance is here adduced of the genealogy of Seir, the Horite, upon which the Bible is silent.

The learned commentator, Aben Ezra, remarks, "Seir, his genealogy we do not know;" and the word הַחֲרִי supposed to come from חוּר a noble, but Jasher gives us the descent of Seir, (which accounts for his being called the Horite,) in the following words:

וילך שעיר בן חור בן חוי בן כנען

"And Seir, the son of Hur, the son of Hivi, the son of Kanaan, went," &c; hence he was called the Horite, from Hur, his father."

The character of Abraham, for piety, true dignity and hospitality, appears to stand unrivaled, but the most affecting and beautiful account in this book, is that of

Abraham offering up his son Yitz'chak. The mutual affection of the father and son, and their willing devotion and obedience to the commands of their maker, are so exquisitely described, that the heart of him who can peruse the narrative without being deeply affected, must be callous indeed. The conduct Sarah, as connected with this unexampled and glorious event, was altogether worthy of the wife of Abraham, and the mother of Yitz'chak. At this time Sarah died at Kireath-arba. Her funeral is described as having been magnificent; and it is expressly mentioned, that it was attended by Shem, the son of Noah, Ever his son, king Avimelech, together with Anar, Ashcol and Mamre, and other great people of the land.

In the Bible Sarah is the only woman whose age is given at her death; but it may be interesting to the reader to know that Jasher generally states the ages of the women who are particularly mentioned in the course of the history.

From this book we learn that Noah and Abraham were contemporaries. How beautiful the contemplation of the meeting of these two Patriarchs, the one being a monument of God's mercy, the other having the promise of the favor and grace of God, not only to himself, but to his seed after him. This fact might be proved from Scripture; but from the 32nd verse in the 11th chapter of Genesis, most of the Christian commentators have erroneously dated the birth of Abraham 60 years later than it actually took place; as it is generally stated that he was born A. M. 2008, whereas the regular calculation in the Bible leads us to 60 years earlier, viz. 1948. The only cause of this error has been that Abraham's departure from Charan, at the age of 75, is recorded close to the description of the death Terah, at the age of 205, in Gen. ch. xi. v. 32. Although this is the

frequent manner of Scripture, to record events out of the regular order of succession (an instance of which we find in Yitz'chak, whose death is recorded Gen. xxxv. 29, when we know from the calculations given us in Scripture, at Yitz'chak's death must have taken place when Yosef was about 29 years old; and the description given in Jasher, of Yitz'chak's coming from Chevron to comfort Ya'akov upon the loss of Yosef, is beautiful,) it is of great importance, in its making a difference of 60 years in the chronology of the world.

This book gives a particular account of the instruction received by Abraham, Yitz'chak and Ya'akov, from Shem and Ever, through which they became excellent in piety and wisdom, their tutors in learning having lived to so great an age; and Shem particularly, who, being acquainted with all that was known before the flood, could therefore strengthen his precepts of virtue, the true worship of God, and the necessary dependence upon Him alone, by recording the awful events which he had seen.

The history of Yosef has always been considered one of the most admirable and interesting on record. It is composed in a style of simple and artless eloquence, which touches every feeling heart. A judicious critic has observed, that he considers it a perfect composition. This history, in Jasher, enters more into detail concerning the affairs of Potiphar's wife, Z'likah; Joseph's magnificent procession through the cities of Egypt, on coming into power; the pomp with which he was attended by Pharaoh's chariots, officers, and people, when he went up to meet his father; the affecting scene which then took place, together with other remarkable incidents. This beautiful narrative might justly be entitled, the triumph of virtue and piety; and it is presumed that few

can peruse it, unmoved by sentiments of the highest admiration, mixed with the deepest feelings of sympathy. The history of the Israelites during their sojourning in Egypt contains an account of many interesting particulars not noticed in the Bible. Toward the latter end of this period, Balaam, Job, Jannes, and Jambres, appear to have acted their respective parts in some memorable transaction.

This book clears up the reference in 2 Samuel, ch. 1., by showing that David, in the commencement of his beautiful elegy on the death of Shaul and Jonathan, revived an injunction given by Jacob in his dying charge to his son Y'hudah, contained in Jasher in these words:

אך למד נא בניך קשת וכל כלי מלחמה

"But teach, I pray thee, your children the use of the bow, and all instruments of war," &c. This goes far to prove the authenticity of the book, as it beautifully clears up what was always considered obscure.

If commentators upon the holy Scriptures have sought for illustrations in the works of Homer, Pliny, Herodotus, and other profane writers; if they have anxiously caught at glimmerings among the absurdities of Paganism, and the obscurities of Heathen fables, the translator humbly and respectfully hopes that they will now grant a favorable reception to evidence of an entirely opposite character, which is presented in the Book of Jasher.

He does not recommend it to their notice as a work of inspiration, but as a monument of history, comparatively covered with the ivy of the remotest ages; as a work possessing, in its language, all the characteristic simplicity

of patriarchal times; and as such, he conceives it peculiarly calculated to illustrate and confirm the sacred truths handed down to us in the Scriptures.

But in making these observations, he is far from offering it as a perfect record. Like all other ancient writings, (except the inspired volume,) it has in some respects suffered from the consuming hand of time; and there is reason to believe that some additions have been made to it. In fine, it contains a history of the lives and memorable transactions of all the illustrious characters recorded in sacred history, from Adam down to the time of the Elders, who immediately succeeded Joshua.

Appendix II
1840 Edition's
Publisher's Preface
(Mordecai Manuel Noah)

It is with pleasure that I am able to present to the American public the translation of the Book of Jasher, as referred to in Joshua and Second Samuel, which, after several years' negotiation with the owner and translator of the work in England, I have succeeded in obtaining.

There are many books named in the Old Testament, which are now classed among the missing books, or books supposed to have been lost amidst the many revolutions which have occurred in Judea. These books are not included in the Jewish Canons, and it is questionable whether there are any missing of what were considered as emanating from inspired writers; for, when the works enumerated in the Bible could not be found after the most diligent search, the inference was, that the names applied to other books, or that they were different versions of the same work.

Thus, the Book of the Covenant, (Exodus XXIV. 7.) was a mere collection of the injunctions and institutions delivered by the Almighty to Moses. So it might also be said of the Book of the Law, (Duet. XXXI 9.) The Book of the wars of the Lord (Numbers XXI. 14) cannot be found, and is every where spoken of as one of the missing books. Dr. Lightfoot, in his Chronicles, thinks that Moses refers to a book of his own composing, written by command of God, (Exodus XXVII. 14.) We think, however, that the Book of Judges is the one referred to as the Book of the wars of the

Lord; because, in that book we have all the exploits of the Hebrews detailed at length. We find in Chronicles and Kings a number of books named, which are not to be found. The acts of David the King, written in the Book of Samuel the Seer, also in the Book of Nathan the Prophet, and also in the Book of Gad the Seer; the acts of Solomon are in the Book of Nathan the Prophet and also in the Book of Abijah the Shulamite; the acts of Rehoboam in the Book of Shemaiah the Prophet; the acts of Jehoshaphat in the Book of Jehu. The journals of the kings of Judah and Israel; the three thousand and five songs, and a treatise on botany and animated nature, by this learned king, are lost; so also are the "Acts of Manasseh." These, works, not having been found by Ezra, could not have been inserted in the Old Testament, and consequently cannot be considered as having been written by divine inspiration. Nevertheless, it would be assuming more than is required or necessary, to say that there were no other books in the time of Ezra, than those considered as divinely inspired. St. Austin says, "The penmen of the Sacred Scripture writ some things as they are, men with historical lore and diligence: other things they writ as prophets, by inspiration from God." We thus have a classification of their labors, both as historians and as prophets. The negligence of the Jews in ancient days, and their constant transition from one country to another, occasioned many losses of the sacred writings. The Book of Deuteronomy was lost for a long time. There were many books rejected by the Canons which are still objects of curiosity, and venerable for their antiquity. The prayer of King Manasseh, Bel and the Dragon, the two books of Esdras, the Book of the Maccabees, and the book of Enoch, recently found and translated from the Ethiopic. The Book of Jasher, referred to in Joshua and Second Samuel, has been long an object of great curiosity. Some of the Hebrew

writers contend that it was the lives and acts of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and other patriarchs, who were called Jasherim, the Just. Dr. Lightfoot thinks it is the Book of the Wars of God, and so the reader may think in perusing the various battles it recounts. Grotius calls it a triumphal poem. Josephus says, "That by this book are to be understood certain records kept in some safe place on purpose, giving an account of what happened among the Hebrews from year to year, and called Jasher, or the upright, on account of the fidelity of the annals."

It is known that such have been the curiosity and anxiety to discover, this missing book, that several forgeries under that name have appeared from time to time; and the Rev. Mr. Horne, in his Introduction to the Study of the Scripture, has been at some pains to collect a history of the various fabrications of Jasher; the most remarkable of which was originally published in England, in the year 1750, by a person called Illivc, and purported to be a translation from a Hebrew work of that name, found in Persia by Alcuin. It was republished in Bristol in the year 1829, and a copy is now in my possession. It is a miserable fabrication, occupying but sixty two and a half pages, with copious notes, making out Jasher to be one of the Judges, whereas the translation of the word is the upright, or the upright record. In the same work of Dr. Horne, a slight reference is made to the Book of Jasher, written in Rabbinical Hebrew, said to have been discovered in Jerusalem at its capture under Titus, and printed in Venice in 1613. This is the book now translated into English for the first time. Long prior to the destruction of Jerusalem, the Jews had established themselves in various parts of Spain and Italy; they traded to the bay of Gibraltar, as historians affirm, in the earliest periods of history; and Basnage mentions that in Sagunto, a

town in Spain, a tombstone was discovered, bearing the following inscription in the Hebrew language: "This is the tomb of Adoniram, an officer of King Solomon, who came to collect the tribute, and died the day," &c. There can be no doubt that Spain, probably France and Italy, were tributary to Solomon. It is, however, certain, that the Jews carried with them into Spain, on the dispersion, an immense number of manuscripts and sacred rolls, where they remained many years, and were, in the eleventh century, placed in their great college at Cordova, and from thence were conveyed to Venice on the first discovery of printing. The printer's Hebrew preface to Jasher shows that it was a painful transcript from a very old and almost illegible Hebrew record, and printed by and with the consent of the great Consistory of Rabbins at Venice, who alone had the power of publishing such works from the Hebrew records as they deemed authentic. From the Venice edition of Jasher, another edition was many years subsequently published, in Lemberg, in Gallicia. Both editions, in Hebrew, are now in my possession; and the Royal Asiatic Society, having found a copy of Jasher in Calcutta, gave orders to have it translated, which order was countermanded when it was ascertained that considerable progress had been made in England in this translation. The following copy of a letter from the secretary to the translator, shows the estimate which that learned Society placed upon the work.

Royal Asiatic Society House.
Grafton St., Bond St., London, Sept. 2, 1831

Dear Sir:

I am extremely obliged by your having favored me with the sight of Mr. Noah's letter, and in reply to your

letter, mention that the Oriental Translation Committee does not consider that it has any claims on your work, and if that ever the Rev. Mr. Adams translates the Book of Jasher, it will not be in the lapse of several years. Hoping that your praiseworthy and valuable labors in that interesting work will soon, in one shaped or other, be presented to the public,

I remain, Dear Sir,
Your obliged and ob't Serv't,
Wm. Huttamn.

Whatever may have been written and published by commentators, relative to the fabrications of Jasher, I am persuaded they had no reference to this work, although this is the work slightly touched upon by Dr. Horne, as the publication in Venice, on the first discovery of printing; but of its origin and history he knew nothing beyond the rumor that it had originally been brought from Jerusalem. There are some events recorded in Jasher, that are found in the Talmud, no doubt copied from Jasher; for although we find in the Talmud, the Mishnah, and Gemmarrah, many parables and fanciful tales, to effect moral and religious purposes, yet every thing that we have in Jasher we find recorded in the Bible, with this difference, that in Jasher the occurrences of the Bible are amplified and detailed at length. The celebrated philosopher, Mendelsohn, expresses a high opinion of this work. There are, nevertheless, some events which are recorded in Jasher, which may create surprise, particularly a detail of the rape of the Sabines, which, at first glance, I was disposed to consider as an interpolation; but a little reflection satisfied me that it was an event placed in proper chronological order. Pizron, in his *Revolution of Empires, or Antiquities of Nations*, says, (page 164,) "It is

therefore likely from what I have said, that several of the Titans, in the reign of Uranum, or, at least, in that of Saturne, staying and fixing themselves in that part of Italy which is adjacent to the Tiber and the Appenienes, were afterward called Umbrians. If such were the case, as it seems it was, the settlement of the Titans in Italy was made about the time of the calling of Abraham, that is, when he left Chaldea, to go and dwell in the land of Canaan.” Page 175, “Now, if all this came to pass, it must have happened about the time Deucalion reigned in Greece, or some years after the deluge that happened under that prince.” If as Pizron says, the separation of the Sabines from the Umbrians took place 1500 years before Christ, it will not be far distant from the time at which Jasher places the rape of the Sabine women, in the 91st year of life of Abraham.

The following is the translator’s preface, and with all his admitted learning and ability, he had been unable to do justice to the beauty, grandeur, and alike the simplicity of the original Hebrew. I also subjoin a translation of the Hebrew preface and a translation of the printer’s preface, being all the documents in my possession.

Appendix III
English Translation
of the
1625 Hebrew Edition's
Printer's Preface

The humble worm, and no man, Joseph, son to my father, the wise and highly respected in Israel, Samuel the little one, says, my witness is in heaven and my testimony is on high, the God of Gods knows, and Israel knows also, how much fatigue I have undergone, and how much trouble I have taken until I was driven from my and, from the metropolis of Israel, the great city of wise men and scribes, the renowned city of Pasia, ever since the Lord, through my great offences, has driven me with a violent captivity, one stumbling after the other, he weakened my strength in the way, the iron entered my soul until I reached the Italian harbor, the royal city Livorno (Leghorn), which is under the sway of our Lord the most serene Grand Duke Don Ferdinand de Media (Medici Qu?) for neither by day nor by night could I remain silent, I was continually in thought, my soul was humbled in me, and sleep was removed from mine eyes, when I reflected how energetically my father, the crown of my head, strove with his purse and labor to transcribe this book, as was his constant custom from his love of the study of the Law, to lavish money and wealth, principal, and interest, for the purchase and the transcribing, for my

own use, of books without end, in order that I might obtain wisdom and instruction, to comprehend the words of understanding, as all of the inhabitants of my city can testify and declare; (O God remember him favorably to rest in glory with the righteous who are in the garden of Eden, Amen! For this loss is felt only by me,) especially in the transcribing of this book it is holy for praises to the Lord, for there was never seen nor found but one, which the intelligent and pious scribe Jacob, the son of Atiyah, transcribed from a very old manuscript, the letters of which were defaced; and had it not been for the consummate ability of the above mentioned Rabbi, no other person could have made out those letters, nor have transcribed them, from their antiquity and from their having been defaced.

Now my father, of blessed memory, found favor in his eyes, to obtain this book on loan, in order that he might also get one transcribed by the hands of a certain scribe, and in the year 5373*, through my great sins, I went out of the pale of my birth place, and from my father's house, owing to the terrors of famine, pestilence and slaughter. The sword destroyed from without, and within was the terror of pestilence and famine, on account of the battles and contentions which took place between the sons of the old king Maruccus who had died, for each lifted himself up, saying, I will reign, and they devoured the Israelites with open mouth, so that very few remained of them, even a tithe of a tithe; many

families and heads of the houses of their fathers were lost and destroyed and became as naught; many books of various kinds, new and old, some in manuscript and others in print, as well as those of modern times, were mostly destroyed by fire, or were torn to pieces, which, together with their owners, lie hid under the ruins to this day. Woe to the eyes that beheld this! Yet may the name of the Lord be blessed for the evil as well as for the good.

Fearing that this book might share the same fate as the others, I daily used the most persevering exertions in sending letters to some particular individuals in the city Argilia, in the city Titu, and in the city Pasia, to such as had been left, humbly beseeching them to search and inquire where might be the glory of this book, and it was sought after and found to be hid in the hands of one of the individuals of the congregation, the wise and highly gifted Moses Chasan; and thanks are due to him, that upon his ascertaining my good intentions to print it and to scatter it throughout all Jewish communities, he did not delay to send it, as he felt a desire for a heavenly reward for this pious act, yeah, he sent it to me as a gift, may he receive a blessing from the Lord, and may his reward be perfect. Amen.

Now I humble station have composed a work entitled **כתונת יוסף** in two parts, one part containing some of the scriptural comments which I

made with the gracious help of the Lord, and the second part containing fifty lectures which I delivered to a great congregation, besides a later comment containing explanations of parts of the Talmud which I met with in the course of my studies, and which I illustrated according to my humble abilities; now I am revising this work a second time in order to bring it to the press, if heaven spare my life, yet I said to my heart, to thee, O worm, and no man, does the scripture proclaim *“It is time for thee, O Lord, to work, for they have made void they law,”* for the printing of this book of Jasher tends to the honor and glory of the Lord, for though it will the hearts of men be directed to cleave to the blessed Lord, and by the means of which they will understand the wonderful works of God, and his bounties toward our ancestors from the days of old, and how he chose us from all nations, as thou wilt see at length in the preface, wherein thou wilt perceive enumerated the great many uses, thirteen in number, which induce men to confide in the Lord and to adhere to him.

I have also found another use therein, which is, that many parts of the five books difficult of comprehension, and which the commentators have been unable to reconcile, are, by means of this book, properly understood, because it gives a detail of those parts, wherein the sacred volume is brief in its account, and relates events as they occurred; thou

wilt therefore find me lifting up my hand in the margin with the words אָמַר הַצַּעִיר “*The humble editor says,*” by which will be understood what I have asserted; search and thou will find many things also, which our Rabbies in their works gave in short, are brought forth more fully in this book since it is high time now to act and have a care for the glory of God’s name. Since then it is proper for me at present to defer the publication of my above mentioned work until I shall first have brought to light the hidden treasures of this book and to reveal them to the world, I am confident that with the help of the Lord all Israel will exult and rejoice therein.

I have therefore put my trust in the Lord, may he remember me favorably, that I may be enabled in the next year by his help and decree to publish also my afore mentioned work.

As for me, my prayer is to him who dwells on high, may the Lord God assist me, and send me from on high his peace, favor, and faithfulness to help me, that he may lead me beside the still waters, and conduct me to the paths of righteousness for the sake of his great name, and for the sake of his law. Amen for ever and ever.

